ADAM'S

LATIN GRAMMAR:

WITH NUMEROUS

ADDITIONS AND IMPROVEMENTS,

DESIGNED TO AID

THE MORE ADVANCED STUDENT BY FULLER ELUCIDATIONS

OF THE

LATIN CLASSICS.

BY C. D. CLEVELAND, A. M.

LATE PROFESSOR OF THE LATIN LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE IN THE UNIVERSITY OF THE CITY OF NEW-YORK.

PHILADELPHIA: WILLIAM MARSHALL & CO.
HARTFORD: D. BURGESS & CO.

1836.

WILLIAM STAVELY, PRINTER,
No. 12 Pear street.

PREFACE.

A Preface is not necessary to set forth the merits of Adam's Latin Grammar. Such as it is, it is known to almost every scholar in our country, from that critical inspection which is the result of constant use. Such an extended circulation would argue, what is believed to be the fact, that, as a manual, it is the best accessible to the English student. But good as it is, all acknowledge that it might be better. Whether the present editor has made it so, the public will of course decide. It only remains to state some of the most important alterations and additions that have been made in the present edition.

1. The lists of *regular* NOUNS of the first, and second, and fourth declensions, and of *regular* ADJECTIVES of the first and second declension, have been thrown out altogether, *as entirely useless*, and the space which they would have occupied has been filled with other lists presenting some *peculiarities*. See lists 1, 2, 3 and 4 on pages 19 and 20 : the lists of Irregular Nouns on pages 48, 49, 50, and 51 : the lists of Defective Nouns, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9 and 10, on pages 60, 61, and 62, which have been much enlarged; and lists 11, 12, 13, 14, on pages 63 and 64, which are entirely new; and the list of Irregular and Unusual Comparisons, on page 81.

2. The remarks on Gender, on page 17, have been remodelled; and those on the Cases, (page 21) are entirely new. See also the end of Exc. 3, on page 23—Exc. 5, on page 26—the declension of Deus, in full, on page 27—and three of the paragraphs on page 54.—A Synopsis of the Five Declensions has been given on page 55; and the lists 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6 of Nouns

Defective in Cases on pages 58, 59 and 60, have been entirely re-written, and much enlarged. The remarks on Proper Names, on page 66, are also new. These are mentioned merely as specimens of the minor additions that have been made throughout the work, in which, wherever the case has admitted of it, classical authority has always been adduced.

3. In ADJECTIVES, the Exceptions in the formation of the Ablative singular, on page 72, will be found, on a comparison with the common editions of Adam's, to be much enlarged. On page 76, there are some alterations, and Obs. 5 and the two next paragraphs are new.

4. In the PRONOUNS, Observations 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20 and 21, on pages 87 and 88, are entirely new.

5. But it is in the VERBS that the greatest additions and altertions, and, as the Editor hopes, improvements, have been made. It is well known to every classical scholar, that the Supine of the Latin Verb is rarely found in the classics, but that the Perfect Participle of most verbs is in use. It is, therefore, obviously proper that Latin verbs should be conjugated with the Perfect Participle, rather than with the Supine. Dr. Adam, on the contrary, in conjugating the Latin verb, gives the Supine almost uniformly, without any classical authority to support such a practice. For example, on page 121, of the Boston edition, *Creo* is conjugated with the Supine, and then follows a long list of about four hundred verbs of the first conjugation "thus conjugated," whereas not one in ten is "thus conjugated." In this edition of Adam's, however, the verbs of all the conjugations are inserted, *and conjugated with the Perfect Participle*, if it be used; if not, the verb has an asterisk (*) prefixed to it, and one of the Future Participles is inserted. The Futures RUS and DUS, when found, are indicated by the letters R and D, and the Supines UM and U, by M and U. In the notes will be found such parts of the verbs as seldom occur in the Latin authors, with the classical authorities for each. These are inserted on the autho-

rity of Dr. Hickie, one of the learned editors of Valpey's edition of the Variorum classics, who undertook the laborious task of going through the whole range of Latin writers, for the express purpose of ascertaining what parts of the verbs have classical authority for their support.

In consequence of these additions, the verbs occupy seventy-two pages instead of thirty-two, as in the common editions of Adam's Grammar. But it is believed that the space could not be better filled. Not only will it afford the advanced scholar great satisfaction to be able to ascertain readily, whether any part of a verb which he may wish to employ, has been used by the best Roman writers, but it is highly important that the scholar in the Grammar school should *begin* right, and not in after years be obliged to do, what all know is so hard to be done—unlearn what has been learned amiss.

6. The Article on DEFECTIVE VERBS, on pages 185, 186, 187, and 188, is nearly entirely new, and classical authority is adduced for all the parts of each verb. The two lists of Redundant Verbs, on pages 190 and 191, are also very much enlarged. The same may be said of "Remarks on the Verb," pages 193, 194 and 195.

7. It will be seen that the PREPOSITIONS are entirely remodelled, and that considerable attention has been bestowed upon them. The original import of each is endeavoured to be given and illustrated, and the secondary meanings traced to the primary. Examples from the classics have been adduced in support of all the definitions.

8. To the PREPOSITIONS in COMPOSITION four pages have been devoted, instead of a third of a page, as in the common edition of Adam's. See pages 210, 211, 212 and 213.

9. The Remarks on the SIGNIFICATION of WORDS, pages 215, 216, 217, 218 and 219, at the end of the Etymolo-

gical part, it is hoped will be of assistance to the student, by giving him some well defined principles that will enable him to translate the classics with greater accuracy.

10. To the SYNTAX many additions have been made. The articles marked with an asterisk (*) are entirely new, and comprise about twenty-five pages. As specimens of the additions, reference may be made to Adjectives that govern the Genitive (73)—the observations on the Dative (81) and (82)—Verbs governing the Dative that are variously construed (130)—Verbs that differ in signification according to the cases with which they are used (131)—the turning of the Active into the Passive Verb (187) and (188)—and Rules for the construction of the Relative, when it should be followed by the Subjunctive, and when by the Indicative (342) (343) (344) (345) (346). See also articles (51) (100) (134) (185) (271) (272) &c. At the same time that so much new matter has been introduced, all the Rules and Observations of Adam's have been carefully preserved, in their order, and with the same numbers, *so that those books, which refer to the Syntax of the common editions, can be used with this, with equal facility.* Heretofore, however, particular reference has been often difficult, from the extent of some of the Rules: in this edition that difficulty has been entirely obviated *by numbering* EVERY ARTICLE *in the Syntax.* This, it is believed, will be considered an improvement of some value, especially as it will enable Instructers and Editors of School Classics to make the most minute references, with the greatest facility; and scholars to turn to these references with the greatest readiness.

11. Some parts of the PROSODY have been entirely rewritten, and much enlarged. See, particularly, the different Kinds of Verse, on pages 320, 321, 322 and 323, and the various Combinations of the different Metres used by Horace, on pages 329, 330, and 331. As in Syntax, all the articles marked with an asterisk, (*) are new. The Remarks in the Appendix upon

Roman Weights, Measures, and Method of computing by Sesterces, are taken from Gould's edition of Adam, to whom the cause of classical learning in our country is much indebted for his beautiful and correct editions of the School-classics.

The additions above specified, amount to nearly one hundred pages; yet the size of the Grammar has been increased but about forty pages above the common editions. This has been effected by using in many of the least important parts a size smaller type, and by rejecting altogether some things that in a Grammar are of little or no utility: such as the long lists of *regular* nouns and adjectives, and the "Signification of Verbs," which is found in the "Appendix" of the old editions. The latter occupied twenty pages, without being of any practical use; for when the scholar wishes to know the various significations of a verb, he always has recourse to his dictionary.

That the above mentioned alterations and additions, the result of much labour, may be found to be improvements; that they may enhance the value of an already useful book; and that they may aid the cause of sound learning, by presenting to the student of the higher classics, a manual to which he may turn for the solution of his difficulties, and not turn in vain, is the sincere desire of

THE EDITOR.

PHILADELPHIA, Feb. 1, 1836.

The following works, besides the Classics, have been freely consulted in the preparation of the work.

Scheller's Latin Grammar,		2 vols. 8vo.
Port Royal	do.	2 vols. 8vo.
Grant's	do.	1 vol. 8vo.
Hickie's	do.	1 vol. 12mo.
Zumpt's	do.	1 vol. 8vo.
Crombie's Gymnasium,		2 vols. 8vo.
Carey's Latin Prosody,		1 vol. 12mo.
Butler's Praxis on the Latin Prepositions,		1 vol. 8vo.

CONTENTS.

APPENDIX TO SYNTAX.

PART IV.

APPENDIX.

THE
PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN.

The following rules for the Pronunciation of Latin, are such as prevail in the English Universities, and in the principal Colleges in the United States. They are in accordance with the standard laid down by Walker, (which it is desirable should be adopted wherever the English language is spoken,) that the Latin should be accented and pronounced by us, according to the prevailing analogies of our own language, without regard to the prosodial accent and quantity of the ancients.

RULES FOR THE ACCENT.

1. Monosyllables are of course accented.

2. Dyssyllables have always the accent on the first syllables, as *návis, béllum.*

3. In Polysyllables the accent is regulated by the quantity of the penult: if the penult be long it is accented, as, *amábam, docébam, amícus, honóris, secúrus:* if the penult be short, or common, the accent is thrown back in the antepenult; as, *hómĭnis, légĕre, mulíĕris, ténĕbris.*

RULES FOR THE SOUND OF THE VOWEL.

4. Every vowel has either the long or the short sound which it has in English, excepting that *a* in the end of a word of more than one syllable is sounded broad; as, *fama, agrícŏla,* where the final *a* is sounded like *ah* in Sarah.

5. The Diphthongs *æ* and *œ*, when they end an accented syllable, are pronounced like the long English *e*; as, *Cæsar, Œta;* but when they are followed by a consonant in the same syllable, like short *e;* as, *Cæsăris, Œdĭpus.*

6. The Diphthongs *ai, ei,* and *ui,* are read as separate syllables in prose; as, *a-io, cu-i, tu-i, de-inde, These-us;* excepting *ui,* with *g* or *q* preceding; as ,*quis, sánguĭnis.*

7. In MONOSYLLABLES when the vowel is the final letter, it has the long sound; as, *da, me, si, do, tu:* otherwise it has the short sound; as, *jam, et, in, non, nunc.*

8. Custom, in disregard of analogy, has given to all terminations in *es*, and to plural cases in *os*, the long sound; as, *es, amāres, pes, res, nos, hos, popŭlos.*

9. In DYSSYLLABLES the vowel of the first syllable, when it comes before another vowel, or a single consonant, has the long sound; as, *Cato, rei, ibi, honos, cui;* but when it comes before two consonants or a double consonant, it has the short sound; as, *tandem, bellum, ille, longus, buxus, Pæstum.*

10. In POLYSYLLABLES, when the Penult is accented, its vowel, before another vowel, or single consonant, has the long sound; as, *orātor, speciēi, amīcus, multōrum, secūrus:* but before two consonants or a double consonant, the short sound; as, *amantur, docentur, extinguo, respondens, Tibullus.*

11. If the Antepenult be accented, its vowel has the short sound; as, *trádĭta, exércĭtus, sidĕra, sermónĭbus, tantúmmŏdo.* To this rule the following are the exceptions:

12. Exc. 1. When *u* comes before a single consonant, and when an accented vowel comes before another vowel, they have the long sound; as, *dúbie; júdĭces, océănus, mulĭĕres, procubúerant.*

13. Exc. 2. When the penultimate vowel is *e* or *i* before another vowel, the antepenultimate vowel, EXCEPT I, has the long sound; as *grátia, aggrédior, inópia, múlier, perfidie, Scipio.*

14. Exc. 3. An accented vowel before a mute and a liquid, has usually the long sound; as, *sácra pátria.*

SOUNDS OF THE CONSONANTS.

15. C. and G. are hard before *a, o,* and *u*, and soft before *e, i,* and *y;* as,

carpo	like	card,	*cera*	like	cent,
colo	"	colt,	*cibus,*	"	circle,
culmen	"	cucumber	*cycnus*	"	cycle,
gaza	"	gave,	*gelĭdus*	"	gelid,
gorgon	"	gone,	*gigas,*	"	giant,
gustus	"	gust,	*gyrus,*	"	gypsey.

16. *Ch* has the sound of *k;* as, *charta,* like *ch* in *character.*

THE
RUDIMENTS
OF
LATIN GRAMMAR.

GRAMMAR is the art of speaking and writing correctly.

Latin Grammar is the art of speaking and writing the Latin language correctly.

The *Rudiments* of Grammar are plain and easy instructions, teaching beginners the first principles and rules of it.

Grammar treats of sentences, and the several parts of which they are compounded.

Sentences consist of words; words consist of one or more syllables; syllables of one or more letters. So that Letters, Syllables, Words, and Sentences, make up the whole subject of Grammar.

LETTERS.

A letter is the mark of a sound, or of an articulation of sound.

That part of Grammar, which treats of letters, is called *Orthography.*

The letters in Latin are twenty-five: A, a; B, b; C, c; D, d; E, e; F, f; G, g; H, h; I, i; J, j; K, k; L, l; M, m; N, n; O, o; P, p; Q, q; R, r; S, s; T, t; U, u; V, v; X, x; Y, y; Z, z.*

Letters are divided into *Vowels* and *Consonants.*

Six are vowels; *a, e, i, o, u, y.* All the rest are consonants.

A vowel makes a full sound by itself; as *a, e.*

A consonant cannot make a perfect sound without a vowel; as, *b, d.*

---

* In English there is one letter more, viz. W.

A vowel is properly called a ***simple sound;*** and the sounds formed by the concourse of vowels and consonants, ***articulate sounds.***

Consonants are divided into ***Mutes, Semi-vowels,*** and ***Double Consonants.***

A mute is so called, because it entirely stops the passage of the voice; as, *p* in *ap.*

The mutes are, *p, b; t, d; c, k, q,* and *g;* but *b, d,* and *g,* perhaps may more properly be termed *Semi-mutes;* because their sounds may be continued, whereas the sound of *p, t,* and *k,* cannot be prolonged.

A semi-vowel, or half vowel, does not entirely stop the passage of the voice; thus, *al.*

The semi-vowels are *l, m, n, r, s, f.* The first four of these are called *Liquids,* particularly *l* and *r;* because they flow softly and easily after a mute in the same syllable; as, *bla, stra.*

The mutes and semi-vowels may be thus distinguished. In naming the mutes, the vowel is put after them; as, *pe, be,* &c.; but in naming the semi-vowels, the vowel is put before them; as, *el, em,* &c.

The double consonants are, *x, z,* and, according to some grammarians, *j.* *X* is made up of *cs, ks,* or *gs.*

In Latin, *z,* and likewise *k* and *y,* are found only in words derived from the Greek.

DIPHTHONGS.

A diphthong consists of two vowels forming one syllable, and pronounced by one impulse of the voice.

If the sound of both vowels be distinctly heard, it is called a *Proper Diphthong;* if not, an *Improper Diphthong.*

The proper diphthongs in Latin are commonly reckoned three; *au, eu, ei;* as in *aurum, Eurus, omneis.* To these some, not improperly, add other three; namely, *ai,* as in *Maia; oi,* as in *Troia;* and *ui,* as in *Harpuia,* or in *cui,* and *huic,* pronounced as monosyllables.

The improper diphthongs in Latin are two; *ae,* or when the vowels are written together, *æ;* as, *aetas,* or *ætas, oe,* or *œ;* as, *poena,* or *pœna;* in both of which the sound of the *e* only is heard. The ancients commonly wrote the vowels separately; thus, *aetas, poena.*

SYLLABLES.

A syllable is the sound of one letter, or of several letters, pronounced by one impulse of the voice; as, *a, ad, hanc.*

In Latin there are as many syllables in a word, as there are vowels or dipthongs in it; unless when *u* with any other vowel comes after *g*, *q*, or *s*; as in *lingua*, *qui*, *suadeo*; where the two vowels are not reckoned a diphthong, because the sound of the *u* vanishes, or is little heard.

Words consisting of one syllable are called *Monosyllables*; of two, *Dissyllables*; and of more than two, *Polysyllables*. But all words of more than one syllable are commonly called *Polysyllables*.

In dividing words into syllables, we are chiefly to be directed by the ear. Compound words should be divided into the parts of which they are made up; as, *ăb-ūtor*, *ĭn-ops*, *proptĕr-ea*, *et-ĕnim*, *vel-ut*, &c.

Observe, a long syllable is marked with a horizontal line, [–]; as in *amāre*; or with a circumflex accent, [ˆ]; as in *amâris*. A short syllable is marked with a curved line, [˘]; as in *omnĭbŭs*.

What pertains to the quantity of syllables and to verse will be treated of hereafter.

WORDS.

Words are articulate sounds, significant of thought.

That part of Grammar which treats of words is called *Etymology* or *Analogy*.*

All words whatever are either *simple* or *compound*, *primitive* or *derivative*.

The division of words into simple and compound is called their *Figure*; into primitive and derivative, their *Species*, or sort.

A simple word is that which is not made up of more than one; as, *pius*, pious; *ĕgo*, I; *dŏceo*, I teach.

A compound word is that which is made up of two or more words; or of one word and some syllable added; as, *impius*, impious; *dēdŏceo*, I unteach; *ĕgŏmet*, I myself.

---

* All words may be divided into three kinds; namely, 1. such as mark the names of things; 2. such as denote what is affirmed concerning things; and 3. such as are significant only in conjunction with other words; or what are called *Substantives*, *Attributives*, and *Connectives*. Thus in the following sentence, "*The diligent boy reads the lesson carefully in the school, and at home*," the words *boy*, *lesson*, *school*, *home*, are the names we give to the things spoken of; *diligent*, *reads*, *carefully*, express what is affirmed concerning the boy; *the*, *in*, *and*, *at*, are only significant when joined with the other words of the sentence.

A primitive word is that which comes from no other; as *pius*, pious; *disco*, I learn; *dŏceo*, I teach.

A derivative word is that which comes from another word; as, *piĕtas*, piety; *doctrīna*, learning.

The different classes into which we divide words are called *Parts of Speech.*

PARTS OF SPEECH.

The parts of speech in Latin are eight, viz:

1. *Noun*, *Pronoun*, *Verb*, *Participle;* declined.

2. *Adverb*, *Preposition*, *Interjection*, and *Conjunction;* undeclined.*

NOUN.

A noun is either substantive or adjective.†

SUBSTANTIVE.

A Substantive, or noun, is the name of any person, place, or thing; as, *boy*, *school*, *book.*

Substantives are of two sorts; *proper* and *common* names.

Proper names are the names appropriated to individuals; as the names of persons and places; such are *Cæsar*, *Rome.*

Common names stand for whole kinds, containing several sorts; or for sorts, containing many individuals under them; as, *animal*, *man*, *beast*, *fish*, *fowl*, &c.

Every particular being should have its own proper name; but this is

---

* Those words or parts of speech are said to be *declined*, which receive different changes on their last syllables, or their *terminations.*

The changes made upon words are by grammarians called *Accidents.*

Of old, all words, which admit of different terminations, were said to be declined. But *Declension* is now applied only to nouns. The changes made upon the verb are called *Conjugation.*

† The adjective seems to be improperly called *noun:* it is only a word *added* to a substantive or noun, expressive of its quality; and therefore should be considered as a different part of speech. But as the substantive and adjective together express but one object, and in Latin are declined after the same manner, they have both been comprehended under the same general name.

impossible, on account of their innumerable multitude; men have therefore been obliged to give the same common name to such things as agree together in certain respects. These form what is called a *genus*, or kind; a *species*, or sort.

A proper name may be used for a common, and then in English it has the article joined to it; as, when we say of some great conqueror, "He is *an* Alexander;" or, "*the* Alexander of his age."

To proper and common names may be added a third class of nouns, which mark the names of qualities, and are called *abstract nouns;* as, *hardness*, *goodness*, *whiteness*, *virtue*, *justice*, *piety*, &c.

When we speak of things, we consider them as one or more. This is what we call *Number*. When one thing is spoken of, a noun is said to be of the *singular number;* when two or more, of the *plural*.

LATIN NOUNS.

A Latin noun is declined by *Genders*, *Numbers*, and *Cases*.

GENDERS.

There are three genders; *Masculine*, *Feminine*, and *Neuter*.

Gender is the distinction of sex. In the nature of things, therefore, there are but two genders, the Masculine and Feminine. But in Latin, Gender is not only a *natural* distinction, but also a *grammatical distribution* of nouns into *sorts* or *kinds*, with respect to the terminations of adjectives with which they are construed. *Liber*, 'a book,' is masculine, because it is joined with that termination of adjectives which is applied only to males. *Ratio*, 'reason,' is feminine, because it is joined with that termination of adjectives which is applied only to females. *Opus*, 'a work,' is neuter, because it is joined with that termination of adjectives which cannot be applied either to males or females. *Neuter* is a pure Latin word, signifying 'neither:' when a noun, therefore, is said to be of the *neuter* gender, it means simply that it is 'neither' masculine nor feminine.

Grammarians distinguish the genders by the pronoun *hic*, to mark the masculine; *hæc*, the feminine; and *hoc*, the neuter.

Nouns which are used to signify either the male or the female are said to be of the *common* gender; that is, are either masculine or feminine, according to the sense. Such nouns as are not found uniformly of the same grammatical gender, but sometimes of one gender and sometimes of another, are said to be of the *doubtful* gender.

The *common* gender differs from the *doubtful* in this, that, as the signification of the noun includes the two sexes, it is always put in the

masculine when applied to a male, and in the feminine when applied to a female; as, *hic conjux*, a husband; *hæc conjux*, a wife; and is confined to the masculine and feminine gender. Whereas a noun of the *doubtful* gender, being so only by usage, and not in sense, may be either masculine or feminine, as, *hic finis*, or *hæc finis:* feminine or neuter, as, *hæc Præneste, or hoc Præneste:* or may be either masculine, feminine, or neuter, as, *penus, pecus*, and others.

General Rules concerning Gender.

1. Names of males are masculine; as *Hŏmĕrus*, Homer; *păter*, a father; *poēta*, a poet.
2. Names of females are feminine; as, *Hĕlĕna*, Helen; *mŭlier*, a woman; *uxor*, a wife; *māter*, a mother; *sŏror*, a sister; *Tellus*, the goddess of the earth.
3. Nouns which signify either the male or female, are of the common gender; that is, *with reference to the sex*, either masculine or feminine; as, *hic bos*, an ox; *hæc bos*, a cow; *hic părens*, a father, *hæc părens*, a mother.
4. Nouns which are sometimes found in one gender and sometimes in another, without reference to the sense, are of the doubtful gender; as, *dies*, a day, either masculine or feminine; *vulgus*, the rabble, either masculine or neuter.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1. *The names of brute animals commonly follow the gender of their termination.*

Such are the names of wild beasts, birds, fishes, and insects, in which the distinction of sex is either not easily discerned, or seldom attended to. Thus *passer*, a sparrow, either male or female, is masculine, because nouns in *er* are masculine; so *ăquĭla*, an eagle, either male or female, is feminine, because nouns in *a* of the first declension are feminine. These are called *epicene*, or promiscuous nouns. When any particular sex is marked, we usually add the word *mas* or *fæmĭna;* as, *mas passer*, a male sparrow; *fœmina passer*, a female sparrow.

OBS. 2. *A proper name, for the most part, follows the gender of the general name under which it is comprehended.*

Thus, the names of months, winds, rivers, and mountains, are masculine; because *mensis, ventus, mons*, and *fluvius*, are masculine; as, *hic Aprīlis*, April; *hic Aquĭlo*, the north wind; *hic Afrĭcus*, the south west wind; *hic Tibĕris*, the river Tiber; *hic Othrys*, a hill in Thessaly. But many of these follow the gender of their termination; as, *hæc Matrŏna*, the river Marne in France; *hæc Ætna*, a mountain in Sicily; *hoc Sŏracte*, a hill in Italy.

In like manner, the names of countries, towns, trees, and ships are feminine, because *terra* or *rĕgio, urbs, arbor*, and *nāvis*, are feminine; as, *hæc Egyptus*, Egypt; *Sămos*, an island of that name; *Cŏrinthus*, the

city of Corinth; *pōmus*, an apple-tree; *Centaurus*, the name of a ship. Thus also the names of poems, *hæc Ilias, -ădos*, and *Odyssēa*, the two poems of Homer; *hæc Æneīs, -ĭdos*, a poem of Virgil; *hæc Eunūchus*, one of Terence's comedies.

The gender, however, of many of these depends on the termination; thus, *hic Pontus*, a country of that name; *hic Sulmo, -ōnis; Pessinus, -untis; Hydrus, -untis*, names of towns; *hæc Persis, -ĭdis*, the kingdom of Persia; *Carthāgo, -ĭnis*, the city Carthage; *hoc Albion*, Britain; *hoc Cære, Reāte, Præneste, Tībur, Ilium*, names of towns. But some of these are also found in the feminine; as, *Gelidâ Præneste*. Juvenal. iii. 190; *Alta Ilion*. Ovid. Met. xiv. 466.

The following names of trees are masculine, *ŏleaster, ŏlestri*, a wild olive-tree; *rhamnus*, the white bramble.

The following are masculine or feminine; *cy̆tĭsus*, a kind of shrub; *rūbus*, the bramble-bush; *larix*, the larch-tree; *lōtus*, the lote-tree; *cupressus*, the cypress-tree. The first two, however, are oftener masculine; the rest oftener feminine.

Those in *um* are neuter; as, *buxum*, the bush, or box-tree; *lĭgustrum*, a privet; so likewise are *sūber, -ĕris*, the cork tree; *sĭler, -ĕris*, the osier; *rōbur, -ŏris*, oak of the hardest kind; *ăcer, -ĕris*, the maple-tree.

The place where trees or shrubs grow is commonly neuter; as, *arbustum, quercētum, escŭlētum, sălictum, frŭtĭcētum*, &c. a place where trees, oaks, beeches, willows, shrubs, &c., grow; also the names of fruits and timber; as, *pōmum* or *mālum*, an apple; *pĭrum*, a pear; *ĕbĕnum*, ebony, &c. But from this rule there are various exceptions.

1. The following nouns are Masculine and Feminine, both in sense and grammatical construction:

Adolescens, a young man or woman.
Affīnis, a relation by marriage.
Antistes, a chief priest.
Auctor, an author.
Augur, an augur.
Bos, an ox, or cow.
Canis, a dog, or bitch.
Civis, a citizen.
Comes, a companion.
Conjux, a husband, or wife.
Consors, a consort.
Conviva, a guest.
Custos, a keeper.
Dux, a leader.
Exul, an exile.
Hospes, a host, a guest.
Hostis, an enemy.
Infans, an infant.
Interpres, an interpreter.
Judex, a judge.
Juvĕnis, a youth.
Miles, a soldier.
Munĭceps, a burgess.
Nemo, nobody.
Par, a mate, husband, or wife.
Parens, a parent.
Patruēlis, a cousin-german by the father's side.
Præs, a surety.
Præsul, a priest of Mars.
Princeps, a prince.
Sacerdos, a priest, or priestess.
Satelles, a life-guard.
Sus, a swine.
Testis, a witness.
Vates, a prophet, or prophetess.
Verna, a slave.
Vindex, an avenger.

2. The following are Masculine or Feminine in sense, but Masculine only in grammatical construction:

Artĭfex, an artist.
Auspex, a soothsayer.
Cocles, a person having but one eye.
Eques, a horseman
Exlex, an outlaw.
Fur, a thief.
Hæres, an heir, an heiress.
Homo, a man or woman.
Index, an informer.
Latro, a robber.
Libĕri, children.
Obses, a hostage.
Opifex, a workman.
Pedes, a footman.
Pugil, a boxer.
Senex, an old person.

3. The following, though Masculine or Feminine in sense, are Feminine only in grammatical construction:

Copiae, forces, troops.
Custodiae, guards.
Excubiae, sentinels.
Opĕrae, labourers.
Proles, an offspring.
Sobŏles, an offspring.
Vigiliae, watchmen.

4. Some nouns signifying Persons are Neuter with respect to their termination.

Acroāma, a jester.
Auxilia, auxiliary troops.
Mancipium, a slave.
Servitium, a slave.

NUMBER.

Number is the distinction of objects, whether as one, or more than one.

There are two numbers, the Singular which denotes one, as *homo*, 'a man;' or the aggregate of many taken collectively, as, *multitūdo*, 'a multitude;' and the Plural, which denotes more than one, as *homĭnes*, 'men.'

Some Latin nouns of the Plural number signify but one, as, *Athenae*, 'Athens;' others signify one or more, as, *nuptiæ*, 'a marriage,' or 'marriages.'

CASES.

Various methods are used in different languages to express the different connexions or relations of one thing to another. In English, and in most modern languages, this is done by prepositions, or particles placed before the substantive; in Latin by Declension or by different Cases, that is, by changing the termination of the noun; as, *rex*, 'a king;' *regis*, 'of a king.'

Cases are certain changes made upon the termination of nouns to express the relation of one thing to another.

They are so called from *cado*, 'to fall,' because they fall, as it were, from the nominative, which is therefore named *casus rectus*, 'the straight case,' and the other cases, *casus oblīqui*, 'the oblique cases.'

There are six cases, the Nominative, the Genitive, the Dative, the Accusative, the Vocative, and the Ablative.

The Nominative simply expresses the name of a person or thing, and marks the subject of discourse, as *Alexander* interfecit 'Alexander slew.'

The Genitive generally expresses the relation of possession or property, and in English it has the sign *of* before it, or 's (s with an apostrophe) added to it, as Amor *Dei*, 'the love of God,' or 'God's love,' Domus *Cæsăris*, 'the house of Cæsar,' or 'Cæsar's house.'

The Dative is used to mark the object to which any thing is refered, whether it be acquisition or loss, and is generally translated with the signs *to* and *for*, though sometimes its true force can only be rendered by, *from* and *by:* as, Hoc *mihi* datur, 'this is given *to* me;' Hoc *mihi* seritur 'this is sown *for* me;' Hoc *mihi* adimĭtur, 'this is taken away *from* me.' Nec cernĭtur *ulli*, 'nor is he perceived *by* any one.'

The Accusative indicates the object to which the action of the verb passes; as, Alexander interfecit *Clitum*, 'Alexander slew *Clitus*.'

The Vocative points out the object called upon or addressed, with or without the sign O, as O felix frater, 'o happy brother,' or 'happy brother.'

The Ablative, (compounded of the preposition *ab*, 'from,' and *latum*, the supine of *fero*, 'to take,') often implies 'a taking away.' It also denotes concomitancy or accompaniment; as, Ingressus est cum *gladio*, 'he entered with a sword,' i. e. having at that time a sword along with him. When the preposition *cum*, 'with,' is not expressed, the Ablative may be considered as the *cause*, *manner*, or *instrument*, as, Interfecit eum *gladio*, 'he killed him with a sword;' that is, a sword was the *instrument* with which his death was effected. In English, the Ablative has before it the signs *with*, *from*, *for*, *by*, *in*, *through*.

DECLENSION.

Declension is the regular distribution of nouns according to their terminations, so that they may be distinguished from one another.

There are five different ways of varying or declining nouns, called the *first*, *second*, *third*, *fourth*, and *fifth* declensions.

The different declensions are distinguished from

one another by the termination of the Genitive singular.

The Genitive of the	*First* ends	in	*æ.*
	Second	in	*i.*
	Third	in	*is.*
	Fourth	in	*ûs.*
	Fifth	in	*ei.*

GENERAL RULES OF DECLENSION.

Nouns of the neuter gender have the Accusative and Vocative like the Nominative in both numbers; and in the Plural, these three cases end *always* in *a.*

The Nominative and Vocative* singular *generally*, and the Nominative and Vocative plural *always* in all Declensions end alike.

The Dative and Ablative plural end *always* alike in all declensions.

The Accusative plural of the first, third, fourth and fifth Declensions is formed from the Accusative singular by changing *m* into *s.*

The Ablative singular of the first, third, fourth, and fifth Declensions is formed from the Accusative singular, by dropping *m.*

The Genitive plural is formed from the Ablative singular by adding *rum* in the first, second, and fifth Declensions, and *um* in the fourth.

Proper names, for the most part, want the Plural.

FIRST DECLENSION.

Nouns of the first declension end in *a, e, as, es.* Latin nouns end only in *a,* and are of the feminine gender: (*the rest are Greek.*)

TERMINATIONS.

Singular.		*Plural.*	
Nom. Voc.	*a.*	Nom. Voc.	*æ.*
Gen. Dat.	*æ.*	Gen.	*ārum.*
Acc.	*am.*	Acc.	*as.*
Abl.	*â.*	Dat. Abl.	*is.*

* Greek nouns in *s* generally lose *s* in the Vocative; as, *Thomas, Thoma; Anchīses, Anchīse; Păris, Pari; Panthus, Panthu; Pallas, -antis, Palla,* names of men. But nouns in *es* of the third declension, oftener retain the *s;* as *ô Achilles,* rarely *-e; O Socrătes,* seldom *-e;* and sometimes nouns in *is* and *as;* as, *O Thais, Mysis, Pallas, -ădis,* the goddess Minerva, &c.

Penna, *a pen.* fem.

Singular.		Plural.	
N. penna,	*a pen;*	N. pennæ,	*pens;*
G. pennæ,	*of a pen;*	G. pennārum,	*of pens;*
D. pennæ,	*to a pen;*	D. pennis,	*to pens;*
A. pennam,	*a pen;*	A. pennas,	*pens;*
V. penna,	*O pen;*	V. pennæ,	*O pens;*
A. pennâ,	*with a pen.*	A. pennis,	*with pens.*

EXCEPTIONS.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine. *Hadria*, the Hadriatic sea; *cōmēta*, a comet; *planēta*, a planet; and sometimes, *talpa*, a mole; and *dāma*, a fallow-deer. *Pascha*, the passover, is neuter. *Pandectae*, 'pandects,' is rather masc. than fem.

Exc. 2. The ancient Latins sometimes formed the genitive singular in *āi;* thus, *aula*, a hall, gen. *aulāi:* and sometimes likewise in *as*, which form the compounds of *fămĭlia* usually retain; as, *māter-fămĭlias*, the mistress of a family; genit. *matris-familias;* nom. plur. *matres-familias*, or *matres-familiārum.*

Exc. 3. The following nouns, have more frequently *ābus* in the dative and ablative plural, to distinguish them in these cases from masculines in *us*, of the second declension:

Anĭma, *the soul, the life.*	Fīlia, & Nāta, *a daughter.*
Dea, *a goddess.*	Liberta, *a freed woman.*
Equa, *a mare.*	Mūla, *a she-mule.*
Famŭla, *a female servant.*	

Thus *deābus, filiābus*, rather than *filiis*, &c.

But when they are construed with *Duābus* or *Ambābus*, or the distinction is clear from the context, the termination is in *is* only: thus Cicero has *duābus anĭmis:* but Livy xxiv. 26 has *duābus filiābus.*

GREEK NOUNS.

Nouns in AS, ES, and E, of the first declension, are Greek. Nouns in AS and ES, are masculine; nouns in E are feminine.

Nouns in *as* are declined like *penna;* only they have *am*, or *an* in the accusative; as, *Ænēas*, Æneas, the name of a man; gen. *Ænēæ*, dat. *-æ*, acc. *-am*, or *-an*, voc. *-a*, abl. *â.* So *Bŏreas*, *-eæ*, the north wind; *tiāras*, *-æ*, a turban. In prose they have commonly *am*, but in poetry oftener *an*, in the accusative. Greek nouns in *a* have sometimes also *an* in the acc. in poetry; as *Ossa*, acc. *-am* or *-an*, the name of a mountain.

DECLENSION OF GREEK NOUNS.

Nom.	Anchīses,	Penelŏpe,	Thyestes,	Epitŏme,
Gen.	Anchīsae,	Penelŏpes,	Thyestae,	Epitŏmes,
Dat.	Anchīsae,	Penelŏpæ,	Thyestae,	Epitŏmae,
Acc.	Anchīsen,	Penelŏpen,	Thyesten,	Epitŏmen,
Voc.	Anchīse, *or* a,	Penelŏpe,	Thyesta,	Epitŏme,
Abl.	Anchīse, *or* a.	Penelŏpe.	Thyeste.	Epitŏme.

These nouns, being proper names, want the plural, unless when several of the same name are spoken of, and then they are declined like the plural of *penna.**

The Latins frequently turn Greek nouns in *es* and *e* into *a*; as, *Atrīda*, for *Atrīdes*; *Persa*, for *Perses*, a Persian; *geometra*, for *-tres*, a geometrician; *Circa*, for *Circe*; *epitŏma*, for *-me*, an abridgement; *grammătĭca*, for *-ce*, grammar; *rhētŏrĭca*, for *-ce*, oratory. So *Clinia*, for *Clinias*, &c.

SECOND DECLENSION.

Nouns of the second declension end in *er*, *ir*, *ur*, *us*, *um*; *os*, *on*. (*os* and *on* are Greek terminations.)

Nouns in *um* and *on* are neuter; the rest are masculine.

TERMINATIONS.

Singular.

Nom. *er, ir, ur, us, um; os, on.*
Gen. *i.*
Dat. } *o.*
Abl. }
Acc. *um*, or like the nom.
Voc. *e*, or like the nom.

Plural.

Nom. } *i* or *a*.
Voc. }
Gen. *ōrum.*
Dat. } *is.*
Abl. }
Acc, *os*, or *a*.

Gĕner, *a son-in-law*, masc.

Singular.

Nom. gĕner,		*a son-in-law*,
Gen. genĕri,	*of*	*a son-in-law*,
Dat. genĕro,	*to*, *or for*	*a son-in-law*,
Acc. genĕrum,		*a son-in-law*,
Voc. genĕr,	*O*	*son-in-law*,
Abl. genĕro,	*with*, *from*, or *by*	*a son-in-law*.

* The accusative of nouns in *es* and *e* is found sometimes in *em*. We sometimes find the genit. plural contracted; as, *Cælĭcŏlûm*, for *Cælicolārum*; *Æneădûm*, for *-ārum*.

Plural.

Nom.	genĕri,		*sons-in-law,*
Gen.	generōrum,	*of*	*sons-in-law,*
Dat.	genĕris,	*to,* or *for*	*sons-in-law,*
Acc.	genĕros,		*sons-in-law,*
Voc.	genĕri,	*O*	*sons-in-law,*
Abl.	genĕris,	*with, from,* or *by*	*sons-in-law.*

After the same manner decline, *sŏcer, -ĕri,* a father-in-law; *puer, -ĕri,* a boy: So *furcĭfer,* a villain; *Lucĭfer,* the morning star; *ădulter,* an adulterer; *armĭger,* an armour-bearer; *presbўter,* an elder; *Mulcĭber,* a name of the god Vulcan; *vesper,* the evening; and *Iber, -ēri,* a Spaniard, the only noun in *er* which has the gen. long, and its compound *Celtĭber, -ēri:* Also, *vir, vĭri,* a man, the only noun in *ir;* and its compounds, *lĕvir,* a brother-in-law; *semĭvir, duumvir, triumvir,* &c. And likewise *sătur, -ŭri,* full, (of old, *satŭrus,*) an adjective.

But most nouns in *er* lose the *e* in the genitive; as,

Ager, *a field,* masc.

Singular.		*Plural.*	
N. ăger,	*a field,*	N. agri,	*fields,*
G. agri,	*of a field,*	G. agrōrum,	*of fields,*
D. agro,	*to a field,*	D. agris,	*to fields,*
A. agrum,	*a field,*	A. agros,	*fields,*
V. ager,	*O field,*	V. agri,	*O fields,*
A. agro,	*with a field.*	A. agris.	*with fields.*

In like manner decline,

Aper, *a wild boar.*
Arbĭter, & -tra, *an arbitrator or judge.*
Auster, *the south wind.*
Cancer, *a crab fish.*
Căper, *a he-goat.*
Cŏlŭber, & -bra, *a serpent.*
Culter, *the coulter of a plough, a knife.*
Făber, *a workman.*
Măgister, *a master.*
Mĭnister, *a servant.*
Onăger, *a wild ass.*
Scalper, *a lancet.*

Also, *lĭber,* the bark of a tree, or a book, which has *libri;* but *līber,* free, an adjective, and *Liber,* a name of Bacchus, the god of wine, have *libĕri.* So likewise proper names, *Alexander, Evander, Periander, Mĕnander, Teucer, Mĕleăger,* &c. gen. *Alexandri, Evandri,* &c.

Dŏmĭnus, *a lord,* masc.

Singular.		*Plural.*	
N. dŏmĭnus,	*a lord,*	N. dŏmĭni,	*lords,*
G. domĭni,	*of a lord,*	G. domĭnōrum,	*of lords,*
D. domĭno,	*to a lord,*	D. domĭnis,	*to lords,*
A. domĭnum,	*a lord,*	A. domĭnos,	*lords,*
V. domĭne,	*O lord,*	V. domĭni,	*O lords,*
A. domĭno,	*with a lord.*	A. domĭnis,	*with lords.*

Regnum, *a kingdom*, neut.

Singular.		*Plural.*	
N. regnum,	*a kingdom,*	N. regna,	*kingdoms,*
G. regni,	*of a kingdom,*	G. regnōrum,	*of kingdoms,*
D. regnō,	*to a kingdom,*	D. regnis,	*to kingdoms,*
A. regnum,	*a kingdom,*	A. regna,	*kingdoms,*
V. regnum,	*O kingdom,*	V. regna,	*O kingdoms,*
A. regno,	*with a kingdom.*	A. regnis,	*with kingdoms.*

EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.

Exc. 1. The following nouns in *us* are feminine; *hŭmus*, the ground; *alvus*, the belly; *vannus*, a sieve; *miltus*, vermillion; also *Domus*, 'a house,' partly of the fourth Declension.

And the following, derived from Greek nouns in *os*;

Abyssus, *a bottomless pit,*
Antĭdŏtus, *a preservative against poison.*
Arctos, *the Bear, a constellation near the north pole.*
Carbăsus, *a sail.*
Diălectus, *a dialect* or *manner of speech.*
Diămetros, *the diameter of a circle.*
Diphthongus, *a diphthong.*
Erēmus, *a desert.*
Lecÿthus, *a vial.*
Mĕthŏdus, *a method.*
Pĕriŏdus, *a period.*
Pĕrĭmetros, *the circumference.*
Phărus, *a watch-tower.*
Plinthus, *the foot of a pillar.*
Sÿnŏdus, *an assembly.*

To these add some names of jewels and plants, because *gemma* and *planta* are feminine, (*See observations on Gender, page* 18;) as,

Amĕthystus, *an amethyst.*
Chrysolĭthus, *a chrysolite.*
Chrysŏphrăsus, *a kind of topaz.*
Chrystallus, *crystal.*
Leucŏchrȳsus, *a jacinth.*
Sapphīrus, *a saphire.*
Tŏpazius, *a topaz.*
Biblus, Păpȳrus, *an Egyptian reed, of which paper was made.*
Byssus, *fine flax* or *linen.*
Costus, *costmary.*
Crŏcus, *saffron.*
Hyssōpus, *hyssop.*
Nardus, *spikenard.*

Other names of jewels are generally masculine; as, *bĕryllus*, the beryl; *carbunculus*, a carbuncle; *pyrōpus*, a ruby; *smăragdus*, an emerald: And also names of plants; as, *aspărăgus*, asparagus or sparrowgrass; *ellebŏrus*, ellebore; *raphănus*, radish or colewort; *intўbus*, endive or succory, &c.

Exc. 2. The nouns which follow are either masculine or feminine:

Atŏmus, *an atom.*
Balănus, *the fruit of the palm tree, ointment.*
Barbĭtus, *a harp.*
Cămēlus, *a camel.*
Cŏlus, *a distaff.*
Grossus, *a green fig.*
Pēnus, *a store-house.*
Phăsēlus, *a little ship.*

Exc. 3. *Vīrus*, poison; *pĕlăgus*, the sea; are neuter.

Exc. 4. *Vulgus*, the common people, is either masculine or neuter, but oftener neuter.

Exc. 5. *Sexus, i*, a sex, of the Second Declension, is neut.; but *Sexus, ûs*, of the Fourth Declension, is masc.

EXCEPTIONS IN DECLENSION.

Proper names in *ius* lose *us* in the vocative; as, *Hŏrātius, Hŏrāti; Virgĭlius, Virgĭli; Georgius,*

Georgi, names of men: *Lārius, Lāri; Mincius, Minci;* names of lakes. *Filius*, a son, also has *filī; gĕnius*, one's guardian angel, *geni;* and *deus*, a god, has *deus* in the voc. and in the plural more frequently *dii* and *diis*, than *dĕi* and *dĕis*. *Meus*, my, an adjective pronoun, has *mi*, and sometimes *meus*, in the vocative.

Other nouns in *ius* have *e*; as, *tăbellarius, tabellarie*, a letter-carrier; *pius, pie*, &c. So these epithets, *Dēlius, Dēlie; Tirynthius, Tirynthie;* and these possessives, *Laërtius, Laërtie; Sāturnius, Saturnie;* &c. which are not considered as proper names.

The poets sometimes make the vocative of nouns in *us* like the nominative; as, *fluvius Latīnus*, for *fluvie, Latine*. Virg. This also occurs in prose, but more rarely; thus, *Audi tu, pŏpŭlus*, for *pŏpŭle*. Liv. i. 24.

The poets also change nouns in *er* into *us;* as *Evander*, or *Evandrus*, vocative, *Evander* or *Evandrĕ*. So *Meander, Leander, Tymber, Teucer*, &c.; and so anciently *puer* in the vocative had *puĕre*, from *puĕrus*.

Note. When the genitive singular ends in *ii*, the latter *i* is sometimes taken away by the poets for the sake of quantity; as, *tugŭrī*, for *tugurii; ingĕnī*, for *ingenii*, &c.

The Genitive plural *ōrum* in many words, especially those which denote money, weight and measure, is often contracted into *ûm*, as *Sestertiûm, nummûm, modiûm, talentûm*, for *Sestertiōrum, nummorum*, &c. So also, *Deûm, libĕrûm, fabrûm, duûmvĭrûm, oppĭdûm, exitiûm, prodigiûm, factûm;* and in poetry, *Teucrûm, Graiûm, Argīvum, Danaûm, Pelasgum*, &c., for *Teucrōrum*, &c.

Deus, 'God,' masc. is thus declined.

Singular.		*Plural.*	
N. Deus,	*God,*	N. Dei, Dii, *or* Dî,	*the Gods,*
G. Dei,	*of God,*	G. Deōrum, *or* Deûm,	*of the Gods,*
D. Deo,	*to, or for God,*	D. Deis, Diis, *or* Dîs,	*to the Gods,*
A. Deum,	*God,*	A. Deos,	*the Gods,*
V. Deus,	*O God,*	V. Dei, Dii, or Dî,	*O the Gods,*
A. Deo,	*from, or by God.*	A. Deis, Diis, *or* Dîs,	*from or by the Gods.*

GREEK NOUNS.

Os and ON are Greek terminations; as, *Alphēos*, a river in Greece; *Ilion*, the city Troy; and are often changed into *us* and *um*, by the Latins; *Alphēus, Ilium*, which are declined like *domĭnus* and *regnum*.

Nouns in *eos* or *ĕus* are sometimes contracted in the Genitive; as *Orphĕus*, gen. *Orphĕi*, *Orphei*, or *Orphi*. So *Thesĕus*, *Promethĕus*, &c. But nouns in *eus*, when *eu* is a diphthong, are of the third declension.

Some nouns in *os* have the genitive singular in *o*; as, *Androgeos*, genitive *Androgeo*, or *-ĕi*, the name of a man; *Athos*, *Atho*, or *-i*, a hill in Macedonia: both of which are also found in the third declension; thus, nominative *Androgeo*, genitive *Androgeōnis*. So *Atho*, or *Athon*, *-ōnis*, &c. Anciently nouns in *os*, in imitation of the Greeks, had the genitive in *u*; as *Mĕnandru*, *Apollodōru*, for *Mĕnandri*, *Apollodōri*. Ter.

Nouns in *os* have the accusative in *um* or *on*; as, *Delus*, or *Delos*, accusative *Delum* or *Delon*, the name of an island.

Some neuters have the genitive plural in *ôn*; as, *Georgĭca*, genitive plural *Georgĭcôn*, books which treat of husbandry, as, Virgil's *Georgicks*.

THIRD DECLENSION.

There are more nouns of the third declension than of all the other declensions together. The number of its final syllables is not ascertained. Its final letters are thirteen, *a*, *e*, *i* *o*, *y*, *c*, *d*, *l*, *n*, *r*, *s*, *t*, *x*. Of these, eight are peculiar to this declension, namely, *i*, *o*, *y*, *c*, *d*, *l*, *t*, *x*; *a* and *e* are common to it with the first declension; *n* and *r*, with the second; and *s*, with all the other declensions. *A*, *i*, and *y*, are peculiar to Greek nouns.

TERMINATIONS.

Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom. *a*, *e*, *i*, &c.	Nom. }
Gen. *is*.	Acc. } *es*, *a*, or *ia*.
Dat. *i*.	Voc. }
Acc. *em*, or like the nom.	Gen. *um*, or *ium*.
Voc. like the nom.	Dat. } *ĭbus*,
Abl. *e*, or *i*.	Abl. }

Sermo, *a speech*, masc.

Singular.		*Plural.*	
N. sermo,	*a speech*,	N. sermōnes,	*speeches*,
G. sermōnis,	*of a speech*,	G. sermōnum,	*of speeches*,
D. sermōni,	*to a speech*,	D. sermonĭbus,	*to speeches*,
A. sermōnem,	*a speech*,	A. sermōnes,	*speeches*,
V. sermo,	*O speech*,	V. sermōnes,	*O speeches*,
A. sermōne,	*with a speech*.	A. sermonĭbus,	*with speeches*.

Rūpes, *a rock*, fem.

Singular.		Plural.	
N. rūpes,	*a rock,*	N. rūpes,	*rock*
G. rupis,	*of a rock,*	G. rupium,	*of rocks,*
D. rupi,	*to a rock,*	D. rupĭbus,	*to rocks.*
A. rupem,	*a rock,*	A. rupes,	*rocks,*
V. rupes,	*O rock,*	V. rupes,	*O rocks,*
A. rupe,	*with a rock.*	A. rupĭbus,	*with rocks.*

Lăpĭs, *a stone*, masc.

Singular.		Plural.	
N. lăpis,	*a stone,*	N. lăpĭdes,	*stones,*
G. lapĭdis,	*of a stone.*	G. lapĭdum,	*of stones,*
D. lapĭdi,	*to a stone,*	D. lapĭdĭbus,	*to stones,*
A. lapĭdem,	*a stone,*	A. lapĭdes,	*stones,*
V. lapis,	*O stone,*	V. lapĭdes,	*O stones,*
A. lapĭde,	*with a stone.*	A. lapĭdĭbus,	*with stones.*

Cāput, *a head*, neut.

Singular.		Plural.	
N. căput,	*a head,*	N. căpĭta,	*heads,*
G. capĭtis,	*of a head,*	G. capĭtum,	*of heads,*
D. capĭti,	*to a head,*	D. capĭtĭbus,	*to heads,*
A. caput,	*a head,*	A. capĭta,	*heads,*
V. caput,	*O head,*	V. capĭta,	*O heads,*
A. capĭte,	*with a head.*	A. capĭtĭbus,	*with heads.*

Sedīle, *a seat*, neut.

Singular.		Plural.	
N. sĕdīle,	*a seat,*	N. sedīlia,	*seats,*
G. sedīlis,	*of a seat,*	G. sedīlium,	*of seats,*
D. sedīli,	*to a seat,*	D. sedilĭbus,	*to seats,*
A. sedīle,	*a seat,*	A. sedīlia,	*seats,*
V. sedīle,	*O seat,*	V. sedīlia,	*O seats,*
A. sedīli,	*with a seat.*	A. sedilĭbus,	*with seats.*

Iter, *a journey*, neut.

Singular.		Plural.	
N. ĭter,	*a journey,*	N. ĭtinĕra,	*journeys,*
G. itinĕris,	*of a journey,*	G. itinĕrum,	*of journeys,*
D. itinĕri,	*to a journey,*	D. itinĕrĭbus,	*to journeys,*
A. iter,	*a journey,*	A. itinĕra,	*journeys,*
V. iter,	*O journey,*	V. itinĕra,	*O journeys,*
A. itinĕre,	*with a journey.*	A. itinĕrĭbus,	*with journeys.*

Opus, *a work* neut.

	Singular.			*Plural.*	
N.	ŏpŭs,	*a work,*	N.	ŏpĕra,	*works,*
G.	opĕris,	*of a work,*	G.	opĕrum,	*of works,*
D.	opĕri,	*to a work,*	D.	opĕrĭbus,	*to works,*
A.	opus,	*a work,*	A.	opĕra,	*works,*
V.	opus,	*O work,*	V.	opĕra,	*O works,*
A.	opĕre,	*with a work.*	A.	opĕrĭbus,	*with works.*

Părens, *a parent,* common gender.

	Singular.			*Plural.*	
N.	părens,	*a parent,*	N.	părentes,	*parents,*
G.	parentis,	*of a parent,*	G.	parentûm,*	*of parents,*
D.	parenti,	*to a parent,*	D.	parentĭbus,	*to parents,*
A.	parentem,	*a parent,*	A.	parentes,	*parents,*
V.	parens,	*O parent,*	V.	parentes,	*O parents,*
A.	parente,	*with a parent.*	A.	parentĭbus,	*with parents.*

OF THE GENDER AND GENITIVE OF NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

A, E, I, and Y.

1. Nouns in *a, e, i,* and *y,* are neuter.

Nouns in *a* form the genitive in *ătis;* as, *diadēma, diademătis,* a crown.

Dogma, *an opinion,* neut.

Singular.	*Plural.*
N. dogma,	N. dogmăta,
G. dogmătis,	G. dogmătum,
D. dogmăti,	D. dogmătĭbus,
A. dogma,	A. dogmăta,
V. dogma,	V. dogmăta,
A. dogmăte.	A. dogmătĭbus.

Ænigma, *a riddle,*
Apŏphthegma, *a short, pithy saying.*
Arōma, *sweet spices.*
Axiōma, *a plain truth.*
Diplōma, *a charter.*
Epigramma, *an inscription.*
Nŭmisma, *a coin.*
Phasma, *an apparition.*
Poēma, *a poem,*
Schēma, *a scheme,* or *figure.*
Sŏphisma, *a deceitful argument.*
Stemma, *a pedigree.*
Stigma, *a mark* or *brand, a disgrace.*
Strătāgēma, *an artful contrivance.*
Thĕma, *a theme, a subject to write* or *speak on.*
Tŏreuma, *a carved vessel.*

---

* Nouns in *ns* and *as* from their genitive plural in *ium* and *ûm,* but oftener admit a syncope of the *i.*

Nouns in *e* change *e* into *is*; as, *rēte, retis*, a net. So,

Ancīle, *a shield.*
Aplustre, *the flag of a ship.*
Campestre, *a pair of drawers.*
Cochleāre, *a spoon.*
Conclāve, *a room.*
Crīnāle, *a pin for the hair.*
Cŭbīle, *a couch.*
Equīle, *a stable for horses.*
Lăqueāre, *a ceiled roof.*
Mantīle, *a towel.*
Mŏnīle, *a necklace.*
Nāvāle, *a dock* or *place for shipping.*
Ovīle, *a sheep fold.*
Præsēpe, *a stall; a bee-hive.*
Sĕcāle, *rye.*
Suīle, *a sow-cote.*
Tibiāle, *a stocking.*

Nouns in *i* are generally indeclinable; as *gummi*, gum; *zingĭbĕri*, ginger; but some Greek nouns add *ĭtis*; as, *hydrŏmĕli, hydromelĭtis*, water and honey sodden together, mead.

Nouns in *y* add *os*; as *mōly, molyos*, an herb; *mīsy, -yos*, vitriol.

O.

2. Nouns in *o* are masculine, and form the genitive in *ōnis*; as,

Sermo, sermōnis, speech; *draco, drăcōnis*, a dragon. So,

Agāso, *a horse-keeper.*
Aquĭlo, *the north wind.*
Arrhăbo, *an earnest-penny, a pledge.*
Bălatro, *a pitiful fellow.*
Bambălio, *a stutterer.*
Băro, *a blockhead.*
Būbo, *an owl.*
Bŭfo, *a toad.*
Cālo, *a soldier's slave.*
Cāpo, *a capon.*
Carbo, *a coal.*
Caupo, *an inn-keeper.*
Cerdo, *a cobbler*, or *one who follows a mean trade.*
Cĭniflo, *a frizzler of hair.*
Crabro, *a wasp* or *hornet.*
Cūrio, *the chief of a ward* or *curia.*
Equīso, *a groom* or *ostler.*
Erro, *a wanderer.*
Fullo, *a fuller of cloth.*
Helluo, *a glutton.*
Histrio, *a player.*
Latro, *a robber.*
Lēno, *a pimp.*
Lūdio, & -ius, *a player.*
Lurco, *a glutton.*
Mango, *a slave-merchant.*
Mirmillo, *a fencer.*
Mōrio, *a fool.*
Mucro, *the point of a weapon.*
Mūlio, *a muleteer.*
Nĕbŭlo, *a knave.*
Pāvo, *a peacock.*
Pēro, *a kind of shoe.*
Præco, *a common crier.*
Prædo, *a robber.*
Pulmo, *the lungs.*
Pūsio, *a little child.*
Salmo, *a salmon.*
Sannio, *a buffoon.*
Sāpo, *soap.*
Sīpho, *a pipe* or *tube.*
Spădo, *an eunuch.*
Stŏlo, *a shoot* or *scion.*
Străbo, *a goggle-eyed person.*
Tēmo, *the pole* or *draught-tree.*
Tīro, *a raw soldier.*
Umbo, *the boss of a shield.*
Upĭlio, *a shepherd.*
Vŏlo, *a volunteer.*

Exc. 1. Nouns in *io* are feminine, when they signify any thing without a body; as, *rătio, ratiōnis*, reason. As,

Oratio, 'a speech,' fem.

Singular.	*Plural.*
N. oratio,	N. oratiōnes,
G. oratiōnis,	G. oratiōnum,
D. oratiōni,	D. orationĭbus,
A. oratiōnem,	A. oratiōnes,
V. oratio,	V. oratiōnes,
A. oratiōne.	A. orationĭbus.

Captio, *a quirk.*
Cautio, *caution, care.*
Concio, *an assembly, a speech.*
Cessio, *a yielding.*
Dictio, *a word.*
Dēdĭtio, *a surrender.*
Lectio, *a lesson.*
Lĕgio, *a legion, a body of men.*
Mentio, *mention.*
Nōtio, *a notion* or *idea.*
Opīnio, *an opinion.*
Optio, *a choice.*
Orātio, *a speech.*
Pensio, *a payment.*
Perduellio, *treason.*
Portio, *a part.*
Pōtio, *drink.*
Prōdĭtio, *treachery.*
Proscriptio, *a proscription, ordering citizens to be slain, and confiscating their effects.*
Quæstio, *an inquiry.*
Rĕbellio, *rebellion.*
Rĕgio, *a country.*
Rĕlatio, *a telling.*
Rĕlĭgio, *religion.*
Rĕmissio, *a slackening.*
Sanctio, *a confirmation.*
Sectio, *the confiscation* or *forfeiture of one's goods.*
Sēdĭtio, *a mutiny.*
Sissio, *a sitting.*
Stătio, *a station.*
Suspĭcio, *mistrust.*
Tĭtillātio, *a tickling.*
Translātio, *a transferring.*
Usūcăpio, *the enjoyment of a thing by prescription.*
Vacātio, *freedom from labour, &c.*
Vĭsio, *an apparition.*

But when they mark any thing which has a body, or signify numbers, they are masculine; as,

Curcŭlio, *the throat-pipe, the weasand.*
Pāpĭlio, *a butterfly.*
Pūgio, *a dagger.*
Pūsio, *a little child.*
Scīpio, *a staff.*
Scorpio, *a scorpion.*
Septentrio, *the north.*
Stellio, *a lizard.*
Tītio, *a firebrand.*
Unio, *a pearl.*
Vespertĭlio, *a bat.*
Ternio, *the number three.*
Quăternio, ——— *four.*
Sēnio, ——— *six.*

Exc. 2. Nouns in *do* and *go*, are feminine, and have the genitive in *ĭnis*; as ***ărundo, arundĭnis***, a reed; ***ĭmāgo, imagĭnis***, an image.

Arundo, *a reed*, fem.

Singular.	*Plural.*
N. ărundo,	N. arundĭnes,
G. arundĭnis,	G. arundĭnum,
D. arundĭni,	D. arundĭnĭbus,
A. arundĭnem,	A. arundĭnes,
V. arundo,	V. arundĭnes,
A. arundĭne.	A. arundĭnĭbus.

So,

Ærūgo, *rust (of brass.)*
Cālīgo, *darkness.*
Cartĭlāgo, *a gristle.*
Crĕpīdo, *a creek, bank.*
Farrāgo, *a mixture.*
Ferrūgo, *rust (of iron.)*
Formīdo, *fear.*
Fūlīgo, *soot.*
Grando, *hail.*
Hĭrūdo, *a horse-leech.*
Hirundo, *a swallow.*
Intercăpēdo, *a space between.*
Lānūgo, *down.*
Lentīgo, *a pimple.*
Orīgo, *an origin.*
Porrīgo, *scurf,* or *scales in the head; dandruff.*
Prŏpāgo, *a lineage.*
Rūbīgo, *rust, mildew.*
Sartāgo, *a frying pan.*
Scătūrīgo, *a spring.*
Testūdo, *a tortoise.*
Torpēdo, *a numbness.*
Ulīgo, *the natural moisture of the earth.*
Vălētūdo, *health.*
Vertīgo, *a dizziness.*
Virgo, *a virgin.*
Vŏrāgo, *a gulf.*

But the following are masculine:

Cardo, -ĭnis, *a hinge.*
Cūdo, -ōnis, *a leather cap.*
Harpăgo, -ōnis, *a drag.*
Līgo, -ōnis, *a spade.*
Margo, -ĭnis, *the brink of a river;* also feminine.
Ordo, -ĭnis, *order.*
Tendo, -ĭnis; *a tendon.*
Udo, -ōnis, *a linen* or *woollen sock.*

Cŭpīdo, desire, is often masc. with the poets; but in prose always fem.

Exc. 3. The following nouns have *ĭnis:*

Apollo, -ĭnis, *the god Apollo.*
Hŏmo, -ĭnis, *a man* or *woman.*
Nēmo, -ĭnis, m. or f. *no body.*
Turbo, -ĭnis, m. *a whirlwind.*

Căro flesh, fem. has *carnis*. *Anio*, masc. the name of a river, *Aniēnis*. *Nerio*, *Neriēnis*, the wife of the god Mars; from the obsolete nominatives *Anien*, *Nerien*. *Turbo*, the name of a man, has *ōnis*.

Exc. 4. Greek nouns in *o* are feminine, and have *ûs* in the genitive, and *o* in the other cases singular; as *Dīdo*, the name of a woman; genit. *Didûs;* dat. *Didô*, &c. Sometimes they are declined regularly; thus, *Dido*, *Didōnis:* so *ēcho*, *-ûs*, f. the resounding of the voice from a rock or wood; *Argo*, *-ûs*, the name of a ship; *hālo*, *-ōnis*, f. a circle about the sun or moon.

Dido, *Dido*, the name of a woman, fem.

Sing.

Nom. Dido,
Gen. Didōnis *or* Didûs,
Dat. Didōni *or* Didô,
Acc. Didōnem *or* Didô,
Voc. Dido,
Abl. Didōne *or* Didô.

C, D, L.

3. Nouns in *c* and *l* are neuter, and form the genitive by adding *is;* as,

Anĭmal, *anĭmālis*, a living creature; *tŏral*, *-ālis*, a bed-cover; *hālec*, *halēcis*, a kind of pickle. So,

Cervīcal, *a bolster.*
Cŭbĭtal, *a cushion.*
Mĭnerval, *entry-money.*
Mĭnūtal, *minced meat.*
Pŭteal, *a well-cover.*
Vectīgal, *a tax.*

Except, Consul, -ŭlis, m. *a consul.*
Fel, fellis, n. *gall.*
Lac, lactis, n. *milk.*
Mel, mellis, n. *honey.*
Mūgil, ĭlis, m. *a mullet-fish.*
Sal, sălis, m. or n. *salt.*
Săles, -ium, pl. m. *witty sayings.*
Sol, sōlis, m. *the sun.*

D is the termination only of a few proper names, which form the genitive by adding *is;* as, *Dāvid*, *Davĭdis*.

N.

4. Nouns in *n* are masculine, and add *is* in the genitive; as,

Cănon, -ŏnis, *a rule.*
Dæmon, -ŏnis, *a spirit.*
Delphin, -īnis, *a dolphin.*
Gnōmon, -ŏnis, *the cock of a dial.*
Hȳmen, -ĕnis, *the god of marriage.*
Lien, -ēnis, *the milt.*
Pæan, ānis, *a song.*
Phȳsiognōmon, -ŏnis, *one who guesses at the dispositions of men from the face.*
Ren, rēnis, *the reins.*
Splen, -ēnis, *the spleen.*
Sȳren, -ēnis, f. *a Syren.*
Tītan, -ānis, *the sun.*

Exc. 1. Nouns in *men*, are neuter, and make their genitive in *ĭnis;* as, *flūmen, flumĭnis*, a river. So,

Abdōmen, *the paunch.*
Acūmen, *sharpness.*
Agmen, *an army on march.*
Alūmen, *alum.*
Bĭtūmen, *a kind of clay.*
Căcūmen, *the top.*
Carmen, *a song, a poem.*
Cognōmen, *a sir-name.*
Cŏlūmen, *a support.*
Crīmen, *a crime.*
Discrīmen, *a difference.*
Exāmen, *a swarm of bees.*
Fŏrāmen, *a hole.*
Germen, *a sprout.*
Grāmen, *grass.*
Lĕgūmen, *all kinds of pulse.*
Lūmen, *light.*
Nōmen, *a name.*
Nūmen, *the Deity.*
Omen, *a presage.*
Pŭtāmen, *a nut-shell.*
Sagmen, *vervain, an herb.*
Sēmen, *a seed.*
Spĕcĭmen, *a proof.*
Stāmen, *the warp.*
Subtēmen, *the woof.*
Tegmen, *a covering.*
Vīmen, *a twig.*
Vŏlūmen, *a folding.*

The following nouns are likewise neuter;

Glūten, -ĭnis, *glue.*
Unguen, -ĭnis, *ointment.*
Inguen, -ĭnis, *the groin.*
Pollen, -ĭnis, *fine flour.*

Exc. 2. The following masculines have *ĭnis; pecten*, a comb; *tŭbĭcen*, a trumpeter; *tībĭcen*, a piper; and *oscen*, or *oscĭnis*, sc. *ăvis*, f. a bird which foreboded by singing.

Exc. 3. The following nouns are feminine; *Sindon, -ŏnis*, fine linen; *äēdon, -ŏnis*, a nightingale; *halcyon, -ŏnis*, a bird called the king's fisher; *ĭcon, -ŏnis*, an image.

Exc. 4. Some Greek nouns have *ontis;* as, *Laŏmĕdon, -ontis*, a king of Troy. So *Achĕron, chamæleon, Phaĕthon, Chăron*, &c.

AR and *UR*.

5. Nouns in *ar* and *ur* are neuter, and add *is* to form the genitive; as,

Calcar, *a spur*, neut.

Singular.		*Plural.*	
Nom.	calcar,	*Nom.*	calcāria,
Gen.	calcāris,	*Gen.*	calcārium,
Dat.	calcāri,	*Dat.*	calcarĭbus,
Acc.	calcar,	*Acc.*	calcāria,
Voc.	calcar,	*Voc.*	calcāria,
Abl.	calcāri.*	*Abl.*	calcarĭbus.

* See Exc. in Abl. Sing. page 45. Neuter nouns in *ur* have the Abl. Sing. in *e*, and the Nom. Plur. in *a*.

So,

Gutter, -ŭris, *the throat.*
Jŭbar, -ăris, *a sun-beam.*
Lăcūnar, -āris, *a ceiling.*
Murmur, -ŭris, *a noise.*
Nectar, -ăris, *drink of the gods.*
Pulvīnar, -āris, *a pillow.*
Sulphur, -ŭris, *sulphur.*

Except,

Ebur, -ŏris, n. *ivory.*
Far, farris, n. *corn.*
Fĕmur, -ŏris, n. *the thigh.*
Furfur, -ŭris, m. *bran.*
Fur, fūris, m. *a thief.*
Hēpar, -ătis, or ătos, n. *the liver.*
Jĕcur, -ŏris, or jecĭnŏris, n. *the liver.*
Rōbur, -ŏris, n. *strength.*
Sălar, -ăris, m. *a trout.*
Turtur, -ŭris, m. *a turtle-dove.*
Vultur, -ŭris, m. *a vulture.*

ER and *OR.*

6. Nouns in *er* and *or* are masculine, and form the genitive by adding *is;* as,

Anser, ansĕris, a goose or gander; *agger, -ĕris,* a rampart; *āer, -ĕris,* the air; *carcer, -ĕris,* a prison; *asser, -ĕris,* and *asses, -is,* a plank; *dolor, -ōris,* pain; *color, -ōris,* a colour. So,

Actor, *a doer, a pleader.*
Crēdĭtor, *he that trusts* or *lends.*
Cruor, *gore.*
Dēbĭtor, *a debtor.*
Fœtor, *an ill smell.*
Hŏnor, *honour.*
Lector, *a reader.*
Lictor, *an officer among the Romans, who attended the magistrates.*
Līvor, *paleness, malice.*
Nīdor, *a strong smell.*
Odor, and -os, *a smell.*
Olor, *a swan,*
Pædor, *filth.*
Pastor, *a shepherd.*
Prætor, *a commander.*
Pŭdor, *shame.*
Rŭbor, *blushing.*
Rūmor, *a report.*
Săpor, *a taste.*
Sartor, *a cobbler* or *tailor.*
Sător, *a sower, a father.*
Sŏpor, *sleep.*
Splendor, *brightness.*
Sponsor, *a surety.*
Squālor, *filthiness.*
Stŭpor, *dulness.*
Sūtor, *a sewer.*
Tĕpor, *warmth.*
Terror, *dread.*
Tĭmor, *fear.*
Tonsor, *a barber.*
Tūtor, *a guardian.*
Văpor, *a vapour.*
Vēnātor, *a hunter.*

Rhētor, a rhetorician, has *rhetŏris; castor,* a beaver, *-ŏris.*

Exc. 1. The following nouns are neuter:

Acer, -ĕris, *a maple tree.*
Ador, -ŏris, *fine wheat.*
Æquor, -ŏris, *a plain, the sea.*
Cădāver, -ĕris, *a dead carcass.*
Cĭcer, -ĕris, *vetches.*
Cor, cordis, *the heart.*
Iter, itinĕris, *a journey.*
Marmor, -ŏris, *marble.*
Păpāver, -ĕris, *poppy.*
Pĭper, -ĕris, *pepper.*
Spinther, -ēris, *a clasp.*
Tūber, -ĕris, *a swelling.*
Uber, -ĕris, *a pap,* or *fatness.*
Ver, vēris, *the spring.*

Arbor, -ŏris, a tree, is fem. *Tuber, -ĕris,* the fruit of the tuber-tree, is masc. but when put for the tree, is fem.

Exc. 2. Nouns in *ber* have *bris,* in the genitive; as, hic *imber, imbris,* a shower. So *Insŭber, Octōber, &c.*

Nouns in *ter* have *tris*; as, *venter, ventris*, the belly; *păter, patris*, a father: *frāter, -tris*, a brother; *accĭpĭter, -tris*, a hawk; but *crāter*, a cup, has *crātēris*; *sōter, -ēris*, a saviour; *lăter*, a tile, *latĕris*; *Jūpĭter*, the chief of the Heathen gods, has *Jovis*; *linter, -tris*, a little boat, is masc. or femin.

AS.

7. Nouns in *as* are feminine, and have the genitive in *ātis*; as,

Ætas, *an age*, fem.

Singular.		*Plural.*	
Nom.	ætas,	*Nom.*	ætātes,
Gen.	ætātis,	*Gen.*	ætātûm,*
Dat.	ætāti,	*Dat.*	ætatĭbus,
Acc.	ætātem,	*Acc.*	ætātes,
Voc.	ætas,	*Voc.*	ætātes,
Abl.	ætāte.	*Abl.*	ætatĭbus.

So,

Æstas, *the summer.*
Piĕtas, *piety.*
Pŏtestas, *power.*
Prŏbĭtas, *probity.*
Sătiĕtas, *a glut* or *disgust.*
Sĭmultas, *a feud, a grudge.*
Tempestas, *a time, a tempest.*
Ubertas, *fertility.*
Vērĭtas, *truth.*
Voluntas, *will.*
Vŏluptas, *pleasure.*
Anas, *a duck, has anătis.*

Exc. 1. As, assis, m. *a piece of money, or any thing which may be divided into twelve parts.*
Mas, măris, m. *a male.*
Vas, vădis, m. *a surety.*
Vas, vāsis, n. *a vessel.*

Note. All the parts of *as* are likewise masculine, except *uncia*, an ounce, fem.; as, *sextans*, 2 ounces; *quadrans*, 3; *triens*, 4; *quincunx*, 5; *semis*, 6; *septunx*, 7; *bes*, 8; *dodrans*, 9; *dextans*, or *dĕcunx*, 10; *deunx*, 11 ounces.

Exc. 2. Of Greek nouns in *as*, some are masculine, some feminine, some neuter. Those that are masculine have *antis* in the genit. as, *gĭgas, gigantis*, a giant; *ădămas, -antis*, an adamant; *ĕlĕphas, -antis*, an elephant. Those that are feminine have *ădis*, or *ădos*; as, *lampas, lampădis*, or *lampădos*, a lamp; *drŏmas, -ădis*, f. a dromedary; likewise *Arcas*, an Arcadian, though masculine, has *Arcădis*, or *-ădos*. Those that are neuter have *ătis*; as, *būcĕras, -ătis*, an herb; *artocreas, -ătis*, a pie.

ES.

8. Nouns in *es* are feminine, and in the genitive change *es* into *is*; as,

---

* See note, page 30.

rūpes, rupis, a rock; *nūbes, nubis*, a cloud. So,

Ædes, or -is, *a temple; plur. a house.*
Cautes, *a ruggid rock.*
Clādes, *an overthrow, destruction.*
Crātes, *a hurdle.*
Fămes, *hunger.*
Fĭdes, *a fiddle.*
Lues, *a plague.*
Mōles, *a heap.*
Nătes, *the buttock.*
Pălumbes, m. or f. *a pigeon.*
Prōles, *an offspring.*
Pūbes, *youth.*
Sēpes, *a hedge.*
Sŏbŏles, *an offspring.*
Strāges, *a slaughter.*
Strues, *a heap.*
Sŭdes, *a stake.*
Tābes, *a consumption.*
Vulpes, *a fox.*

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine, and most of them likewise excepted in the formation of the genitive:

Ales, -ĭtis, *a bird.*
Ames, -ĭtis, *a fowler's staff.*
Aries, -ĕtis, *a ram.*
Bes, bessis, *two-thirds of a pound.*
Cespes, -ĭtis, *a turf.*
Eques, -ĭtis, *a horseman.*
Fōmes, -ĭtis, *fuel.*
Gurges, -ĭtis, *a whirlpool.*
Hæres, -ēdis, *an heir.*
Indĭges, -ĕtis, *a man deified.*
Interpres, -ĕtis, *an interpreter.*
Lĭmes, -ĭtis, *a limit* or *bound.*
Mīles, -ĭtis, *a soldier.*
Obses, -ĭdis, *a hostage.*
Palmes, -ĭtis, *a vine-branch.*
Păries, -ĕtis, *a wall.*
Pes, pĕdis, *the foot.*
Pĕdes, -ĭtis, *a footman.*
Poples, -ĭtis, *the ham of the leg.*
Præses, -ĭdis, *a president.*
Sătelles, -ĭtis, *a life-guard.*
Stīpes, -ĭtis, *the stock of a tree.*
Termes, -ĭtis, *an olive bough.*
Trāmes, -ĭtis, *a path.*
Vēles, -ĭtis, *a light-armed soldier.*
Vātes, vatis, *a prophet.*
Verres, verris, *a boar-pig.*

But *ales, miles, hæres, interpres, obses*, and *vates*, are also used in the feminine.

Exc. 2. The following feminines are excepted in the formation of the genitive:

Abies, -ĕtis, *a fir-tree.*
Cĕres, -ĕris, *the goddess of corn.*
Merces, -ēdis, *a reward, hire.*
Merges, -ĭtis, *a handful of corn.*
Quies, -ētis, *rest.*
Rĕquies, -ētis; *or* requiēi, (*of the fifth declension*) *rest.*
Sĕges, -ĕtis, *growing corn.*
Tĕges, -ĕtis, *a mat* or *coverlet.*
Tŭdes, -is, *or* -ĭtis, *a hammer.*

To these add the following adjectives:

Ales, -ĭtis, *swift.*
Bĭpes, -ĕdis, *two-footed.*
Quadrŭpes, -ĕdis, *four-footed.*
Dēses, -ĭdis, *slothful.*
Dīves, -ĭtis, *rich.*
Hĕbes, -ĕtis, *dull.*
Perpes, -ĕtis, *perpetual.*
Præpes, -ĕtis, *swift-winged.*
Rĕses, -ĭdis, *idle.*
Sospes, -ĭtis, *safe.*
Sŭperstes, -ĭtis, *surviving.*
Tĕres, -ĕtis, *round and long, smooth.*
Lŏcuples, -ētis, *rich.*
Mansues, -ētis, *gentle.*

Exc. 3. Greek nouns in *es* are commonly masculine; as hic *ăcīnăces, -is*, a Persian sword, a scimitar: but some are neuter; as, hoc *căcōethes*, an evil custom; *hippŏmănes*, a kind of poison which grows in the forehead of a foal; *pănăces*, the herb all-heal; *nēpenthes*, the herb kill-grief. Dissyllables, and the monosyllable *Cres*, a Cretan, have *-ētis* in the genitive; as, hic *magnes, magnētis*, a load-stone; *tăpes, -ētis*, tapestry; *lĕbes, -ētis*, a cauldron. The rest follow the

general rule. Some proper nouns have either *-ētis*, or *is;* as, *Dăres, Darētis*, or *Daris;* which is also sometimes of the first declension. *Achilles* has *Achillis;* or *Achilli*, contracted for *Achillĕi*, or *Achillei*, of the second declension, from *Achillĕus*. So *Ulysses, Pĕricles, Verres, Aristŏtĕles*, &c.

IS.

9. Nouns in *is* are feminine, and have their genitive the same with the nominative; as,

auris, auris, the ear; *ăvis, avis*, a bird. So,

Apis, *a bee.*
Bīlis, *the gall, anger.*
Classis, *a fleet.*
Fēlis, *a cat.*
Fŏris, *a door; oftener* plur. fores, *-ium.*
Messis, *a harvest* or *crop.*
Nāris, *the nostril.*
Neptis, *a niece.*
Ovis, *a sheep.*
Pellis, *a skin.*
Pestis, *a plague.*
Rătis, *a raft.*
Rŭdis, *a rod.*
Vallis, *a valley.*
Vestis, *a garment.*
Vītis, *a vine.*

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine, and form the genitive according to the general rule:

Axis, axis, *an axle-tree.*
Aquālis, *a water-pot, an ewer.*
Callis, *a beaten road.*
Caulis, *the stock of an herb.*
Collis, *a hill.*
Cenchris, *a kind of serpent.*
Ensis, *a sword.*
Fascis, *a bundle.*
Fēciālis, *a herald.*
Follis, *a pair of bellows.*
Fustis, *a staff.*
Mensis, *a month.*
Mūgĭlis, *or* -il, *a mullet-fish.*
Orbis, *a circle, the world.*
Patruēlis, *a cousin-german.*
Piscis, *a fish.*
Postis, *a post.*
Sŏdālis, *a companion.*
Torris, *a fire-brand.*
Unguis, *the nail.*
Vectis, *a lever.*
Vermis, *a worm.*

To these add Latin nouns in *nis*; as *pānis*, bread; *crīnis*, the hair; *ignis*, fire; *fūnis*, a rope, &c. But Greek nouns in *nis* are feminine, and have the genitive in *ĭdis*; as *tўrannis, tўrannĭdis*, tyranny.

Exc. 2. The following nouns are also masculine, but form their genitive differently:

Cĭnis, -ĕris, *ashes.*
Cŭcŭmis, -is, *or* -ĕris, *a cucumber.*
Dis, dītis, *the god of riches;* or *rich*, an adj.
Glis, glīris, *a dormouse, a rat.*
Impūbis, *or* impūbes, -is, *or* -ĕris, *not marriageable.*
Lăpis, -ĭdis, *a stone.*
Pūbis, *or* pūbes, -is, *or oftener*, -ĕris, *marriageable.*
Pulvis, -ĕris, *dust.*
Quiris, -ītis, *a Roman.*
Samnis, -ītis, *a Samnite.*
Sanguis, -ĭnis, *blood.*
Sēmis, -issis, *the half of any thing.*
Vŏmis, *or* -er, -ĕris, *a ploughshare.*

Pulvis, and *cinis*, are sometimes feminine. *Semis* is also sometimes neuter, and then it is indeclinable. *Pubis* and *impūbis* are properly adjectives; thus, *Puberĭbus caulem foliis*, a stock with downy leaves. *Virg. Æn.* xii. 413. *Impūbe corpus*, the body of a boy not having yet got the down (*pubes, -is*, f.) of youth. *Horat. Epod.* 5. 13. *Exsanguis*, bloodless, an adjective, has *exsanguis* in the genitive.

Exc. 3. The following are either masculine or feminine, and form the genitive according to the general rule:

Amnis, *a river.*
Anguis, *a snake.*
Cănālis, *a conduit-pipe.*
Corbis, *a basket.*
Fīnis, *the end; fines, the boundaries of a field, or territories, is always masc.*
Scrŏbis, *or* scrobs, *a ditch.*
Torquis, *a chain.*

Exc. 4. These feminines have *ĭdis: Cassis, -ĭdis,* a helmet; *cuspis, -ĭdis,* the point of a spear; *capis, -ĭdis,* a kind of cup; *prōmulsis, -ĭdis,* a kind of drink, metheglin. *Lis,* strife, f. has *lĭtis.*

Exc. 5. Greek nouns in *is* are generally feminine, and form the genitive variously: some have *eos* or *ios;* as *hærēsis, -eos,* or *-ios,* or *-is,* a heresy; so, *băsis,* f. the foot of a pillar; *phrasis,* a phrase; *phthĭsis,* a consumption; *poēsis,* poetry; *metrŏpŏlis,* a chief city, &c. Some have *ĭdis* or *ĭdos;* as, *Păris, -ĭdis,* or *-ĭdos,* the name of a man; *aspis, -ĭdis,* f. an asp; *ĕphēmĕris, -ĭdis,* f. a day-book; *īris, -ĭdis,* f. the rainbow; *pyxis, -ĭdis,* f. a box. So *Ægis,* the shield of Pallas; *canthăris,* a sort of fly; *pĕriscĕlis,* a garter; *proboscis,* an elephant's trunk; *pўrămis,* a pyramid; and *tigris,* a tiger, *-ĭdis,* seldom *tigris:* all fem. Part have *īdis,* as, *Psophis, -īdis,* the name of a city: others have *īnis;* as, *Eleusis, -īnis,* the name of a city; and some have *entis;* as, *Sĭmois, Simoëntis,* the name of a river. *Chăris,* one of the Graces, has *Charĭtis.*

OS.

10. Nouns in *os* are masculine, and have the genitive in *ōtis;* as,

nĕpos, -ōtis, a grandchild; *săcerdos, -ōtis,* a priest, also fem.

Exc. 1. The following are feminine:

Arbos, *or* -or, -ŏris, *a tree.*
Cos, cōtis, *a whetstone.*
Dos, dōtis, *a dowry.*
Eos, eōis, *the morning.*
Glos, glōris, *the husband's sister, or brother's wife.*

Exc. 2. The following masculines are excepted in the genitive:

Flos, flōris, *a flower.*
Hŏnos, *or* -or, -ōris, *honour.*
Lăbos, *or* -or, ōris, *labour.*
Lĕpos, *or* -or, -ōris, *wit.*
Mos, mōris, *a custom.*
Ros, rōris, *dew.*
Custos, -ōdis, *a keeper,* also fem.
Hēros, herōis, *a hero.*
Mīnos, -ōis, *a king of Crete.*
Tros, Trōis, *a Trojan.*
Bos, bŏvis, m. or f. *an ox* or *cow.*

Exc. 3. *Os, ossis,* a bone; and *ōs, ōris,* the mouth, are neuter.

Exc. 4. Some Greek nouns have *ōis,* as, *heros, -ōis,* a hero, or great man: So *Mīnos,* a king of Crete; *Tros,* a Trojan; *thos,* a kind of wolf.

US.

11. Nouns in *us* are neuter, and have their genitive in *ŏris;* as,

pectus, pectŏris, the breast; *tempus, tempŏris,* time. So,

Corpus, *a body.*	Frīgus, *cold.*	Pĕnus, *provisions.*
Dĕcus, *honour.*	Littus, *a shore.*	Pignus, *a pledge.*
Dēdĕcus, *disgrace.*	Nĕmus, *a grove.*	Stercus, *dung.*
Făcĭnus, *a great action.*	Pĕcus, *cattle.*	Tergus, *a hide.*
Fœnus, *usury.*		

Exc. 1. The following neuters have *ĕris:*

Acus, *chaff.*	Mūnus, *a gift* or *office.*	Scĕlus, *a crime.*
Fūnus, *a funeral.*	Olus, *pot-herbs.*	Sīdus, *a star.*
Fœdus, *a covenant.*	Onus, *a burden.*	Vellus, *a fleece of wool.*
Gĕnus, *a kind,* or *kindred.*	Opus, *a work.*	Viscus, *an entrail.*
Glŏmus, *a clew.*	Pondus, *a weight.*	Ulcus, *a bile.*
Lătus, *the side.*	Rūdus, *rubbish.*	Vulnus, *a wound.*

Thus *acĕris, funĕris, &c. Glŏmus,* a clew, is sometimes masculine, and has *glomi,* of the second declension. *Vĕnus,* the goddess of love, and *vĕtus,* old, an adjective, likewise have *ĕris.*

Exc. 2. The following nouns are feminine, and form the genitive variously:

Incus, -ūdis, *an anvil.*	Jŭventus, -ūtis, *youth.*
Pălus, -ūdis, *a pool,* or *morass.*	Sălus, -ūtis, *safety.*
Pĕcus, -ūdis, *a sheep.*	Sĕnectus, -ūtis, *old age.*
Subscus, -ūdis, *a dove-tail.*	Servĭtus, -ūtis, *slavery.*
Tellus, -ūris, *the earth,* or *goddess of the earth.*	Virtus, -ūtis, *virtue.*
	Intercus, -ŭtis, *an hydropsy.*

Intercus is properly an adjective, having *aqua* understood.

Exc. 3. Monosyllables of the neuter gender have *ūris,* in the genitive; as,

Crus, crūris, *the leg.*	Rus, rūris, *the country.*
Jus, jūris, *law* or *right;* also *broth.*	Thus, thūris, *frankincense.*
Pus, pūris, *the corrupt matter of any sore.*	*So* Mus, mūris, masc. *a mouse.*

Lĭgus, or *-ur,* a Ligurian, has *Ligŭris; lĕpus,* masc. a hare, *lepŏris; sus,* masc. or fem. a swine, *suis; grus,* masc. or fem. a crane, *gruis.*

Œdĭpus, the name of a man, has *Œdipŏdis;* sometimes it is of the second declension, and has *Œdĭpi.* The compounds of *pus* have *ŏdis;* as, *tripus,* masc. a tripod, *tripŏdis;* but *lăgōpus, -ŏdis,* a kind of bird, or, the herb hare's foot, is fem. Names of cities have *untis;* as, *Trapĕzus, Trapezuntis; Opus, Opuntis;* Hierĭchus, -untis, *Jericho.*

YS.

12. Nouns in *ys* are all borrowed from the Greek, and are for the most part feminine. In the genitive they have sometimes *yis*, or *yos;* as,

Hæc *chĕlys, chelyis,* or *-yos,* a harp; *Căpys, Capyis,* or *-yos,* the name of a man; sometimes they have *ўdis,* or *ўdos;* as, hæc *chlămys, chlamўdis,* or *chlamўdos,* a soldier's cloak; and sometimes *ўnis* or *ўnos;* as, *Trăchys, Trachўnis,* or *Trachўnos,* the name of a town.

ÆS, AUS, EUS.

13. The nouns ending in *æs*, and *aus*, are,

Æs, æris, n. *brass* or *money.*
Fraus, fraudis, f. *fraud.*
Laus, laudis, f. *praise.*
Præs, prædis, m. or f. *a surety.*

Substantives ending in the syllable *eus* are all proper names, and have the genitive in *eos;* as, *Orpheus, Orpheos; Tereus, Tereos.* But these nouns are also found in the second declension, where *eus* is divided into two syllables: thus, *Orphĕus,* genit. *Orphĕi,* or sometimes contracted *Orphei,* and that into *Orphi.*

S with a consonant before it.

14. Nouns ending in *s* with a consonant before it, are feminine; and form the genitive by changing the *s* into *is* or *tis;* as,

Trabs, trăbis, a beam; *scobs, scŏbis,* saw-dust; *hiems, hiĕmis,* winter; *gens, gentis,* a nation; *stips, stĭpis,* alms; *pars, partis,* a part; *sors, sortis,* a lot; *mors, -tis,* death.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine:

Chălbys, -ўbis, *steel.*
Dens, -tis, *a tooth.*
Fons, -tis, *a well.*
Gryps, grўphis, *a griffin.*
Hydrops, -ōpis, *the dropsy.*
Mĕrops, -ŏpis, *a woodpecker.*
Mons, -tis, *a mountain.*
Pons, -tis, *a bridge.*
Seps, sĕpis, *a kind of serpent;* but
Seps, sēpis, *a hedge,* is fem.

Exc. 2. The following are either masculine, or feminine:

Adeps, adĭpis, *fatness.*
Rŭdens, -tis, *a cable.*
Scrobs, scrŏbis, *a ditch.*
Serpens, -tis, *a serpent.*
Stirps, stirpis, *the root of a tree.*
Stirps, *an offspring,* always fem.

Anĭmans, a living creature, is found in all the genders, but most frequently in the feminine or neuter.

Exc. 3. Polysyllables in *eps* change *e* into *i*; as, hæc *forceps, forcĭpis*, a pair of tongs; *princeps, -ĭpis*, a prince or princess; *partĭceps, -cĭpis*, a partaker; so likewise *cælebs, cœlĭbis*, an unmarried man or woman. The compounds of *căput* have *cĭpĭtis*; as, *præceps, præcipĭtis*, headlong; *anceps, ancĭpĭtis*, doubtful; *biceps, -cĭpĭtis*, two-headed. *Auceps*, a fowler, has *aucŭpis*.

Exc. 4. The following feminines have *dis*:

Frons, frondis, *the leaf of a tree.*
Glans, glandis, *an acorn.*
Juglans, -dis, *a walnut.*
Lens, lendis, *a nit.*

So *librĭpens, libripendis*, m. a weigher; *nefrens, -dis*, m. or f. a grice, or pig; and the compounds of *cor*; as *concors, concordis*, agreeing; *discors*, disagreeing; *vecors*, mad, &c. But *frons*, the forehead, has *frontis*, fem. and *lens*, a kind of pulse, *lentis*, also fem.

Exc. 5. *Iens*, going, and *quiens*, being able, participles from the verbs *eo* and *queo*, with their compounds, have *euntis*; thus, *iens, euntis*; *quiens, queuntis*; *rĕdiens, redeuntis*; *nequiens, nequeuntis*: but *ambiens*, going round, has *ambientis*.

Exc. 6. *Tĭryns*, a city in Greece, the birth place of Hercules, has *Tirynthis*.

T.

15. There is only one noun in *t*, namely, *căput, capĭtis*, the head, neuter. In like manner its compounds, *sincĭput, sincĭpĭtis*, the forehead; and *occĭput, -ĭtis*, the hind-head.

X.

16. Nouns in *x* are feminine, and in the genitive change *x* into *cis;* as, *lux, lūcis*, light.

Vox, *the voice*, fem.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.	vox,	vōces,
Gen.	vōcis,	vōcum,
Dat.	vōci,	vōcĭbus,
Acc.	vōcem,	vōces,
Voc.	vox,	voces,
Abl.	vōce.	vōcĭbus.

So,

Appendix, -ĭcis, *an addition*; dim. -icŭla.
Cĕlox, -ōcis, *a pinnace.*
Cervix, -īcis, *the neck.*
Cĭcātrix, -īcis, *a scar.*
Cornix, -īcis, *a crow.*
Cŏturnix, -īcis, *a quail.*
Coxendix, -ĭcis, *the hip.*
Crux, crŭcis, *a cross.*
Fæx, -cis, *dregs.*
Falx, -cis, *a scythe.*
Fax, -ăcis, *a torch.*
Filix, -ĭcis, *a fern.*
Lanx, -cis, *a plate.*
Lōdix, -īcis, *a sheet.*
Mĕretrix, -īcis, *a courtezan.*
Merx, -cis, *merchandise.*
Nutrix, -īcis, *a nurse.*
Nux, nŭcis, *a nut.*
Pax, -ācis, *peace.*
Pix, pĭcis, *pitch.*
Rādix, -īcis, *a root.*
Sălix, -ĭcis, *a willow.*
Vībix, *or* -ex, -īcis *the mark of a wound.*

Exc. 1. Polysyllables in *ax* and *ex* are masculine; as, *thŏrax*, *-ācis*, a breast-plate; *Cŏrax*, *-ăcis*, a raven. *Ex* in the genitive is changed into *ĭcis*; as, *pollex*, *-ĭcis*, m. the thumb. So the following nouns, also masculine:

Apex, *the tuft* or *tassel on the top of a priest's cap, the cap itself*, or *the top of any thing*.
Artĭfex, *an artist*.
Carnĭfex, *an executioner*.
Caudex, *the trunk of a tree*.
Cīmex, *a bug*.
Cōdex, *a book*.
Cŭlex, *a gnat, a midge*.
Frŭtex, *a shrub*.
Index, *an informer*.
Lătex, *any liquor*.
Mūrex, *a shell fish, purple*.
Pōdex, *the breech*.
Pontĭfex, *a chief priest*.
Pūlex, *a flea*.
Rāmex, *a rupture*.
Sōrex, *a rat*.
Vertex, *the crown of the head*.
Vortex, *a whirlpool*.

Vervex, a weather sheep, has *vervēcis*; *fœnisex*, a mower of hay, *fœnicĕcis*; *rĕsex*, m. *-ĕcis*, a vine branch cut off.

To these masculines add,

Călix, -ĭcis, *a cup*.
Călyx, -ȳcis, *the bud of a flower*.
Coccyx, -ȳgis, *or* ȳcis, *a cuckoo*.
Fornix, -ĭcis, *a vault*.
Oryx, -ȳgis, *a wild goat*.
Phœnix, -īcis, *a bird so called*.
Trādux, -ŭcis, *a graff* or *offset of a vine*; also fem.

But the following polysyllables in *ax* and *ex* are feminine:

Fornax, -ācis, *a furnace*.
Pănax, -ăcis, *the herb all-heal*.
Clīmax, -ăcis, *a ladder*.
Forfex, -ĭcis, *a pair of scissors*.
Hālex, -ēcis, *a herring*.
Smīlax, -ăcis, *the herb rope-weed*.
Carex, -ĭcis, *a sedge*.
Sŭpellex, supellectĭlis, *household furniture*.

Exc. 2. A great many nouns in *x* are either masculine or feminine; as,

Calx, -cis, *the heel*, or *the end of any thing, the goal*; but calx, *lime*, is always fem.
Cortex, -ĭcis, *the bark of a tree*.
Hystrix, -ĭcis, *a porcupine*.
Imbrex, -ĭcis, *a gutter* or *roof tile*.
Lynx, -cis, *an ounce, a beast of very quick sight*.
Līmax, -ăcis, *a snail*.
Obex, -ĭcis, *a bolt* or *bar*.
Perdix, -īcis, *a partridge*.
Pūmex, -ĭcis, *a pumice stone*.
Rŭmex, -ĭcis, *sorrel, an herb*.
Sandix, -īcis, *a purple colour*.
Sĭlex, -ĭcis, *a flint*.
Vārix, -ĭcis, *a swollen vein*.

Exc. 3. The following nouns depart from the general rule in forming the genitive:

Aquĭlex, -ĕgis, *a well-maker*.
Conjunx, *or* -ux, ŭgis, *a husband* or *wife*.
Frux (*not used*), frūgis, f. *corn*.
Grex, grĕgis, m. or f. *a flock*.
Lex, lēgis, f. *a law*.
Phălanx, -angis, f. *a phalanx*.
Rēmex, -ĭgis, *a rower*.
Rex, rēgis, *a king*.
Nix, nĭvis, f. *snow*.
Nox, noctis, f. *night*.
Sĕnex, sĕnis, & -ĭcis, (an adj.) *old*.

Exc. 4. Greek nouns in *x*, both with respect to gender and manner of declension, are as various as Latin nouns; thus, *bombyx*, *bombȳcis*, a silk-worm, masc. but when it signifies silk, or the yarn spun by the worm, it is feminine; *ŏnyx*,

masc. or fem. *onȳchis*, a precious stone; and so *sardŏnyx; lărynx, laryngis*, fem. the top of the windpipe; *Phryx, Phrȳgis*, a Phrygian; *sphinx, -ngis*, a fabulous hag; *strix, -ĭgis*, f. a screech-owl; *Styx, -ȳgis*, f. a river in hell; *Hȳlax, -ctis*, the name of a dog; *Bibrax, Bibractis*, the name of a town, &c.

EXCEPTIONS IN DECLENSION.

DATIVE SINGULAR.

The dative singular anciently ended also in *e*; as, *Esuriente leōni ex ore excul-pĕre prædam*, To pull the prey out of the mouth of a hungry lion. Lucil. *Hæret pede pes*, Foot sticks to foot. Virg. *Æn.* x. 361. for *esurienti* and *pedi*.

EXCEPTIONS IN THE ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR.

Exc. 1. The following nouns have the accusative in *im*.

Amussis, f. *a mason's rule*.
Būris, f. *the beam of a plough*.
Cannăbis, f. *hemp*.
Cŭcŭmis, m. *a cucumber*.
Gummis, f. *gum*.
Mĕphītis, f. *a damp* or *strong smell*.
Rāvis, f. *hoarseness*.
Sĭnāpis, f. *mustard*.
Sĭtis, f. *thirst*.
Tussis, f. *a cough*.
Vis, f. *strength*.

To these add proper names, 1. of cities and other places; as, *Hispănis*, Seville, a city in Spain; *Syrtis*, a dangerous quicksand on the coast of Lybia;—2. of rivers; as, *Tibĕris*, the Tiber, which runs past Rome; *Bætis*, the Guadalquiver, in Spain; so, *Albis, Arăris, Athĕsis, Liris*, &c.—3. of gods; as, *Anūbis, Apis, Osīris, Serăpis*, deities of the Egyptians. But these sometimes make the accusative also in *in*; thus, *Syrtim* or *Syrtin, Tibĕrim*, or *-in*, &c.

Exc. 2. Several nouns in *is* have either *em* or *im*; as,

Aquālis, m. *a water-pot*.
Clāvis, f. *a key*.
Cŭtis, f. *the skin*.
Febris, f. *a fever*.
Nāvis, f. *a ship*.
Pelvis, f. *a basin*.
Puppis, f. *the stern of a ship*.
Restis, f. *a rope*.
Sĕcūris, f. *an axe*.
Sēmentis, f. *a sowing*.
Strĭgĭlis, f. *a horse-comb*.
Turris, f. *a tower*.

Thus *navem* or *navim; puppem*, or *puppim*, &c. The ancients said, *avim, aurim, ovim, pestim, vallim, vitim*, &c. which are not to be imitated.

Exc. 3. Greek nouns form their accusative variously:

1. Greek nouns, whose genitive increases in *is* or *os* impure, that is, with a consonant going before, have the accusative in *em* or *a*; as, *lampas, lampădis*, or *lampădos, lampădem* or *lampăda*. In like manner, these three, which have *is* pure in the genitive, or *is* with a vowel before it: *Tros, Trois, Troem* or *Troa*, a Tro-

jan; *heros*, a hero; *Minos*, a king of Crete. The three following have almost always *a*; *Pan*, the god of shepherds; *æther*, the sky; *delphin*, a dolphin; thus, *Pana*, *æthĕra*, *delphīna*.

2. Masculine Greek nouns in *is*, which have their genitive in *is* or *os* impure, form the accusative in *im* or *in*; sometimes in *ĭdem*, never *ĭda*; as, *Păris*, *Parĭdis* or *Parĭdos*, *Parim*, or *Parin*, sometimes *Părĭdem*, never *Parĭda*.—So, *Daphnis*.

3. Feminines in *is*, increasing impurely in the genitive, have commonly *ĭdem* or *ĭda*, but rarely *im* or *in*; os, *Elis*, *Elĭdis* or *Elĭdos*, *Elĭdem* or *Elĭda*; seldom *Elim* or *Elin*; a city in Greece. In like manner feminines in *ys*, *ўdos*, have *ўdem* or *ўda*, not *ym* or *yn* in the accusative; as, *chlămys*, *ўdem* or *ўda*, not *chlamyn*, a soldier's cloak.

4. But all Greek nouns in *is* or *ys*, whether masculine or feminine, having *is* or *os* pure in the genitive, form the accusative, by changing *s* of the nominative into *m* or *n*; as *metamorphōsis*, *-eos* or *-ios*, *metamorphōsim* or *-in*, a change. *Tēthys*, *-yos* or *-yis*, *Tethym* or *-yn*; the name of a goddess.

5. Nouns ending in the diphthong *eus*, have the accusative in *ea*; as, *Thēseus*, *Thesea*; *Tydeus*, *Tydea*.

EXCEPTIONS IN THE VOCATIVE SINGULAR.

Many Greek nouns, particularly proper names, drop *s* of the nominative to form the vocative; as *Daphnis*, *Daphni*; *Paris*, *Pari*; *Tethys*, *Tethy*; *Melampus*, *Melampu*; *Orpheus*, *Orpheu*; *Chelys*, *Chely*; *Poēsis*, *Poēsi*. Nouns in *as*, *antis*, make the vocative in *a* or in *an*; as, *Pallas*, *Palla* or *Pallan*; *Calchas*, *Calcha* or *Calchan*: some in *es* make it in *es* or *e*; as, *Socrătes*, *Chremes*, *Hercŭles*, *Achilles*, &c.

EXCEPTIONS IN THE ABLATIVE SINGULAR.

Exc. 1. Neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*, have *i* in the ablative; as, *sĕdīle*, *sedīli*; *anĭmal*, *animāli*; *calcar*, *calcari*. Except proper names; as, *Præneste*, abl. *Præneste*, the name of a town; and the following neuters in *ar*:

Far, farre, *corn.*	Nectar, ăre, *drink of the gods.*
Hĕpar, ăte, *the liver.*	Par, păre, *a match, a pair.*
Jŭbar, -ăre, *a sun beam.*	Sal, săle, *or* -i, m. *or* n. *salt.*

Exc. 2. Nouns which have *im* or *in* in the accusative, have *i* in the ablative; as, *vis*, *vim*, *vi*; but *cannăbis*, *Bætis*, and *Tigris*, have *e* or *i*.

Nouns which have *em* or *im* in the accusative, make their ablative in *e* or *i*; as, *turris*, *turre*, or *turri*; but *restis*, a rope, and *cŭtis*, the skin, have *e* only.*

---

* Several nouns which have only *em* in the accusative, have *e* or *i* in the ablative; as, *fīnis*, *supellex*, *vectis*, *pŭgil*, a champion; *mŭgil* or *mugĭlis*; so *rus*, *occĭput*: Also names of towns, when the question is made by *ubi*; as, *habĭtat Carthagĭne* or *Carthagĭni*, he lives at Carthage. So, *civis*, *classis*, *sors*, *imber*, *anguis*, *avis*, *postis*, *fustis*, *amnis*, and *ignis*; but these have oftener *e*. *Canālis* has only *i*. The most ancient writers made the ablative of many other nouns in *i*; as, *æstāti*, *cani*, *lapĭdi*, *ovis*; &c.

Exc. 3. Adjectives used as substantives have commonly the same ablative with the adjective; as, *bĭpennis*, *-i*, a halbert; *mŏlāris*, *-i*, a mill-stone; *quadrĭrēmis*, *-i*, a ship with four banks of oars. So names of months, *Aprīlis*, *-i*; *Dĕcember*, *-bri*, &c. But *rŭdis*, f. a rod given to gladiators when discharged; *jŭvĕnis*, a young man, have *e* only; and likewise nouns ending in *il*, *x*, *ceps*, or *ns*; as,

Adŏlescens, *a young man.*	Princeps, a prince.	Torrens, *a brook.*
Infans, *an infant.*	Sĕnex, *an old man.*	Vĭgil, *a watchman.*

Exc. 4. Nouns in *ys*, which have *ym* in the accusative, make their ablative in *ye*, or *y*; as, *Atys*, *Atye*, or *Aty*, the name of a man.

NOMINATIVE PLURAL.

1. The nominative plural ends in *es*, when the noun is either masculine or feminine; as, *sermōnes*, *rupes*.

Nouns in *is* and *es* have sometimes in the nominative plural also *eis* or *is*; as, *puppes*, *puppeis*, or *puppis*.

2. Neuters which have *e* in the ablative singular, have *a* in the nominative plural; as, *capĭta*, *itinĕra:* but those which have *i* in the ablative, make *ia*; as, *sedīlia*, *calcāria*.

GENITIVE PLURAL.

Nouns which in the ablative singular have *i* only, or either *e* or *i*, make the genitive plural in *ium*; but if the ablative be in *e* only, the genitive plural has *um*; as, *sedīle*, *sedīli*, *sedilium*; *turris*, *turre* or *turri*, *turrium*; *caput*, *capĭte*, *capĭtum*.

Exc. 1. Monosyllables in *as* have *ium*, though their ablative end in *e*; as, *mas*, a male, *măre*, *marium*; *vas*, a surety, *vadĭum:* but polysyllables have rather *um*; as, *cīvĭtas*, a state or city, *civitātum*, and sometimes *civitatium*.

Exc. 2. Nouns in *es* and *is*, which do not increase in the genitive singular, have also *ium*; as, *hostis*, an enemy, *hostium*. So likewise nouns ending in two consonants; as, *gens*, a nation, *gentium*; *urbs*, a city, *urbium*.

But the following have *um*; *parens*, *vātes*, *volŭcris*, *pānis*, *jŭvĕnis*, *opes*, *forceps*, and *cănis*. Horace, however, has *parentium*. Od. iii. 4, 23.

Exc. 3. The following nouns form the genitive plural in *ium*, though they have *e* only in the ablative singular:

Arx, arcis, f. *a castle.*
Caro, carnis, f. *flesh.*
Cohors, -tis, f. *a company.*
Cor. cordis, n. *the heart.*
Cos, cōtis, f. *a hone* or *whetstone.*
Dos, dōtis, f. *a dowry.*
Faux, faucis, f. *the jaws.*
Glis, glīris, m. *a rat.*
Lar, lăris, m. *a household god.*
Linter, -tris, m. or f. *a little boat.*
Lis, lĭtis, f. *strife.*
Mus, mūris, m. *a mouse.*
Nix, nĭvis, f. *snow.*
Nox, noctis, f. *the night.*
Os, ossis, n. *a bone.*
Quĭris, -ĭtis, *a Roman.*
Samnis, -tis, m. or f. *a Samnite.*
Uter, utris, m. *a bottle.*

Thus *Samnitium*, *lintrium*, *litium*, &c. Also the compounds of *uncia* and *as*: as, *septunx*, seven ounces, *septuncium*; *bes*, eight ounces, *bessium*.

Bos, an ox or cow, has *boum*; and in the dative, *bōbus*, or *būbus*.

Greek nouns have generally *um*; as, *Măcĕdo*, a Macedonian; *Arabs*, an Arabian; *Æthiops*, an Ethiopian; *monocĕros*, an unicorn; *lynx*, a beast so called; *Thrax*, a Thracian; *Macedŏnum*, *Arăbum*, *Æthiŏpum*, *monocerŏtum*, *lyncum*, *Thrăcum*. But those which have *a* or *sis* in the nominative singular, sometimes form the genitive plural in *ôn*; as, *Epigramma*, *epigrammătum*, or *epigrammătôn*, an epigram; *metamorphosis*, *-ium*, or *eôn*.

Obs. 1. Nouns, which want the singular, form the genitive plural as if they were complete; thus, *mānes*, m. souls departed, *manium*; *cælĭtes*, m. inhabitants of heaven, *cælĭtum*; because they would have had in the sing. *manis* or *manes*, and *cæles*. But names of feasts often vary their declension; as, *Saturnālia*, the feasts of Saturn, *Saturnalium* and *Saturnaliōrum*. So, *Bacchanalia*, *Compitalia*, *Terminalia*, &c.

Obs. 2. Nouns which have *ium* in the genitive plural, are, by the poets, often contracted into *ûm*; as, *nocentûm* for *nocentium*: and sometimes, to increase the number of syllables, a letter is inserted; as, *calĭtuum*, for *calĭtum*. The former of these is said to be done by the figure *Syncŏpe*; and the latter by *Epenthĕsis*.

EXCEPTIONS IN THE DATIVE PLURAL.

Exc. 1. Greek nouns in *a* have commonly *tis* instead of *tĭbus*; as, *poēma*, a poem, *poemătis*, rather than *poematĭbus*, from the old nominative *poemătum*, of the second declension.

Exc. 2. The poets sometimes form the dative plural of Greek nouns in *si*, or, when the next word begins with a vowel, in *sin*; as, *Troăsi* or *Troăsin*, for *Troădĭbus*, from *Troas*, *Troădis* or *Troădos*, a Trojan woman.

Exc. 3. *Bos*, an ox, has *bōbus* or *bubus*; *Sus*, a swine, *suibus*, *sŭbus*, or *sūbus*.

EXCEPTIONS IN THE ACCUSATIVE PLURAL.

Exc. 1. Nouns which have *ium* in the genitive plural, make their accusative plural in *es*, *eis*, or *is*; as, *partes*, *partium*, acc. *partes*, *parteis*, or *partis*.

Exc. 2. If the accusative singular end in *a*, the accusative plural also ends in *as*; as, *lampas*, *lampădem*, or *lampăda*; *lampădes* or *lampădas*. So *Tros*, *Troas*; *heros*, *herōas*; *Æthiops*, *Æthiōpas*, &c.

GREEK NOUNS THROUGH ALL THE CASES.

Lampas, a lamp, f. *lampădis*, or *-ados*, *-ădi*, *-ădem*, or *-ăda*, *-as*, *-ăde*. Plur. *-ădes*, *-ădum*, *-ădĭbus*, *-ădes*, or *-ădas*, *-ădes*, *-ădĭbus*.

Troas, f. *Troădis*, or *-dos*, *-di*, *-dem*, or *-da*, *-as*, *-de*. Plur. *Troădes*, *-dum*, *-dĭbus* or *-si* or *-sin*, *-des*, or *-das*, *-des*, *-dĭbus*.

Tros, m. *Trois*, *Troi*, *Troem* or *-a*, *Tros*, *Troe*, &c.

Phillis, f. *Phillĭdis* or *-dos*, *-di*, *-dem* or *-da*, *-i* or *-is*, *-de*.

Păris, m. *Părĭdis* or *-dos*, *-di*, *-dem* or *Parim* or *-in*, *-i*, *-de*.

Chlămys, f. *chlamy̆dis* or *-y̆dos*, *-y̆di*, *-y̆dem* or *-y̆da*, *-y̆s*, *-y̆de*, &c.

Căpys, m. *Capy̆is* or *-y̆os*, *-yi*, *-ym*, or *-yn*, *-y*, *-ye* or *-y*.

Mĕtămorphōsis, f. *-is* or *-ios*, or *-eos*, *-i*, *-im* or *-in*, *-i*, *-i*, &c.

An alphabetical list of most of the irregular Nouns, both substantive and adjective, of the Third Declension.

* Those thus marked, have *e* only in the ablative, and *um* in the genitive plural.

† Those having *i* or *e* and *i* in the ablative, and *um* in the genitive plural, are thus marked.

‡ Such substantives have *i*, because they are formed from adjectives, having *i* only in the ablative. Though used as substantives, they are in reality adjectives, the substantive with which they agree being understood.

§ Substantives, thus marked, take either termination indifferently: those not marked take, in general, the first termination mentioned.

|| *Carthágo* and such nouns have *e* or *i* when at a place is signified, that is, when the question is made by *ubi* 'where?' The names of Gods, rivers, &c., in *is*, take, in general, *im* or *in* in the accusative, *i* or sometimes *e* in the ablative.

A	*Acc. Sing.*	*Abl. Sing.*	*Gen. Pl.*
Adolescens,	- - - -	- - - -	tium, *rather* tum.
Amnis, - -	- - - -	e *or* i *raro.*	
Amussis, -	im, - - -	i.	
Anguis, - -	- - - -	e *or* i.	
Aprilis, - -	em, - -	i.	
Aqualis, § - -	im, *or* em, - -	i *or* e.	
Araris, - -	im, - - -	e.	
As *and compounds*,	- - - -	- - - -	ium.
Avis, - -	- - - -	e *or* i.	
Adjectives.			
Ales, † - -	- - - -	e *or* i.	itum.
Anceps, † -	- - - -	e or i.	itum, (ia, *nom.*)
Artifex, † -	- - - -	e *or* i.	um.
B.			
Bœtes, || - -	im *or* in, - -	i *or* e.	
Bilbilis, - -	im, - - -	i.	
Bipennis, ‡ - -	- - - -	i.	
Bos, - - -	- - - -	- - - -	boum, (bobus, *dat.*)
Buris, - -	im, - - -	i.	
C.			
Canalis, - -	em, - - -	i.	
Cannabis, - -	im, - - -	i *or* e.	
Carthago, || - -	- - - -	i *or* e.	
Caro, - -	- - - -	- - - -	nium.
Centussis, - -	im.		
Civis, - -	- - - -	e *or* i.	
Classis, - -	- - - -	e *or* i.	
Cohors, - -	- - - -	- - - -	tium.
Clavis, § - -	im, em, - -	i *or* e.	
Cor, - - -	- - - -	- - - -	dium.
Cos, - - -	- - - -	- - - -	tium.

	Acc. Sing.	Abl. Sing.	Gen. Pl.
Collis,		e *or* i.	
Cucumis,	im,	i.	
Cutis,	im	i *or* e.	
Adjectives.			
Capio, *compounds of in* -ceps,		e *or* i.	um.
Caput, *compounds of in* -ceps,		e *or* i,	um.
Celer, †		i,	um.
Cœlebs, *		e,	um.
Compar, †		e, *or* i,	um.
Compos,*		ote,	um.
Concolor, *		e,	um.
Color, *comp. of,* *		e,	um.
Corpus, *comp. of in* -or, *		e,	um.
Consors, †		e *or* i,	um.
Concors,		i *or* e *rarely,*	ium.
D.			
Decussis,	im.		
Dos,			tium.
Adjectives.			
Degener, †		e *or* i,	um.
Dispar, †		e *or* i,	um.
Dives, *		e, *sometimes* i,	um.
F.			
Familiaris, ‡		i *or* e.	
Faux,			cium.
Febris, §	im, em,	i, e.	
Finis,		i, e.	
Fornax,			cium.
Fustis,		e, i.	
Facio, *comp. of in* -fex,		e *or* i,	um.
G.			
Gausape (*perhaps indecl.*)		e.	
Glis,			rium.
Gummis,	im,	i.	
Genus, *comp. of in* -er,			um.
H.			
Hæresis,	im, in,	i.	
Hospes, *adj.* *		ite,	um.
I.			
Ignis,		e *or* i.	
Imber,		e *or* i.	
Infans,			tium.
Jus,		jure,	um, ium *seldom.*
Juvenis,		e,	um.
Adjectives.			
Impos, *		ote,	um.
Impar, †		e *or* i,	um.
Impubes, *		ere,	um.
Inops, †		e *or* i,	um.

L.	*Acc. Sing.*	*Abl. Sing.*	*Gen. Pl.*
Labes,		e *or* i.	
Lar,			ium.
Lens, §	tim, tem,	ti, te.	
Linter,			ium.
Lis,			tium.
Locuples, *adj.*		e *or* i,	um, ium *seldom.*
M.			
Mephitis,	im,	i.	
Messis,		e *or* i.	
Molaris, ‡		i.	
Mons,		e *or* i.	
Mugil,		e *or* i,	um.
Mus,			rium.[1]
Memo, *adj.* † (*olim* Memoris,)		i,	um.
N.			
Natalis, ‡		i *or* e.	
Navis, §	im, em,	i *or* e.	
Nix,			nivium.
November, (*and such,*)	em,	i.	
O.			
Occiput, §		i *or* e.	
October,	em,	i.	
Orbis,		e *or* i.	
Os, ossis,			ossium.
Ovis,	em, im,	e *or* i.	
P.			
Pelvis, §	im, em,	i *or* e.	
Par, *m.* & *f.*		e,	ium.
Par, *n.*		i,	ium.
Palus,			udium.
Pars,		e *or* i.	
Postis,		e *or* i.	
Pugil, §		i *or* e.	
Puppis, §	im, em,	i *or* e.	
Adjectives.			
Par, †		i,	ium.
Particeps, †		e *or* i,	um.
Pauper, *		ere,	um.
Pes, *comp. of* *		e,	um.
Princeps, †		e *or* i,	um.
Præceps, *		i, e,	tum (ia, *nom.*)
Plus,		ri, re,	rium.
Pubes, *		ere,	um.
Q.			
Quintilis (*and such,*)	em,	i.	
Quiris,			itium, itum.
R.			
Ratis,	em, im,	e, i.	
Ravis,	im,	i.	
Restis,	im, em,	e.	
Rivalis, ‡		i *or* e.	

[1] Semel apud Ciceronem *murum.*

	Acc. Sing.	*Abl. Sing.*	*Gen. Pl.*
Rus, § - -	- - - -	i *or* e.	
Rudis, - -	- - - -	e.	
S.			
Sal, - -	- - - -	e *or* i.	
Samnis, - -	- - - -	- - - -	tium
Securis, - -	im, em, - -	e.	
Seges, - -	- - - -	e *or* i.	
Sementis, § - -	im, em, - -	i *or* e.	
Senex, - -	- - - -	e, - - -	um.
Sentis, - -	em, im, - -	e *or* i.	
Septunx, - -	- - - -	- - - -	cium.
Serapis, ‖ - -	im, - -	i.	
Sextans, - -	- - - -	- - - -	tium.
Sextilis, - -	em, - -	i.	
Sinapis, - -	im, - -	i, e *raro.*	
Sitis, - -	im, - -	i.	
Sodalis, ‡ - -	- - - -	i *or* e.	
Sordes, - -	- - - -	e *or* i.	
Sors, - -	- - - -	e *or* i.	
Strigilis, - -	em, im *seldom,*	e.	
Supellex, § - -	- - - -	i *or* e.	
Adjectives.			
Senex, * - -	- - - -	e, - - -	um.
Sospes, * - -	- - - -	ite, - - -	um.
Superstes, * - -	- - - -	ite, - - -	um.
Supplex, † - -	- - - -	ici, *or* e, - -	um.
T.			
Tibris, ‖ - -	im, in, - -	i, e, ide.	
Tigris, ‖ - -	im, in, - -	i, e.	
Tridens, § - -	- - - -	i *or* e.	
Turris, § - -	im, em, - -	i *or* e.	
Tussis, - -	im, em, - -	i *or* e.	
Adjectives.			
Tricorpor, * - -	- - - -	e, - - -	um.
Tricuspis, * - -	- - - -	e, - - -	um.
Tripes,* - -	- - - -	e, - - -	um.
U, V.			
Vectis, - -	- - - -	e *or* i.	
Venter, - -	- - - -	- - - -	ium.
Vigil, § - -	- - - -	e *or* i, - -	um.
Vis, *pl.* vires,	vim, - - -	vi, - -	rium.
Unguis, - -	- - - -	e *or* i.	
Volucris, ‡ - -	- - - -	i *or* e, - -	um.
Uter, - - -	- - - -	- - - -	ium.
Adjectives, -			
Uber, † - -	- - - -	e *or* i, - -	um.
Vetus, * - -	- - - -	i, e *seldom,* -	um.
Vigil, † - -	- - - -	i, e, - -	um, ium *seldom.*
Volucris, † - -	- - - -	i, - - -	um, ium *seldom.*

FOURTH DECLENSION.

Nouns of the fourth declension end in *us* and *u*. Nouns in *us* are masculine; nouns in *u* are neuter, and indeclinable in the singular number.

TERMINATIONS.

Singular.		*Plural.*	
Nom. Voc.	us, *or* u,	Nom. Acc. Voc.	us, *or* ua,
Gen.	ûs,	Gen.	uum,
Dat.	ui,	Dat. Abl.	ĭbus.
Acc.	um,		
Abl.	u.		

Fructus, *fruit*, masc.

Singular.		*Plural.*	
N. fructus,	*fruit,*	N. fructus,	*fruits,*
G. fructûs,	*of fruit,*	G. fructuum,	*of fruits,*
D. fructui,	*to fruit,*	D. fructĭbus,	*to fruits,*
A. fructum,	*fruit,*	A. fructus,	*fruits,*
V. fructus,	*O fruit,*	V. fructus,	*O fruits,*
A. fructu,	*with fruit.*	A. fructĭbus,	*with fruits.*

Cornu, *a horn*, neut.

Singular.		*Plural.*	
N. cornu,	*a horn,*	N. cornua,	*horns,*
G. cornu,	*of a horn,*	G. cornuum,	*of horns,*
D. cornu,	*to a horn,*	D. cornĭbus,	*to horns,*
A. cornu,	*a horn,*	A. cornua,	*horns,*
V. cornu,	*O horn,*	V. cornua,	*O horns,*
A. cornu,	*with a horn.*	A. cornĭbus,	*with horns.*

Exc. 1. The following nouns are feminine:

Acus, *a needle.*
Anus, *an old woman.*
Dŏmus, *a house.*
Fīcus, *a fig.*
Idus, uum, *the ides of a month.*
Mănus, *the hand.*
Pĕnus, *a store-house.*
Portĭcus, *a gallery.*
Spĕcus, *a den.*
Trĭbus, *a tribe.*

Penus and *specus* are sometimes masculine. *Ficus, penus*, and *domus*, with several others, are also of the second declension. *Capricornus*, m. the sign Capricorn, although from *cornu*, is always of the second decl. and so are the compounds of *manus; unimănus*, having one hand; *centimănus*, &c. adj. *Quercus*, an oak, has *quercōrum*, and *-uum*, in the gen. pl. *Versus* has *versi, versōrum, versis*, as well as its regular cases. *Senātus* has also *-āti*, in the gen.

Domus is but partly of the second declension; thus,

Dŏmus, *a house*, fem.

Singular.		*Plural.*	
N. domus,	*a house,*	N. domus,	*houses,*
G. domûs, *or* mi,	*of a house,*	G. domorum, *or* -uum,	*of houses,*
D. domui, or -mo,	*to a house,*	D. domĭbus,	*to houses,*
A. domum,	*a house,*	A. domos, *or* -us,	*houses,*
V. domus,	*O house,*	V. domus,	*O houses,*
A. domo,	*with a house.*	A. domĭbus,	*with houses.*

Note. *Domûs*, in the genitive, signifies, of a house; and *domi*, at home, *or* of home; as, *meminĕris domi.* Terent. Eun. iv. 7. 45.

Exc. 2. The following nouns have *ŭbus*, in the dative and ablative plural.

Acus, *a needle.*	Lăcus, *a lake.*	Spĕcus, *a den.*
Arcus, *a bow.*	Partus, *a birth.*	Trĭbus, *a tribe.*
Artus, *a joint.*	Portus, *a harbour.*	Vĕru, *a spit.*
Genu, *the knee.*		

Portus, genu, and *veru*, have likewise *ĭbus;* as, *portĭbus* or *portŭbus.*

Exc. 3. Jesus, the venerable name of our Saviour, has *um* in the accusative, and *u* in all the other cases.*

FIFTH DECLENSION.

Nouns of the fifth declension end in *es*, and are of the feminine gender.

---

* Nouns of the fourth declension anciently belonged to the third, and were declined like *grus, gruis*, a crane; thus, *fructus, fructuis, fructui, fructuem, fructus, fructue; fructues, fructuum, fructuĭbus, fructues, fructues, fructuĭbus.* So that all the cases are contracted, except the dative singular, and genitive plural. In some writers, we still find the genitive singular in *uis;* as, *Ejus anuis causâ*, for *anûs.* Terent. Heaut. ii. 3. 46. and in others, the dative in *u;* as, *Resistĕre impĕtû*, for *impetui.* Cic. Fam. x. 24. *Esse usû sibi*, for *usui.* Ib. xiii. 71. The gen. plur. is sometimes contracted; as, *currûm*, for *curruum.*

TERMINATIONS.

Singular.		Plural.	
Nom. Voc.	es,	Nom. Acc. Voc.	es,
Gen. Dat.	ei,	Gen.	ērum,
Acc.	em,	Dat. Abl.	ēbus.
Abl.	e.		

Res, *a thing*, fem.

Singular.		Plural.	
N. res,	*a thing,*	**N.** res,	*things,*
G. rĕi,	*of a thing,*	**G.** rērum,	*of things,*
D. rĕi,	*to a thing,*	**D.** rēbus,	*to things,*
A. rem,	*a thing,*	**A.** res,	*things,*
V. res,	*O thing,*	**V.** res,	*O things,*
A. re,	*with a thing.*	**A.** rēbus,	*with things.*

In like manner decline,

Acies, *the edge of a thing, or an army in order of battle.*
Căries, *rottenness.*
Cæsăries, *the hair.*
Făcies, *the face.*
Glăcies, *ice.*
Inglŭvies, *gluttony.*
Măcies, *leanness.*
Mātĕries, *matter.*
Pernĭcies, *destruction.*
Prōlŭvies, *a looseness.*
Răbies, *madness.*
Sănies, *gore.*
Scăbies, *the scab,* or *itch.*
Sĕries, *an order,* or *row.*
Spĕcies, *an appearance.*
Sŭperfĭcies, *the surface.*
Tempĕries, *temperateness.*

Except *dies*, a day, masc. or fem. in the singular, and always masc. in the plural; and *meridies*, the mid-day, or noon, masc.

The poets sometimes make the genitive, and more rarely the dative singular, in *e*; as, *fide*, for *fidĕi*. Ov. M. 3. 341.

Gen. *Diē*, Virg. G. i. 208. Sallust, Jug. 52, 106. *Aciē*, Sallust. Dat. *Diē* Plaut. *Făciē*, Gell. *Fĭdē*, Sallust, Jug. Hor. i. Sat. 3. 95. We find such Genitives also as, *Acii*, *Pernĭcii*, *Fĭdī*, &c. A few have their Genitive from the Third, as *Rĕquiēs*, *ēi*, or *ētis*, rest. *Plēbēs*, the common people, makes *plēbis*, *plēbēi*, or *plēbi*; *Fămēs*, hunger, *fămis*, or *fămēi*.

The nouns of this declension are few in number, not exceeding fifty, and seem anciently to have been comprehended under the third declension. Most of them want the genitive, dative, and ablative plural, and many, the plural altogether.

All nouns of the fifth declension end in *ies*, except three; *fides*, faith; *spes*, hope; *res*, a thing; and all nouns in *ies* are of the fifth, except these four; *ăbies*, a fir-tree; *ăries*, a ram; *păries*, a wall; and *quies*, rest; which are of the third declension. *Requies* is of the third and fifth declension.

Of the fifty-seven nouns of this declension, only two, *Rēs*, and *Diēs*, are complete in the plural. The following plurals occur: Nom. or Accus, *Acies*, *Făciēs*, *Elŭviēs*, *Prōgĕniēs*, *Scăbiēs*, *Spĕciēs*, *Spēs*, *Sŭperfĭcies*.—Gen. *Făciērum*, *Spĕciērum*, *Spērum*, *Mātĕrieum*, *Luxŭrieum*.—Dat. or Abl. *Spēbus*, *Sŭperfĭciēbus*. '*Spĕciērum* et *Spĕciēbus* nolim dicere, ne si Latine quidem dici possit.'—*Cicero*.

SYNOPSIS OF THE FIVE DECLENSIONS.

[Greek words and neuters are omitted. The nominative singular also does not appear in its various forms.]

	I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
Sing.					
Nom.					
Gen.	*æ,*	*i,*	*is,*	*ûs,*	*ei.*
Dat.	*æ,*	*o,*	*i,*	*ui,*	*ei*
Acc.	*am,*	*um,*	*em,*	*um,*	*em.*
Voc.	as Nom.	as Nom.	as Nom.	as Nom.	as Nom.
Abl.	*â,*	*o,*	*e,*	*u,*	*e.*
Plural.					
Nom.	*æ,*	*i,*	*es,*	*us,*	*es.*
Gen.	*ārum,*	*ōrum,*	*um,*	*uum,*	*ērum.*
Dat.	*is,*	*is,*	*ĭbus,*	*ĭbus,*	*ēbus.*
Acc.	*as,*	*os,*	*es,*	*us,*	*es.*
Voc.	*æ,*	*i,*	*es,*	*us,*	*es.*
Abl.	*is,*	*is,*	*ibus,*	*ĭbus,*	*ēbus.*

IRREGULAR NOUNS.

Irregular nouns may be reduced to three classes, *Variable*, *Defective*, and *Redundant*.

I. VARIABLE NOUNS.

Nouns are variable either in gender, or declension, or in both.

Heterogeneous Nouns.

Those which vary in gender are called *heterogeneous*, and may be reduced to the following classes:

1. *Masculine in the singular, and neuter in the plural.*

Avernus, *a lake in Campania, hell.*
Dindy̆mus, *a hill in Phrygia.*
Ismărus, *a hill in Thrace.*
Massĭcus, *a hill in Campania, famous for excellent wines.*
Mænălus, *a hill in Arcadia.*
Pangæus, *a promontory in Thrace.*
Tænărus, *a promontory in Laconia.*
Tartărus, *hell.*
Tay̆gĕtus, *a hill in Laconia.*

Thus, *Averna, Avernōrum ; Dindy̆ma, -ōrum, &c.* These are thought by some to be properly adjectives, having *mons* understood in the singular, and *juga*, or *cacumĭna*, or the like, in the plural.

2. *Masc. in the sing. and in the plur. masc. and neuter.*

Jŏcus, a jest, pl. *joci* and *joca; lŏcus*, a place, pl. *loci* and *loca*. When we speak of passages in a book, or topics in a discourse, *loci* only is used.

3. *Feminine in the singular, and neuter in the plural.*

Carbăsus, a sail, pl. *carbăsa; Pergămus*, the citadel of Troy, pl. *Pergăma.*

4. *Neuter in the singular, and masculine in the plural.*

Cœlum, pl. *cœli*, heaven; *Elўsium*, pl. *Elysii*, the Elysian fields; *Argos*, pl. *Argi*, a city in Greece.

5. *Neuter in the sing. in the plur. masc. or neuter.*

Rastrum, a rake, pl. *rastri* and *rastra; frænum*, a bridle, pl. *fræni* and *fræna.*

6. *Neuter in the singular, and feminine in the plural.*

Dēlĭcium, a delight, pl. *deliciæ; ĕpŭlum*, a banquet, pl. *ĕpŭlæ; balneum*, a bath, pl. *balneæ* and *balnea.*

Heteroclites.

Nouns which vary in declension are called *heteroclites;* as, *vas, văsis*, a vessel, pl. *văsa, vasōrum; jūgĕrum, jugĕri*, an acre, pl. *jūgĕra, jugĕrum, jugerĭbus*, which has likewise sometimes *jugĕris*, and *jugĕre*, in the singular, from the obsolete *jugus*, or *juger.*

In double nouns, both nouns are declined when combined in the nominative case; as,

Respublica, *a commonwealth*, fem.

Singular.	*Plural.*
N. respublĭca,	N. respublĭcæ,
G. reipublĭcæ,	G. rerumpublicārum,
D. reipublĭcæ,	D. rebuspublĭcis,
A. rempublĭcam,	A. respublĭcas,
V. respublica,	V. respublĭcæ,
A. republĭcâ.	A. rebuspublĭcis.

Jusjurandum, *an oath*, neut.

Singular.	*Plural.*
N. jusjurandum,	N. jurajuranda,
G. jurisjurandi,	G. *jurumjurandōrum*,*
D. jurijurando,	D. *juribusjurandis*,
A. jusjurandum,	A. jurajuranda,
V. jusjurandum,	V. jurajuranda,
A. jurejurando.	A. *juribusjurandis.*

* The Gen. Dat. and Abl. plural are not used.

If a nominative is combined with some other case, then the nominative only is declined; as,

Paterfamilias, *a master of a family*, masc.

N. paterfamilias,
G. patrisfamilias,
D. patrifamilias,
A. patremfamilias,
V. paterfamilias,
A. patrefamilias,

Some nouns are both of the second and third declension; as,

N.	G.	D.	A.	V.	Ab.
Orpheus,	ei,	eo,	eum, *or* eon,	——	eo; 2d Declen.
	eos,	ei,	ea,	eu,	—; 3d Declen.

N.	G.	D.	A.	V.	Ab.
Œdĭpus,	i,	o,	um,	—	o; 2d Declen.
	ŏdis,	ŏdi,	ŏdem,	u,	ŏde; 3d Declen.

N.	G.	D.	A.	V.	Ab.
Achilleus,	ei,	eo,	——	eu,	eo; 2d Declen.
Achilles,	lis, *or* lĕos,	li,	lem, *or* len,	les, *or* le,	le; 3d Declen.

Some nouns are of peculiar declension.

Singular.	*Singular.*	*Plural.*
N. Jupĭter,	N. vis,	N. vires,
G. Jovis,	G. vis,	G. virium,
D. Jovi,	D. —	D. virĭbus,
A. Jovem,	A. vim,	A. vires,
V. Jupĭter,	V. vis,	V. vires,
A. Jove.	A. vi.	A. virĭbus.

Singular.	*Plural.*
N. bos,	N. boves,
G. bovis,	G. boum,
D. bovi,	D. bobus, *or* bubus,
A. bovem,	A. boves,
V. bos,	V. boves,
A. bove.	A. bobus, *or* bubus.

II. DEFECTIVE NOUNS.

Nouns are defective either in cases or in number.

Nouns are defective in cases different ways.

I. Some are altogether indeclinable, and are therefore called *Aptōta*, or *Aptotes*.*

Nouns in *u* are indeclinable in the singular number, but regular in the plural, as, *cornu*, a horn, plural, *cornua, cornuum*, &c.

Most nouns in *i* are indeclinable in both numbers; as *gummi*, 'gum;' *sināpi*, 'mustard.'

Foreign or barbarous words, that is, names which are neither Greek nor Latin; as, *Job, Jerusalem, Abraham, Adam.*

Any words put for nouns, as *velle tuum*, 'thy will;' *Istud cras*, 'that to-morrow;' *O magnum Græcōrum*, 'the 'Omega,' or large O of the Greeks.'

Cardinal numbers from *Quatuor* to *Centum:* also *tot, quot*, and their plurals. *Mille*, the adjective, is a plural aptote of all genders. *Mille*, the substantive, is an aptote in the singular, but regular in the plural; as, *millia, millium*, &c.

Cepe, 'an onion;' *mane*, 'the morning;' *gausăpe*, 'a rough coat;' all of them neuter.

Nequam and *frugi* are aptotes in both numbers: so, *pondo*, 'a pound,' is used in the plural; *Duo pondo*, 'two pounds.'

Praesto and *satis* are generally considered adverbs.

II. Some are used only in the one case, and are therefore called *Monoptōta.*

Nominatives singular. *Inquies*, 'want of rest;' *potis*, neuter *pote*, able;' *exspes*, 'hopeless.'

Genitives. *Dicis* and *nauci*. *Dicis gratiâ* 'for form's sake:' *res nauci*, 'a thing of no value.' Yet abl. *nauco* occurs in Naev. ap. Fest.

Datives. *Despicatui*, 'contempt;' *Ludificatui*, 'mockery.'

Accusatives. *Amissum*, 'a loss;' *decemplĭcem*, 'ten-fold;' *trilĭcem*, 'trebly-tissued;' *procĕrem*, 'a peer.'

Ablatives. *Noctu*, 'in the night time;' *interdiu*, 'in the day time;' *natu*, 'by birth;' *injussu*, 'without command;' *missu*, 'by despatch;' *promptu*, 'in readiness;' *ergô*, 'for the sake of;' *Ambāge*, 'with a winding story;' *casse*, 'with a net;' *compĕde*, 'with a fetter;' *fauce*, 'in the throat;' are all regular in the plural except *ambāge*, which wants the genitive; as, *ambāges, ambagibus; compedes, compedium, compedĭbus.*

Accusatives plural. *Inficias*, 'a denial;' as, *ire inficias*, 'to deny;' *incĭtas* or *incĭta*, 'extremities,' 'nonplus;' as, *ad incĭtas redactus*, 'reduced to one's wit's end.'

Ablative. *Ingratiis*, 'in spite of one,' 'against one's will.'

---

* From *α* priv. "not," and *πτῶσις*, 'a case,' because they have no case.

III. Some are used only in two cases, and therefore are called *Diptōta.*

Nom. and Acc. *Necesse* or *necessum,* 'necessity;' *volŭpe* or *volup,* 'pleasure;' *instar,* 'likeness;' *astu,* 'a city;' *dica, dicam,* 'an action at law;' *hir,* 'the palm of the hand.'

Nom. and Abl. *Astus, astu,* 'craft;' *vesper, vespere,* or *vesperi,* 'the evening;' *siremps, sirempse,* 'the same,' 'all alike.'

Gen. and Abl. *Impĕtis,* m. *impĕte,* 'force;' *verbĕris,* n. *verbere,* 'a stripe;' *spontis, sponte,* 'of one's own accord;' *jugeris, jugĕre,* 'an acre;' but *jugĕris,* and *verbĕris* are both entire in the plural.

Dat. and Abl. *Hortatui* and *hortatu,* 'exhortation;' *Irrisui, irrīsu,* 'derision;' *obtentui, obtentu,* 'a covering,' 'a pretext.'

Acc. and Abl. *veprem* and *vepre,* 'a briar.'

Nom. and Acc. plur. *Suppetiæ, suppetias,* 'help,' 'supplies,' *inferiæ, inferias,* 'sacrifices to the dead.'

Gen. and Abl. plur. *Repetundārum, repetundis,* 'extortion.'

IV. Several nouns are only used in three cases, and therefore called *Triptōta.*

Nom. Gen. and Abl. *Tabum, i, o,* 'gore.'

Nom. Acc. and Voc. *Fas,* 'right;' *nefas,* 'wrong;' *nihil* or *nil,* 'nothing;' *epos,* 'an heroic poem;' *melos* 'a song;' *hippomănes,* 'a kind of poison which grows on the forehead of a foal;' *cacoethēs,* 'an evil custom;' and other Greek neuters in *es.*

Nom. Gen. and Acc. *Tantundem, tantīdem, tantundem,* 'even as much.'

Nom. Acc. and Abl. *Algus, um, u,* 'cold;' *Inquies, ētem, ēte* adj. 'restless;' *Obex, ĭcem, ĭce,* 'a bolt;' *Satias, ātem, āte, satiety;* *Situs, um, u,* 'situation.'

Gen. Acc. and Abl. *Femĭnis, i, e,* 'the thigh,' plural *femĭna* in nom. acc. and voc. *Opis, em, e,* 'help,' plur. *opes, opium,* &c., and generally signifies 'wealth,' or 'power.' *Sordis, em, e,* 'filth,' plur. *sordes, ium, ĭbus.*

Dat. Acc. and Abl. *Preci, em, e,* 'prayer;' plur. *preces. um, ĭtus, &c.* *Derisui, um, u,* 'ridicule;' *Nuptui, um, u,* 'marriage.'

Nom. Acc. and Voc. Plural, the neuters *Cete,* 'whales,' *Tempe,* 'a beautiful vale in Thessaly,' *mele,* 'songs.'

V. The following nouns want the Nominative, and of consequence the Vocative, and are therefore called *Tetraptōta.*

Vicis, f. 'of the place,' or 'stead of another;' *Pecŭdis,* f. 'of a beast;' *Ditiōnis,* f. 'of power, dominion;' of these *pecŭdis* has the plural entire; *ditiōnis* wants it altogether; *vicis* is not used in the genitive plural. To these add *Nex,* 'slaughter;' *Daps,* 'a dish of meat;' and *Frux,* 'corn;' hardly used in the nominative singular, but in the plural mostly entire. *Fors, fortis, fortem, forte,* 'chance,' 'fortune,' is not used in the dative. [*Forti Fortūnæ* occurs in Arnob. lib. vii. and on some ancient coins and monuments.]

VI. Some nouns only want one case, and are called *Pentaptōta*.

Thus, *Fax, faex, fel, glos, labes, lux, os* ('the mouth') *pax, pix, proles, pus, ros, sobŏles*, and *sol* want the genitive plural. *Chaos* 'a confused mass,' wants the gen. singular, and the plural entirely ; dat. sing. *chao*. *Vis*, 'strength,' seldom has the dative singular, but plural complete. *Nemo*, 'no body,' wants the vocative singular, and has no plural. Such words as *qualis, quantus, quotus*, have no vocative.

DEFECTIVE IN NUMBER.

I. PROPER NAMES OF PERSONS strictly want the plural.

II. PROPER NAMES OF PLACES are used in the singular or plural only ; as,

Italia, 'Italy;' *Athēnae*, 'Athens.'

III. Most names of VIRTUES, VICES, HERBS, METALS, MINERALS, LIQUIDS, CORN, most ABSTRACT NOUNS, &c., want the plural; as,

Justitia, 'justice;' ***Inertia***, 'sloth;' ***Apium***, 'parsley;' ***Argentum***, 'silver;' ***Aurum***, 'gold;' ***Lac***, 'milk;' ***Tritĭcum***, 'wheat;' ***Hordeum***, 'barley;' ***Avēna***, 'oats;' ***Juventus***, 'youth;' ***Pueritia***, 'childhood;' &c.

IV. Masculines wanting the Plural.

Aër, aëris, *the air.*
Æther, -ĕris, *the sky.*
Cestus, -ī, *the girdle of Venus.*
Fĭmus, -i, *dung.*
Hespĕrus, -i, *the evening star.*
Līmus, -i, *slime.*
Mĕridies, -iēi, *mid-day.*
Mundus, -i, *a woman's ornaments.*
Muscus, -i, *moss.*
Nēmo, -ĭnis, c. g. *no body.*
Pĕnus, -i, *or* -ûs, d. g. *all manner of provisions.*
Pontus, -i, *the sea.*
Pulvis, -ĕris, *dust.*
Sabulo, -ōnis, *gravel.*
Sanguis, -ĭnis, *blood.*
Sŏpor, -ōris, *sleep.*
Veternus, -i, *lethargy.*
Viscus, -i, *bird-lime.*

V. Feminines wanting the Plural.

Argilla, -æ, *potter's earth.*
Fāma, -æ, *fame.*
Hŭmus, -i, *the ground.*
Lues, -is, *a plague.*
Plebs, plēbis, *the common people.*
Pūbes, -is, *the youth.*
Quies, -ētis, *rest.*
Sălus, -ūtis, *safety.*
Sĭtis, -is, *thirst.*
Sŭpellex, -ctĭlis, *household furniture.*
Tābes, -is, *a consumption.*
Tellus, -ūris, *the earth.*
Vespĕra, -æ, *the evening.*

VI. Neuters wanting the Plural.

Album, i, *an album.*
Bălaustium, i, *the flower of a pomegranate tree.*
Bărăthrum, i, *a gulf.*
Cœnum, i, *mud.*
Crŏcum, i, *saffron.*
Dīlūcŭlum, i, *the dawn.*
Ebur, ŏris, *ivory.*
Fel, fellis, *gall.*
Gĕlu, *inv. frost.*
Glastum, i, *woad.*
Glūtĕn, ĭnis, *or*
Glūtĭnum, i, *glue.*
Gypsum, i, *white plaster.*
Hēpar, ătis, *the liver.*
Hĭlum -i, *the black speck of a bean.*
Jŭbar, ăris, *a sun-beam.*
Justĭtium, i, *a law vacation.*
Lardum, i, *bacon.*
Lētum, i, *death.*
Lŭtum, i, *clay.*
Măcellum, i, *the shambles.*
Mānĕ, *the morning.*
Nectar, ăris, *nectar.*
Nĭhil, nīl, nĭhĭlum, i, *nothing.*
Nĭtrum, i, *nitre.*
Omāsum, i, *fat tripe.*
Opium, i, *opium.*
Pelăgus, i, *the sea.*
Pĕnum, i, *or*
Pĕnus, ŏris, *provisions.*
Pĭper, ĕris, *pepper.*
Prōlŭbium, i, *a desire.*
Săbŭlum, i, *sand.*
Săl, sălis, (*neut.*) *salt.*
Sălum, i, *the sea.*
Sĕnium, i, *old age.*
Sĭnāpi, *inv. mustard.*
Tābum, i, *gore.*
Vēr, vēris, *spring.*
Vĕternum, i, *lethargy.*
Vīrus, i, *poison.*
Viscum, i, *birdlime.*
Vitrum, i, *woad.*
Zingĭbĕr, ĕris, *ginger.*

VII. Names of Games, Feasts, Books, &c. wanting the Singular.

Apollināres, ium, *games in honour of Apollo.*
Bacchānālia, ium, *or* ōrum, *the feasts of Bacchus.*
Būcŏlĭca, ōrum, *or* ôn, *a book of pastorals.*
Chăristia, ōrum, *love-feasts.*
Diŏnўsia, *the feast of Bacchus.*
Georgĭca, ōrum, *or* ôn, *a work on husbandry.*
Hierosolyma, ōrum, *Jerusalem.*
Lătinæ, *feasts of Jupiter Latialis.*
Olympia, *the Olympic games.*
Orgia, *rites of Bacchus.*
Pălīlia, *a feast in honour of Pales.*
Părentālia, *solemnities at the funeral of a parent.*
Pўthia, *games in honour of Apollo.*
Quinquātrūs, num, *and*
Quinquātria, ōrum, & ium, *feasts in honour of Minerva.*
Suŏvĕtaurīlia, ium, *a sacrifice of a swine, sheep, and ox.*
Syracusæ, ārum, *Syracuse.*

VIII. Masculines wanting the Singular.

Antes, -ium, *fore ranks.*
Cancelli, *lattices* or *windows, made with cross-bars, like a net; a rail* or *balustrade round any place; bounds or limits.*
Cāni, *grey hairs.*
Casses, -ium, *a hunter's net.*
Cĕlĕres, -um, *the light-horse.*
Cŏdĭcilli, *writings.*
Druĭdes, -um, *the Druids, priests of the ancient Britains and Gauls.*
Fasces, -ium, *a bundle of rods carried before the chief magistrates of Rome.*
Fasti, -ōrum, *or* fastus, -uum, *calendars, in which were marked festival days, the names of magistrates, &c.*
Fīnes, -ium, *the borders of a county,* or *a country.*
Fŏri, *the gangways of a ship; seats in the circus;* or *the cells of a bee-hive.*
Furfŭres, -um, *scales in the head.*

Infĕri, *the gods below.*
Laurīces, *young rabbits.*
Lĕmūres, -um, *hobgoblins*, or *spirits in the dark.*
Libĕri, *children.*
Luceres, -um, *a third part of the early Romans.*
Majōres, -um, *ancestors.*
Mānes, -ium, *spirits of the dead.*
Mīnūres, -um, *successors.*
Nātāles, -ium, *parentage.*
Pandectæ, *pandects.*
Postĕri, *posterity.*
Prōcĕres, -um, *the nobles.*
Pūgillāres, -ium, *writing-tables.*
Sentes, -im, *thorns.*
Sŭpĕri, -ûm, & -ōrum, *the gods above.*

IX. Feminines wanting the Singular.

Alpes, -ium, *the Alps.*
Angustiæ, *difficulties.*
Antiæ, *a fore lock.*
Apīnæ, *gewgaws.*
Argūtiæ, *quirks, witticisms.*
Bigæ, *a chariot drawn by two horses.*
Trīgæ, *—by three,*
Quadrīgæ, *—by four.*
Braccæ, *breeches.*
Branchiæ, *the gills of a fish.*
Charītes, -um, *the three graces.*
Clitellæ, *panners.*
Cūnæ, *a cradle.*
Dĕcīmæ, *tithes.*
Dīræ, *imprecations, the furies.*
Divītiæ, *riches.*
Dryădes, -um, *the nymphs of the woods.*
Excŭbiæ, *watches.*
Exsĕquiæ, *funerals.*
Exŭviæ, *spoils.*
Făcētiæ, *pleasant sayings.*
Făcultātes, -um, & -ium, *one's goods and chattels.*
Fĕriæ, *holydays.*
Fraces, -ium, *the lees of oil.*
Gādes, -ium, *Cadiz.*
Gerræ, *trifles.*
Grates, -ium, *thanks.*
Hyădes, -um, *the seven stars.*
Indūciæ, *a truce.*
Indūviæ, *clothes to put on.*
Ineptiæ, *silly stories.*
Inferiæ, *sacrifices to the Infernals.*
Insīdiæ, *snares.*
Kălendæ, **Nōnæ**, **Idus**, -uum, *names which the Romans gave to certain days in each month.*
Lăpĭcīdīnæ, *stone quarries.*
Lītĕræ, *an epistle.*
Lactes, -ium, *small entrails.*
Mănŭbiæ, *spoils taken in war.*
Mīnæ, *threats.*
Mīnūtiæ, *little niceties.*
Nūgæ, *trifles.*
Nundīnæ, *a market.*
Nuptiæ, *a marriage.*
Offūciæ, *cheats.*
Opĕræ, *workmen.*
Părĭĕtīnæ, *old walls.*
Partes, -ium, *a party.*
Phălĕræ, *trappings.*
Plăgæ, *nets.*
Pleiădes, -um, *the seven stars.*
Præstīgæ, *enchantments.*
Prīmĭtiæ, *first fruits.*
Quisquĭliæ, *sweepings.*
Rĕlĭquiæ, *a remainder.*
Sălebræ, *rugged places.*
Sălīnæ, *salt-pits.*
Scālæ, *a ladder.*
Scătĕbræ, *a spring.*
Scōpæ, *a besom, a broom.*
Tĕnebræ, *darkness.*
Thermæ, *hot baths.*
Thermōpylæ, *straits of mount Œta.*
Trīcæ, *toys.*
Valvæ, *folding doors.*
Vergĭliæ, *the seven stars.*
Vindĭciæ, *a claim of liberty, a defence.*

X. Neuters wanting the Singular.

Acta, *public acts*, or *records.*
Adversaria, *a memorandum book.*
Æstīva, sc. castra, *summer quarters.*
Arma, *arms.*
Bellāria, -ōrum, *sweetmeats.*
Bona, *goods.*
Brĕvia, -ium, *shelves.*
Castra, *a camp.*
Chăristia, -ōrum, *a peace feast.*
Cĭbāria, *victuals.*
Cŏmĭtia, *an assembly of the people to make laws, elect magistrates, or hold trials.*
Crĕpundia, *children's baubles.*
Cūnābŭla, *a cradle, an origin.*
Dictēria, *scoffs, witticisms.*
Exta, *the entrails.*
Februa, -ōrum, *purifying sacrifices.*
Flabra, *blasts of wind.*
Foria, *muck.*
Frāga, *strawberries.*
Hўberna, sc. castra, *winter quarters.*
Ilia, -ium, *the entrails.*
Incūnābŭla, *a cradle.*
Insecta, *insects.*
Justa, *funeral rites.*

Lāmenta, *lamentations.*
Lautia *provisions for the entertainment of foreign ambassadors.*
Lustra, *dens of wild beasts.*
Māgālia, -ium, *cottages.*
Mœnia, -ium, & -iōrum, *the walls of a city.*
Multicia, *garments finely wrought.*
Mūnia, -iōrum, *offices.*
Orgia, *the sacred rites of Bacchus.*
Ovīlia, -ium, *an inclosure where the people went to give their votes.*
Pāleāria, -ium, *the dew-lap of a beast.*
Părăpherna, *all things the wife brings her husband except her dowry.*
Părentālia, -ium, *solemnities at the funeral of parents.*
Philtra, *love potions.*
Praēbia, *an amulet.*
Præcordia, *the bowels.*
Princĭpia, *the place in the camp where the general's tent stood.*
Pȳthia, *games in honour of Apollo.*
Rostra, *a place in Rome made of the beaks of ships, from which orators used to make orations to the people.*
Scrūta, *old clothes.*
Sponsālia, -ium, *espousals.*
Stătīva sc. castra, *a standing camp.*
Suŏvĕtaurīlia, -ium, *a sacrifice of a swine, a sheep, and an ox.*
Tālāria, -ium, *winged shoes.*
Tesqua, *rough places.*
Transtra, *the seats where the rowers sit in ships.*
Utensĭlia, -ium, *utensils.*

XI. The following Plurals are sometimes found in the Singular.

Annāles, ium, *annals.*
Antæ, *door-posts.*
Argūtiæ, *witticisms.*
Artūs, num, *the joints.*
Bīgæ, *a chariot drawn by two horses.*
Cassēs, ium, *a hunter's net.*
Cœlĭtēs, um, *and* num, *the gods.*
Cyclădēs, um, *the Cycladian islands.*
Dĕcĭmæ, *tithes.*
Dīræ, *the Furies.*
Dryădēs, um, *the Dryads.*
Epulæ, *a banquet.*
Euměnĭdēs, um, the *Furies.*
Făcētiæ, *pleasant sayings.*
Fidēs, ium, *a stringed instrument.*
Frāga, orum, *strawberries.*
Gĕmĭni, *twins.*
Gĕnæ, *the cheeks.*
Hăbēnæ, *reins.*
Hyădēs, um, *the Pleiads.*
Ineptiæ, *silly wit.*
Lătĕbræ, *lurking places.*
Lībĕri, *children.*
Mājōres, um, *ancestors.*
Mānēs, ium, *the shades.*
Măpālia, *huts.*
Mĭnūtiæ, *little niceties.*
Năiădēs, um, *fountain nymphs.*
Nārēs, ium, *the nostrils.*
Nătes, ium, *the buttocks.*
Oblīvia, *forgetfulness.*
Offūciæ, *cheats.*
Optĭmātes, um, *nobles.*
Pălĕāria, ium, *the dew-lap of a beast.*
Pascua, *pastures.*
Pĕnātēs, ium, *household gods.*
Phălĕræ, *trappings.*
Plērique, *many.*
Prŏcĕres, um, *nobles.*
Pŭgillāria, ium, *or*
Pŭgillāres, ium, *a note-book.*
Quădrīgæ, *a chariot drawn by four horses.*
Quĭrītēs, um, *and* ium, *citizens of Rome.*
Rĕlĭquiæ, *a remainder.*
Sălĕbræ, *rugged places.*
Scālæ, *a ladder.*
Sentēs, ium, *thorns.*
Singŭli, *one by one.*
Spŏlia, *spoils.*
Sŭpĕri, *the gods above.*
Transtra, *seats for the rowers in a ship.*
Utensĭlia, ium, *utensils.*
Vĕprēs, um, *brambles.*

XII. The following Singulars are sometimes found in the Plural.

Acŏnītum, *wolfsbane.*
Aēr, ĕris, *the air.*
Æs, æris, *brass, money.*
Ævum, *an age.*
Allium, *garlic.*
Amīcĭtia, *friendship.*
Avēna, *oats.*
Balsămum, *balsam.*
Călor, ōris, *heat.*
Căro, carnis, *flesh.*
Cēra, *wax.*
Cĭcūta, *hemlock.*
Contāgium, *a contagion.*
Crŏcus, *saffron.*
Cruor, ōris, *blood.*
Cŭtis, *the skin.*
Ebur, ŏris, *ivory,*
Electrum, *amber.*

Făr, farris, *corn.*
Fervor, ōris, *heat.*
Fŭga, *flight.*
Fŭror, ōris, *madness.*
Fūmus, *smoke.*
Glōria, *glory.*
Hordeum, *barley.*
Ira, *anger.*
Jūs, jūris, *justice, law.*
Lætĭtia, *joy*
Languor, ōris, *faintness.*
Lătex, ĭcis, *liquor, water.*
Lignum, *wood, a log.*
Lĭquor, ōris, *liquor.*
Lux, lūcis, *light.*
Marmor, ŏris, *marble.*
Mĕl, mellis, *honey.*
Mors, mortis, *death.*
Mundĭtia, *neatness.*
Nēquĭtia, *wickedness.*
Nex, nĕcis, *cruel death.*
Oblīvio, ōnis, *forgetfulness.*
Pālea, *chaff.*
Pax, pācis, *peace.*
Pix, pĭcis, *pitch.*
Pulvis, ĕris, *dust.*
Purpŭra, *purple.*
Quiēs, ētis, *rest.*
Rōs, rōris, *dew.*
Rŭbor, ōris, *redness.*
Săl, sălis, (*masc.*) *salt.*
Sōl, sōlis, *the sun, a day.*
Sŏpor, ōris, *sleep.*
Spūma, *foam.*
Sulfur, ŭris, *sulphur.*
Tĕpor, ōris, *heat.*
Terror, ōris, *terrour.*
Thȳmum, *thyme.*
Trĭbŭlus, *a thistle.*
Tristĭtia, *sadness.*
Verbēna, *vervain.*
Vĭgor, ōris, *strength,*
Vīnum, *wine.*

XIII. The following differ somewhat in meaning with respect to the number in which they are used.

Ædes, is, *a temple.*
Ædes, ium, *a house.*
Auxĭlium, *aid.*
Auxĭlia, *auxiliary troops.*
Bŏnum, *a good thing.*
Bŏna, *property.*
Carcer, *a prison.*
Carcĕres, *a gaol.*
Castrum, *a castle.*
Castra, *a camp.*
Cŏmĭtium, *a part of the Roman forum.*
Cŏmĭtia, *an assembly for election.*
Cŭpēdia, æ, *delicacy.*
Cŭpēdiæ, ārum, *and*
Cŭpēdia, ōrum, *dainties.*
Cōpia, *plenty.*
Cōpiæ, *forces.*
Făcultas, *ability.*
Făcultātes, *wealth.*
Făla, *a trick.*
Fălæ, *scaffolding.*
Fastŭs, ûs, *pride.*
Fastūs, uum, *and*
Fasti, ōrum, *a calendar.*
Fīnis, *an end.*
Fīnēs, *boundaries.*
Fortūna, *Fortune.*
Fortūnæ, *luck, wealth.*
Furfur, *bran.*
Furfŭres, *dandriff.*
Litĕra, *a letter of the alphabet.*
Litĕræ, *an epistle.*
Lustrum, *a space of five years.*
Lustra, *dens of wild beasts.*
Mōs, *custom.*
Mōres, *manners.*
Opis, *gen. help.*
Opes, um, *power, wealth.*
Opĕra, *labour.*
Opĕræ, *workmen.*
Plăga, *a climate.*
Plăgæ, *nets, toils.*
Princĭpium, *a beginning.*
Princĭpia, *the general's situation in a camp.*
Rostrum, *a beak.*
Rostra, *the elevated place at Rome from which orators spoke.*
Rūs, *the country.*
Rūra, *fields.*
Sal, *salt.*
Săles, *witticisms.*
Tŏrus, *a bed, a tuft, a cord.*
Tŏri, *brawney muscles.*

XIV. Plurals sometimes used for the Singular.

Alta, *the sea.*
Anĭmi, *courage.*
Auræ, *the air.*
Cărīnæ, *a keel.*
Cervīces, *the neck.*
Colla, *the neck.*
Cŏmæ, *the hair.*
Connūbia, *marriage.*
Corda, *the heart.*
Corpŏra, *a body.*
Crĕpuscŭla, *twilight.*
Currūs, *a chariot.*
Exĭlia, *banishment.*
Frĭgŏra, *cold.*
Gaudia, *joy.*
Grāmĭna, *grass.*
Guttŭra, *the throat.*
Hȳmĕnæi, *marriage.*
Jējūnia, *fasting.*
Ignes, *love.*
Inguĭna, *the groin.*
Jŭbæ, *a mane.*
Limĭna, *a threshold.*
Littŏra, *a shore.*
Mensæ, *a service or course of dishes.*
Næniæ, *a funeral dirge.*

Nūmina, *the divinity.*
Odia, *hatred.*
Ora, *the mouth, the countenance.*
Oræ, *confines.*
Ortūs, *a rising, the east.*
Otia, *ease, leisure.*
Pectŏra, *the breast.*
Rictūs, *the jaws.*
Rōbŏra, *oak, strength.*
Sĭlentia, *silence.*
Sĭnūs, *the breast of a Roman garment.*
Tædæ, *a torch.*
Tempŏra, *time.*
Thălămi, *marriage, or marriage-bed.*
Tŏri, *a bed, a couch.*
Viæ, *a journey.*
Vultūs, *the countenance.*
Thūra, *frankincense.*

III. REDUNDANT NOUNS.

Nouns are redundant in different ways: 1. In termination only; as, *arbos*, and *arbor*, a tree. 2. In declension only; as, *laurus*, genit. *lauri* and *laurûs*, a laurel tree; *sĕquester*, *-tri*, or *-tris*, a mediator. 3. Only in gender; as, *hic* or *hoc vulgus*, the rabble. 4. Both in termination and declension; as, *mātĕria*, *-æ* or *matereis*, *-iēi*, matter; *plebs*, *-is*, the common people, or *plebes*, *-is*, *-ëi*, or contracted, *plebî*. 5. In termination and gender; as, *tŏnitrus*, *-ûs*, masc. *tonitru*, neut. thunder. 6. In declension and gender; as, *pĕnus*, *-i*, and *-ûs*, m. or f. or *penus*, *-ŏris*, neut. all kind of provisions. 7. In termination, gender and declension; as, *æther*, *-ĕris*, masc. and *æthra*, *-æ*, fem. the sky. 8. Several nouns in the same declension are differently varied; as, *tigris*, *-is* or *-ĭdis*, a tiger; to which may be added nouns which have the same signification in different numbers; as, *Fidēna*, *-æ;* or *Fidēnæ*, *-ārum*, the name of a city.

The most numerous class of redundant nouns consists of those which express the same meaning by different terminations; as, *menda*, *-æ;* and *mendum*, *-i*, a fault; *cassis*, *-ĭdis;* and *cassĭda*, *-æ*, a helmet. So,

Acĭnus, & -um, *a grape-stone.*
Alvear, & -e, & -ium, *a bee-hive.*
Amărăcus, & -um, *sweet marjorum.*
Ancīle, & -ium, *an oval shield.*
Angĭportus, -ûs, & -i & -um, *a narrow lane.*
Aphractus, & -um, *an open ship.*
Aplustre, & -um, *the flag, colours.*
Băcŭlus, & -um, *a staff.*
Balteus & -um, *a belt.*
Bătillus, & -um, *a fire-shovel.*
Căpŭlus, & -um, *a hilt.*
Capus, & -o, *a capon.*
Cēpa, & -e, *indecl. an onion.*
Clypeus, & -um, *a shield.*
Collŭvies, & -io, *filth, dirt.*
Compāges, & -go, *a joining.*
Conger, & -grus, *a large eel.*
Crŏcus, & -um, *saffron.*
Cŭbĭtus, & -um, *a cubit.*
Dīlŭvium, & -es, *a deluge.*
Elĕphantus, & Elĕphas, -antis, *an elephant.*
Elĕgus, & -ëia, *an elegy.*
Essĕda, & -um, *a chariot.*
Eventus, & -um, *an event.*
Fulgetra, & -um, *lightning.*
Gălērus, & -um, *a hat.*
Gibbus, & -a; & -er, -ĕris *or* -ĕri, *a bunch, a swelling.*
Glūtĭnum, & -en, *glue.*
Hebdŏmas, & -ăda, *a week.*
Intrīta, & um, *fine mortar, minced meat.*
Librārium, & -a, *a book-case.*
Māceria, & -es, iēi, *a wall.*
Milliāre, & -ium, *a mile.*
Mŏnĭtum, & -us, -ûs, *an admonition.*
Muria, & -es, -iēi, *brine* or *pickle.*
Nāsus, & -um, *the nose.*
Obsĭdio, & -um, *a siege.*
Œstrus, & -um, *a gad-bee.*
Ostrea, & -um, *an oyster.*
Peplus, & -um, *a veil, a robe.*
Pistrīna, & -um, *a bake-house.*
Prætextus, -ûs, & -um, *a pretext.*
Rāpa, & -um, *a turnip.*
Rūma, & -men, *the cud.*
Ruscus, & um, *a brush.*

Seps, & sēpes, f. *a hedge.*
Segmen, & -mentum, *a piece* or *paring.*
Sībĭlus, & -um, *a hissing.*
Sĭnus, & -um, *a milk-pail.*
Spurcĭtia, & -es, *nastiness.*
Strāmen, & -tum, *straw.*
Suffīmen, & -tum, *a perfume.*
Tignus, & -um, *a plank.*
Tŏral, & -āle, *a bed-covering.*
Torcŭlar, & -āre, *a wine press.*
Viscus, & -um, *bird-lime.*
Vĕternus, & -um, *a lethargy.*

Note. The nouns which are called variable and defective, seem originally to have been redundant; thus, *vāsa -ōrum*, properly comes from *vasum*, and not from *vas*; but custom, which gives laws to all languages, has dropt the singular and retained the plural; and so of others.

DIVISION OF NOUNS ACCORDING TO THEIR SIGNIFICATION AND DERIVATION.

I. The name of a particular person or thing individually is called a *proper* name; as,

All christian and surnames of men, as, *Paulus*, *Cicero*, Charles, Frederic, &c.; the names of cities, mountains, and rivers; as, London, Andes, Missouri. But a name which belongs to several things of one kind is called a *common* name; as, *homo*, 'a man;' *rex*, 'a king;' *fluvius*, 'a river.'

The Roman names of men generally consisted of three parts, as *Marcus*, *Tullius*, *Cicĕro:* 1. Marcus, the *prænomen*, which answered to the English christian name. 2. Tullius, the *nomen*, distinguishing the *gens* which included many families. 3. Cicero, the *cognomen*, which denoted the *familia*. Sometimes the family was subdivided, and distinguished by a fourth name called the *agnomen;* thus, Publius Cornelius Scipio *Africānus*, Lucius Cornelius Scipio *Asiatĭcus*. If Cicero had had only one daughter, she would have been called *Tullia;* if two, *Tullia major* and *minor;* if more, *Tullia prima*, *secunda*, &c. If a person was adopted by another, he took his name with an *agnomen*, formed from his original *nomen;* thus Octavius, when adopted by Caius Julius Cæsar, took the name of Caius Julius Cæsar *Octaviānus*. Freed-men took the *prænomen* and *nomen* of their masters, with a new *cognomen*. Sometimes the order of the names was changed; and under the Emperors the prænomen was put last; thus, L. Annæus *Seneca* and L. Annæus *Mela* were two brothers.

II. A substantive which signifies many in the singular number, is called a *collective* noun; as, *pŏpŭlus*, a people, *exercĭtus*, an army.

III. A substantive derived from another substantive proper, signifying one's extraction, is called a *patronymic* noun; as,

Priămĭdes, the son of Priamus; *Æētias*, the daughter of Æētes; *Nērīne*, the daughter of Nereus. Patronymics are generally derived from the name of the father; but the poets, by whom they are chiefly used, derive them also from the grandfather, or from some other remarkable person of the family; sometimes likewise from the founder of a nation or people; as, *Æăcĭdes*, the son, grandson, great-grandson, or one of the posterity of Æăcus; *Rōmŭlĭdæ*, the Romans, from their first king Romulus.

Patronymic names of men end in *des;* of women, in *is*, *as*, or *ne*. Those in *des* and *ne* are of the first declension, and those in *is* and *as*, of the third; as, *Priamĭdes*, *-dæ*, &c.; pl. *-dæ*, *dārum*, &c.; *Nērīne*, *-es;* *Tyndăris*, *-ĭdis* or *-ĭdos;* *Æētias*, *-ădis*, &c.

IV. A noun derived from a substantive proper, signifying one's country, is called a *patrial* or *gentile* noun; as,

Tros, *Trois*, a man born at Troy; *Troas*, *-ădis*, a woman born at Troy. *Sicŭlus*, *-i*, a Sicilian man; *Sicĕlis*, *-ĭdis*, a Sicilian woman; so, *Măcĕdo*, *-ŏnis*, *Arpīnas*, *-ātis*, a man born in Macedonia, at Arpinum; from *Troja*, *Sicilia*, *Macedonia*, *Arpīnum*. But patrials for the most part are to be considered as adjectives, having a substantive understood; as, *Rōmānus*, *Athēniensis*, &c.

V. A substantive derived from an adjective, expressing simply the quality of the adjective, without regard to the thing in which the quality exists, is called an *abstract;* as,

Justĭtia, justice; *bŏnĭtas*, goodness; *dulcēdo*, sweetness; from *justus*, just; *bonus*, good; *dulcis*, sweet.

The adjectives from which these abstracts come are called CONCRETES; because, besides the quality, they also suppose something to which it belongs. Abstracts commonly end in *a*, *as*, or *do*, and are very numerous, being derived from most adjectives in the Latin tongue.

VI. A substantive derived from another sub-

stantive, signifying a diminution or lessening of its signification, is called a *diminutive;* as,

Lĭbellus, a little book; *chartŭla*, a little paper; *ŏpuscŭlum*, a little work; *corcŭlum*, a little heart; *rētĭcŭlum*, a small net; *scăbellum*, a small form; *lăpillus*, a little stone; *cultellus*, a little knife; *pāgella*, a little page: from *liber*, *charta*, *ŏpus*, *cor*, *rēte*, *scamnum*. *lăpis*, *culter*, *pāgĭna*. Several diminutives are sometimes formed from the same primitive; as, from *puer*, *puerŭlus*, *puellus*, *puellŭlus;* from *cista*, *cistŭla*, *cistelli*, *cistellŭla;* from *hŏmo*, *hŏmuncio*, *homuncŭlus*. Diminutives for the most part end in *lus*, *la*, *lum*, and are generally of the same gender with their primitives.

When the signification of the primitive is increased, it is called an AMPLIFICATIVE, and ends in *o;* as, *căpĭto*, *-ōnis*, having a large head: so, *nāso*, *lăbeo*, *bucco*, having a large nose, lips, cheeks.

VI. A substantive derived from a verb is called a *verbal* noun; as,

ămor, love; *doctrīna*, learning; from *ămo*, and *dŏceo*. Verbal nouns are very numerous, and commonly end in *io*, *or*, *us*, and *ura;* as, *lectio*, a lesson; *ămātor*, a lover; *luctus*, grief; *creātūra*, a creature.

ADJECTIVE.

An Adjective is a word *added* to a substantive, to express its quality; as, durus, *hard;* mollis, *soft.**

Adjectives in Latin are varied by gender, number. and case, to agree with substantives in all these accidents.†

Adjectives are varied like three substantives of the same termination and declension.

All adjectives are either of the first and second declension, or of the third only.

---

* We know things by their qualities only. Every quality must belong to some subject. An adjective therefore always implies a substantive expressed or understood, and cannot make full sense without it.

† An adjective properly has neither genders, numbers, nor cases; but certain terminations answering to the gender, number, and case of the substantive with which it is joined.

Adjectives of three terminations are of the first and second declension; but adjectives of one or two terminations are of the third.

Exc. The following adjectives, though they have three terminations, are of the third declension:

Acer, *sharp*.
Alăcer, *cheerful*.
Campester, *belonging to a plain*.
Cĕlĕber, *famous*.
Cĕler, *swift*.
Equester, *belonging to a horse*.
Păluster, *marshy*.
Pedester, *on foot*.
Sălūber, *wholesome*.
Sylvester, *woody*.
Vŏlŭcer, *swift*.

Rule for the Gender of Adjectives.

In adjectives of three terminations, the first is masc., the second fem., and the third neut. In those of two terminations, the first is masc. and fem., and the second neut. Adjectives of one termination are of all genders.

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION.

Bŏnus, masc. bona, fem. bonum, neut. *good*.

Singular.			Plural.		
N. bŏn-us,	-a,	-um,	N. bŏn-i,	-æ,	-a,
G. bŏn-i,	-æ,	-i,	G. bon-ōrum,	-ārum,	-ōrum,
D. bŏn-o,	-æ,	-o,	D. bon-is,	-is,	-is,
A. bŏn-um,	-am,	-um,	A. bon-os,	-as,	-a,
V. bŏn-e,	-a,	-um,	V. bon-i,	-æ,	-a,
A. bŏn-o,	-â,	-o.	A. bon-is,	-is,	-is.

Tĕner, tenĕra, tenĕrum, *tender*.

Singular.			Plural.		
N. tĕn-er,	-ĕra,	-ĕrum,	N. ten-ĕri,	-ĕræ,	-ĕra,
G. ten-ĕri,	-ĕræ,	-ĕri,	G. ten-erōrum,	-erārum,	-erōrum,
D. ten-ĕro,	-ĕræ,	-ĕro,	D. ten-ĕris,	-ĕris,	-ĕris,
A. ten-ĕrum,	-ĕram,	-ĕrum,	A. ten-ĕros,	-ĕras,	-ĕra,
V. ten-er,	-ĕra,	-ĕrum,	V. ten-ĕri,	-ĕræ,	-ĕra,
A. ten-ĕro,	-ĕrâ,	-ĕro.	A. ten-ĕris,	-ĕris,	-ĕris.

In like manner decline,

Asper, *rough*.
Cæter, (*hardly used*) *the rest*.
Gibber, *crook-backed*.
Lăcer, *torn*.
Līber, *free*.
Mĭser, *wretched*.
Prosper, *prosperous*.

Also the compounds of *gero* and *fero;* as, *lānĭger*, bearing wool; *ŏpĭfer*, bringing help, &c. Likewise, *sătur, satŭra, satŭrum*, full But most adjectives in *er* drop the *e;* as, *āter, atra, atrum*, black; gen. *atri, atræ, atri;* dat. *atro, atræ, atro*, &c. So,

Æger, *sick.*	Măcer, *lean.*	Săcer, *sacred.*
Crēber, *frequent.*	Nĭger, *black.*	Scăber, *rough.*
Glăber, *smooth.*	Pĭger, *slow.*	Tēter, *ugly.*
Intĕger, *entire.*	Pulcher, *fair.*	Văfer, *crafty.*
Lūdĭcer, *ludicrous.*	Rŭber, *red.*	

Dexter, *right*, has -tra, -trum, *or* -tĕra, -tĕrum.

Obs. 1. The following adjectives have their genitive singular in *ius*, and the dative in *i*, through all the genders; in the other cases, like *bonus* and *tener.*

Unus, -a, -um; *gen.* unius, *dat.* uni, *one.*
Alius, -īus, *one of many, another.*
Nullus, nullius, *none.*
Sōlus, -ius, *alone.*
Tōtus, -ius *whole.**
Ullus, ius, *any.*

Alter, altĕrĭus, *one of two, the other.*
Uter, utrius, *either, whether of the two.*
Neuter, -trius, *neither.*
Uterque, utriusque, *both.*
Uterlĭbet, utriuslĭbet. } *which of the two you please.*
Utervis, -triusvis, }

Alterŭter, *the one or the other*, alterutrius, alterutri, *and sometimes* alterius utrius altĕri utri, &c.

These adjectives, except *tōtus*, are called *partitives;* and seem to resemble, in their signification as well as declension, what are called pronominal adjectives. In ancient writers we find them declined like *bonus.*

Obs. 2. To decline an adjective properly, it should always be joined with a substantive in the different genders; as, *bonus liber*, a good book; *bona penna*, a good pen; *bonum sedīle*, a good seat. But as the adjective in Latin is often found without its substantive joined with it, we therefore, in declining *bonus*, for instance, commonly say, *bonus*, a good man, understanding *vir*, or *homo; bona*, a good woman, understanding *fœmĭna;* and *bonum*, a good thing, understanding *negotium.*

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

Fēlix, masc. fem. and neut.; *happy.*

	Singular.			*Plural.*		
N.	felix,	felix,	felix,	N. felīces,	felīces,	felicia,
G.	felicis,	felicis,	felicis,	G. felicium,	felicium,	felicium,
D.	felīci,	felīci,	felīci,	D. felicĭbus,	felicĭbus,	felicĭbus,
A.	felīcem,	felīcem,	felix,	A. felīces,	felīces,	felicia,
V.	felix,	felix,	felix,	V. felīces,	felīces,	felicia,
A.	felīce, *or* felīci,	} *in all the genders.*		A. felicĭbus,	felicĭbus,	felicĭbus.

* Tŏtus, *so great*, is regularly declined.

Prūdens, m. f. and n. *prudent.*

	Singular.				*Plural.*		
N.	prud-ens,	-ens,	-ens,	N.	prūdent-es,	-es,	-ia,
G.	prud-entis,	-entis,	-entis,	G.	prudent-ium,	-ium,	-ium,
D.	prud-enti,	-enti	-enti,	D.	prudent-ĭbus,	-ĭbus,	-ĭbus,
A.	prud-entem,	-entem,	-ens,	A.	prudent-es,	-es,	-ia,
V.	prud-ens,	-ens,	-ens,	V.	prudent-es,	-es,	-ia,
A.	prudente, *or* prudenti,	*in all the genders.*		A.	prudent-ĭbus,	-ĭbus,	-ĭbus.

In like manner decline,

Amens, -tis, *mad.*
Atrox, -ōcis, *cruel.*
Audax, -ācis, & -ens, -tis, *bold.*
Bĭlix, -īcis, *woven with a double thread.*
Căpax, *capacious.*
Cĭcur, -ŭris, *tame.*
Clēmens, -tis, *merciful.*
Contŭmax, *stubborn.*
Dēmens, *mad.*
Edax *gluttonous.*
Effĭcax, *effectual.*
Elĕgans, *handsome.*
Fallax, *deceitful.*
Fĕrax, *fertile.*
Fĕrox, *fierce.*
Frĕquens, *frequent.*
Ingens, *huge.*
Iners, -tis, *sluggish.*
Insons, *guiltless.*
Mendax, *lying.*
Mordax, *biting, satirical.*
Pernix, -īcis, *swift.*
Pervĭcax, *wilful.*
Pĕtŭlans, *froward, saucy.*
Prægnans, *with child.*
Rĕcens, *fresh.*
Rĕpens, *sudden.*
Săgax, -ācis, *sagacious.*
Sălax, -ācis, *lustful.*
Săpiens, *wise.*
Sōlers, *shrewd.*
Sons, *guilty.*
Tĕnax, *tenacious.*
Trux, -ŭcis, *cruel.*
Uber, -ĕris, *fertile.*
Vehĕmens, *vehement.*
Vēlox, -ōcis, *swift.*
Vŏrax, *devouring.*

Mītis, masc. and fem.; mīte, neut.; *meek.*

	Singular.				*Plural.*		
N.	mītis,	mitis,	mite,	N.	mītes,	mītes,	mitia,
G.	mitis,	mitis,	mitis,	G.	mitium,	mitium,	mitium,
D.	miti,	miti,	miti,	D.	mitĭbus,	mitĭbus,	mitĭbus,
A.	mitem,	mitem,	mite,	A.	mites,	mites,	mitĭa,
V.	mitis,	mitis,	mite,	V.	mites,	mites,	mitĭa,
A.	miti,	miti,	miti.	A.	mitĭbus,	mitĭbus,	mitĭbus.

Acer *or* acris, masc. acris, fem. acre, neut. *sharp.*

	Singular.				*Plural.*		
N.	ā-cer *or* acris,	acris,	acre,	N.	a-cres,	a-cres,	a-cria,
G.	a-cris,	a-cris,	a-cris,	G.	a-crium,	a-crium,	a-crium,
D.	a-cri,	a-cri,	a-crī,	D.	a-crĭbus,	a-crĭbus,	a-crĭbus,
A.	a-crem,	a-crem,	a-cre,	A.	a-cres,	a-cres,	a-cria,
V.	a-cer *or* acris,	a-cris,	a-cre,	V.	a-cres,	a-cres,	a-cria,
A.	a-cri,	a-cri,	a-cri	A.	a-crĭbus,	a-crĭbus,	a-crĭbus.

In like manner *ălăcer*, or *alacris*, *cĕler* or *celĕris*, and the other adjectives included in the exception on page 69; which form exceptions also to the rule for the gender of adjectives on that page, having in the nom. and voc. sing. two terminations for the masculine.

RULES.

1. Adjectives of the third declension have *e* or *i* in the ablative singular: but if the neuter be in *e*, the ablative has *i* only.

2. The genitive plural ends in *ium*, and the neuter of the nominative, accusative, and vocative, in *ia:* except comparatives, which have *um* and *a*.

EXCEPTIONS.

Exc. 1. The following have *e* in the Ablative singular, and *um* in the Gen. plur. They are scarcely ever used in the Neuter singular, and never in the Neuter plural. *Ales, ĭtis*, 'winged,' 'swift;' *Bipes, ĕdis*, 'two-footed;' *Cœlebs, ĭbis*, 'unmarried;' *Compos, ŏtis*, 'having obtained one's desire;' *Discŏlor, ōris*, 'of various colours;' *Hospes, ĭtis*, 'hospitable;' *Impos, ŏtis*, 'without power;' *Impūbes, ĕris*, 'under age;' *Juvĕnis, is*, 'young;' *Pauper, ĕris*, 'poor;' *Puber* or *Pubes, ĕris*, 'full grown;' *Redux, ŭcis*, 'returning;' *Senex, senis*, 'old;' *Sospes, ĭtis*, 'safe;' *Superstes, ĭtis*, 'surviving;' *Tricuspis, ĭdis*, 'three-forked;' (*tricuspĭde telo*, Ovid); *Tripes, ĕdis*, 'three-footed;' *Vigil ĭlis*, 'watchful.' Also compounds in CEPS, FEX, CORPOR, and GENER; as, *Bicorpor, ŏris*, 'two-bodied;' *Tricorpor, ŏris*, 'three-bodied;' though *Artifex, ĭcis*, 'artificial;' *Degĕner, ĕris*, 'degenerate;' *Particeps, ĭpis*, 'partaking of;' *Princeps, ĭpis*, 'chief;' have also *i* in the Abl.

Exc. 2. The following have *e* or *i* in the Abl. sing. and *um* in the Gen. plur. *Dives, ĭtis*, 'rich;' *Inops, ŏpis*, 'needy;' *Quadrŭplex, ĭcis*, 'four-fold.'

Exc. 3. *Concors, dis*, 'agreeing;' *Consors, tis*, 'sharing;' *Exsors, tis*, 'given by choice;' *Supplex, ĭcis*, 'suppliant;' have *e* or *i* in the Abl, and *ia, ium*, in the Nom. and Gen. pl. *Locŭples, ētis*, 'wealthy,' has *e* or *i*, and *ia, ium* or *um*. *Sons, tis*, 'guilty,' and *Insons, tis*, 'guiltless,' have *e* or *i*, and Gen. plur. *ium*, or *um*. *Memor, ŏris*, 'mindful,' has *i* and *um*. *Uber, ĕris*, 'fruitful,' *i, a*, and *um*. *Vetus, ĕris*, 'old,' has *i* or *e*, and *a*, and *um*. *Par, păris*, 'equal,' has only *i* in the Abl. sing. and in plur. *ia, ium;* but its compounds have *e* or *i*.

Exc. 4. The following have the Abl. in *e* or *i*, and want the Neut. plur. *Concŏlor, ōris*, 'of the same colour;' *Versicŏlor, ōris*, 'parti-coloured;' *Deses, ĭdis*, 'slothful;' *Hebes, ĕtis*, 'blunt,' 'dull:' *Perpes, ĕtis*, 'perpetual;' *Præpes, ĕtis*, 'swift;' *Reses, ĭdis*, 'idle;' *Teres, ĕtis*, 'round.' Of these *Præpes* only is found in the Gen. plur.

Exc. 5. *Exspes*, 'hopeless,' and *Potis, is, e*, 'able,' are only used in the nominative. *Potis* has sometimes *potis* in the neut.

The Neuter *Plus*, 'more,' is thus declined:

Singular.	*Plural.*		
N. Plus,	N. Plures,	-es,	-a *or* ia,
G. Pluris,	G. Plur-ium,	-ium,	-ium,
D. ———	D. Plurĭbus,	-ĭbus,	-ĭbus,
A. Plus,	A. Plur-es,	-es,	-a *or* ia,
V. ———	V. ———	———	———
A. Plure *or* i.	A. Plurĭbus,	-ĭbus,	-ĭbus.

REMARKS.

1. Comparatives and adjectives in *ns*, have *e* more frequently than *i*; and participles in the ablative called absolute have generally *e*; as, *Tĭberio regnante*, not *regnanti*, in the reign of Tiberius.

2. Adjectives joined with substantives neuter for the most part have *i*; as, *victrīci ferro*, not *victrīce*.

3. Different words are sometimes used to express the different genders; as *victor*, victorious for the masc. *victrix*, for the fem. *Victrix*, in the plural has likewise the neuter gender; thus, *victrīces*, *victricia*; so, *ultor*, and *ultrix*, revengeful. *Victrix* is also neuter in the singular.

4. Several adjectives compounded of *clivus*, *frænum*, *bacillum*, *arma*, *jŭgum*, *līmus*, *somnus*, and *anĭmus*, end in *is* or *us*; and therefore are either of the first and second declension, or of the third; as, *declīvis*, *-e*, and *declīvus*, *-a*, *-um*, steep; *imbēcillis*, and *imbecillus*, weak; *semisomnis*, and *semisomnus*, half asleep; *exanĭmis*, and *exanĭmus*, lifeless. But several of them do not admit of this variation; thus we say, *magnănĭmus*, *flexanĭmus*, *effrænus*, *levisomnus*; not *magnanĭmis*, &c. On the contrary, we say, *pusillanĭmis*, *injŭgis*, *illīmis*, *insomnis*, *exsomnis*; not *pusillanĭmus*, &c. So, *semianĭmis*, *inermis*, *sublīmis*, *acclīvis*, *declīvis*, *proclīvis*; rarely *semianĭmus*, &c.

5. Adjectives derived from nouns are called *denominatives;*

as, *cordātus*, *mōrātus*, *cœlestis*, *ădămantĭnus*, *corpŏrĕus*, *agrestis*, *æstīvus*, &c.; from *cor*, *mos*, *cœlum*, *adămas*, &c.

Those which diminish the signification of their primitives, are called DIMINUTIVES; as, *mĭsellus*, *parvŭlus*, *dūriuscŭlus*, &c. Those which signify a great deal of a thing, are called AMPLIFICATIVES, and end in *osus*, or *entus*; as, *vīnōsus*, *vīnŏlentus*, much given to wine; *ŏpĕrōsus*, laborious; *plumbōsus*, full of lead; *nōdōsus*, knotty, full of knots; *corpŭlentus*, corpulent, &c. Some end in *tus*; as, *aurītus*, having long or large ears; *nasūtus*, having a large nose; *literātus*, learned, &c.

6. An adjective derived from a substantive, or from another adjective, signifying possession or property, is called a *possessive adjective;* as,

Scotĭcus, *pāternus*, *herīlis*, *aliēnus*, of or belonging to Scotland, a father, a master, another; from *Scotia*, *pater*, *herus*, and *alius*.

7. Adjectives derived from verbs are called *verbals;* as,

amabĭlis, amiable: *capax*, capable; *docĭlis*, teachable; from *amo*, *capio*, *doceo*.

8. When participles become adjectives, they are called *participials;* as, *sapiens*, wise; *acūtus*, sharp; *disertus*, eloquent.

Of these many also become substantives; as, *adolescens, animans, rudens, serpens, advocătus, sponsus, natus, legātus; sponsa, nata, serta*, sc. *corōna*, a garland; *prætexta*, sc. *vestis; debĭtum, decrētum, præceptum, satum, tectum, votum*, &c.

9. Adjectives derived from adverbs are called *adverbials;*

as, *hodiernus*, from *hodie; crastĭnus*, from *cras; binus*, from *bis*, &c. There are also adjectives derived from prepositions; as, *contrarius*, from *contra; antĭcus*, from *ante; postĭcus*, from *post.*

NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives which signify number, are divided into four classes, *Cardinal, Ordinal, Distributive*, and *Multiplicative.*

1. The Cardinal or *Principal* numbers are:

Unus,	*one.*	1.	I.
Duo,	*two.*	2.	II.
Tres,	*three.*	3.	III.
Quatuor,	*four.*	4.	IV.
Quinque,	*five.*	5.	V.
Sex,	*six.*	6.	VI.
Septem,	*seven.*	7.	VII.
Octo,	*eight.*	8.	VIII.
Nŏvem,	*nine.*	9.	IX.
Dĕcem,	*ten.*	10.	X.
Undĕcim,	*eleven.*	11.	XI.
Duodĕcim,	*twelve.*	12.	XII.
Tredĕcim,	*thirteen.*	13.	XIII.
Quatuordĕcim,	*fourteen.*	14.	XIV.
Quindĕcim,	*fifteen.*	15.	XV.
Sexdĕcim,	*sixteen.*	16.	XVI.
Septendĕcim,	*seventeen.*	17.	XVII.
Octodĕcim,	*eighteen.*	18.	XVIII.
Novemdĕcim,	*nineteen.*	19.	XIX.
Viginti,	*twenty.*	20.	XX.
Viginti unus, *or* Unus et viginti,	*twenty-one.*	21.	XXI.
Viginti duo, *or* Duo et viginti,	*twenty-two.*	22.	XXII.
Triginta,	*thirty.*	30.	XXX.
Quadrāginta,	*forty.*	40.	XL.
Quinquaginta,	*fifty.*	50.	L.
Sexaginta,	*sixty.*	60.	LX.
Septuaginta,	*seventy.*	70.	LXX.
Octoginta,	*eighty.*	80.	LXXX.
Nonaginta,	*ninety.*	90.	XC.

Centum,	*a hundred.*	100.	C.
Ducenti, -æ, -a,	*two hundred.*	200.	CC.
Trecenti, -æ, -a,	*three hundred.*	300.	CCC.
Quadringenti,	*four hundred.*	400.	CCCC.
Quingenti,	*five hundred.*	500.	D.
Sexcenti,	*six hundred.*	600.	DC.
Septingenti,	*seven hundred.*	700.	DCC.
Octingenti,	*eight hundred.*	800.	DCCC.
Nongenti,	*nine hundred.*	900.	DCCCC.
Mille,	*a thousand.*	1,000.	M.
Duo millia, *or* Bis mille,	*two thousand.*	2,000.	MM.
Decem millia, *or* Decies mille,	*ten thousand.*	10,000.	XM.
Viginti millia, *or* Vicies mille,	*twenty thousand.*	20,000.	XXM.

A thousand was originally marked thus, CIƆ. which in latter times was contracted into M. Five hundred was marked thus, IƆ, or, by contraction, D.

The annexing of Ɔ. to IƆ. makes its value ten times greater; thus, IƆƆ. marks five thousand, and IƆƆƆ. fifty thousand.

The prefixing of C. together with the annexing of Ɔ. to the number CIƆ. makes its value ten times greater; thus, CCIƆƆ. denotes ten thousand; and CCCIƆƆƆ. a hundred thousand. The ancient Romans, according to Pliny, proceeded no farther in this method of notation. If they had occasion to express a larger number, they did it by repetition; thus, CCCIƆƆƆ. CCCIƆƆƆ. signified two hundred thousand, &c.

We sometimes find *thousands* expressed by a straight line drawn over the top of the numeral letters; thus, $\overline{\text{III}}$. denotes three thousand; $\overline{\text{X}}$. ten thousand.

The cardinal numbers, except *unus* and *mille*, want the singular.

Unus is not used in the plural, except when joined with a substantive which wants the singular; as, *in unis ædĭbus*, in one house. Terent. Eun. ii. 3. 75. *Unæ, nuptiæ.* Id. Andr. iv. 1. 51. *In una mœnia convenêre.* Sallust. Cat. 6. or when several particulars are considered as one whole; as, *una vestimenta*, one suit of clothes. Cic. Flacc. 29.

Duo and *tres* are thus declined:

Plural.				*Plural.*	
N. duo,	duæ,	duo,	N. tres,	tres,	tria,
G. duōrum,	duārum,	duōrum,	G. trium,	trium,	trium,
D. duŏbus,	duăbus,	duŏbus,	D. tribus,	tribus,	tribus,
A. duos *or* duo,	duas,	duo,	A. tres,	tres,	tria,
V. duo,	duæ,	duo,	V. tres,	tres,	tria,
A. duŏbus,	duăbus,	duŏbus.	A. tribus,	tribus,	tribus.

In the same manner with *duo*, decline *ambo*, both.

All the cardinal numbers from *quatuor*, to *centum*, including them both, are indeclinable; and from *centum* to *mille*, are declined like the plural of *bonus;* thus, *ducenti, -tæ, -ta; ducentōrum, -tārum, -tōrum*, &c.

Mille, the substantive, makes Nom. and Acc. *mille*, Abl. *milli;* as, *mille homĭnum*, 'a thousand men;' *milli hominum*, 'with a thousand men.' In the plural it is perfect. *Duo millia homĭnum*, 'two thousand men;' *Trium millium homĭnum, Trĭbus millibus homĭnum*, &c.

Mille, the adjective is plural only, and indeclinable; as, *milli homĭnes*, 'a thousand men;' *mille hominĭbus*, 'with a thousand men.' To express more than one thousand, it has the numeral adverbs joined with it; as, *Bis mille homines*, 'two thousand men;' *Ter mille homĭnes*, &c.

2. The Ordinal numbers, are, *prīmus*, first; *sĕcundus*, second, &c.; declined like *bonus*.

3. The Distributive are, *singŭli*, one by one; *bīni*, two by two, or by twos, &c.; declined like the plural of *bonus*.

4. The Multiplicative numbers are *simplex*, simple; *duplex*, double, *or* two-fold; *triplex*, triple, *or* three-fold; *quadruplex*, four-fold, &c.; all of them declined like *felix;* thus, *simplex, -ĭcis*, &c.

5. The Cardinal and Distributive numbers may be thus distinguished; the Cardinal expresses a number absolutely, as, *one*, *two*, &c.; the Distributive are those which distribute the same number to every single person; as, *Dedit nobis* DECEM *libros*, 'he gave us *together* ten books;' *dedit nobis* DENOS *libros*, 'he gave us *each* ten books.'

But poets, and sometimes prose writers, use the Distributive for the Cardinal numbers, particularly with substantives which are plural only; as, *binæ nuptiæ*, 'two weddings;' *binæ literæ*, 'two epistles;' not *duæ*, for *duæ literæ* would mean two letters of the alphabet.

The Multiplicative numbers are also sometimes used for the Cardinal by the poets; as, *Duplices tendens ad sidĕra palmas*, instead of *duas palmas*.

The interrogative words to which these numerals answer, are *quot*, *quŏtus*, *quŏtēni*, *quŏties*, and *quŏtuplex*.

Quot, how many? is indeclinable: So *tot*, so many; *tŏtĭdem*, just so many; *quotquot quotcunque*, how many soever; *alĭquot*, some.

The following Table contains a list of the Ordinal and Distributive Numbers, together with the Numeral Adverbs, which are often joined with the Numeral Adjectives.

Ordinal.	*Distributive.*	*Numeral Adverbs.*
Prīmus, -a, -um.	Singŭli, -æ, -a.	Semel, *once.*
Sĕcundus.	Bīni.	Bis, *twice.*
Tertius.	Terni.	Ter, *thrice.*
Quartus.	Quaterni.	Quăter, *four times.*
Quintus.	Quīni.	Quinquies, &c.
Sextus.	Sēni.	Sexies.
Septĭmus.	Septēni.	Septies.
Octāvus.	Octōni.	Octies.
Nōnus.	Nŏvēni.	Nŏvies.
Dĕcĭmus.	Dēni.	Dĕcies.
Undĕcĭmus.	Undēni.	Undecies.
Duodecĭmus.	Duodēni.	Duodecies.
Decĭmus tertius.	Trēdēni, terni deni.	Tredecies.
Decĭmus quartus.	Quaterni deni.	Quatuordecies.
Decĭmus quintus.	Quindēni.	Quindecies.
Decĭmus sextus.	Seni deni.	Sexdecies.
Decĭmus septĭmus.	Septēni deni.	Decies ac septies.
Decĭmus octāvus.	Octōni deni.	Decies ac octies.
Decĭmus nonus.	Novēni deni.	Decies et novies.
Vīgesĭmus, vīcesĭmus.	Vīcēni.	Vīcies.
Vīgesĭmus prīmus.	Vīcēni singŭli.	Vicies semel.
Trīgesĭmus, tricesĭmus.	Tricēni.	Trīcies.
Quadragesĭmus.	Quadrāgēni.	Quadrāgies.
Quinquagesĭmus.	Quinquagēni.	Quinquagies.
Sexagesĭmus.	Sexāgēni.	Sexagies.
Septuagesĭmus.	Septuāgēni.	Septuagies.
Octogesĭmus.	Octogēni.	Octōgies.
Nonagesĭmus.	Nonagēni.	Nonagies.
Centesĭmus.	Centēni.	Centies.
Dŭcentesĭmus.	Dŭcēni.	Dŭcenties.
Trĕcentesĭmus.	Trĕcentēni.	Trĕcenties.
Quadringentesĭmus.	Quăter centēni.	Quadringenties.
Quingentesĭmus.	Quinquies centēni.	Quingenties.
Sexcentesĭmus.	Sexies centēni.	Sexcenties.
Septingentesĭmus.	Septies centēni.	Septingenties.
Octingentesĭmus.	Octies centēni.	Octingenties.
Nongentesĭmus.	Novies centēni.	Nōningenties.
Millesĭmus.	Millēni.	Millies.
Bis millesĭmus.	Bis millēni.	Bis millies.

To the numeral adjectives may be added such as express division, proportion, time, weight, &c.; as, *bĭpartītus, tripartītus*, &c.; *duplus, triplus*, &c.; *bīmus, trīmus*, &c.; *biennis, triennis*, &c.; *bĭmestris, trimestris*, &c.; *bilībris, trilībris*, &c.; *bīnārius, ternarius*, &c.; which last are applied to the number of any kind of things whatever; as, *versus sēnārius*, a verse of six feet; *dēnārius nummus*, a coin of ten asses; *octogenārius senex*, an old man eighty years old; *grex centenārius*, a flock of an hundred, &c.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

The comparison of adjectives expresses the quality in different degrees: as, *durus*, hard; *durior*, harder; *durissĭmus*, hardest.

Those adjectives only are compared whose signification admits the distinction of *more* and *less*.

The degrees of comparison are three, the *Positive*, *Comparative*, and *Superlative*.

The *Positive* seems improperly to be called a degree. It simply signifies the quality; as *durus*, hard; and serves only as a foundation for the other degrees. By it we express the relation of equality; as, *he is as* tall *as I*.

The *Comparative* expresses a greater degree of the quality, and has always a reference to a less degree of the same; as, *durior*, harder; *sapientior*, wiser.

The *Superlative* expresses the quality carried to the greatest degree; as, *durissĭmus*, hardest; *sapientissĭmus*, wisest.

FORMATION OF THE DEGREES.

COMPARATIVE.

The comparative degree is formed from the first case of the positive which ends in *i*, by adding the syllable *or* for the masculine and feminine, and *us* for the neuter; as,

Nom. *altus, alta, altum,*
Gen. *alti:*

then adding *or* and *us*, we have *altior, altior, altius.*

In adjectives of the third declension, the Dative is of course the first case that ends in *i*, as, Nom. *mitis*, Gen. *mitis*, Dat. *miti;* then by adding *or* and *us*, we have *mitior, mitior, mitius.*

Mitior, *meeker*, is thus declined.

Singular number.

Nom.	Mitior,	mitior,	mitius,
Gen.	Mitiōris,	mitiōris,	mitiōris,
Dat.	Mitiōri,	mitiōri,	mitiōri,
Acc.	Mitiōrem,	mitiōrem,	mitius,
Voc.	Mitior,	mitior,	mitius,
Abl.	Mitiōre, *or* Mitiōri,	*in all the genders.*	

Plural number.

Nom.	Mitiōres,	mitiōres,	mitiōra,
Gen.	Mitiōrum,	mitiōrum,	mitiorum,
Dat.	Mitiorĭbus,	mitiorĭbus	mitiorĭbus,
Acc.	Mitiōres,	mitiōres,	mitiora.
Voc.	Mitiōres,	mitiores,	mitiora,
Abl.	Mitiorĭbus,	mitiorĭbus,	mitiorĭbus.

SUPERLATIVE.

The Superlative degree is formed from the same case by adding *ssĭmus ;* as, Nom. *altus*, Gen. *alti*, Superlative *altissĭmus.* So, *mitis*, Gen. *mitis*, Dat. *miti*, Superlative *mitissimus.*

If the positive end in *er*, the superlative is formed from the nominative by adding *rĭmus ;* as, *pauper*, 'poor ;' *pauperrĭmus*, 'poorest.'

The Comparative is always of the Third declension, the Superlative of the First and Second.

IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE COMPARISON.

1.	Bŏnus,	mĕlior,	optĭmus,	*good*,	*better*,	*best.*
	Mălus,	pejor,	pessĭmus,	*bad*,	*worse*,	*worst.*
	Magnus,	major,	maxĭmus,	*great*,	*greater*,	*greatest.*
	Parvus,	mĭnor,	mĭnĭmus,	*small*,	*less*,	*least.*
	Multus,	——	plūrĭmus,	*much*,	*more*,	*most.*

Fem. Multa, plurĭma; *neut.* multum, plus, plurĭmum; *plur.* multi, plures, plurĭmi; multæ, plures, plurĭmæ, &c.

In several of these, both in English and Latin, the comparative and superlative seem to be formed from some other adjective, which in the positive has fallen into disuse ; in others, the regular form is contracted ; as, *maxĭmus*, for *magnissĭmus ; worse* for *worsest.*

2. These five have their superlative in *lĭmus:*

Făcĭlis, facilior, facillĭmus, *easy.*
Grăcĭlis, gracilior, gracillĭmus, *lean.*
Hŭmĭlis, humilior, humillĭmus, *low.*
Imbēcillis, imbecillior, imbecillĭmus, *weak.*
Sĭmĭlis, similior, simillĭmus, *like.*

3. The following adjectives have regular comparatives, but form the superlative differently:

Cĭter, citerior, citĭmus, *near*, &c.
Dexter, dexterior, dextĭmus, *right.*
Sĭnister, sinisterior, sinistĭmus, *left.*
Exter, -erior, extĭmus *or* extrēmus, *outward.*
Infĕrus, -ior, infĭmus *or* īmus, *below.*
Intĕrus, intĕrior, intĭmus, *inward.*
Mātūrus, -ior, maturrĭmus, *or* maturissĭmus, *ripe.*
Postĕrus, posterior, postrēmus, *behind.*
Sŭpĕrus, -rior, suprēmus *or* summus, *high.*
Vĕtus, vĕtĕrior, vĕterrĭmus, *old.*

4. Compounds in *dīcus*, *lŏquus*, *fĭcus*, and *vŏlus*, have *entior*, and *entissĭmus*; as, *mălĕdĭcus*, railing; *mălĕdicentior*, *maledicentissĭmus*: So, *magnĭlŏquus*, one that boasteth; *bĕnĕfĭcus*, beneficent; *mălĕvŏlus*, malevolent; *mīrĭfĭcus*, wonderful; *-entior*, *-entissĭmus*, or, *mirĭficissĭmus*. *Nēquam*, indeclinable, worthless, vicious, has *nēquior*, *nequissĭmus*.

There are a great many adjectives, which, though capable of having their signification increased, yet either want one of the degrees of comparison, or are not compared at all.

1. The following adjectives are not used in the positive:

Dēterior, *worse*, deterrĭmus.
Ocior, *swifter*, ocissĭmus.
Prior, *former*, prīmus.
Prŏpior, *nearer*, proxĭmus, *nearest* or *next*.
Ultĕrior, *farther*, ultĭmus.

2. The following want the comparative:

Inclўtus, inclytissĭmus, *renowned*.
Mĕrĭtus, meritissĭmus, *deserving*.
Nŏvus, novissĭmus, *new*.
Nūpĕrus, nuperrĭmus, *late*.
Par, părissĭmus, *equal*.
Săcer, sacerrĭmus, *sacred*.

3. The following want the superlative:

Adŏlescens, adolescentior, *young*.
Diŭturnus, diuturnior, *lasting*.
Ingens, ingentior, *huge*.
Jŭvĕnis, junior, *young*.
Opīmus, opimior, *rich*.
Prōnus, pronior, *inclined downwards*.
Sătur, satŭrior, *full*.
Sĕnex, senior, *old*.

To supply the superlative of *jŭvĕnis*, or *ădŏlescens*, we say *minĭmus natu*, the youngest; and of *senex*, *maxĭmus natu*, the oldest.

These also want the Superlative: Adjectives in *ālis*, *īlis*, and *bĭlis*, and many in *ānus*, *ĭvis*, and *inquus*; as *capitālis*, 'capital;' *regālis*, 'royal;' *civīlis*, 'civil;' *juvenīlis*, 'youthful;' *tolerabĭlis*, 'tolerable;' *arcānus*, 'secret;' *declīvis*, 'bending downwards;' *proclīvis*, 'down-hill;' *longinquus*, 'far off;' *propinquus*, 'near,' &c. Some are found only in the Positive; the compounds of *Gero* and *Fero*, participles in *rus* and *dus*, and adjectives in *bundus*, *imus*, *inus*, *ivus*, *orus*. Also, *almus*, 'cherishing;' *calvus*, 'bald;' *claudus*, 'lame;' *delīrus*, 'out of the furrow;' 'doting;' *dubius*, 'doubtful;' *egēnus*, 'indigent;' *magnanimus*, 'courageous;' *memor*, 'mindful;' *mirus*, wonderful;' *rudis*, 'new,' 'rude;' *salvus*, 'safe;' *vacuus*, 'empty;' *vulgāris*, 'common,' &c. But many of these admit of *Magis*, *Minus*, *Maximè*, *Minimè*, &c.

Antĕrior, former; *sĕquior*, worse; *sătior*, better, are only found in the comparative.

4. **Many adjectives are not compared at all; such are those compounded with nouns or verbs; as,** *versĭcŏlor*, of divers colours; *pestĭfer*, poisonous; also, adjectives in *us* pure, in *ĭvus, inus, orus*, or *ĭmus*, and diminutives; as, *dŭbius*, 'doubtful;' *văcuus*, empty;' *fŭgĭtīvus*, that flieth away; *mātūtīnus*, early; *cănōrus*, shrill; *lēgĭtĭmus*, lawful; *tĕnellus*, somewhat tender; *majuscŭlus*, &c.; together with a great many others of various terminations; as, *almus*, gracious; *præcox-ŏcis*, soon or early ripe; *mīrus*, *ĕgēnus*, *lăcer*, *mĕmor*, *sospes*, &c.

This defect of comparison is supplied by putting the adverb *magis* before the adjective, for the comparative degree; and *valde* or *maxĭme* for the superlative; thus, *egēnus*, needy, *magis egēnus*, more needy; *valde* or *maxĭme egēnus*, very, or most needy. Which form of comparison is also used in those adjectives which are regularly compared.

IRREGULAR AND UNUSUAL COMPARISONS.

———	Antĕrior, *former*, Cæs.	———
Aprīcus, *sunny*.	Aprīcior, *Plin.*	Aprīcissĭmus, *Colum.*
Bellus, *fine*.	Bellior, *Varr.*	Bellissĭmus, *Cic.*
Cĕler, *swift*.	Cĕlĕrior, *passim.*	{ Cĕlerrĭmus, *passim.* / Cĕlĕrissĭmus, *Enn. & Cn. Manl.* }
Commūnis, *common*.	Commūnior, *Suet.*	Communissĭmus, *Suet.*
Consultus, *skilled*.	[Consultior, *Tertul.*]	Consultissĭmus, *Cic.*
Crispus, *curled*.	Crispior, *Plin.*	Crispissĭmus, *Colum.*
Dīversus, *different*.	Dīversior, *Gel. Lucr.*	Dīversissĭmus, *Liv. Tacit.*
Dīvĕs, *rich*.	{ Dīvĭtior, *Ovid. Cic.* / Ditior, *Hor.* }	Dīvĭtissĭmus, *Cic.* / Dītissĭmus, *Virg.*
Falsus, *false*.	Falsius, *Petron.*	Falsissĭmus, *Colum.*
Fīdus, *faithful*.	Fidior, *Liv.*	Fīdissĭmus, *Cic. Ovid.*
Imbēcillus, *weak*.	Imbēcillior, *Cic.*	Imbēcillissĭmus, *Senec. Cels.*
Jējūnus, *fasting*.	Jējūnior, *Cic.*	———
Infīnītus, *indefinite*.	Infīnītior, *Cic.*	———
Invictus, *unconquered*.	[Invictior, *S. August.*]	Invictissĭmus, *Cic. et. al.*
Invīsus, *hated*.	Invīsior, *Mart.*	Invīsissĭmus, *Plin. Senec.*
Invītus, *reluctant*.	Invītior, *Plaut.*	Invītissĭmus, *Cic.*
Lĭcens, *extravagant*.	Lĭcentior, *Cic.*	———
Mellītus, *honeyed*.	———	Mellītissĭmus, *Apul.*
Nēquam, *wicked*.	Nēquior, *Cic.*	Nēquissĭmus, *Cic.*
Persuasus, *persuaded*.	———	Persuasissĭmus, *Cic.*
Pŏtis, *or* Pŏte, *able*.	Pŏtior, *passim.*	Pŏtissĭmus, *passim.*
———	Sătius, *better, passim.*	———
———	Sĕquior, *worse, Liv.*	———
{ Sylvester, *or* / Sylvestris, *woody*. }	Sylvestrior, *Plin.*	———
Sŭpīnus, *lying on the back*.	Sŭpīnior, *Mart.*	———

PRONOUN.

A Pronoun is a word which stands *instead of a noun*.*

---

* Thus, *I* stands for the name of the person who speaks; *thou*, for the name of the person addressed.

Pronouns serve to point out objects, whose names we either do not know, or

The simple pronouns in Latin are eighteen; *ĕgo, tu, sui; ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, quis, qui; meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester; nostras, vestras,* and *cujas*.

Three of them are substantives, *ĕgo, tu, sui;* the other fifteen are adjectives.

Ego, *I.*

Singular.		Plural.	
N. ego,	*I,*	N. nos,	*we,*
G. mei,	*of me,*	G. nostrûm, *or* nostri,	*of us,*
D. mihi,	*to me,*	D. nōbis,	*to us,*
A. me,	*me,*	A. nos,	*us,*
V. ——		V. ——	
A. me,	*with me.*	A. nobis,	*with us.*

Tu, *thou.*

Singular.			Plural.	
N. tu,	*thou,*	or *you.*	N. vos.	*ye* or *you,*
G. tui,	*of thee,*		G. vestrûm, *or* vestri,	*of you,*
D. tĭbi,	*to thee,*		D. vōbis,	*to you,*
A. te,	*thee,*		A. vos,	*you,*
V. tu,	*O thou,*		V. vos,	*O ye* or *you,*
A. te,	*with thee.*		A. vobis,	*with you.*

Sui, *of himself, of herself, of itself.*

Singular.	Plural.
N. ——	N. ——
G. sui, *of himself, of herself, of itself.*	G. sui, *of themselves,*
D. sĭbi, *to himself, to herself,* &c.	D. sibi, *to themselves,*
A. se, *himself,* &c.	A. se, *themselves,*
V. ——	V. ——
A. se, *with himself,* &c.	A. se, *with themselves.*

Obs. 1. *Ego* wants the vocative, because one cannot call upon himself, except as a second person; thus, we cannot say, *O ego,* O I; *O nos,* O we.

Obs. 2. *Mihi* in the dative is sometimes by the poets contracted into *mî.*

---

do not want to mention. They also serve to shorten discourse, and prevent the too frequent repetition of the same word; thus, instead of saying, *When Cæsar had conquered Gaul, Cæsar turned Cæsar's arms against Cæsar's country,* we say, When Cæsar had conquered Gaul, *he* turned *his* arms against *his* country.

OBS. 3. The genitive plural of *ego* was anciently *nostrōrum* and *nostrārum*; of *tu*, *vestrōrum* and *vestrārum*, which were afterwards contracted into *nostrûm* and *vestrûm*.

We commonly use *nostrûm* and *vestrûm* after partitives, numerals, comparatives, or superlatives; and *nostri* and *vestri* after other words.

The English substantive pronouns *he*, *she*, *it*, are expressed in Latin by these pronominal adjectives, *ille*, *iste*, *hic*, or *is*; as,

Ille, for the masc. *illa*, for the fem. *illud* for the neuter, that: or *ille*, he; *illa*, she; *illud*, it or that: thus,

	Singular.			*Plural.*		
N.	ille,	illa,	illud,	illi,	illæ,	illa,
G.	illius,	illius,	illius,	illōrum,	illārum,	illōrum,
D.	illi,	illi,	illi,	illis,	illis,	illis,
A.	illum,	illam,	illud,	illos,	illas,	illa,
V.	ille,	illa,	illud,	illi,	illæ,	illa,
A.	illo,	illâ,	illo.	illis,	illis,	illis.

Ipse, he himself, *ipsa*, she herself, *ipsum*, itself; and *iste*, *ista*, *istud*, are declined like *ille*; only *ipse*, has *ipsum* in the nom. acc. and voc. sing. neut.

Ipse, is often joined to *ego*, *tu*, *sui*; and has in Latin the same force with *self* in English, when joined with a possessive pronoun; as *ego ipse*, I myself.

Hic, hæc, hoc, *this*.

	Singular.			*Plural.*		
N.	hic,	hæc,	hoc,	hi,	hæ,	hæc,
G.	hujus,	hujus,	hujus,	horum,	harum,	horum,
D.	huic,	huic,	huic,	his,	his,	his,
A.	hunc,	hanc,	hoc,	hos,	has,	hæc,
V.	hic,	hæc,	hoc,	hi,	hæ,	hæc,
A.	hoc,	hac,	hoc.	his,	his.	his.

Is, ea, id; *he*, *she*, *it*; or *that*.

	Singular.			*Plural.*		
N.	is,	ea,	id,	ii,	eæ,	ea,
G.	ejus,	ejus,	ejus,	eōrum,	eārum,	eōrum,
D.	ei,	ei,	ei,	iis *or* eis,	iis, *or* eis,	iis *or* eis,
A.	eum,	eam,	id,	eos,	eas,	ea,
V.	———	———		———		
A.	eo,	eâ	eo.	iis *or* eis,	iis *or* eis,	iis *or* eis.

Quis, quæ, quod or *quid?* which, what? Or *quis?* who? *or* what man? *quæ?* who? *or* what woman? *quod* or *quid?* what? which thing? *or* what thing? thus,

	Singular.				*Plural.*		
N.	quis,	quæ,	quod *or* quid,	N.	qui,	quæ,	quæ,
G.	cujus,	cujus,	cujus,	G.	quorum,	quarum,	quorum,
D.	cui,	cui,	cui,	D.		queis, *or* quibus,	
A.	quem,	quam,	quod *or* quid,	A.	quos,	quas,	quæ,
V.	———			V.	———		
A.	quo,	quâ,	quo.	A.		queis, *or* quibus.	

Qui, quæ, quod, who, which, that; Or vir *qui,* the man *who* or *that;* fœmina *quæ,* the woman *who* or *that;* negotium *quod,* the thing *which* or *that:* genit. vir *cujus,* the man *whose* or *of whom;* mulier *cujus,* the woman *whose* or *of whom;* negotium *cujus,* the thing *of which,* seldom *whose,* &c. thus,

	Singular.				*Plural.*		
N.	qui,	quæ,	quod,	N.	qui,	quæ,	quæ,
G.	cujus,	cujus,	cujus,	G.	quorum,	quarum,	quorum,
D.	cui,	cui,	cujus,	D.		queis, *or* quibus,	
A.	quem,	quam,	quod,	A.	quos,	quas,	quæ,
V.	——	——	——	V.	——	——	——
A.	quo,	quâ,	quo.	A.		queis, *or* quibus.	

The other pronouns are derivatives, coming from *ego, tu,* and *sui. Meus,* my or mine; *tuus,* thy or thine; *suus,* his own, her own, its own, their own; are declined like *bonus, -a, -um;* and *noster,* our; *vester,* your; like *pulcher, -chra, -chrum,* of the first and second declension; *noster, -tra, -trum.*

Nostras, of our country; *vestras,* of your country; *cujas,* of what *or* which country; are declined like *felix,* of the third declension: gen. *nostrātis,* dat. *nostrāti,* &c.

Pronouns as well as nouns, that signify things which cannot be addressed or called upon, want the vocative.

Meus has *mi,* and sometimes *meus,* in the voc. sing. masc.

The relative *qui* has frequently *quì* in the ablative, and that, which is remarkable, in all genders and numbers.

Qui is sometimes used for *quis:* and instead of *cujus,* the gen. of *quis,* we find an adjective pronoun, *cujus, -a, -um.*

Simple pronouns, with respect to their significations, are divided into the following classes:

1. *Demonstratives*, which point out any person or thing present, or as if present: *Ego, tu, hic, iste*, and sometimes *ille, is, ipse.*

2. *Relatives*, which refer to something going before: *ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, qui.*

3. *Possessives*, which signify possession: *meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester.*

4. *Patrials* or *Gentiles*, which signify one's country: *nostras, vestras, cujas.*

5. *Interrogatives*, by which we ask a question: *quis? cujas?* When they do not ask a question, they are called *Indefinites*, like other words of the same nature.

6. *Reciprocals*, which again call back or represent the same object to the mind: *sui* and *suus.*

COMPOUND PRONOUNS.

Pronouns are compounded variously:

1. With other pronouns; as, *isthic, isthæc, isthoc, isthuc*, or *istuc.* Acc. *Isthunc, isthanc, isthoc*, or *isthuc.* Abl. *Isthoc, isthac, isthoc.* Nom. and acc. plur. neut. *isthæc*, of *iste* and *hic.* So *illic*, of *ille* and *hic.*

2. With some other parts of speech; as, *hujusmŏdi, cujusmŏdi*, &c. *mēcum, tēcum, sēcum, nobiscum, vobiscum, quocum*, or *quîcum*, and *quibuscum: eccum, eccam; eccos, eccas*, and sometimes *ecca in the nom. sing. of ecce* and *is.* So *ellum*, of *ecce* and *ille.*

3. With some syllable added; as, *tute*, of *tu* and *te*, used only in the nom. *egŏmet, tūtĕmet, suīmet*, through all the cases, thus, *meīmet, tuīmet*, &c. of *ego, tu, sui*, and *met.* Instead of *tumet* in the nom. we say, *tutĕmet: Hiccine, hæccine*, &c. in all the cases that end in *c;* of *hic* and *cine: Meâpte, tuâpte, suâpte, nostrâpte, vestrâpte*, in the ablat. fem. and sometimes *meopte, tuopte*, &c. of *meus*, &c. and *pte: hicce, hæcce, hocce; hujusce, hisce, hosce;* of *hic* and *ce:* whence *hujuscĕmŏdi, ejuscemŏdi, cujuscemŏdi.* So, *IDEM*, the same, compounded of *is* and *dem*, which is thus declined:

Singular.

N.	īdem,	eădem,	īdem,
G.		ejusdem,	
D.		eīdem,	
A.	eundem,	eandem,	ĭdem,
V.	īdem,	eădem,	ĭdem,
A.	eōdem,	eâdem,	eōdem.

Plural.

N.	iĭdem,	eædem,	eădem,
G.	eorundem,	earundem,	eorundem,
D.		eīsdem, *or* iisdem,	
A.	eosdem,	easdem,	eădem,
V.	iidem,	eædem,	eădem,
A.		eīsdem, *or* iisdem.	

The pronouns which we find most frequently compounded, are *quis* and *qui.*

Quis in composition is sometimes the first, sometimes the last, and sometimes likewise the middle part of the word compounded; but *qui* is always the first.

1. The compounds of *quis*, in which it is put first, are *quisnam*, who? *quispiam*, *quisquam*, any one; *quisque*, every one; *quisquis*, whosoever; which are thus declined:

Nom.				Gen.	Dat.
Quisnam,	quænam,	quodnam	or quidnam	cujusnam;	cuinam;
Quispiam,	quæpiam,	quodpiam	or quidpiam;	cujuspiam;	cuipiam;
Quisquam,	quæquam,	quodquam	or quidquam;	cujusquam;	cuiquam;
Quisque,	quæque,	quodque	or quidque;	cujusque;	cuique;
Quisquis,	———	quidquid	or quicquid;	cujuscujus;	cuicui.

And so in the other cases according to the simple *quis*. But *quisquis* has not the fem. at all, and the neuter only in the nominative and accusative. *Quisquam* has also *quicquam* for *quidquam*; accusative *quenquam*, without the feminine. The plural is scarcely used.

2. The compounds of *quis*, in which *quis* is put last, have *qua* in the nom. sing. fem.; and in the nominative and accusative plural neuter, as, *alĭquis*, some; *ecquis*, who? of *et* and *quis*; also, *nequis*, *siquis*, *numquis*, which for the most part are read separately; thus, *ne quis*, *si quis*, *num quis*. They are thus declined:

Nom.				Gen.	Dat.
Alĭquis,	alĭqua,	alĭquod	or alĭquid;	alicujus;	alĭcui;
Ecquis,	ecqua or ecquæ,	ecquod	or ecquid;	eccujus;	eccui;
Si quis,	si qua,	si quod	or si quid;	si cujus;	si cui;
Ne quis,	ne qua,	ne quod	or ne quid;	ne cujus;	ne cui;
Num quis,	num qua,	num quod	or num quid;	num cujus;	num cui.

3. The compounds which have *quis* in the middle, are, *ecquisnam*, who? *unusquisque*, gen. *uniuscujusque*, every one. The former is used only in the nom. sing. and the latter wants the plural.

4. The compounds of *qui* are *quicunque*, whosoever; *quĭdam*, some; *quilĭbet* *quĭvis*, any one, whom you please; which are thus declined:

Nom.				Gen.	Dat.
Quĭcunque,	quæcunque,	quodcunque;		cujuscunque;	cuicunque;
Quĭdam,	quædam,	quoddam or	quiddam;	cujusdam;	cuidam;
Quilĭbet,	quælĭbet,	quodlĭbet or	quidlĭbet;	cujuslĭbet;	cuilĭbet;
Quivis,	quævis,	quodvis or	quidvis;	cujusvis;	cuivis.

Obs. 1. All these compounds have seldom or never *queis*, but *quibus*, in their dat. and abl. plur.; thus, *aliquĭbus*, &c.

Obs. 2. *Quis*, and its compounds, in comic writers, have sometimes *quis* in the feminine gender.

Obs. 3. *Quidam* has *quendam*, *quandam*, *quoddam* or *quiddam*, in the acc. sing. and *quorundam*, *quarundam*, *quorundam*, in the genitive plural, *n* being put instead of *m*, for the better sound.

Obs. 4. *Quod*, with its compounds, *alĭquod*, *quodvis*, *quoddam*, &c., are used when they agree with a substantive in the same case; *quid*, with its compounds, *alĭquid*, *quidvis*, &c., for the most part have either no substantive expressed, or govern one in the genitive. For this reason, they are by some reckoned substantives.

Obs. 5. *Alĭquis* and *Quidam* may be thus distinguished; the former denotes a person or thing *indeterminately*; the latter, *determinately*.

Obs. 6. *Uter* refers to two, and is therefore joined to comparatives.

Obs. 7. *Quis* may refer to many, and is therefore joined to superlatives.

Obs. 8. *Hic* and *Ille* are often found to refer to two words going before them. *Hic* usually to the latter; *Ille* to the former.

Obs. 9. As demonstratives, *Hic* refers to the person nearest to me; *Iste* to the person nearest to you; *Ille* to any intermediate person.

Obs. 10. *Ille* denotes honour: *Iste*, contempt: as, *ille vir; iste homo.*

Obs. 11. *Tuus* is used when we speak to one; as, *Sumne, Coriolāne, in tuis castris captīva an mater?* *Vester*, when we speak to more than one; as, *Cives, miseremĭni cœli vestri.*

Obs. 12. *Alter* is in general applied to one of two; *Alius* to one of many.

Obs. 13. *Quivis*, 'any whom you please;' *Quisquam*, 'any one;' and *Ullus*, 'any,' are thus used: *Quivis* affirms; as, *Quidvis mihi sat est*, 'any thing pleases me.' *Ullus* never affirms, but asks or denies, as also *Quisquam*. Thus, *Nec ulla res ex omnĭbus me angit*, 'nor does any of all these things distress me;' *Nec quisquam eōrum te novit*, 'nor does any one of them know you.' In an interrogative sentence, as, *An quisquam dubitāvit?* 'will any one doubt?' *Ullus* is used in the same way.

Obs. 14. *Mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri*, the genitives of the primitives, are generally used when *passion* or *the being acted upon*, is denoted: thus, *amor mei*, means 'the love wherewith I am loved.'

Obs. 15. *Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester*, the possessives, denote action or the possession of a thing; as, *amor meus*, is 'the love which I possess and exert towards somebody else.'

RECIPROCALS.

Obs. 16. *Sui* and *suus* are called Reciprocals, because they always refer to some preceding person or thing, generally the principal noun in the sentence; thus, *Cæsar Ariovisto dixit, non sese* (Cæsarem) *Gallis, sed Gallis sibi* (Cæsari) *bellum intulisse*, 'Cæsar told Ariovistus that he had not made war upon the Gauls, but the Gauls upon him;' in which *se* and *sibi* refer to Cæsar, the principal noun.

Obs. 17. The Reciprocals may likewise be applied to the word which follows the verb, provided that it is capable of being turned into the nominative without altering the sense; thus, *Trahit sua quemque voluptas*, (Virg.) 'his own pleasure allures each;' in which *sua* refers to *quemque*, the object of the verb, because it may become the subject, as in the equivalent expression, *Quisque trahitur a voluptāte suâ*, 'each one is allured by his own pleasures.'

Obs. 18. *Suus* is sometimes used in the sense of *unicuique proprius*, 'peculiar;' as, *Sabæi sua thura mittunt*, 'the country of the Sabæi produces frankincense peculiar to itself.' It sometimes indicates 'fitness,' or 'congruity;' as, *Sunt et sua dona parenti*, (Virg.) 'there are likewise for my father fit, appropriate, or suitable presents.'

Obs. 19. *Suus* is often used without the substantive being mentioned; as, *suum cuique tribuito*, 'give every man his own;' (*negotium*, 'thing,' being understood.) *Sui responderunt*, 'his soldiers,' or 'countrymen answered;' (*cives* or *milites* being understood.)

Obs. 20. The reciprocals alone are used with *quisque*, and they are generally placed before it; as, *Pro se quisque acriter intendat animum*, Liv. 'let each one for himself give his most critical attention;' *Sua cujusque animantis natura est*, Cic. 'every animal has its own peculiar nature.'

Obs. 21. *Sibi*, and sometimes *tibi*, *mihi*, &c., are used for the sake of elegance, when not indispensably necessary; as, *Expĕdi mihi hoc negotium*, Ter. 'despatch this business for me.'

VERB.*

A verb is a word which expresses what is affirmed of things; as, The boy *reads*. The sun *shines*. The man *loves*.

Or, *A verb is that part of speech which signifies to be, to do, or to suffer.*

Verbs, with respect to their signification, are divided into three different classes, *Active, Passive*, and *Neuter;* because we consider things either as acting, or being acted upon; or as neither acting, nor being acted upon; but simply existing, or existing in a certain state or condition, as in a state of motion or rest; &c.

1. An *Active* verb expresses an action, and necessarily supposes an agent, and an object acted upon; as, *amāre*, to love; *amo te*, I love thee.

2. A verb *Passive* expresses a passion or suffering, or the receiving of an action; and necessarily implies an object acted upon, and an agent by

---

* It is called a *Verb* or *Word* by way of eminence, because it is the most essential word in a sentence, without which the other parts of speech can form no complete sense. Thus, *the diligent boy reads his lesson with care*, is a perfect sentence; but if we take away the affirmation, or the word *reads*, it is rendered imperfect, or rather becomes no sentence at all; thus, *the diligent boy his lesson with care*.

A verb therefore may be thus distinguished from any other part of speech: Whatever word expresses an affirmation, or assertion, is a verb; or thus, Whatever word, with a substantive noun or pronoun before or after it, makes full sense, is a verb; as, *stones fall, I walk, walk thou.* Here *fall* and *walk* are verbs, because they contain an affirmation; but when we say, *a long walk, a dangerous fall*, there is no affirmation expressed; and the same words *walk* and *fall* become substantives or nouns. We often find likewise in Latin the same word used as a verb, and also as some other part of speech; thus, *amor, -ōris*, love, a substantive; and *amor*, I am loved, a verb.

which it is acted upon; as, *amāri*, to be loved; *tu amāris a me*, thou art loved by me.

3. A *Neuter* verb properly expresses neither action nor passion, but simply the being, state, or condition of things; as, *dormio*, I sleep; *sedeo*, I sit.

The verb is also called *Transitive* when the action *passes over* to the object, or has an effect on some other thing; as *scribo litĕras*, I write letters: but when the action is confined within the agent, and *passes not over* to any object, it is called *Intransitive;* as, *ambŭlo*, I walk; *curro*, I run; which are likewise called *Neuter* verbs. Many verbs in Latin and English are used both in a transitive and in an intransitive or neuter sense; as *sistĕre*, to stop; *incipĕre*, to begin; *durāre*, to endure, or to harden, &c.

Verbs which simply signify *being* are likewise called *Substantive* verbs; as, *esse* or *existĕre*, to be, or to exist. The notion of existence is implied in the signification of every verb; thus, *I love*, may be resolved into *I am loving*.

When the meaning of a verb is expressed without any affirmation, or in such a form as to be joined to a substantive noun, partaking thereby of the nature of an adjective, it is called a *Participle;* as, *amans*, loving; *amātus*, loved. But when it has the form of a substantive, it is called a *Gerund*, or a *Supine;* as, *amandum*, loving; *amātum*, to love; *amātu*, to love, or to be loved.

A verb is varied or declined by *Voices*, *Modes*, *Tenses*, *Numbers*, and *Persons*.

There are two voices; the *Active* and *Passive*.

The modes are four; *Indicative*, *Subjunctive*, *Imperative*, and *Infinitive*.

The tenses are five; the *Present*, the *Preter-imperfect*, the *Preter-perfect*, the *Preter-pluperfect*, and the *Future*.

The numbers are two; *Singular* and *Plural*.

The persons are three; *First*, *Second*, and *Third*.

VOICES.

Voice expresses the different circumstances in which we consider an object, whether as acting or being acted upon. When the action is con-

fined to the agent or nominative, as, *cado*, 'I fall;' or when it is exerted by the nominative upon an external object, as, *amo virum*, 'I love the man,' the Active voice is used; but when the action is exerted by an external object upon the nominative, the Passive voice is employed, as, *vir amatur*, 'the man is loved.'

As an Active verb denotes that the nominative to it, is doing something, and a Passive verb, that something is done to it, or in the language of grammarians, that it is suffering; hence, to distinguish whether an English verb is to be rendered in Latin by the Active or Passive voice, nothing more is necessary than to consider whether the nominative be doing or suffering; as, 'John is building,' *Joannes ædificat:* 'The wall is building,' *murus ædificatur.* The English is the same in both examples; but in one, John is active, in the other the wall is passive.

MODES.

Modes or *moods* are the various *manners* of expressing the signification of the verb:

The *Indicative* declares or affirms positively; as, *amo*, I love; *amābo*, I shall or will love; or asks a question; as, *an tu amas?* dost thou love?

The *Subjunctive* is usually joined to some other verb, and cannot make a full meaning by itself; as, *si me* obsecret, *redībo*, if *he entreat* me, I will return. *Ter.*

The *Imperative* commands, exhorts, or entreats; as, *ama*, love thou.

The *Infinitive* simply expresses the signification of the verb, without limiting it to any person or number; as, *amāre*, to love.

TENSES.

Tenses, or Times, express the time when any thing is supposed to be, to act, or to suffer.

The general divisions of time are into *present*, *past*, and *future;* but grammarians make five tenses, namely: the Present, the Preter-imperfect, the Preter-perfect, the Preter-pluperfect, and the Future.

PRESENT.

1. The Present tense denotes that an action is going on; as, *ædĭficat*, 'he builds.' Historians and poets sometimes describe past actions in this tense, in order to give animation to their discourse, by bringing them, as it were, under immediate observation. Thus, Livy, *Ad equĭtes dictator* ADVOLAT *obtestans ut ex equis* DESCENDANT, 'the dictator *flies* forward to the cavalry, beseeching them to dismount from their horses.'

2. Any general custom, if still existing, may be expressed in this tense; thus, *Apud Parthos signum* DATUR *tympano, et non tubâ*, Justin. 'Among the Parthians the signal *is given* by the drum, and not by the trumpet.'

3. In Latin, as in English, this tense may express futurity; as, *quàm mox* navĭgo *Ephesum*, Plaut. 'as soon as I sail,' or 'shall sail to Ephesus.'

PRÆTER-IMPERFECT.

1. The Præter-imperfect expresses an action as passing sometime ago, but not yet finished; as, *ædifīcābat*, 'he was building.'

2. It likewise denotes what is usual or customary; as, *aiebat*, 'he was wont to say.'

PRÆTER-PERFECT.

1. When we mean to say that an action *has taken* place, without particular reference to the present, or *has taken* place within some period of time not yet fully past, we use the Præter-perfect tense, as, *amavi*, 'I loved,' or 'have loved.'

2. It is sometimes used instead of the Pluperfect indicative; *Quæ postquan* evolvit, *cæcoque* exēmit *acervo*, Ovid, 'which after he sorted (had sorted) and took (had taken) from the confused mass.'

3. It is poetically used instead of the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive; as, *nec* veni *nisi fata*, Virg. 'neither would I have come unless the fates,' &c., for *venissem*.

PRETER-PLUPERFECT.

When we mean to say that an action was completed before some other past action took place, we use the Preter-pluperfect tense, as *hostes* superavĕrat, 'he had conquered the enemy' before the succours arrived.

FUTURE.

Future time is expressed two different ways. When we mean to express that an action will be going on, some time hence, but not finished, we use the Future indicative; as, *Cænābo*, 'I shall sup;' but when we mean to say that an action will be finished before another action, also future, takes place, we use the Future subjunctive; as, *Cum* cœnavero, *profiscar*, 'when I have supped,' or 'shall have supped, I will go.'

NUMBER AND PERSON.

1. *Number* marks how many we suppose to be, to act, or to suffer. As one or more persons may speak, be spoken to, or spoken of, there are *two* numbers; the Singular, which speaks of one, and the Plural, which speaks of more than one.

2. Person shows to what the meaning of the verb is applied, whether to the person speaking, the person spoken to, or to some other person or thing. There are three persons in each number: in the Singular, *Ego*, 'I,' is of the first; *Tu*, 'thou,' is of the second; and *Ille*, 'he,' or *Illa*, 'she,' is of the third person: in the Plural, *Nos*, 'we,' is of the first; *Vos*, 'ye' or 'you,' is of the second; *Illi*, (masc.) 'they,' or *Illæ*, (fem.) 'they,' is of the third person; and to each of these the verb has appropriate variations in its terminations.

Qui takes the person of the antecedent.

Ipse may be joined to any person, according to the sense.

THE DIFFERENT CONJUGATIONS.

A verb is properly said to be *conjugated*, when all its parts are properly classed, or, as it were, *yoked together*, according to Voice, Mode, Tense, Number, and Person.

Conjugation is the regular distribution of the various parts of verbs, according to the different voices, modes, tenses, numbers and persons.

There are four conjugations of verbs in Latin, distinguished by the vowel preceding *re* of the infinitive mode.

The first conjugation makes *āre* long; as *Amāre*.

The second conjugation makes *ēre* long; as, *Docēre*.

The third conjugation makes *ĕre* short; as, *Legĕre*.

The fourth conjugation makes *īre* long; as, *Audīre*.

Except *dăre*, to give, which has *ă* short, and also its compounds; thus, *Circumdăre*, to surround; *circumdămus*, *-dătis*, *-dăbam*, *dăbo*, &c.

The different conjugations are likewise distinguished from one another by the different terminations of the following tenses:

ACTIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mode.

Present Tense.

	Singular. Persons. 1.	2.	3.	Plural. Persons. 1.	2.	3.
Conjugation 1.	-o,	-as,	-at;	-āmus,	-ātis,	-ant.
2.	-eo,	-es,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
3.	-o,	-is,	-it;	-ĭmus,	-ĭtis,	-unt.
4.	-io,	-is,	-it;	-īmus,	-ītis,	-iunt.

Imperfect.

1.	-ābam,	-ābas,	-ābat;	-ābāmus,	-ābātis,	-ābant.
2.	-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat,	-ēbāmus,	-ēbātis,	-ēbant.
3.	-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat;	-ēbāmus,	-ēbātis,	-ēbant.
4.	-iēbam,	-iēbas,	-iēbat;	-iēbāmus,	-iēbātis,	-iēbant.

Future.

1.	-ābo,	-ābis,	-ābit;	-ābĭmus,	-ābĭtis,	-ābunt.
2.	-ēbo,	-ēbis,	-ēbit;	-ēbĭmus,	-ēbĭtis,	-ēbunt.
3.	-am,	-es,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
4.	-iam,	-ies,	-iet;	-iēmus,	-iētis,	-ient.

Subjunctive Mode.

Present Tense.

1.	-em,	-es,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
2.	-eam,	-eas,	-eat;	-eāmus,	-eātis,	-eant.
3.	-am,	-as,	-at;	-āmus,	-ātis,	-ant.
4,	-iam,	-ias,	-iat;	-iāmus	-iātis,	-iant.

Imperfect.

1.	-ārem,	-āres,	-āret;	-ārēmus,	-ārētis,	-ārent.
2.	-ērem,	-ēres,	-ēret;	-ērēmus,	-ērētis,	-ērent.
3.	-ĕrem,	-ĕres,	-ĕret;	-ĕrēmus,	-ĕrētis,	-ĕrent.
4.	-īrem,	-īres,	-īret;	-īrēmus,	-īrētis,	-īrent.

Imperative Mode.

	2.	3.	2.	3.
1.	-a *or* āto,	-āto;	-āte *or* ātōte,	-anto.
2.	-e *or* ēto,	-ēto;	-ēte *or* ētōte,	-ento.
3.	-e *or* ĭto,	-ĭto;	-ĭte *or* ĭtōte,	-unto.
4.	-i *or* īto,	-īto;	-īte *or* ītōte,	-iunto.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mode.

Present Tense.

1.	-or,	-āris *or* -āre,	-ātur;	-āmur,	-āmĭni,	-antur.
2.	-eor,	-ēris *or* -ēre,	-ētur;	-ēmur,	-ēmĭni,	-entur.
3.	-or,	-ĕris *or* -ĕre,	-ĭtur;	-ĭmur,	-ĭmĭni,	-untur.
4.	-ior,	-īris *or* -īre,	-ītur;	-īmur,	-īmĭni,	-iuntur.

Imperfect.

1.	-ābar,	-ābāris *or* -ābāre,	-ābātur;	-ābāmur,	-ābāmĭni,	-ābantur.
2.	-ēbar,	-ēbāris *or* -ēbāre,	-ēbātur;	-ēbāmur,	-ēbāmĭni,	-ēbantur.
3.	-ēbar,	-ēbāris *or* -ēbāre,	-ēbātur;	-ēbāmur,	-ēbāmĭni,	-ēbantur.
4.	-iēbar,	-iēbāris, *or* iēbāre,	-iēbātur;	-iēbāmur,	-iēbāmĭni,	-iēbantur.

Future.

1.	-ābor,	-āběris *or* -āběre,	-ābĭtur;	-ābĭmur,	-ābĭmĭni,	-ābuntur.
2.	-ēbor,	-ēběris *or* -ēběre,	-ēbĭtur;	-ēbĭmur,	-ēbĭmĭni,	-ēbuntur.
3.	-ar,	-ēris *or* -ēre,	-ētur;	-ēmur,	-ēmĭni,	-entur.
4.	-iar,	-iēris *or* -iēre,	-iētur;	-iēmur,	-iēmĭni,	-ientur.

Subjunctive Mode.

Present Tense.

1.	-er,	-ēris *or* -ēre,	-ētur;	-ēmur,	-ēmĭni,	-entur.
2.	-ear,	-eāris *or* -eāre,	-eātur;	-eāmur,	-eāmĭni,	-eantur.
3.	-ar,	-āris *or* -āre,	-ātur;	-āmur,	-āmĭni,	-antur.
4.	-iar,	-iāris *or* -iāre,	-iātur;	-iāmur,	-iāmĭni,	-iantur.

Imperfect.

1.	-ārer,	-ārēris *or* -ārēre,	-ārētur;	-ārēmur,	-ārēmĭni,	-ārentur.
2.	-ērer,	-ērēris *or* -ērēre,	-ērētur;	-ērēmur,	-ērēmĭni,	-ērentur.
3.	-ěrer,	-ěrēris *or* -ěrēre,	-ěrētur;	-ěrēmur,	-ěrēmĭni,	-ěrentur.
4.	-īrer,	-īrēris *or* -īrēre,	-īrētur;	-īrēmur,	-īrēmĭni,	-īrentur.

Imperative Mode.

	2.	3.	2.	3.
1.	-āre *or* -ātor,	-ātor;	-āmĭni,	-antor.
2.	-ēre *or* -ētor,	-ētor;	-ēmĭni,	-entor.
3.	-ěre *or* ĭtor,	-ĭtor;	-ĭmĭni,	-untor.
4.	-īre *or* ītor,	-ītor;	-īmĭni,	-iuntor.

Observe. Verbs in *io* of the third conjugation have *iunt* in the third person plur. of the present indic. active, and *iuntur* in the passive; and so in the imperative, *iunto* and *iuntor*. In the imperfect and future of the indicative they have always the terminations of the fourth conjugation, *iēbam* and *iam; iēbar* and *iar*, &c.

The terminations of the other tenses are the same through all the conjugations. Thus,

ACTIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mode.

	Singular. 1.	2.	3.	*Plural.* 1.	2.	3.
Perf.	-i,	-isti	-it;	-ĭmus,	-istis,	-ērunt *or* ēre
Plu.	-ěram,	-ěras,	-ěrat;	-ěrāmus,	-ěrātis,	-ěrant.

Subjunctive Mode.

Perf.	-ěrim,	-ěris,	-ěrit;	-ěrĭmus,	-ěrĭtis,	-ěrint.
Plu.	-issem,	-isses,	-isset;	-issēmus,	-issētis,	-issent.
Fut.	-ěro,	-ěris,	-ěrit;	-ěrĭmus,	-ěrĭtis,	-ěrint.

These Tenses, in the Passive Voice, are formed by the Participle Perfect, and the auxiliary verb *sum*, which is also used to express the Future of the Infinitive Active.

SUM is an irregular verb, and thus conjugated:

Pres. Indic.	*Pres. Infin.*	*Perf. Indic.*	
Sum,	esse,	fui.	*To be.*

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *am.*

Person.	*Singular.*		*Plural.*	
1.	Sum,	*I am.*	Sŭmus,	*We are.*
2.	Es,	*Thou art,* or *you are.*	Estis,	*Ye* or *you are.*
3.	Est,	*He is.*	Sunt,	*They are.*

IMPERFECT. *was.*

1.	Eram,	*I was.*	Erāmus,	*We were.*
2.	Eras,	*Thou wast,* or *you were.*	Erātis,	*Ye* or *you were.*
3.	Erat,	*He was.*	Erant,	*They were.*

PERFECT. *Have been* or *was.*

1.	Fui,	*I have been.*	Fuĭmus,	*We have been.*
2.	Fuisti,	*Thou hast been.*	Fuistis,	*Ye have been.*
3.	Fuit,	*He has been.*	Fuērunt, *or* -ēre,	*They have been.*

PLUPERFECT. *had been.*

1.	Fuĕram,	*I had been.*	Fuerāmus,	*We had been.*
2.	Fuĕras,	*Thou hadst been.*	Fuerātis,	*Ye had been.*
3.	Fuĕrat,	*He had been.*	Fuĕrant,	*They had been.*

FUTURE. *shall* or *will.**

1.	Ero,	*I shall be.*	Erĭmus,	*We shall be.*
2.	Eris,	*Thou wilt be.*	Erĭtis,	*Ye will be.*
3.	Erit,	*He will be.*	Erunt,	*They will be.*

---

* *Shall* and *will* are always employed to express future time.

Will, in the first person singular and plural, promises or threatens; in the second and third persons, only foretells: *shall*, on the contrary, in the first person, simply foretells; in the second and third persons, promises, commands, or threatens. But the contrary of this holds, when we ask a question; thus, "I *shall* go," "you *will* go," express event only; but "*will* you go?" imports intention; and "*shall* I go?" refers to the will of another.

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *may* or *can.*

1. Sim,	*I may be.*	Sīmus,	*We may be.*
2. Sis,	*Thou mayest be.*	Sītis,	*Ye may be.*
3. Sit,	*He may be.*	Sint,	*They may be.*

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would,* or *should.*

1. Essem,	*I might be.*	Essēmus,	*We might be.*
2. Esses,	*Thou mightest be.*	Essētis,	*Ye might be.*
3. Esset,	*He might be.*	Essent,	*They might be.*

PERFECT. *may have.*

1. Fuĕrim,	*I may have been.*	Fuerĭmus,	*We may have been.*
2. Fuĕris,	*Thou mayest have been.*	Fuerĭtis,	*Ye may have been.*
3. Fuĕrit,	*He may have been.*	Fuĕrint,	*They may have been.*

PLUPERFECT. *might, could, would,* or *should have;* or *had.*

1. Fuissem,	*I might have been.*	Fuissēmus,	*We might have been.*
2. Fuisses,	*Thou mightest have been.*	Fuissētis,	*Ye might have been.*
3. Fuisset,	*He might have been.*	Fuissent,	*They might have been.*

FUTURE. *shall have.*

1. Fuĕro,	*I shall have been.*	Fuerĭmus,	*We shall have been.*
2. Fuĕris,	*Thou wilt have been.*	Fuerĭtis,	*Ye will have been.*
3. Fuĕrit,	*He will have been.*	Fuĕrint,	*They will have been.*

IMPERATIVE MODE.

2. Es *or* esto,	*Be thou.*	Este *or* Estōte,	*Be ye,* or *be you.*
3. Esto,	*Let him be.*	Sunto,	*Let them be.*

INFINITIVE MODE.

PRES.	Esse,	*To be.*
PERF.	Fuisse,	*To have been.*
FUT.	Esse futūrus, -a, -um,	*To be about to be.*
	Fuisse futūrus, -a, -um,	*To have been about to be.*

PARTICIPLE.

FUTURE. Futūrus, -a, -um, *About to be.*

Obs. 1. The personal pronouns, which in English are, for the most part, added to the verb, in Latin are commonly understood; because the several persons are distinguished from one another by the different terminations of the verb, though the persons themselves be not expressed. The learner, however, at first may be accustomed to join them with the verb; thus, *ego sum,* I am, *tu es,* thou art, *or* you are; *ille est,* he is; *nos sumus,* we are; &c. So *ego āmo,* I love; *tu amas,* thou lovest, *or* you love; *ille amat,* he loveth *or* loves; *nos amāmus,* we love, &c.

Obs. 2. In the second person singular in English, we commonly use the plural form, except in solemn discourse; as, *tu es,* thou art, *or much oftener,* you are; *tu eras,* thou wast, *or* you were; *tu sis,* thou mayest be, *or* you may be; &c. So, *tu amas,* thou lovest, *or* you love; *tu amābas,* thou lovedest, *or* you loved; &c.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Ind.*	*Supine.*	
Amo,	amāre,	amāvi,	amātum,	*To love.*

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *love, do love,* or *am loving.*

S. Am-o,	*I love.*	*P.* Am-āmus,	*We love.*
Am-as,	*Thou lovest.*	Am-ātis,	*Ye* or *you love.*
Am-at,	*He loves.*	Am-ant,	*They love.*

IMPERFECT. *was.*

S. Am-ābam,	*I was loving.*	*P.* Am-abāmus,	*We were loving.*
Am-ābas,	*Thou wast loving.*	Am-abātis,	*Ye* or *you were loving.*
Am-ābat,	*He was loving.*	Am-ābant,	*They were loving.*

PERFECT. *have.*

S. Am-āvi,	*I have loved.*	*P.* Am-avĭmus,	*We have loved.*
Am-avisti,	*Thou hast loved.*	Am-avistis,	*Ye* or *you have loved.*
Am-āvit,	*He has loved.*	Am-avērunt, *or* -avēre,	*They have loved.*

PLUPERFECT. *had.*

S. Am-avĕram,	*I had loved.*	*P.* Am-averāmus,	*We had loved.*
Am-avĕras,	*Thou hadst loved.*	Am-averātis,	*Ye* or *you had loved.*
Am-avĕrat,	*He had loved.*	Am-avĕrant,	*They had loved.*

FUTURE. *shall* or *will.*

S. Am-ābo,	*I shall love.*	*P.* Am-abĭmus,	*We shall love.*
Am-ābis,	*Thou wilt love.*	Am-abĭtis,	*Ye* or *you will love.*
Am-ābit,	*He will love.*	Am-ābunt,	*They will love.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *may* or *can.*

S. Am-em,	*I may love.*	*P.* Am-ēmus,	*We may love.*
Am-es,	*Thou mayest love.*	Am-ētis,	*Ye* or *you may love.*
Am-et,	*He may love.*	Am-ent,	*They may love.*

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would,* or *should.*

S. Am-ārem,	*I might love.*	*P.* Am-arēmus,	*We might love.*
Am-āres,	*Thou mightest love.*	Am-arētis,	*Ye* or *you might love.*
Am-āret,	*He might love.*	Am-arēnt,	*They might love.*

PERFECT. *may have.*

S. Am-avĕrim,	*I may have loved.*	*P.* Am-averĭmus,	*We may have loved.*
Am-avĕris,	*Thou mayest have loved.*	Am-averĭtis,	*Ye* or *you may have loved.*
Am-avĕrit,	*He may have loved.*	Am-avĕrint,	*They may have loved.*

PLUPERFECT. *might have.*

S. Am-avissem,	*I might have loved.*	*P.* Am-avissēmus,	*We might have loved.*
Am-avisses,	*Thou mightest have loved.*	Am-avissētis,	*Ye* or *you might have loved.*
Am-avisset,	*He might have loved.*	Am-avissent,	*They might have loved.*

FUTURE. *shall have.*

S. Am-avĕro	*I shall have loved.*	*P.* Am-averĭmus,	*We shall have loved.*
Am-avĕris,	*Thou wilt have loved.*	Am-averĭtis,	*Ye* or *you will have loved.*
Am-avĕrit,	*He will have loved.*	Am-avĕrint,	*They will have loved.*

IMPERATIVE MODE.

Sing.	2. Am-a *or* am-āto,	*Love thou*, or *do thou love.*
	3. Am-āto,	*Let him love.*
Plur.	2. Am-āte, *or* am-atōte,	*Love ye*, or *do ye love.*
	3. Am-anto,*	*Let them love.*

INFINITIVE MODE.

PRES.	Am-āre,	*To love.*
PERF.	Am-avisse,	*To have loved.*
FUT.	Esse amatūrus, -a, -um,	*To be about to love.*
	Fuisse amatūrus, -a, -um,	*To have been about to love.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	Am-ans,	*Loving.*
FUT.	Am-atūrus, -a, -um,	*About to love.*

GERUNDS.

Nom.	Am-andum,	*Loving.*
Gen.	Am-andi,	*Of loving.*
Dat.	Am-ando,	*To loving.*
Acc.	Am-andum,	*Loving.*
Abl.	Am-ando,	*With loving.*

SUPINES.

Former.	Am-ātum,	*To love.*
Latter.	Am-ātu,	*To love*, or *to be loved.*

---

* The form of the present subjunctive is often used for the imperative in the first and third person; as, *amēmus*, let us love: *ament*, let them love.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Pres. Indic.	*Pres. Infin.*	*Perf. Part.*	
Amor,	amāri,	amātus,	*To be loved.*

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *am.*

S.	Am-or,	*I am loved.*	*P.*	Am-āmur,	*We are loved.*
	Am-āris *or* -āre,	*Thou art loved.*		Am-amĭni,	*Ye* or *you are loved.*
	Am-ātur,	*He is loved.*		Am-antur,	*They are loved.*

IMPERFECT. *was.*

S.	Am-ābar,	*I was loved.*	*P.*	Am-abāmur,	*We were loved.*
	Am-abāris, *or* -abāre,	*Thou wast loved.*		Am-abamĭni,	*Ye* or *you were loved.*
	Am-abātur,	*He was loved.*		Am-abantur,	*They were loved.*

PERFECT. *have been, was,* or *am.*

Sing.	Amātus sum *or* fui,	*I have been loved.*
	Amātus es *or* fuisti,	*Thou hast been loved.*
	Amātus est *or* fuit,	*He has been loved.*
Plur.	Amāti sumus *or* fuĭmus,	*We have been loved.*
	Amāti, estis *or* fuistis,	*Ye* or *you have been loved.*
	Amāti sunt *or* fuērunt *or* fuēre,	*They have been loved.*

PLUPERFECT. *had been.*

Sing.	Amātus eram *or* fuĕram,	*I had been loved.*
	Amātus eras *or* fuĕras,	*Thou hadst been loved.*
	Amātus erat *or* fuĕrat,	*He had been loved.*
Plur.	Amāti erāmus *or* fuerāmus,	*We had been loved.*
	Amāti erātis *or* fuerātis,	*Ye* or *you had been loved.*
	Amāti erant *or* fuerant,	*They had been loved.*

FUTURE. *shall* or *will be.*

S.	Am-ābor,	*I shall be loved.*	*P.*	Am-abĭmur,	*We shall be loved.*
	Am-abĕris *or* -abĕre,	*Thou wilt be loved.*		Am-abimĭni,	*Ye* or *you will be loved.*
	Am-abĭtur,	*He will be loved.*		Am-abuntur,	*They will be loved.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *may,* or *can be.*

S.	Am-er,	*I may be loved.*	*P.*	Am-ēmur,	*We may be loved.*
	Am-ēris *or* ēre,	*Thou mayest be loved.*		Am-emĭni,	*Ye* or *you may be loved.*
	Am-ētur,	*He may be loved.*		Am-entur,	*They may be loved.*

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would,* or *should be.*

S.	Am-ārer,	*I might be loved.*	*P.*	Am-arēmur,	*We might be loved.*
	Am-arēris *or* -arēre,	*Thou mightest be loved.*		Am-aremĭni,	*Ye* or *you might be loved.*
	Am-arētur,	*He might be loved.*		Am-arentur,	*They might be loved.*

PERFECT. *may have been.*

Sing. Amātus sim *or* fuĕrim,	*I may have been loved.*
Amātus sis *or* fuĕris,	*Thou mayest have been loved.*
Amātus sit *or* fuĕrit,	*He may have been loved.*
Plur. Amāti simus *or* fuerĭmus,	*We may have been loved.*
Amāti sitis *or* fuerĭtis,	*Ye* or *you may have been loved.*
Amāti sint *or* fuĕrint,	*They may have been loved.*

PLUPERFECT. *might, could, would,* or *should have been.*

Sing. Amātus essem *or* fuissem,	*I might have been loved.*
Amātus esses *or* fuisses,	*Thou mightest have been loved.*
Amātus esset *or* fuisset,	*He might have been loved.*
Plur. Amāti essēmus *or* fuissēmus,	*We might have been loved.*
Amāti essētis *or* fuissētis,	*Ye* or *you might have been loved.*
Amāti essent *or* fuissent,	*They might have been loved.*

FUTURE. *shall have been.*

Sing. Amātus fuĕro,	*I shall have been loved.*
Amātus fuĕris,	*Thou wilt have been loved.*
Amātus fuĕrit,	*He will have been loved.*
Plur. Amāti fuerĭmus,	*We shall have been loved.*
Amāti fuerĭtis,	*Ye* or *you will have been loved.*
Amāti, fuĕrint,	*They will have been loved.*

IMPERATIVE MODE.

Sing. 2. Am-āre, or am-ātor,	*Be thou loved.*
3. Am-ātor,	*Let him be loved.*
Plur. 2. Am-amĭni,	*Be ye loved.*
3. Am-antor,	*Let them be loved.*

INFINITIVE MODE.

PRES. Am-āri,	*To be loved.*
PERF. Esse *or* fuisse amātus, -a, -um,	*To have been loved.*
FUT. Amātum iri,	*To be about to be loved.*

PARTICIPLES.

PERF. Am-ātus, -a, -um,	*Loved.*
FUT. Am-andus, -a, -um,	*To be loved.*

SECOND CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Ind.*	*Supine.*	
Dŏcĕo,	dŏcēre.	dŏcui,	doctum,	*To teach.*

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *teach, do teach,* or *am teaching.*

S.	Doc-ĕo,	*I teach.*	*P.*	Doc-ēmus,	*We teach.*
	Doc-es,	*Thou teachest,* or *you teach.*		Doc-ētis,	*Ye* or *you teach.*
	Doc-et,	*He teaches.*		Doc-ent,	*They teach.*

IMPERFECT. *was.*

S.	Doc-ēbam,	*I was teaching.*	*P.*	Doc-ebāmus,	*We were teaching.*
	Doc-ēbas,	*Thou wast teaching.*		Doc-ebātis,	*Ye* or *you were teaching.*
	Doc-ēbat,	*He was teaching.*		Doc-ēbant,	*They were teaching.*

PERFECT. *have.*

S.	Doc-ui,	*I have taught.*	*P.*	Doc-uĭmus,	*We have taught.*
	Doc-uisti,	*Thou hast taught.*		Doc-uistis,	*Ye* or *you have taught.*
	Doc-uit,	*He has taught.*		Doc-uērunt, *or* -uēre,	*They have taught.*

PLUPERFECT. *had.*

S.	Doc-uĕram,	*I had taught.*	*P.*	Doc-uerāmus,	*We had taught.*
	Doc-uĕras,	*Thou hadst taught.*		Doc-uerātis,	*Ye* or *you had taught.*
	Doc-uĕrat,	*He had taught.*		Doc-uĕrant,	*They had taught.*

FUTURE. *shall* or *will.*

S.	Doc-ēbo,	*I shall teach.*	*P.*	Doc-ebĭmus,	*We shall teach.*
	Doc-ēbis,	*Thou wilt teach.*		Doc-ebĭtis,	*Ye* or *you will teach.*
	Doc-ēbit,	*He will teach.*		Doc-ēbunt,	*They will teach.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *may* or *can.*

S.	Doc-eam,	*I may teach.*	*P.*	Doc-eāmus,	*We may teach.*
	Doc-eas,	*Thou mayest teach.*		Doc-eātis,	*Ye* or *you may teach.*
	Doc-eat,	*He may teach.*		Doc-eant,	*They may teach.*

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would,* or *should.*

S.	Doc-ērem,	*I might teach.*	*P.*	Doc-erēmus,	*We might teach.*
	Doc-ēres,	*Thou mightest teach.*		Doc-erētis,	*Ye* or *you might teach.*
	Doc-ēret,	*He might teach.*		Doc-ērent,	*They might teach.*

PERFECT. *may have.*

Sing.	Doc-uĕrim,	*I may have taught.*
	Doc-uĕris,	*Thou mayest have taught.*
	Doc-uĕrit,	*He may have taught.*
Plur.	Doc-uerĭmus,	*We may have taught.*
	Doc-uerĭtis,	*Ye* or *you may have taught.*
	Doc-uĕrint,	*They may have taught.*

PLUPERFECT. *might, could, would,* or *should have.*

Sing.	Doc-uissem,	*I might have taught.*
	Doc-uisses,	*Thou mightest have taught.*
	Doc-uisset,	*He might have taught.*
Plur.	Doc-uissēmus,	*We might have taught.*
	Doc-uissētis,	*Ye* or *you might have taught.*
	Doc-uissent,	*They might have taught.*

FUTURE. *shall have.*

Sing.	Doc-uĕro,	*I shall have taught.*
	Doc-uĕris,	*Thou wilt have taught.*
	Doc-uĕrit,	*He will have taught.*
Plur.	Doc-uerĭmus,	*We shall have taught.*
	Doc-uerĭtis,	*Ye* or *you will have taught.*
	Doc-uĕrint,	*They will have taught.*

IMPERATIVE MODE.

Sing.	2. Doc-e *or* doc-ēto,	*Teach thou.*
	3. Doc-ēto,	*Let him teach.*
Plur.	2. Doc-ēte *or* doc-etōte,	*Teach ye* or *you.*
	3. Doc-ento,	*Let them teach.*

INFINITIVE MODE.

Pres.	Doc-ēre,	*To teach.*
Perf.	Doc-uisse,	*To have taught.*
Fut.	Esse doc-tūrus, -a, -um,	*To be about to teach.*
	Fuisse doc-tūrus, -a, -um,	*To have been about to teach.*

PARTICIPLES.

Pres.	Doc-ens,	*Teaching.*
Fut.	Doc-tūrus, -a, -um,	*About to teach.*

GERUNDS.

Nom.	Doc-endum,	*Teaching.*
Gen.	Doc-endi,	*Of teaching.*
Dat.	Doc-endo,	*To teaching.*
Acc.	Doc-endum,	*Teaching.*
Abl.	Doc-endo,	*With teaching.*

SUPINES.

Former.	Doc-tum,	*To teach.*
Latter.	Doc-tu,	*To teach,* or *to be taught.*

PASSIVE VOICE.

Pres. Indic.	*Pres. Infin.*	*Perf. Part.*	
Dŏcĕor,	dŏcēri,	doctus,	*To be taught.*

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *am.*

S.	Doc-ĕor,	*I am taught.*	*P.*	Doc-ēmur,	*We are taught.*
	Doc-ēris *or* doc-ēre,	*Thou art taught.*		Doc-emĭni,	*Ye* or *you are taught.*
	Doc-ētur,	*He is taught.*		Doc-entur,	*They are taught.*

IMPERFECT. *was.*

S.	Doc-ēbar,	*I was taught.*	*P*	Doc-ebāmur,	*We were taught.*
	Doc-ebāris, *or* doc-ebāre,	*Thou wast taught.*		Doc-ebamĭni,	*Ye* or *you were taught.*
	Doc-ebātur,	*He was taught.*		Doc-ebantur,	*They were taught.*

PERFECT. *have been, was,* or *am.*

Sing.	Doctus sum *or* fui,	*I have been taught.*
	Doctus es *or* fuisti,	*Thou hast been taught.*
	Doctus est *or* fuit,	*He has been taught.*
Plur.	Docti sumus *or* fuĭmus,	*We have been taught.*
	Docti estis *or* fuistis,	*Ye* or *you have been taught.*
	Docti sunt *or* fuērunt *or* fuēre,	*They have been taught.*

PLUPERFECT. *had been.*

Sing.	Doctus eram *or* fuĕram,	*I had been taught.*
	Doctus eras *or* fuĕras,	*Thou hadst been taught.*
	Doctus erat *or* fuĕrat,	*He had been taught.*
Plur.	Docti erāmus *or* fuerāmus,	*We had been taught.*
	Docti erātis *or* fuerātis,	*Ye* or *you had been taught.*
	Docti erant *or* fuĕrant,	*They had been taught.*

FUTURE. *shall* or *will be.*

S.	Doc-ēbor,	*I shall be taught.*	*P.*	Doc-ebĭmur,	*We shall be taught.*
	Doc-ebĕris *or* -ebĕre,	*Thou wilt be taught.*		Doc-ebimĭni,	*Ye* or *you will be taught.*
	Doc-ebĭtur,	*He will be taught.*		Doc-ebuntur,	*They will be taught.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *may,* or *can be.*

S.	Doc-ear,	*I may be taught.*	*P.*	Doc-eāmur,	*We may be taught.*
	Doc-eāris *or* -eāre,	*Thou mayest be taught.*		Doc-eamĭni,	*Ye* or *you may be taught.*
	Doc-eātur,	*He may be taught.*		Doc-eantur,	*They may be taught.*

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would,* or *should be.*

S.	Doc-ērer,	*I might be taught.*	*P.*	Doc-erēmur,	*We might be taught.*
	Doc-erēris *or* -erēre,	*Thou mightest be taught.*		Doc-eremĭni,	*Ye* or *you might be taught.*
	Doc-erētur,	*He might be taught.*		Doc-erentur,	*They might be taught.*

PERFECT. *may have been.*

Sing. Doctus sim *or* fuĕrim,	*I may have been taught.*
Doctus sis *or* fuĕris,	*Thou mayest have been taught.*
Doctus sit *or* fuĕrit,	*He may have been taught.*
Plur. Docti simus *or* fuerĭmus,	*We may have been taught.*
Docti sitis *or* fuerĭtis,	*Ye* or *you may have been taught.*
Docti sint *or* fuĕrint,	*They may have been taught.*

PLUPERFECT. *might, could, would,* or *should have been.*

Sing. Doctus essem *or* fuissem,	*I might have been taught.*
Doctus esses *or* fuisses,	*Thou mightest have been taught.*
Doctus esset *or* fuisset,	*He might have been taught.*
Plur. Docti essēmus *or* fuissēmus,	*We might have been taught.*
Docti essētis *or* fuissētis,	*Ye* or *you might have been taught.*
Docti essent *or* fuissent,	*They might have been taught.*

FUTURE. *shall have been.*

Sing. Doctus fuĕro,	*I shall have been taught.*
Doctus fuĕris,	*Thou wilt have been taught.*
Doctus fuĕrit,	*He will have been taught.*
Plur. Docti fuerĭmus,	*We shall have been taught.*
Docti fuerĭtis,	*Ye* or *you will have been taught.*
Docti fuĕrint,	*They will have been taught.*

IMPERATIVE MODE.

Sing. 2. Doc-ēre *or* doc-ētor,	*Be thou taught.*
3. Doc-ētor,	*Let him be taught.*
Plur. 2. Doc-emĭni,	*Be ye taught.*
3. Doc-entor,	*Let them be taught.*

INFINITIVE MODE.

PRES. Doc-ēri,	*To be taught.*
PERF. Esse *or* fuisse doctus, -a, -um,	*To have been taught.*
FUT. Doctum iri,	*To be about to be taught.*

PARTICIPLES.

PERF. Doc-tus, -a, -um,	*Taught.*
FUT. Doc-endus, -a, -um,	*To be taught.*

THIRD CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Ind.*	*Supine.*	
Lĕgo,	lĕgĕre,	lēgi,	lectum,	*To read.*

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *read, do read,* or *am reading.*

S. Leg-o,	*I read.*	P. Leg-ĭmus,	*We read.*
Leg-is,	*Thou readest.*	Leg-ĭtis,	*Ye* or *you read.*
Leg-it,	*He reads.*	Leg-unt,	*They read.*

IMPERFECT. *was.*

S.	Leg-ēbam,	*I was reading.*	*P.*	Leg-ebāmus,	*We were reading.*
	Leg-ēbas,	*Thou wast reading.*		Leg-ebātis,	*Ye* or *you were reading.*
	Leg-ēbat,	*He was reading.*		Leg-ēbant,	*They were reading.*

PERFECT. *have.*

S.	Lēg-i,	*I have read.*	*P.*	Leg-ĭmus,	*We have read.*
	Leg-isti,	*Thou hast read.*		Leg-istis,	*Ye* or *you have read.*
	Lēg-it,	*He has read.*		Leg-ērunt *or* -ēre,	*They have read.*

PLUPERFECT. *had.*

S.	Leg-ĕram,	*I had read.*	*P.*	Leg-erāmus,	*We had read.*
	Leg-ĕras,	*Thou hadst read.*		Leg-erātis,	*Ye* or *you had read.*
	Leg-ĕrat,	*He had read.*		Leg-ĕrant,	*They had read.*

FUTURE. *shall,* or *will.*

S.	Leg-am,	*I shall read.*	*P.*	Leg-ēmus,	*We shall read.*
	Leg-es,	*Thou wilt read.*		Leg-ētis,	*Ye* or *you will read.*
	Leg-et,	*He will read.*		Leg-ent,	*They will read.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *may,* or *can.*

S.	Leg-am,	*I may read.*	*P.*	Leg-āmus,	*We may read.*
	Leg-as,	*Thou mayest read.*		Leg-ātis,	*Ye* or *you may read.*
	Leg-at,	*He may read.*		Leg-ant,	*They may read.*

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would,* or *should.*

S.	Leg-ĕrem,	*I might read.*	*P.*	Leg-erēmus,	*We might read.*
	Leg-ĕres,	*Thou mightest read.*		Leg-erētis,	*Ye* or *you might read.*
	Leg-ĕret,	*He might read.*		Leg-ĕrent,	*They might read.*

PERFECT. *may have.*

S.	Leg-ĕrim	*I may have read.*	*P.*	Leg-erĭmus,	*We may have read.*
	Leg-ĕris,	*Thou mayest have read.*		Leg-erĭtis,	*Ye* or *you may have read.*
	Leg-ĕrit,	*He may have read.*		Leg-ĕrint,	*They may have read.*

PLUPERFECT. *might, could, would,* or *should have.*

S.	Leg-issem,	*I might have read.*	*P.*	Leg-issēmus,	*We might have read.*
	Leg-isses,	*Thou mightest have read.*		Leg-issētis,	*Ye* or *you might have read.*
	Leg-isset,	*He might have read.*		Leg-issent,	*They might have read.*

FUTURE. *shall have.*

S.	Leg-ĕro,	*I shall have read.*	*P.*	Leg-erĭmus,	*We shall have read.*
	Leg-ĕris,	*Thou wilt have read.*		Leg-erĭtis,	*Ye* or *you will have read.*
	Leg-ĕrit,	*He will have read.*		Leg-ĕrint,	*They will have read.*

IMPERATIVE MODE.

Sing.	2. Lĕg-e *or* leg-ĭto,	*Read thou.*
	3. Leg-ĭto,	*Let him read.*
Plur.	2. Leg-ĭte *or* leg-itōte,	*Read ye* or *you.*
	3. Leg-unto,	*Let them read.*

INFINITIVE MODE.

Pres.	Leg-ĕre,	*To read.*
Perf.	Lēg-isse,	*To have read.*
Fut.	Esse lectūrus, -a, -um,	*To be about to read.*
	Fuisse lectūrus, -a, -um,	*To have been about to read.*

PARTICIPLES.

Pres.	Leg-ens,	*Reading.*
Fut.	Lec-tūrus, -a, -um,	*About to read.*

GERUNDS.

Nom.	Leg-endum,	*Reading.*
Gen.	Leg-endi,	*Of reading.*
Dat.	Leg-endo,	*To reading.*
Acc.	Leg-endum,	*Reading.*
Abl.	Leg-endo,	*With reading.*

SUPINES.

Former.	Lec-tum,	*To read.*
Latter.	Lectu,	*To read,* or *to be read.*

PASSIVE VOICE.

Pres. Indic.	*Pres. Infin.*	*Perf. Part.*	
Lĕgor,	lĕgi,	lectus,	*To be read.*

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE, *am.*

S.	Leg-or,	*I am read.*	*P.*	Leg-ĭmur,	*We are read.*
	Leg-ĕris *or* -ĕre,	*Thou art read.*		Leg-imĭni,	*Ye* or *you are read.*
	Leg-ĭtur,	*He is read.*		Leg-untur,	*They are read.*

IMPERFECT. *was.*

S.	Leg-ēbar,	*I was read.*	*P.*	Leg-ebāmur,	*We were read.*
	Leg-ebāris *or* -ebāre,	*Thou wast read.*		Leg-ebamĭni,	*Ye* or *you were read.*
	Leg-ebātur,	*He was read.*		Leg-ebantur,	*They were read.*

PERFECT. *have been, was* or *am.*

Sing.	Lectus sum *or* fui,	*I have been read.*
	Lectus es *or* fuisti,	*Thou hast been read.*
	Lectus est *or* fuit,	*He has been read.*
Plur.	Lecti sumus *or* fuĭmus,	*We have been read.*
	Lecti estis *or* fuistis,	*Ye* or *you have been read.*
	Lecti sunt *or* fuērunt *or* fuēre,	*They have been read.*

PLUPERFECT. *had been.*

Sing.	Lectus eram *or* fuĕram,	*I had been read.*
	Lectus eras *or* fuĕras,	*Thou hadst been read.*
	Lectus erat *or* fuĕrat,	*He had been read.*
Plur.	Lecti erāmus *or* fuerāmus,	*We had been read.*
	Lecti erātis *or* fuerātis,	*Ye* or *you had been read.*
	Lecti erant *or* fuĕrant,	*They had been read.*

FUTURE. *shall,* or *will be.*

S. Leg-ar,	*I shall be read.*	*P.* Leg-ēmur,	*We shall be read.*
Leg-ēris *or* -ēre,	*Thou wilt be read.*	Leg-emĭni,	*Ye* or *you will be read.*
Leg-ētur,	*He will be read.*	Leg-entur,	*They will be read.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *may* or *can be.*

S. Leg-ar,	*I may be read.*	*P.* Leg-āmur,	*We may be read.*
Leg-āris, *or* -āre,	*Thou mayest be read.*	Leg-amĭni,	*Ye* or *you may be read.*
Leg-ātur,	*He may be read.*	Leg-antur,	*They may be read.*

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would,* or *should be.*

S. Leg-ĕrer,	*I might be read.*	*P.* Leg-erēmur,	*We might be read.*
Leg-erēris *or* -erēre,	*Thou mightest be read.*	Leg-eremĭni,	*Ye* or *you might be read.*
Leg-erētur,	*He might be read.*	Leg-erentur,	*They might be read.*

PERFECT. *may have been.*

Sing.	Lectus sim *or* fuĕrim,	*I may have been read.*
	Lectus sis *or* fuĕris,	*Thou mayest have been read.*
	Lectus sit *or* fuĕrit,	*He may have been read.*
Plur.	Lecti simus *or* fuerĭmus,	*We may have been read.*
	Lecti sitis *or* fuerĭtis,	*Ye* or *you may have been read.*
	Lecti sint *or* fuĕrint,	*They may have been read.*

PLUPERFECT. *might, could, would,* or *should have been.*

Sing.	Lectus essem *or* fuissem,	*I might have been read.*
	Lectus esses *or* fuisses,	*Thou mightest have been read.*
	Lectus esset *or* fuisset,	*He might have been read.*
Plur.	Lecti essēmus *or* fuissēmus,	*We might have been read.*
	Lecti essētis *or* fuissētis,	*Ye* or *you might have been read.*
	Lecti essent *or* fuissent,	*They might have been read.*

FUTURE. *shall have been.*

Sing.	Lectus fuĕro,	*I shall have been read.*
	Lectus fuĕris,	*Thou wilt have been read.*
	Lectus fuĕrit,	*He will have been read.*
Plur.	Lecti fuerĭmus,	*We shall have been read.*
	Lecti fuerĭtis,	*Ye* or *you will have been read.*
	Lecti fuĕrint,	*They will have been read.*

IMPERATIVE MODE.

Sing.	2. Leg-ĕre *or* -ĭtor,	*Be thou read.*
	3. Leg-itor,	*Let him be read.*
Plur.	2. Leg-imĭni,	*Be ye read.*
	3. Leg-untor,	*Let them be read.*

INFINITIVE MODE.

Pres.	Leg-i,	*To be read.*
Perf.	Esse *or* fuisse lectus, -a, -um,	*To have been read.*
Fut.	Lectum iri,	*To be about to be read.*

PARTICIPLES.

Perf.	Lec-tus, -a, -um,	*Read.*
Fut.	Leg-endus, -a, -um,	*To be read.*

ACTIVE VOICE.

Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Ind.*	*Supine.*	
Capĭo,	capĕre,	cēpi,	captum,	*To take.*

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.	*Plural.*
Capio,	Capĭmus,
Capis,	Capĭtis,
Capit,	Capiunt.

IMPERFECT.

Capiēbam,	Capiebāmus,
Capiēbas,	Capiebātis,
Capiēbat,	Capiēbant.

PERFECT.

Cepi,	Cepĭmus,
Cepisti,	Cepistis,
Cepit,	Cepērunt, *or* cepēre.

PLUPERFECT.

Cepĕram,	Ceperāmus,
Cepĕras,	Ceperātis,
Cepĕrat,	Cepĕrant.

FUTURE.

Capiam,	Capiēmus,
Capies,	Capiētis,
Capiet,	Capient.

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE.

Capiam,	Capiāmus,
Capias,	Capiātis,
Capiat,	Capiant.

IMPERFECT.

Capĕrem,	Caperēmus,
Capĕres,	Caperētis,
Capĕret,	Capĕrent.

PERFECT.

Cepĕrim,	Ceperĭmus,
Cepĕris,	Ceperĭtis,
Cepĕrit,	Cepĕrint.

PLUPERFECT.

Cepissem,	Cepissēmus,
Cepisses,	Cepissētis,
Cepisset,	Cepissent.

FUTURE.

Cepĕro,	Ceperĭmus,
Cepĕris,	Ceperĭtis,
Cepĕrit,	Cepĕrint.

IMPERATIVE MODE.

2. Cape *or* capĭto,	2. Capĭte *or* capitōte,
3. Capĭto.	3. Capiunto.

INFINITIVE MODE.

Pres. Capĕre,	Fut. Esse captūrus, -a, -um,
Perf. Cepisse.	Fuisse captūrus, -a, -um.

PARTICIPLES.

Present. Capiens. Future. Captūrus.

GERUNDS.

Nom. Capiendum,	*Acc.* Capiendum,
Gen. Capiendi,	*Abl.* Capiendo.
Dat. Capiendo,	

SUPINES.

Former. Captum. *Latter.* Captu.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Pres. Indic.	*Pres. Infin.*	*Perf. Part.*	
Capior,	Capi,	Captus,	*To be taken.*

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.	*Plural.*
Capior,	Capĭmur,
Capĕris *or* capĕre,	Capimĭni,
Capĭtur.	Capiuntur.

IMPERFECT.

Capiēbar,	Capiebāmur,
Capiebāris, *or* -bāre,	Capiebamĭni,
Capiebātur.	Capiebantur.

PERFECT.

Captus sum *or* fui,	Capti sumus *or* fuĭmus,
Captus es *or* fuisti,	Capti estis *or* fuistis,
Captus est *or* fuit.	Capti sunt *or* fuērunt *or* fuēre.

PLUPERFECT.

Captus eram *or* fuĕram,	Capti erāmus *or* fuerāmus,
Captus eras *or* fuĕras,	Capti erātis *or* fuerātis;
Captus erat *or* fuĕrat.	Capti erant *or* fuĕrant.

FUTURE.

Capiar,	Capiēmur,
Capiēris *or* capiēre,	Capiemĭni,
Capiētur.	Capientur.

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE.

Capiar,	Capiāmur,
Capiāris *or* capiāre,	Capiamĭni,
Capiātur.	Capiantur.

IMPERFECT.

Capĕrer,	Caperēmur,
Caperēris *or* -erēre,	Caperemĭni,
Caperētur.	Caperentur.

PERFECT.

Captus sim *or* fuĕrim,	Capti simus *or* fuerĭmus,
Captus sis *or* fuĕris,	Capti sitis *or* fuerĭtis,
Captus sit *or* fuĕrit.	Capti sint *or* fuĕrint.

PLUPERFECT.

Captus essem *or* fuissem,	Capti esēmus *or* fuissēmus,
Captus esses *or* fuisses,	Capti essētis or fuissētis,
Captus esset *or* fuisset.	Capti essent *or* fuissent.

FUTURE.

Captus fuĕro,	Capti fuerĭmus,
Captus fuĕris,	Capti fuerĭtis
Captus fuĕrit.	Capti fuĕrint.

IMPERATIVE MODE.

2. Capĕre *or* capĭtor,	2. Capimĭni,
3. Capĭtor.	3. Capiuntor.

INFINITIVE MODE.

PRES. Capi.
PERF. Esse *or* fuisse captus -a, -um,
FUT. Captum iri.

PARTICIPLES.

PERF. Captus, -a, -um. FUT. Capiendus, -a, -um.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Pres. Indic.	*Pres. Infin.*	*Perf. Indic.*	*Supine.*	
Audĭo,	audīre,	audīvi,	audītum,	*To hear.*

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *hear, do hear,* or *am hearing.*

S.	Aud-io,	*I hear,*	*P.*	Aud-īmus,	*We hear.*
	Aud-is,	*Thou hearest.*		Aud-ītis,	*Ye* or *you hear.*
	Aud-it,	*He hears.*		Aud-iunt,	*They hear.*

IMPERFECT. *was.*

S.	Aud-iēbam,	*I was hearing.*	*P.*	Aud-iebāmus,	*We were hearing.*
	Aud-iēbas,	*Thou wast hearing.*		Aud-iebātis,	*Ye* or *you were hearing.*
	Aud-iēbat,	*He was hearing.*		Aud-iēbant,	*They were hearing.*

PERFECT. *have.*

S.	Aud-īvi,	*I have heard.*	*P.*	Aud-ivĭmus,	*We have heard.*
	Aud-īvisti,	*Thou hast heard.*		Aud-ivistis,	*Ye* or *you have heard.*
	Aud-īvit,	*He has heard.*		Aud-ivērunt, *or* -ivēre,	*They have heard.*

PLUPERFECT. *had.*

S. Aud-ivĕram,	*I had heard.*	*P.* Aud-iverāmus,	*We had heard.*
Aud-ivĕras,	*Thou hadst heard.*	Aud-iverātis,	*Ye* or *you had heard.*
Aud-ivĕrat,	*He had heard.*	Aud-ivĕrant.	*They had heard.*

FUTURE. *shall* or *will.*

S. Aud-iam,	*I shall hear.*	*P.* Aud-iēmus,	*We shall hear.*
Aud-ies,	*Thou wilt hear.*	Aud-iētis,	*Ye* or *you will hear.*
Aud-iet,	*He will hear.*	Aud-ient,	*They will hear.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *may* or *can.*

S. Aud-iam,	*I may hear.*	*P.* Aud-iāmus,	*We may hear.*
Aud-ias,	*Thou mayest hear.*	Aud-iātis,	*Ye* or *you may hear.*
Aud-iat,	*He may hear.*	Aud-iant,	*They may hear.*

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would,* or *should.*

S. Aud-īrem,	*I might hear.*	*P.* Aud-irēmus,	*We might hear.*
Aud-īres,	*Thou mightest hear.*	Aud-irētis,	*Ye* or *you might hear.*
Aud-īret,	*He might hear.*	Aud-īrent,	*They might hear.*

PERFECT. *may have.*

Sing.	Aud-ivĕrim,	*I may have heard.*
	Aud-ivĕris,	*Thou mayest have heard.*
	Aud-ivĕrit,	*He may have heard.*
Plur.	Aud-iverĭmus,	*We may have heard.*
	Aud-iverĭtis,	*Ye* or *you may have heard.*
	Aud-ivĕrint,	*They may have heard.*

PLUPERFECT. *might, could, would,* or *should have.*

Sing.	Aud-ivissem,	*I might have heard.*
	Aud-ivisses,	*Thou mightest have heard.*
	Aud-ivisset,	*He might have heard.*
Plur.	Aud-ivissēmus,	*We might have heard.*
	Aud-ivissētis,	*Ye* or *you might have heard.*
	Aud-ivissent,	*They might have heard.*

FUTURE. *shall have.*

Sing.	Aud-ivĕro,	*I shall have heard.*
	Aud-ivĕris,	*Thou wilt have heard.*
	Aud-ivĕrit,	*He will have heard.*
Plur.	Aud-iverĭmus,	*We shall have heard.*
	Aud-iverĭtis,	*Ye* or *you will have heard.*
	Aud-ivĕrint,	*They will have heard.*

IMPERATIVE MODE.

Sing.	2. Aud-i *or* -īto,	*Hear thou.*
	3. Aud-īto,	*Let him hear.*
Plur.	2. Aud-īte *or* -itōte,	*Hear ye* or *you.*
	3. Aud-iunto,	*Let them hear.*

INFINITIVE MODE.

PRES.	Aud-ire,	*To hear.*
PERF.	Aud-ivisse,	*To have heard.*
FUT.	Esse auditūrus, -a, -um,	*To be about to hear.*
	Fuisse auditūrus, -a, -um,	*To have been about to hear.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	Aud-iens,	*Hearing.*
FUT.	Aud-itūrus, -a, -um,	*About to hear.*

GERUNDS.

Nom.	Aud-iendum,	*Hearing.*
Gen.	Aud-iendi,	*Of hearing.*
Dat.	Aud-iendo,	*To hearing.*
Acc.	Aud-iendum,	*Hearing.*
Abl.	Aud-iendo,	*With hearing.*

SUPINES.

Former.	Aud-ītum,	*To hear.*
Latter.	Aud-ītu,	*To hear,* or *to be heard.*

PASSIVE VOICE.

Pres. Indic.	*Pres. Infin.*	*Perf. Part.*	
Audior,	audīri,	audītus,	*To be heard.*

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *am.*

S.	Aud-ior,	*I am heard.*	*P.*	Aud-īmur,	*We are heard.*
	Aud-īris, *or* īre,	*Thou art heard.*		Aud-imĭni,	*Ye* or *you are heard.*
	Aud-ītur,	*He is heard.*		Aud-iuntur,	*They are heard.*

IMPERFECT. *was.*

S.	Aud-iebar,	*I was heard.*	*P.*	Aud-iebāmur,	*We were heard.*
	Aud-iebāris *or* -iebāre,	*Thou wast heard.*		Aud-iebamĭni,	*Ye* or *you were heard.*
	Aud-iebātur,	*He was heard.*		Aud-iebantur,	*They were heard.*

PERFECT. *have been.*

Sing.	Audītus sum *or* fui,	*I have been heard.*
	Audītus es *or* fuisti,	*Thou hast been heard.*
	Audītus est, *or* fuit,	*He has been heard.*
Plur.	Audīti sumus *or* fuĭmus,	*We have been heard.*
	Audīti estis *or* fuistis,	*Ye* or *you have been heard.*
	Audīti sunt *or* fuērunt *or* fuēre,	*They have been heard.*

PLUPERFECT. *had been.*

Sing.	Audītus eram *or* fuĕram,	*I had been heard.*
	Audītus eras *or* fuĕras,	*Thou hadst been heard.*
	Audītus erat *or* fuĕrat,	*He had been heard.*
Plur.	Audīti erāmus *or* fuerāmus,	*We had been heard.*
	Audīti erātis *or* fuerātis,	*Ye* or *you had been heard.*
	Audīti erant *or* fuĕrant,	*They had been heard.*

FUTURE. *shall* or *will be.*

S. Aud-iar,	*I shall be heard.*	*P.* Aud-iēmur,	*We shall be heard.*
Aud-iēris *or* -iēre,	*Thou wilt be heard.*	Aud-iemĭni,	*Ye* or *you will be heard.*
Aud-iētur,	*He will be heard.*	Aud-ientur,	*They will be heard.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *may,* or *can be.*

S. Aud-iar	*I may be heard.*	*P.* Aud-iāmur,	*We may be heard.*
Aud-iāris, *or* -iāre,	*Thou mayest be heard.*	Aud-iamĭni,	*Ye* or *you may be heard.*
Aud-iātur,	*He may be heard.*	Aud-iantur,	*They may be heard.*

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would,* or *should be.*

S. Aud-īrer,	*I might be heard.*	*P.* Aud-irēmur,	*We might be heard.*
Aud-irēris *or* -rēre,	*Thou mightest be heard.*	Aud-iremĭni,	*Ye* or *you might be heard.*
Aud-irētur,	*He might be heard.*	Aud-irentur,	*They might be heard.*

PERFECT. *may have been.*

Sing.	Audītus sim *or* fuĕrim,	*I may have been heard.*
	Audītus sis *or* fuĕris,	*Thou mayest have been heard.*
	Audītus sit *or* fuĕrit,	*He may have been heard.*
Plur.	Audīti simus *or* fuerĭmus,	*We may have been heard.*
	Audīti sitis *or* fuerĭtis,	*Ye* or *you may have been heard.*
	Audīti sint *or* fuĕrint,	*They may have been heard.*

PLUPERFECT. *might, could, would,* or *should have been.*

Sing.	Audītus essem *or* fuissem,	*I might have been heard.*
	Audītus esses *or* fuisses,	*Thou mightest have been heard.*
	Audītus esset *or* fuisset,	*He might have been heard.*
Plur.	Audīti essēmus *or* fuissēmus,	*We might have been heard.*
	Audīti essētis *or* fuissētis,	*Ye* or *you might have been heard.*
	Audīti essent *or* fuissent,	*They might have been heard.*

FUTURE. *shall have been.*

Sing.	Audītus fuĕro,	*I shall have been heard.*
	Audītus fuĕris,	*Thou wilt have been heard.*
	Audītus fuĕrit,	*He will have been heard.*
Plur.	Audīti fuerĭmus,	*We shall have been heard.*
	Audīti fuerĭtis,	*Ye* or *you will have been heard.*
	Audīti fuĕrint,	*They will have been heard.*

IMPERATIVE MODE.

Sing.	2. Aud-īre *or* -ītor,	*Be thou heard.*
	3. Aud-itor,	*Let him be heard.*
Plur.	2. Aud-imĭni,	*Be ye heard.*
	3. Aud-iuntor,	*Let them be heard.*

INFINITIVE MODE.

PRES.	Aud-īri,	*To be heard.*
PERF.	Esse *or* fuisse audītus, -a, -um,	*To have been heard.*
FUT.	Audītum iri,	*To be about to be heard.*

PARTICIPLES.

PERF.	Aud-ītus,	*Heard.*
FUT.	Aud-iendus,	*To be heard.*

DEPONENT AND COMMON VERBS.

A deponent verb is that which, under a passive form, has an active or neuter signification; as, *Lŏquor*, I speak; *mŏrior*, I die.

A common verb, under a passive form, has either an active or passive signification; as, *crīmĭnor*, I accuse, *or* I am accused.

Most deponent verbs of old were the same with common verbs. They are called *Deponent*, because they have *laid aside* the passive sense.

Deponent and common verbs form the participle perfect in the same manner as if they had the active voice; thus, *Lætor*, *lætāri*, *lætātus*, to rejoice; *vĕreor*, *vĕrēri*, *verĭtus*, to fear; *fungor*, *fungi*, *functus*, to discharge an office; *pŏtior*, *pŏtīri*, *pŏtītus*, to enjoy, to be master of.

Conjugation of the deponent verb *Miror*, 'I admire.' *Miror*, *mirāris* or *āre*, *mirāri*, *mirātus*.

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRES.	Miror, *I admire;* mirāris *or* āre, *thou admirest*, *&c.*
IMP.	Mirābar, -abāris *or* -ābare, &c., *I admired*, *&c.*
PERF.	Mirātus sum, *or* fui; mirātus es *or* fuisti, &c., *I have*, *&c.*
PLUP.	Mirātus eram, *or* fueram, &c., *I had admired*, *&c.*
FUT.	Mirābor; mirabĕris, *or* mirabĕre, &c., *I shall admire*, *&c.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRES.	Mirer; mirēris *or* ēre, &c., *I may admire, &c.*
IMP.	Mirārer; arēris *or* arēre, &c., *I might admire, &c.*
PERF.	Mirātus sim, *or* fuĕrim, &c., *I may have admired, &c.*
PLUP.	Mirātus essem, *or* fuissem, &c., *I might have admired, &c.*
FUT.	Mirātus ero, *or* fuĕro, &c., *I shall have admired, &c.*

IMPERATIVE MODE.

PRES. Mirāre *or* mirātor, &c., *admire thou*, or *do thou admire, &c.*

INFINITIVE MODE.

PRES.	Mirāri, *to admire.*
PERF.	Mirātis esse *or* fuisse, *to have admired.*
FUT.	Miratūrus esse, *to be about to admire.*
	Mirātum iri, *to be about to be admired.*
	Miratūrus fuisse, *to have been about to admire.*
	Mirandus fuisse, *to have been about to be admired.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRES.		Mirans, *admiring.*
PERF.		Mirātus, *having admired.*
FUT.	in RUS.	Miratūrus, *about to admire.*
	DUS.	Mirandus, *to be admired.*

GERUNDS.

Mirandum, di, do, *and* dum.

SUPINES.

Mirātum, mirātu.

FORMATION OF VERBS.

There are four principal parts of a verb, from which all the rest are formed; namely, *O* of the present, *I* of the perfect indicative, *RE* of the infinitive, and *UM* of the supine.* A verb is commonly said to be conjugated when only these parts are mentioned, because from them all the rest are derived.

The first person of the Present indicative is called the *Theme*, or the *Root* of the verb; because from it the other three principal parts are formed.

All the letters which come before *-āre*, *-ēre*, *-ĕre*, or *-īre*, of the infinitive, are called *radical* letters, because they always remain the same. By putting these before the *terminations*, all the parts of any regular verb may be readily formed, except the compound tenses.

---

* 1. From *o* are formed *am* and *em*.
2. From *i*; *ram, rim, ro, sse*, and *ssem*.
3. *U, us*, and *rus*, are formed from *um*.
4. All other parts from *re* do come.

FORMATION OF THE TENSES IN THE ACTIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mode.

The *Imperfect indicative* is formed from the *present*, by changing *o*, in the first conjugation, into *ābam*; as, *am-o*, *am-ābam*:—in the second conjugation, by changing *o* into *bam*; as, *doce-o*, *docē-bam*:—in the third and fourth conjugations, by changing *o* into *ēbam*; as, *leg-o*, *leg-ēbam*; *audi-o*, *audi-ēbam*.

The *Pluperfect indicative* is formed from the *perfect* in all the conjugations by changing *i* into *ĕram*; as, *amāv-i*, *amav-ĕram*; *docu-i*, *docu-ĕram*; *leg-i*, *leg-ĕram*; *audīv-i*, *audiv-ĕram*.

The *Future indicative* is formed from the *present*, by changing *o*, in the first conjugation, into *ābo*; as, *am-o*, *am-ābo*; in the second conjugation by changing *o* into *bo*; as, *doce-o*, *docē-bo*; in the third and fourth conjugations, by changing *o* into *am*; as, *leg-o*, *leg-am*; *audi-o*, *audi-am*.

Subjunctive Mode.

The *Present subjunctive* is formed from the present indicative, by changing *o*, in the first conjugation, into *em*; as, *am-o*, *am-em*; in the second, third, and fourth conjugations, by changing *o* into *am*; as, *doce-o*, *doce-am*; *leg-o*, *leg-am*; *audi-o*, *audi-am*.

The *Imperfect subjunctive* is formed, in all the conjugations, from the present infinitive, by adding *m*; as, *amāre*, *amārem*; *docēre*, *docērem*; *legĕre*, *legĕrem*; *audīre*, *audīrem*.

The *Perfect subjunctive* is formed from the perfect indicative, by changing *i* into *ĕrim*; as, *amāv-i*, *amav-ĕrim*; *docu-i*, *docu-ĕrim*; *leg-i*, *leg-ĕrim*; *audīv-i*, *audiv-ĕrim*.

The *Pluperfect subjunctive* is formed from the perfect indicative, by changing *i* into *issem*; as, *amāv-i*, *amav-issem*; *docu-i*, *docu-issem*; *leg-i*, *leg-issem*; *audīv-i*, *audiv-issem*.

The *Future subjunctive* is formed from the perfect indicative, by changing *i* into *ĕro*; as, *amāv-i*, *amav-ĕro*; *docu-i*, *docu-ĕro*; *leg-i*, *leg-ĕro*; *audīv-i*, *audiv-ĕro*.

Imperative Mode.

The *Present imperative* is formed from the present infinitive, by taking away *re*; as, *amāre*, *ama*; *docēre*, *doce*; *legĕre*, *lege*; *audīre*, *audi*.

Infinitive Mode.

The *Present infinitive* is formed from the present indicative, by changing *o*, in the first conjugation, into *āre*; as, *am-o*, *am-āre*; in

the second and fourth conjugations, by changing *o* into *re;* as, *doce-o, docē-re; audi-o, audī-re;* in the third conjugation, by changing *o* or *io* into *ĕre;* as, *leg-o, leg-ĕre; cap-io, cap-ĕre.*

The *Perfect infinitive* is formed from the perfect indicative, by changing *i* into *isse;* as, *amāv-i, amav-isse; docu-i, docu-isse; leg-i, leg-isse; audīv-i, audiv-isse.*

The *Future infinitive* is formed from the supine, by changing *m* into *rus*, and adding *esse*, or *fuisse;* as, *amātu-m, amatū-rus, esse* or *fuisse; doctu-m, doctū-rus, esse* or *fuisse; lectu-m, lectū-rus, esse* or *fuisse; audītu-m, auditū-rus, esse* or *fuisse.*

Participles.

The *Present Participle* is formed from the present indicative, by changing *o*, in the first conjugation, into *ans;* as, *am-o, am-ans;* in the second conjugation, by changing *o* into *ns;* as, *doce-o, doce-ns;* in the third and fourth conjugations, by changing *o* into *ens;* as, *leg-o, leg-ens; audi-o, audi-ens.*

The *Future Participle* is formed from the supine, by changing *m* into *rus;* as, *amātu-m, amatū-rus; doctu-m, doctū-rus; lectu-m, lectū-rus; audītu-m, auditū-rus.*

Gerunds.

The *Gerunds* are formed from the present participle, by changing *s* into *dum, di,* and *do;* as,

aman-s;	*aman-dum,*	*aman-di,*	*aman-do;*
docen-s;	*docen-dum,*	*docen-di,*	*docen-do;*
legen-s;	*legen-dum,*	*legen-di,*	*legen-do;*
audien-s;	*audien-dum,*	*audien-di,*	*audien-do.*

FORMATION OF THE TENSES IN THE PASSIVE VOICE.

Indicative and Subjunctive Modes.

The *Present, Imperfect,* and *Future Indicative;* and the *Present,* and *Imperfect Subjunctive,* are formed from the corresponding tenses in the active voice.

From those tenses in the active voice which end in *o*, the same tenses in the passive are formed by adding *r;* but from those which, in the active voice, end in *m*, the same tenses of the passive are formed by changing *m* into *r.*

	First Conjugation.		*Second Conjugation.*		*Third Conjugation.*	
	Active.	*Passive.*	*Active.*	*Passive.*	*Active.*	*Passive.*
Pres. Indic.	amo,	amor.	doceo,	doceor.	lego,	legor.
Imp. Indic.	amābam,	amābar.	docēbam,	docēbar.	legēbam,	legēbar.
Fut. Indic.	amābo,	amābor.	docēbo,	docēbor.	legam,	legar.
Pres. Subj.	amem,	amer.	doceam,	docear.	legam,	legar.
Imp. Subj.	amārem,	amārer.	docērem,	docērer.	legĕrem,	legĕrer.

The other five tenses, namely, the *Perfect* and *Pluperfect Indicative;* and the *Perfect*, *Pluperfect*, and *Future Subjunctive*, are composed of the perfect participle, declined with the tenses of the verb *Sum.*

Imperative Mode.

The *Imperative Passive* is the same as the *Infinitive Active.*

Infinitive Mode.

The *Present* tense of the *Infinitive* mode is formed from the *Infinitive Active*, by changing *e*, in the first, second, and fourth conjugations, into *i;* as, *amār-e*, *amār-i; docēr-e*, *docēr-i; audīr-e*, *audīr-i;* and in the third conjugation, by changing *ĕre* into *i;* as, *leg-ĕre*, *leg-i.*

The *Future Infinitive* is composed of the former supine, and *iri*, (which is the infinitive passive of the verb *eo*, to go,) as, *amātum iri; doctum iri; lectum iri.*

Participles.

The *Perfect Participle* is formed from the former supine, by changing *m* into *s;* as, *amātu-m*, *amātu-s; doctu-m*, *doctu-s; lectu-m*, *lectu-s; audītu-m*, *audītu-s.*

The *Future Participle* is formed from the present active participle, by changing *s* into *dus;* as, *amans*, *amandus; docens*, *docendus; legens*, *legendus; audiens*, *audiendus.*

SIGNIFICATION OF THE TENSES IN THE VARIOUS MODES.

The tenses formed from the present of the indicative or infinitive, signify in general the continuance of an action or passion, or represent them as present at some particular time: the other tenses express an action or passion completed; but not always so absolutely, as entirely to exclude the continuance of the same action or passion; thus, *Amo*, I love, do love, *or* am loving; *amābam*, I loved, did love, *or* was loving, &c.

Amāvi, I loved, did love, *or* have loved, *that is*, have done with loving, &c.

In like manner, in the passive voice; *Amor*, I am loved, I am in loving, *or* in being loved, &c.

Past time in the passive voice is expressed several different ways, by means of the auxiliary verb *sum*, and the participle perfect; thus:

Indicative Mode.

Perfect. *Amātus sum*, I am, *or* have been loved, *or oftener*, I was loved.
Amātus fui, I have been loved, *or* I was loved.

Pluperfect. *Amātus eram*, I was, *or* had been loved.
Amātus fuĕram, I had been loved.

Subjunctive Mode.

Perfect. *Amātus sim*, I may be, *or* may have been loved.
Amātus fuĕrim, I may have been loved.

Pluperfect. *Amātus essem*, I might, could, would, *or* should be, *or* have been loved.
Amātus fuissem, I might, could, would, *or* should have been loved; *or* I had been loved.

Future. *Amātus fuĕro*, I shall have been loved.

The verb *sum* is also employed to express future time in the indicative mode, both active and passive; thus:

Amatūrus sum, I am about to love, I am to love, I am going to love, *or* I will love. We chiefly use this form, when some purpose or intention is signified.
Amātus ero, I shall be loved.

Obs. 1. The participles *amātus amatūrus* are put before the auxiliary verb, because we commonly find them so placed in the classics.

Obs. 2. In these compound tenses the learner should be taught to vary the participle like an adjective noun, according to the gender and number of the different substantives to which it is applied; thus, *amātus est*, he is *or* was loved, when applied to a man; *amāta est*, she was loved, when applied to a woman; *amātum est*, it was loved, when applied to a thing; *amāti sunt*, they were loved, when applied to men, &c. The connecting of syntax, so far as is necessary, with the inflection of nouns and verbs, seems to be the most proper method of teaching both.

Obs. 3. The past time and participle perfect in English are taken in different meanings, according to the different tenses in Latin which they are used to express. Thus, "I loved," when put for *amābam*, is taken in a sense different from what it has when put for *amāvi*; so *amor*, and *amātus sum*, I am loved; *amābar* and *amātus eram*, I was loved; *amer*, and *amātus sim*, &c. In the one, *loved* is taken in a present, in the other, in a past sense. This ambiguity arises from the defective nature of the English verb.

Obs. 4. The tenses of the subjunctive mode may be variously rendered, according to their connexion with the other parts of a sentence. They are often expressed in English as the same tenses of the indicative, and sometimes one tense is apparently put for another.

Thus, *Quasi intelligant, qualis, sit,* As if they understood, what kind of person he is. Cic. *In facĭnus jurâsse putes,* You would think, &c. Ov. *Elŏquar an sileam?* Shall I speak out or be silent? *Nec vos arguĕrim, Teucri,* for *arguam,* Virg. *Si quid te fugĕret, ego periĕrim,* for *perībo.* Ter. *Hunc ego si potui tantum sperāre dolōrem; Et perferre, soror, potĕro:* for *potuissem* and *possem.* Virg. *Singŭla quid refĕram?* Why should I mention every thing? Id. *Prædicĕres mihi,* You should have told me beforehand. Ter. *At tu dictis, Albāne, manēres,* Ought to have stood to your word. Virg. *Citius, credidĕrim,* I should sooner believe. Juv. *Hausĕret ensis,* The sword would have destroyed. Virg. *Fuĕrint irāti,* Grant or suppose they were angry. *Si id fecisset,* If he did or should do that. Cic. The same promiscuous use of the tenses seems also to take place sometimes in the indicative and infinitive; and the indicative to be put for the subjunctive; as, *Anĭmus meminesse horret, luctŭque refŭgit,* for *refŭgit.* Virg. *Fuĕrat melius* for *fuisset.* Id. *Invidiæ dilapsa erat,* for *fuisset.* Sall. *Quamdiu in portum venis?* for *venisti.* Plaut. *Quam mox navĭgo Ephĕsum,* for *navigābo.* Id. *Tu si hic sis, alĭter sentias.* Ter. for *esses* and *sentires.* *Cato affirmat, se vivo, illum non triumphāre,* for *triumphatūrum esse.* Cic. *Persuādet Castico, ut occupāret,* for *occŭpet.*

Obs. 5. The future of the subjunctive, and also of the indicative, is often rendered by the present of the subjunctive in English; as, *nisi hoc faciet,* or *fecĕrit,* unless he do this. *Ter.*

Obs. 6. Instead of the imperative we often use the present of the subjunctive; as, *valeas,* farewell; *huc venias,* come hither, &c. And also the future both of the indicative and subjunctive; as, *non occīdes,* do not kill; *ne fecĕris,* do not do; *valēbis meque amābis,* farewell, and love me. Cic.

The present and the preter-imperfect of the infinitive are both expressed under the same form. All the varieties of past and future time are expressed by the other two tenses. But in order properly to exemplify the tenses of the infinitive mode, we must put an accusative, and some other verb before each of them; thus:

Dicit me scribĕre; he says *that* I write, do write, *or* am writing.
Dixit me scribĕre; he said *that* I wrote, did write, *or* was writing.
Dicit me scripsisse; he says *that* I wrote, did write, *or* have written.
Dixit me scripsisse; he said *that* I had written.
Dicit me scriptūrum esse; he says *that* I will write.
Dixit nos scriptūros esse; he said *that* we would write.
Dicit nos scriptūros fuisse; he says *that* we would have written.
Dicit litĕras scribi; he says *that* letters are written, writing, *or* in writing.
Dixit litĕras scribi; he said *that* letters were writing, *or* written.
Dicit litĕras scriptas esse; he says *that* letters are, *or* were written.
Dicit litĕras scriptas fuisse; he says *that* letters have been written.
Dixit litĕras scriptas fuisse; he said *that* letters had been written.
Dicit litĕras scriptum iri; he says *that* letters will be written.
Dixit litĕras scriptum iri; he said *that* letters would be written.

The future, *scriptum iri,* is made up of the former supine, and the infinitive passive of the verb *eo,* and therefore never admits of any variation.

The future of the infinitive is sometimes expressed by *a periphrăsis,* or circumlocution; thus, *scio fore* or *futūrum esse ut scribant,—ut litĕræ scribantur;* I know that they will write,—that letters will be written. *Scivi fore* or *futūrum esse ut scribĕrent,—ut litĕræ scriberentur;* I knew that they would write, &c. *Scivi futūrum fuisse ut litĕræ scriberentur;* I knew that letters would have been written. This form is necessary in verbs which want the supine.

Obs. 7. The different tenses, when joined with any expediency or necessity, are thus expressed:

Scribendum est mihi, puĕro, nobis, &c., litĕras; I, the boy, we, &c., must write letters.
Scribendum fuit mihi, puĕro, nobis, &c., I must have written, &c.
Scribendum erit mihi; I shall be obliged to write.
Scio scribendum esse mihi litĕras; I know that I must write letters.
—— *scribendum fuisse mihi;* —— that I must have written.
Dixit scribendum fore mihi; he said that I should be obliged to write.

Or with the participle in *dus:*

Litĕræ sunt scribendæ mihi, puĕro, hominĭbus, &c., or *a me, puĕro, &c.,* letters are to be, *or* must be written by me, by the boy, by men, &c. So, *litĕræ scribendæ erant, fuĕrunt, erunt, &c. Si litĕræ scribendæ sint, essent, forent, &c. Scio litĕras scribendas esse;* I know *that* letters are to be, *or* must be written. *Scivi litĕras scribendas fuisse;* I knew *that* letters ought to have been, *or* must have been written.

FORMATION OF THE PRETERITE AND SUPINE.

GENERAL RULES.

1. Compound and simple verbs form the preterite and supine in the same manner; as,

Vŏco, vŏcāvi, vŏcātum, to call; so, *rĕvŏco, revŏcāvi, revŏcātum,* to recall.

Exc. 1. When the simple verb in the preterite doubles the first syllable of the present, the compounds lose the former syllable; as, *pello, pĕpŭli,* to beat; *rĕpello, rĕpŭli,* never *repĕpŭli,* to beat back. But the compounds of *do, sto, disco,* and *posco,* follow the general rule; thus, *ēdisco, ēdĭdĭci,* to get by heart; *dēposco, dēpŏposci,* to demand: so, *præcurro, præcŭcurri; rĕpungo, rĕpŭpŭgi.*

Exc. 2. Compounds which change *a* of the simple verb into *i,* have *e* in the supine or perfect participle; as, *facio, fēci, factum,* to make; *perfĭcio, perfēci, perfectum,* to perfect. But compound verbs ending in *do* and *go;* also the compounds of *hăbeo, plăceo, săpio, sălio,* and *stătuo,* observe the general rule.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

I. Verbs of the First Conjugation have *āre* in the infinitive, *āvi* in the Perfect, and *ātus* in the Perfect Participle passive; as,

Amo,[1] amāre, amāvi, amātus, R. D. *love.*

Verbs marked thus * have no Perfect Participle passive, and those thus marked † have no Perfect active. The Futures RUS and DUS are expressed by R. and D.; and the Supines UM and U. by M. and U.; those verbs, therefore, which have not one or more of these letters prefixed to them, are deficient in those parts respectively which those letters signify.

*Abundo,[2] R.	*overflow.*	Amplio,[9] D.	*enlarge.*
Accūso,[3] R. D. M.	*accuse.*	*Angario,[10]	*press for public service.*
Adumbro,[4]	*delineate.*	Appello,[11] D.	*call.*
Ædifĭco,[5] R. D.	*build.*	Apto,[12] D.	*fit.*
Æquo,[6] R. D.	*level.*	Aro,[13] R. D.	*plough.*
Æstĭmo,[7] R. D.	*value.*	*Ascio,[14]	*chip with an axe.*
*Ambŭlo,[8] D. M.	*walk.*	*Ausculto,[15]	*listen.*

In the following Notes are contained such Participles in RUS and DUS, and Supines of the verbs, as are found in the classics now extant; together with the less frequent and irregular formations.

1 *Amatūrus*, Gell. 1. 3. 4. *Amandus*, Ovid. *Amasse*, Gell. *Amasso*, Plaut.—2 *Abundatūrus*, Tertull.—3 *Accusātum*, Terent. *Accusatūrus*, Liv. *Accusandus*, Cic.—4 The Participles in *ns*, *rus* and *dus*, do not occur.—5 *Ædificatūrus*, Cic. Verr. *Ædificandus*, Cic. Fam.—6 *Æquatūrus*, Claud. *Æquandus*, Ovid.—7 *Æstimatūrus*, Quintil. *Æstimandus*, Gell.—8 *Ambulātum*, Plaut. *Obambulātum*, Plaut. *Deambulātum*, Terent. *Ambulandus*, Cels. *Ambulātur*, impers. Varr.—9 *Ampliandus*, Cels.—10 *Angario* has no participles.—11 *Appellandus*, Cic. *Appellassis* for *appellavĕris*, Terent.—12 *Aptandus*, Claud.—13 The Participle *Arans* occurs only in Cic. de Senect. c. 16. *Aratūrus*, Tibull. *Arandus*, Virg.—14 Of this verb *Ascĭĕter* only is found, Vitruv. vii. 2.—15 None of the Participles are to be found. *Auscultabĭtur*, impers. Plaut.

*Autŭmo,[1]	*suppose.*
†Basio,[2] D.	*kiss.*
*Bello,[3] R. M.	*wage war.*
Beo,[4]	*bless.*
*Boo,[5]	*bellow.*
Brevio,[6]	*shorten.*
Cæco,[7]	*blind.*
Cælo,[7]	*carve.*
Calceo,[8] D.	*shoe.*
*Calcĭtro,[7]	*kick.*
Canto,[9] M.	*sing.*
Capto[10] D. M.	*seize.*
Carmĭno,[11]	*card wool.*
Castīgo,[12] D. M.	*chastise.*
†*Catomidio,	*flog on the shoulders.*
Celĕbro,[13] D.	*make famous.*
Celo,[14] D.	*conceal.*
Centurio,[15]	*divide into centuries.*
Certo,[16] D. R.	*strive.*
Cogĭto,[17]	*think.*
Compăro,[18] D.	*compare.*
Concilio,[19] R. D.	*reconcile.*
Considĕro,[20] R. D.	*consider.*
Cremo,[21] D.	*burn.*
Creo,[22] R. D.	*create.*
Crucio,[23] D.	*torment.*
Culpo,[24] R. D.	*blame.*
Cuneo,[25] D.	*wedge.*
Curo,[26] R. D.	*care.*
Damno,[27] R. D. M.	*condemn.*
Decŏro,[28] D.	*adorn.*
Decurio,[29]	*divide into companies.*
*Delineo,[30]	*delineate.*
Desidĕro,[31] R. D.	*desire.*
Destĭno,[32] D.	*tie, design.*
Dico,[33] R. D. M.	*dedicate.*
Dicto,[34]	*dictate.*
Dolo,[35]	*hew, cut.*
Dono,[36] R. D.	*bestow.*
Duplĭco,[37] R. D.	*double.*
Duro,[38] R.	*harden.*
Effigio,[39]	*portray.*
†Emacio,[40]	*emaciate.*
†Enucleo,[41] D.	*explain.*

---

1 None of the Participles exist: *autumantur*, pass. Plaut.—2 *Basiāvi* seems not to exist: *Basiātus*, Mart. XII. 59. *Basiandus*, Mart. I. 95.—3 *Bellātum*, Nep. *Debellātum*, Liv. *Bellatūrus*, Claud. *Bellantur*, 'they fight,' Virg. Æn. XI. 660.—4 *Beâsti* Ter. Andr. *Beātus*, said to be the Perfect Participle of *Beo*, is used as an adjective.—5 *Bount*, as if from *Boo*, *boïs*, Pacuv. *Bovantes*, as if from *Bovo*.—6 *Breviāvit*, Quint. XII. 10. *Breviātus*, Sidon.—7 The Participles in *ns*, *rus*, and *dus*, of *Cæco*, *Cælo*, and *Calcitro*, do not occur in the classics. *Cælassis* for *Cælavĕris*, Festus.—8 *Calceandus*, Phædr.—9 *Cantātum*, Terent.—10 *Captātum*, Plaut. *Captandus*, Plaut.—11 The Participles *ns*, *rus*, and *dus* are not to be found. *Carminātus*, Plin. N. H. IX. 38.—12 *Castigātum*, Plaut. *Castigandus*, Liv. XXXIX. 25.—13 *Celebrandus*, Catul.—14 *Celandus*, Just.—15 *Centuriāvit*, Val. Max. *Centuriātus*, Liv.—16 *Certatūrus*, Cæs. *Certandus*, Liv. *Certātus*, 'contended for,' Sil. *Multum certāto*, 'after much contention,' Tacit. Ann. like *audīto*, 'it being heard;' *comperto*, 'it being discovered.' *Certētur*, impers. Pacuv.—17 *Cogitātūrus*, Hirt.—18 *Comparandus*, Terent. *Comparassit* for *Comparavĕrit*, Plaut.—19 *Conciliatūrus*, Cæsar. *Conciliandus*, Ovid.—20 *Consideratūrus*, Curt. *Considerandus*, Apul. Flor. *Consideravisse* pro *considerasse*, Quint.—21 *Concrematūrus*, Liv. *Cremandus*. Ovid.—22 *Creatūrus*, Liv. *Creandus*, Gell. The Participle in *ns* does not occur.—23 *Cruciandus*, Ovid.—24 *Culpatūrus*, Apul. *Culpandus*, Apul.—25 *Cuneandus*, Plin.—26 *Curatūrus*, Plaut. *Curandus*, Cels. *Curassis*, for *curavĕris*, Plaut.—27 *Damnātum*. Quint. *Damnatūrus*, Ovid. *Damnandus*, Ovid.—28 *Decorandus*, Cic.—29 *Decuriasse*, Cic. pro Planc. *Decuriātus*, Liv.—30 The simple *Lineo*, 'I draw lines,' has no Perfect now extant. *Lineātus* is found in Plaut. *Delineavit*, Plin. It has no participles.—31 *Desideratūrus*, Plin. *Desiderandus*, Cic.—32 *Destinandus*, Vitruv. 33 *Dicātum*, Liv. I. 7. *Dicatūrus*, Plin. *Dicandus*, Plin.—34 *Dictātus*, Juv. VI. 390.—35 The Participles in *ns*, *rus* and *dus*, do not occur. *Dolavit*, Cic. *Dolatus*, Juv. XII. 57. *Dolĕre*, 3d Conjugation, Lucr.; hence, *dolĭtus*, Varr.—36 *Donatūrus*, Apul. Met. *Donandus*, Hor.—37 *Duplicatūrus*, Cic. Att. V. 18. *Duplicandus*, Liv. XXVII. 11.—38 *Duratūrus*, Lucan. 39 *Effigiātus*, Apul.—40 *Emaciātus*, Colum.—41 The perfect of this verb cannot be found. *Enucleātus*, Cic. pro Planc. *Enucleandus*, Cic.

Equĭto,[1]	*ride.*
Erro,[2]	*wander.*
Existĭmo,[3] R. D. U.	*think.*
Explōro,[4] D. M.	*search.*
†Exsanio,	*squeeze out blood.*
Exŭlo,[5] R. M.	*be banished.*
Fabrĭco,[6] D.	*frame.*
†Fascio,[7]	*swathe.*
Fatīgo,[8] R. D.	*weary.*
Festīno,[9] R.	*hasten.*
Firmo,[10] R. D.	*strengthen.*
Flagĭto,[11] D. M.	*demand.*
*Flagro,[12] R.	*be on fire.*
Flo,[13] D.	*blow.*
Formo[14] R. D.	*form, frame.*
†Foro,[15] D.	*bore.*
Fræno,[16]	*bridle.*
Fraudo,[17] D.	*defraud.*
†Frio,[18]	*crumble.*
Fugo,[19] R. D.	*put to flight.*
Fundo,[20] R.	*found.*
†Furio,[21]	*madden.*
†Galeo,[22]	*put on a helmet.*
Gesto,[23] D.	*bear.*
†Glacio,	*to congeal.*
Gravo,[24] D.	*to weigh down.*
Gusto,[25] D.	*to taste.*
Habĭto,[26] D. M.	*to dwell.*
†*Halo,	*breathe.*
*Hio,[27] D.	*to gape.*
Humo,[28] R. D.	*to bury.*
Hyĕmo,[29] M.	*winter.*
Ignōro,[30] R. D.	*be ignorant.*
Impĕro,[31] R. D.	*command.*
Impĕtro,[32] R. D.	*obtain by request.*
Inchoo,[33] R.	*begin.*
Indāgo,[34] R. D.	*trace out.*
Indĭco,[35] R. D. M.	*show.*
†Inebrio,[36]	*inebriate.*
Initio,[37]	*initiate.*
Inquĭno,	*pollute.*
Instauro,[38] D.	*renew.*

---

1 *Equitātus*, 'ridden over;' Claud. *Equitāta cohors*, 'infantry intermixed with cavalry;' Inscript. ap. Murat.—2 *Errātus*, 'wandered over;' Virg. Æn. III. 690. *Errātur*, impers. Virg. G. III. 249. *Errāto mihi*, for *cum erravĕro*, Cic.—3 *Existimātu*, Liv. *Existimatūrus*, Cic. *Existimandus*, Val. Max.—4 *Explorātum* and *Explorandus*, Liv.—5 *Exulātum*, Liv. *Exulatūrus*, Justin.—6 *Fabrĭcor*, deponent, Cic. Off. I. 41. *Fabricandus*, Sil.—7 *Fasciātus*, Mart.—8 *Fatigandus*, Cic. Off. III. 18. 9 *Festinatūrus*, Plin. *Festinarentur*, Tacit. Hist. III. 37. *Festinantur*, Tacit. Germ. c. 20.—10 *Firmatūrus*, Justin. *Firmandus*, Colum.—11 *Flagitātus*. Tacit. *Flagitātum*, Cic. *Flagitandus*, Justin.—12 *Flagratūrus*, Cic. *Deflagrātus*, Cic. Cat. IV. 6.—13 *Flatus*, 'blown;' *Flatus*, 'cast,' 'coined;' Gell. *Flandus*, Cic. *Conflandus*, ibid.—14 *Formatūrus*, Justin. *Formandus*, Stat. Syl.—15 The Participles *ns* and *rus* are not in use. *Forātus*, Vitruv. *Forandus*, Cels.—16 The Participles *ns*, *rus*, and *dus*, do not occur. *Frænātus*, Hirt. 17 The Participles *ns* and *rus* are not in use. *Frausus*, 'having committed a fraud;' Plaut. Asin. *Fraudandus*, Quint. Curt. *Fraudassis* for *Fraudavĕris*, Plaut.—18 *Friātus*. Lucr. 19 *Fugatūrus*, Ovid. *Fugandus*, ibid.—20 The Participles *ns* and *rus* do not occur.—21 *Furiātus*, Virg. Æn. II. 407.—22 *Galeātus*, Juv.—23 *Gestandus*, Stat. Theb. 24 *Gravātus*, 'weighed down,' 'overpowered;' Liv. XXV. 24. *Gravātus*, 'indignant,' 'weary of bearing,' 'disdaining to carry;' as if from a deponent *Gravor*, Hor. IV. Od. II. 27. *Gravandus*, Propert.—25 The Participle *Gustans* occurs only in Petron. c. 33. and Gallus I. 98. The Participle in *rus* is not in use. *Gustandus*, Cels.—26 *Habitātum*, Plaut. *Habitandus*, Ovid. 27 *Hiandus*, Pers.—28 The Participle *ns* is not to be found in the classics. *Humatūrus*, Sueton. *Humandus*, Virg. Æn. VI. 161.—29 *Hyemātum*, Nepos.—30 *Ignorātus*, 'not known;' Cic. *Ignorātus*, 'undiscovered;' Salust.—31 *Imperatūrus*, Cæsar.—32 The Participle in *ns* seems not to exist. *Impetratūrus*, Liv. *Impetrandus*, Val. Max. *Impetrassere* for *imperaturum esse*, Plaut.—33 *Inchoaturus*, Curt. *Ad inchoandam* rem, Liv. 34 *Indagatur*, depon. The Participle in *ns* does not occur. *Indagatūrus*, Apul. *Indagandus*, Gell.—35 *Indicatum*, Liv. *Indicatūrus*, ibid. *Indicasso* for *indicavero*, Plaut. 36 *Inebriatus* Plin.—37 *Initiāri*, depon. 'to begin.' *Initiātus*. Cic. Tusc. *Initiantes* for *qui initiantur*, Vitruv. No other participle.—38 *Instaurandus*, Gell.

Intro,[1] R. D.	*enter.*	Loco,[22] R. D.	*place, let.*
Invīto,[2] D.	*invite.*	Lustro,[23] D.	*survey.*
Irrīto,[3] D.	*provoke.*	Luxurio,	*be wanton, abound.*
Itĕro,[4] D. U.	*do again.*	Macto,[24] D.	*slay.*
Jacto,[5] R. D.	*throw, boast.*	Macūlo,	*stain.*
Judĭco,[6] R. D.	*judge.*	Mando,[25] R. D.	*command.*
Jugo,[7] D.	*couple.*	Mandūco,[26]	*chew.*
Jugŭlo,[8] D. M.	*butcher.*	*Mano,	*flow.*
Juro,[9] D.	*swear.*	Matūro,[27] D.	*ripen, hasten.*
Labōro,[10] R. D.	*labour.*	Memŏro,[28] D. U.	*tell.*
Lacĕro,[11] D.	*tear.*	*Meo,[29]	*go, pass.*
*Lacto,	*suckle, wheedle.*	*†Meridio,[30] M.	*sleep at noon.*
Lanio,[12] D.	*butcher.*	*Migro,[31] R. U.	*depart.*
Laqueo,[13]	*ensnare.*	*Milĭto,[32] R. M.	*serve in war.*
Latro,[14]	*bark.*	†Minio,[33] D.	*paint red.*
Laudo,[15] R. D.	*praise.*	Ministro,[34]	*serve.*
Laxo,[16] D.	*loose.*	Mitĭgo,[35] D.	*pacify.*
Lego,[17]	*depute, bequeath.*	Monstro,[36] R.	*show.*
Levo,[18] R. D.	*lighten.*	Muto,[37] R. D.	*change.*
Libĕro,[19] R. D.	*free.*	Narro,[38] R. D.	*tell.*
Ligo,	*bind.*	Nato,[39] R. M.	*swim.*
Liquo,[20] D.	*melt.*	*Nauseo,[40]	*loathe.*
Lito,[21]	*appease by sacrifice.*		

[1] *Intretur*, pass. Tacit. *Intrāri*, ibid. *Intrāri*, impers. Cæs. *Intratūrus* and *Intrandus*, Liv.—[2] *Invitandus*, Suet. *Invitassĭtis* for *invitaverĭtis*.—[3] *Irritandus*, Liv. *Irritassis* for *irritavĕris*, Plaut.—[4] *Iterātu*, Plaut. *Iterandus*, Colum.—[5] *Jactatūrus*., Cic. *Jactandus*, Ovid.—[6] *Judicatūrus*, Cæs. *Judicandus*, Cic. *Judicassit* for *judicavĕrit*, Cic. de Leg. III. 3.—[7] *Jugandus*, Hor.—[8] *Jugulātum*, Cic. *Jugulandus*, Val. Max.—[9] *Jurātus*, 'sworn;' passim. *Jurātus*, 'sworn by;' Ovid. *Jurātus*, 'having sworn;' Cic.—[10] *Laborātus*, 'wrought with labour;' Virg. Æn. I. 643. *Laborātus*, 'calamitous;' Val. Flac. *Laborandus*, Plin. *Laborātur*, impers. Cæs.—[11] *Lacerandus*, Lucan.—[12] *Laniātus*, Met. *Laniandus*, Liv.—[13] *Laqueāre*, Manil. *Laqueans*, ibid. *Laqueāvit*, Luctat. No other parts of this verb are to be found. *Illaqueo* is more usual, though its Perfect is not found. *Illaqueātus*, Cic.—[14] *Latrātus*, 'barked at.' *Latrētur*, Impers.—[15] *Laudatūrus*, Nep. *Laudandus*, Tibull.—[16] *Laxandus*, Plin.—[17] The Participles in *ns*, *rus*, and *dus*, do not occur. *Legātus*, 'left by will.' *Legātus*, used substantively, 'a person sent,' 'an ambassador;' passim.—[18] *Levatūrus*, Curt. *Levandus*, Virg. Georg. *Levasso* for *Levavĕro*, Enn.—[19] *Liberatūrus*, Liv. *Liberandus*, Cic. *Liberasso* for *Liberavĕro*, Plaut.—[20] *Liquandus*, Cels. The Participles *ns* and *rus* do not occur.—[21] *Litātus*, Virg. Æn. IV. 50. *Litandum*, 'sacrifice must be made;' ibid. Æn. V. 118.—[22] *Locatūrus*, Liv. *Locandus*, Ovid. *Locassim* for *Locaverim*, Cic. de Leg.—[23] *Lustrandus*, Virg. Æn.—[24] *Mactandus*, Ovid.—[25] *Mandatūrus*, Cic.—[26] *Manducatur*, depon. Pompon.—[27] *Maturandus*, Cæs.—[28] *Memorātu*, Sall. Cat. c. 7. *Memorandus*, Virg.—[29] *Meāris*, Hor. I. Od. 4, 17. *Meavisse*, Tacit. *Means*, Lucan. No other Participles occur.—[30] *Meridiāri*, depon. Cels. The Perfect is not in use. *Meridiātum*, Catull.—[31] *Migrātu*, Liv. *Migratūrus*, Suet. *Migrantur*, pass. Sil. *Migrētur*, impers. Cic. *Migratum est*, impers. Liv. I. 11.—[32] *Militātum*, Terent. *Militatūrus*, Liv. *Militabĭtur*, 'shall be served;' Plaut.—[33] The Perfect does not occur. *Miniātus*, Cic. *Miniandus*, Plin.—[34] *Vasa ministrandis cibis*, Tacit.—[35] *Mitigandus*, Liv.—[36] *Monstratūrus*, Curt.—[37] *Mutandus*, Cic.—[38] *Narratūrus*, Stat. *Narrandus*, Justin.—[39] *Natatum*, Cic. *Natatūrus*, Ovid. *Natātur*, Ovid.—[40] *Nauseans*, Cic. The other Participles are not found.

Navĭgo,[1] R. D. *sail.*
Navo,[2] R. D. *act vigorously.*
Nego,[3] R. D. M. *deny.*
*****No,** *swim.*
Nomĭno,[4] R. D. *name.*
Noto,[5] D. *mark.*
Novo,[6] R. D. *renew.*
Nudo,[7] D. *make bare.*
Nuncŭpo,[8] R. D. *name*
Nuntio,[9] R. M. *tell.*
*****Nuto,** R. *nod.*
Obsĕcro,[10] R. D. *beseech.*
*****Obtempĕro,**[11] R. *obey.*
Obtrunco,[12] R. *kill.*
Onĕro,[13] R. D. *load.*
Opto,[14] D. *wish.*
Orbo,[15] R. *deprive.*
Orno,[16] R. D. *adorn.*
Oro,[17] R. D. M. *beg.*
Paco,[18] *subdue.*
Paro,[19] R. D. *prepare.*
Patro,[20] R. *commit.*
*****Pecco,**[21] R. *sin.*
Pio,[22] D. *propitiate.*
Placo,[23] R. D. *appease.*
Ploro,[24] D. M. *bewail.*
Porto,[25] R. D. U. *carry.*
Postŭlo,[26] R. D. M. *demand.*
Privo,[27] D. *deprive.*
Probo,[28] R. D. M. U. *approve.*
Proflīgo,[29] D. *rout.*
Propĕro,[30] D. *hasten.*
*****Propīno,**[31] *drink to.*
†Propitio,[32] D. *appease.*
Pugno,[33] R. *fight.*
Pulso,[34] D. *beat.*
Purgo,[35] R. D. U. *cleanse.*
Puto,[36] D. *prune, think.*
Quasso,[37] D. *shake.*
Radio,[38] *emit rays.*
Rapto,[39] D. *drag about.*
Recupĕro,[40] R. D. M. *recover.*
Recūso,[41] R. D. *refuse.*
Repudio,[42] R. D. *reject.*
Resĕro,[43] D. *unlock.*
*****†Retalio,** *retaliate.*
Rigo, *water.*
Rogo,[44] R. D. M. *ask.*
Roto, *whirl.*
Sacrifĭco,[45] M. *sacrifice.*
Sacro,[46] D. *consecrate.*
Sagīno,[47] D. *fatten.*

---

[1] *Navigātus,* 'sailed over;' Tacit. Germ. c. 34. *Navigandus,* Ulpian. *Navigātur,* pass. Plin. *Navigātur,* impers. Cic.—[2] *Navatūrus,* Curt. *Navandus,* Tacit. The Participle in *ns* does not occur.—[3] *Negātum,* Liv. *Negatūrus,* ibid. *Negandus,* Ovid. *Negassim* for *Negavĕrim.*—[4] *Nominatūrus,* Suet. *Nominandus,* Curt. [5] *Notandus,* Hort. Art. Poet.—[6] *Novatūrus,* Curt. *Novandus,* Ov.—[7] *Nudandus,* Cæs.—[8] *Nuncupatūrus,* Justin.—[9] *Nuntiātum,* Sall. Jugur. c. 108. *Nuntiatūrus,* Liv.—[10] *Obsecrandus,* Plin. *Obsecratūrus,* Ter.—[11] *Obtemperātum esset,* impers. Cic.—[12] *Obtruncatūrus,* Justin.—[13] *Oneratūrus,* Plin. *Onerandus,* Suet.—[14] *Optandus,* Stat.—[15] *Orbatūrus,* Ovid. The Participles in *ns* and *dus* do not occur. [16] *Ornatūrus,* Claud. *Ornandus,* Gell.—[17] *Orātum,* Cic. *Oratūrus,* Tacit. *Orandus,* Virg. Æn. II. 232.—[18] 'Ad *pacandas* Hispanias,' Cæs.—[19] *Paratūrus,* Justin. *Parandus,* Tibull.—[20] 'Pacis *patrandæ* merces,' Liv.—[21] *Peccatūrus,* Gell.—[22] *Piātus,* Ovid. *Piandus,* Ovid.—[23] *Placatūrus,* Justin. *Placandus,* Stat. Achil. [24] *Plorātum,* Cic. *Plorandus,* Stat. Theb.—[25] *Portatu,* Plin. *Portandus,* Virg. Æn. IX. 312.—[26] *Postulātum,* Cæs. *Postulatūrus,* Liv. *Postulandus,* Cic.—[27] *Privandus,* Cic.—[28] *Probātum,* Cic. Att. *Probātu,* Cic. Tusc. V. I.—[29] The Participles *ns* and *rus* do not occur in the classics.—[30] *Properandus,* Virg. Georg.—[31] None of the Participles are found.—[32] The Perfect does not occur. *Propitiātus,* Tacit. *Propitiandus,* Gell.—[33] *Pugnatūrus,* Liv. *Expugnātum,* Justin. *Oppugnandus,* Gell.—[34] *Pulsandus,* Hor.—[35] *Purgātu,* Plin. *Expurgatu,* Terent.—[36] *Putandus,* Catull.—[37] *Quassandus,* Ovid.—[38] *Radiātus,* 'shining:' passim. *Radiātus,* 'illuminated;' Lucan.—[39] *Raptandus,* Sil.—[40] *Recuperātum,* Justin. *Recuperatūrus,* Cæs. *Recuperandus,* Liv.—[41] *Recusatūrus,* Sueton.—[42] *Repudiatūrus,* Sueton. *Repudiandus,* Cic. The Participle *ns* does not occur.—[43] *Reserandus,* Cic.—[44] *Rogatūrus,* Sueton. *Rogandus,* Cic. Tusc. *Rogassit* for *Rogavĕrit,* Cic. Leg.—[45] *Sacrificātum,* Plaut. *Sacrificātus,* 'sacrificed,' 'slain in sacrifice.' [46] *Sacrandus,* 'to be established,' 'ratified.'—[47] The Participles *ns* and *rus* do not occur.

Salto,[1] R.	*dance.*
Salūto,[2] R. M.	*salute.*
Sano,[3] R. D.	*heal.*
Satio,	*satiate.*
Satŭro,[4]	*fill, glut.*
Saucio,[5] D.	*wound.*
†Screo,[6]	*hawk.*
*Secundo,[7]	*prosper.*
Sedo,[8] D. M.	*allay.*
Servo,[9] R. D.	*keep.*
*Sibĭlo,	*hiss.*
Sicco,[10] D.	*dry.*
Signo,[11] R. D.	*mark out.*
Simŭlo,[12]	*pretend.*
Socio,[13] D.	*associate.*
*Somnio,[14]	*dream.*
Specto,[15] R. D. M.	*behold.*
Spero,[16] D.	*hope.*
*Spiro,[17]	*breathe.*
Spolio,[18] D. M.	*rob.*
Spumo,[19]	*foam.*
Stillo,[20]	*drop.*
Stimŭlo,	*goad, vex.*
Stipo,	*stuff, guard.*
†Strio,	*flute, a column.*
†Succenturio,[21]	*recruit.*
Sudo,	*sweat.*
Suffōco,	*strangle.*
Sugillo,[22] D.	*taunt, jeer.*
Supĕro,[23] R. D.	*overcome.*
Suppedĭto,[24]	*afford.*
*Susurro,[25]	*whisper.*
Tardo,	*stop, delay.*
Taxo,[26] D.	*rate, reprove.*
Tempĕro,[27] R. D.	*temper.*
Tento,[28] R. D. M.	*try.*
Terĕbro,[29]	*bore.*
Titŭbo,[30]	*stagger.*
Tolĕro,[31] R. D. U.	*bear.*
Tracto,[32] D. U.	*handle.*
*†Tripudio,	*dance, caper.*
Trucīdo,[33] R. D.	*kill.*
Turbo,[34] D.	*disturb.*
Umbro,[35] R.	*shade.*
*Vaco,	*want, be at leisure.*
*Vapŭlo,[36] M.	*be beaten.*
Vario,	*diversify.*
Vasto,[37]	*lay waste.*
Vellĭco,[38]	*pluck, rail at.*
Verbĕro,[39] R. D.	*beat.*
*Vestĭgo,	*search for.*
Vexo,[40] D.	*tease, harass.*
*†Vindemio,[41]	*gather grapes.*
Vibro,[42] D.	*brandish.*
Viŏlo,[43] R. D. M.	*violate.*
Vitio,[44] D.	*vitiate.*
Vito,[45] D. U.	*shun.*
Voco,[46] R. D.	*call.*
*Volo,[47]	*fly.*
Voro,[48] R.	*devour.*
Vulgo,[49] R. D.	*publish.*
Vulnero,[50] D.	*wound.*

1 *Saltatūrus*, Sueton.—2 *Salutātum*, Sall. *Salutatūrus*, Cic.—3 *Sanatūrus*, Cæs. *Sanandus*, Senec.—4 The Participles in *ns*, *rus*, and *dus*, are not found in the classics.—5 *Sauciandus*, Colum.—6 Neither the Perfects nor the Perfect Participles of *Screo* and *Excreo* are now in existence.—7 The Participle *ns* only, is now extant.—8 *Sedātum*, Plaut. *Sedandus*, Cic.—9 *Servandus*, Ovid.—10 Ad corpora *siccanda*, Plin.—11 *Signatūrus*, Plin. *Signandus*, Stat.—12 *Simulandus*, Sall.—13 *Sociandus*, Hor.—14 *Somniatur*, depon. Petron.—15 *Spectātum*, Ovid. *Spectatūrus*, Suet. *Spectandus*, Stat. Theb.—16 *Sperandus*, Propert.—17 The Participle in *ns* only is in use. *Exspiratūrus*, Liv.—18 *Spoliandus*, Lucan.—19 *Spumātus*, 'sprinkled with foam,' 'foamy;' Cic.—20 *Stillātus*, 'distilling,' 'dropping.'—21 *Succenturiātus*, Terent.—22 *Suggillandus*, Val. Max.—23 *Superatūrus*, Cic.—24 *Suppedĭtor*, depon. Cic.—25 *Susurrātur*, impers. 'it is whispered about;' Terent.—26 *Taxandus*, Senec.—27 *Temperandus*, Suet.—28 *Tentātum*, Terent. *Tentatūrus*, Virg. Æn. IV. 293. *Tentandus*, Virg. Georg. III. 8.—29 The Participles *ns*, *rus*, and *dus*, are not found in the classics.—30 *Titubātus*, 'stumbling;' Virg. Æn. v. 331.—31 *Tolerātu*, Cic. *Toleratūrus* and *Tolerandus*, Ibid.—32 *Tractratu*, Plin. *Tractandus*, Juven.—33 *Trucidandus*, Cic.—34 *Turbatur*, impers. pass. Virg. Æn. Ecl. I. 12. *Turbasso* for *Turbavero*.—35 *Umbratūrus*, Honor. et Martial.—36 *Vapulātum*, Plaut. *Vapulandum*, Terent.—37 Ad *vastandos* agros, Liv. x. 33.—38 The Participle *Vellicātus*, occurs only in Paulin. Nolan.—39 *Verberatūrus*, Sueton. *Verberandus*, Apul.—40 *Vexandus*, Cic.—41 The Participle *ns* only is found in the classics.—42 *Vibrātus*, Virg. *Vibrandus*, Claud.—43 *Violatum*, Cic. *Violatūrus*, Cæs. *Violandus*, Tibull.—44 *Vitiandus*, Suet.—45 *Vitātu*, Hor. I. Sat. 4. 115. *Vitandus*, Hor. II. Sat. 3, 14.—46 *Vocatūrus*, Liv. *Vocandus*, Ovid. 47 *Devolatūrus*, Apul.—48 *Voratūrus*, Justin. *Devorandus*, Apul.—49 *Vulgatūrus*, Claud. *Vulgandus*, Suet.—50 *Vulnerandus*, Hirt.

II. DEPONENTS.

Deponent Verbs are formed like Passives; as,

Mīr-or,[1] **-āri, -ātus,** U. R. D. *admire.*—So,

Abōmĭnor,[2] D. *abhor.*
Adūlor,[3] D. *fawn, flatter.*
Æmŭlor,[4] D. *vie with, envy.*
*Aprīcor,[5] *bask in the sun.*
Arbĭtror,[6] R. D. *think.*
Aspernor,[7] D. *despise.*
Aversor,[8] D. *dislike.*
Aucŭpor,[9] R. *hunt after.*
Auxĭlior,[10] *help.*
Causor,[11] *plead in excuse, blame.*
Calumnior, *accuse falsely, calumniate.*
*Cōmissor,[12] M. *revel.*
Cŏmĭtor,[13] *accompany.*
Conciōnor, *harangue.*
*Confābŭlor,[14] M. *discourse.*
Cōnor,[15] D. *endeavour.*
Conspĭcor,[16] *spy, see.*
Contemplor,[17] *view.*
Crīmĭnor,[18] M. *blame.*
Cunctor,[19] *delay.*
Dēprĕcor,[20] M. R. *entreat, pray against.*
*Digladior, *fence.*
Dŏmĭnor,[21] *rule.*
Epŭlor,[22] R. D. *feast.*
*Fămŭlor,[23] M. *wait on.*

---

[1] *Mīrātu,* Senec. *Mīrātūrus,* Ovid. *Mīrandus,* Stat. *Mīrandus* is generally construed as an Adjective.—[2] *Abōmĭnandus,* Quint. *Abōmĭnārētur,* pass. Verrius. [3] *Adūlandus,* Val. Max. *Adūlāri,* pass. *to be flattered,* Cic. Off I. 26.—[4] *Æmŭlandus,* Plin. *Æmŭlāvĕris,* act. Apul.—[5] *Aprīcāre,* act. Pallad.—[6] *Arbĭtrātūrus,* Apul. *Arbĭtrandus,* Ulpian. *Arbĭtrantur,* pass. Ulpian. *Arbĭtrābunt,* Plaut.—[7] *Aspernātus,* despising, having despised, Virg. Georg. III. 393. et passim. *Aspernātus,* pass. despised, Liv. XXXIV. 40. *Aspernandus,* Virg. Æn. XI. 106. *Aspernātur,* pass. Cic.—[8] *Aversātus,* disliking, Ovid. et passim. *Aversātus,* pass. averted, Aurel. Vict. *Aversandus,* Liv. XXX. 25.—[9] *Aucŭpātūrus,* Cic. The active form *Aucŭpo* occurs in Senec. Hence, *Aucupātus,* pass. sought after, Lact. *Aucŭpātus,* in an active sense does not occur.—[10] *Auxĭliātus,* having assisted, Stat. *Auxĭlio,* Gracch. Hence *Auxĭliātus,* pass. aided. Lucil.—[11] *Causandus,* given in some Dictionaries, does not occur in the classics. *Causābor,* pass. Ovid. de Nuce, 125. where Salmas, Heins. and Burm. read *Causa habeor.*—[12] *Cōmissātum,* Liv. xl. 7. Terent. Some write *Comessor,* others *Comissor,* or *Comussor;* but *Comissor* is generally found in ancient books and inscriptions.—[13] *Cŏmĭtātus, attending, having attended,* Cæs. B. G. VI. 7. *Cŏmĭto,* act. Propert. *Cŏmĭtor,* pass. Ov. Trist. III. 7. 47. Hence *Cŏmĭtātus, attended.*—[14] *Confābŭlātum,* Terent. *Confābŭlābunt* in some old edd. of Plaut. Most. II. 2. 78.; but the true reading is *conturbābunt.*—[15] *Cōnandus,* Cæs. B. C. I. 31. I. 65. *Cōnārem* for *cōnārer,* is quoted by some grammarians from Ennius ap. Prisc.; but it cannot be found either in the ed. of Putschius, Hanov. 1605, or in that of Krehl., Lips. 1819.—[16] The Participles in *ns, rus, dus,* do not occur. *Conspĭco,* act. Varr. Hence *Conspicātur,* Varr. & Sall. Jug. c. 49. But Cortius in the last passage reads *conspicitur.*—[17] *Contemplo,* Apul. & Plaut. passim. Hence *Contemplātus,* θεωρουμενος, Ammian, *Contemplātus,* θεωρησας Curt. III. 4. et passim. 'In *contemplandis,* rebus,' Cic. Nat. Deor. I. 27,—[18] *Crīmĭno,* Plaut. Hence *Crīmĭnātus* accused, Hygin. 18. *Crīmĭnātus,* having accused, passim. *Crīmĭnātum,* Liv. II. 37.—[19] *Cuncto,* Plaut. Hence '*Cunctāta,* fides,' his faith was arrested, Stat. Theb. though it may be construed actively.—[20] *Dēprĕcātus,* having entreated, Cic. Orat. II. 49. et passim. *Dēprĕcātus,* pass. deprecated, Justin. VIII. 5. asked, Apul. Met. III. p. 59. *Dēprĕcātum,* Cic. de Amic. c. 11. *Dēprĕcātūrus,* Hirt. 'Ad pacem *dēprĕcandum,*' Cic. '*Dēprĕcandæ* malevolentiæ, causa,' pro Balb. XVIII. 7.—[21] *Dŏmĭnāris,* pass. Cic. Off.—[22] *Epŭlātūrus,* Val. Max. *Epŭlanda,* to be eaten, Ovid.—[23] *Fămŭlo,* Tertul. *Fămŭlātum,* Sil. *Fămŭlātus* occurs only in Tertul. de Res. Car. c. 47. where he quotes St. Paul, Rom. VI. 22. δουλωθεντες δε τω Θεω κ.τ.λ. *Fămŭlati autem Deo,* &c.

Fāris,[1] *or* fāre, U. *speak.*
Fĕrior,[2] R. *keep holiday.*
*Frūmentor,[3] M. *provide corn, forage, purvey.*
Fūror,[4] M. *steal.*
Glōrior,[5] R. D. *boast.*
Grātŭlor,[6] M. D. *rejoice, congratulate.*
Hortor,[7] *encourage.*
Imĭtor,[8] U. R. D. *imitate.*
Indignor,[9] D. *disdain.*
Infĭtior,[10] D. *deny.*
*Injurior, *injure.*
Insector,[11] *pursue.*
Insĭdior,[12] R. *lie in wait.*
Jăcŭlor,[13] *dart.*
Jocor,[14] *jest.*
Lætor,[15] R. D. *rejoice.*
Lāmentor,[16] D. *bewail.*
*Lignor,[17] M. *gather fuel.*
Luctor,[18] *wrestle.*
Mĕdĭcor,[19] R. D. *cure.*
Mĕdĭtor,[20] *meditate.*
Mercor,[21] M. R. D. *purchase.*
Mĭnor, *threaten.*
Mĭsĕror,[22] D. *pity.*
Mŏdĕror,[23] U. D. *rule.*
Mŏdŭlor,[24] D. *play a tune.*
Mŏror,[25] R. D. *delay.*
Mūtuor,[26] *borrow.*
Negotior, *traffic.*
*Nūgor,[27] *trifle.*
Obtestor,[28] *beseech.*
Opĕror,[29] *work.*

---

[1] *For*, Diomed, I. p. 375. Prisc. VIII. p. 793. but without authority. *Fātu*, Virg. Æn. XII. 25. *Fandus*, Lucan. *Fāmino* for *fāre*, Cato R. R. *Fātur*, pass. Sueton.—[2] *Fĕriātus*, Cic. Nat. Deor. I. 37. *Fĕriātūrus*, Sidon. The Participles in *ns* and *dus* are not found in the classics.—[3] *Frūmentātum*, Cic. Epist. ad Att. Cæs. B. G.—[4] *Fūrātum*, Plaut. Rud. I. 2. 23. Trin. IV. 2. 22.—[5] *Glōriātūrus*, Sueton. *Glōriandus*, Cic. Tusc. V. 17.—[6] *Grātŭlātum*, Cic. in Pison. c. 22. *Grātŭlātus*, Cic. Fam. III. 11. *Grātŭlandus*, Fronton.—[7] *Horto, -as*, Prisc. *Hortor*, pass. Gell. XV. 13. Tacit. Ann. XII. 9. 'Ad quas *hortandas*,' &c. Justin. XI. 9. 13.—[8] *Imĭtatu*, Val. Max. *Imĭtātūrus*, Cic. *Imĭtandus*, Cic. Off. *Imĭto*, Var.—[9] *Indignandus*, Ovid. Met.—[10] From *in* and *Făteor*; some derive it from *in* and *Făcio*, and write *Infĭcior*. *Infitiandus*, Ovid.—[11] *Insecto* Plaut. Hence *Insectātus*, pressed on, pursued, Hirt. *Insectātus*, having inveighed against, Tacit. Hist. II. 96. et passim. *Insectans ăves*, Cic.—[12] *Insĭdiāvĕrint*, Callistr. *Insĭdiat*, in some copies of Virg. Æn. I. 719. according to Servius. *Insĭdiāturus*, Hirt. 'In legatis *insĭdiandis*,' Cic. pro Cœl. c. 21.—[13] *Ejăcŭlāvĕrat* is found in Gell. XVI. 19. 4. and *Jăcŭlātus*, pass. Lucan. III. 568. *Jăcŭlātus*, having hurled, Virg. Æn. II. 276. et passim.—[14] *Jŏcābo*, Plaut.—[15] *Læto*, εὐφραίνω, *I gladden*, Liv. ap. Non. Hence *Lætātus*, gladdened, Virg. Æn. XII. 841. *Lætātus*, having rejoiced, Cic. Phil. XI. 4. et passim. *Lætātūrus*, Cic. de Div. II. 9. *Lætandus*, Cic. Leg. Manil. c. 1. These two passages may be construed actively *ob*, or *propter*, being understood.—[16] *Lāmentātur*, pass. impers. Apul. Met. *Lāmentātus*, lamented, Sil. *Lāmentātus*, having lamented, Cic. Tusc. I. 31. et passim. *Lamentandus*, Fronton. de Nep.—[17] *Lignātum*, Liv. X. 25. This verb has no Participle.—[18] *Lucto*, Terent. Hence *Luctans*, Virg. Æn. IV. 694.—[19] *Mĕdĭcāre*, ἰατρεύειν, Sil. *Mĕdĭcāre*, medicinis imbuere, tingere, Virg. Georg. I. 193. Hence *Mĕdĭcātus*, φαρμακευθεὶς Virg. Æn. VI. 420. et passim. *Mĕdĭcentur*, pass. Colum. *Mĕdĭcātūrus*, Colum. *Mĕdĭcandus*, Tibull. [20] *Mĕdĭtantur*, pass. Minuc. Fel. Hence, *Mĕdĭtatus*, pass. Cic. passim. *Mĕdĭtātus*, act. This does not occur so frequently as the other.—[21] *Mercātum*, Plaut. *Mercātus*, having bought, Cic. *Mercātus*, pass. Plin. *Mercātūrus*, Plin. *Mercandus*, Cic.—[22] *Mĭsĕrandus*, Cic. de Or. I. 37.—[23] *Mŏdĕro*, Pacuv. ap. Non. VII. 23. Hence, *Mŏdĕrātur*, pass. *Mŏdĕrātu*, Liv. IV. 27. *Mŏdĕrandus*, Cic. de Orat. I. 18.—[24] *Mŏdŭlātus*, pass. Quint. IX. 2. Hor. I. Od. 32. 5. al. passim. *Mŏdŭlandus*, Hor. II. Ep. 2. 143.—[25] *Mŏrāturus*, Propert. III. 20. 12. *Mŏrandus*, Hor. Art. Poët. 223.—[26] *Mūtuo*, Cæcil. ap. Non. Hence, *Mūtuātus*, borrowed Plin. *Mūtuātus*, having borrowed, Val. Max. The Participles in *ns*, *rus*, and *dus*, are not found in the classics.—[27] This verb has no Participles.—[28] *Obtestātus*, pass. conjured, Apul. *Obtestātus*, having entreated, Sallust. Catil. c. 46. et passim.—[29] *Opĕrātus*, pass. exercised, Lactant. *Opĕrātus*, working, sacrificing, Propert. II. 24. 1. et passim.

Opīnor,[1] U. R. D.	*think.*	**Rīmor,**[15]	*search.*
Opĭtŭlor,[2] M.	*help.*	**Rixor,**[16]	*scold.*
Opsōnor,[3] M.	*cater.*	***Rusticor,**	*dwell in the country.*
Otior,[4]	*be at leisure.*	**Sciscĭtor,**[17] M.	*inquire.*
Pabulor,[5] M. D.	*graze, forage.*	***Scĭtor,**[18] M.	*ask.*
Pālor,[6]	*wander.*	**Scrūtor,**[19]	*search.*
Percontor,[7] M.	*enquire.*	**Sōlor,**[20] D.	*comfort.*
Pĕrīclĭtor,[8] D.	*make trial, be in danger.*	**Spătior,**	*walk about.*
Piscor,[9] M.	*fish.*	**Spĕcŭlor,**[21] M. R.	*view, spy.*
Pŏpŭlor,[10] R. D.	*lay waste.*	**Stĭpŭlor,**[22]	*stipulate.*
Prædor,[11] M.	*plunder.*	**Suavior,**	*kiss.*
Prælior,[12]	*fight.*	**Suspĭcor,**[23]	*suspect.*
Præmior,	*make prizes.*	**Testor,**[24]	*witness.*
Prĕcor,[13] M. U. R. D.	*pray.*	**Tūtor,**[25] D.	*defend.*
Rĕcordor,[14]	*remember.*		

---

1 *Opīnātu,* Plin. *Opīnātūrus,* Cic. Acad. *Opinandus,* Cic. Tusc.—2 *Opĭtŭla,* Liv. Andron. ap. Non. *Opĭtŭlātum,* Plaut.—3 *Opsōno, āre, āvi, ātus,* is more usual. *Opsōnāvit,* Plaut. *Obsōnābo,* Terent. *Opsōnātum,* Plaut. Some write *Obsōno;* but contrary to its derivation, ὄψον, ὀψώνιον, *opsōnium,* any thing provided for food, except bread and wine; and particularly *fish.*—4 *Otiātus* occurs only in Sidon, Ep. III. 1. It has no other Participle.—5 *Pābŭlātum,* Plaut. *Pābŭlandus,* Colum.—6 This Verb is chiefly used in the Present Participle, *Pālans,* Liv. I. 11. Virg. XII. 738. al. passim. *Pālātus,* dispersed, wandering, Liv. *Pālāre,* act. occurs in the Satire of Sulpicia, vs. 43.—7 *Perconto,* Apul. Met. *Percontantur,* pass. Gell. Hence, 'pretio *percontato,*' Apul. Met. *Percontātum,* Ter.—8 *Pĕrīclĭtātus,* pass. Cic. de Amic. c. 17. *Pĕrīclĭtātus,* having made trial, Cic. pro Quint, c. 31. al. passim. *Pĕrīclĭtandus,* Cic. Catil. I. 5.—9 *Piscātum,* Plaut. The Participle *Piscans* occurs only in Festus.—10 *Pŏpŭlāvit,* Propert. Hence, *Pŏpŭlor,* pass. Liv. and *Pŏpŭlātus,* Cic. *Pŏpŭlātus,* act. Stat. Theb. et passim. *Pŏpŭlātūrus,* Cæs. B. G. *Pŏpŭlandus,* Ovid. Met.—11 *Prædo,* Prisc. Hence *Prædātum īri,* Plaut. *Prædātum,* Liv. IV. 55.—12 *Præliant,* Enn. ap. Non.—13 *Prĕco,* Prisc. Hence *Prĕcantur.* pass. Varr. ap. Non. and *Prĕcātus,* prayed, supplicated. *Prĕcātus,* having prayed, Cic. Tusc. I. 47. et passim. *Prĕcātum,* Liv. VII. 31. *Prĕcātu,* Stat. Theb. *Prĕcātūrus,* Ovid. *Prĕcandus,* Tacit. Ann.—14 *Rĕcordāvit,* Ann. ap. Non. Hence, *Rĕcordātus,* remembered, Sidon. *Rĕcordātus,* having remembered, Ovid Met. et passim. 'Ad ea *rĕcordanda,*' Cic. pro Syll. c. 26.—15 *Rīmābam,* Jul. Valer. *Rīmārem,* Accius ap. Non. Hence, *Rīmātus,* pass. investigated, Sidon. '*Rīmandis* offensis sagax,' Tacit. Hist. IV. 11.—16 *Rixant, Rixent, Rixarent,* Varr. ap. Non. 'Cum *rixātus* esset,' Cic. de Orat. c. 59.—17 *Sciscĭtāre,* act. Plaut. Hence, *Sciscĭtātus,* asked, Ammian. *Sciscĭtātus,* having inquired, Petron. *Sciscĭtātum,* Gell. 18 *Scĭtābat,* Ammian.; but Vales. and Gronov. read *noscĭtābat.* *Scĭtātum,* Virg. Æn. II. 114.—19 *Scrūtāri,* pass. Ammian. XXVIII. 1. and *Scrūtātus,* searched after, XV. 8. *Scrūtātus,* having searched, Plin. XXIII. 6. et passim. 20 *Sōlandus,* Ovid.—21 *Spĕcŭlātum,* Sall. Jug. c. 116. *Spĕcŭlātūrus,* Justin. 'Ad *spĕcŭlandos* actūs Hannĭbălis,' Justin.—22 *Stĭpŭlat,* Symmach. Epist. Hence, *Stĭpŭlari,* pass. Sueton. and *Stĭpŭlātus,* contracted, Cic. pro Rosc. *Stĭpŭlātus,* having stipulated, ibid. c. 4. et passim. The Participles in *ns, rus,* and *dus,* are not found in the classics.—23 *Suspĭces,* Plaut.—24 *Testo, -as,* Prisc. but without example. *Testātus, attested,* Liv. XXXIV. 41. al. passim. *Testātus, having called to witness,* Cic. Fin. II. 20. et al. passim. 'Hoc *testandum* est,' Cic. Orat. c. 68.—25 *Tūtetis,* Plaut. *Tūta,* Pacuv. ap. Non. *Tūtant,* Næv. ibid. *Tūtāret.* Pompon. ibid. Hence, *Tūtantur,* pass. Plaut. and *Tūtātus,* defended, Symmach. Ep. IX. 11. *Tūtātus,* having defended, Ovid. Trist. V. 6. 15. et passim. *Tūtandus,* Phædr.

Văgor,[1]	*wander.*	Versor,[4]	*be employed, frequent, haunt, dwell.*
Věněror,[2] D.	*worship.*		
Vēnor,[3] M.	*hunt.*	Vōcĭfěror,[5]	*bawl.*

1 *Văgant*, Enn. ap. Non. VII.—2 *Věněro*, Plaut. Hence, *Věněrātus*, Hor. Sat. II. 2. 124. Virg. Æn. III. 460. *Věněrātus*, having worshipped, Propert. *Věněrandus*, Cic. Agr. II. 35. Virg. Æn. IX. 275. &c. *Věněrantes*, i. e. *Věněri ŏpěram dantes*, Hygin. Fab. LXXV. which is not to be imitated. Yet this, according to some etymologists, is the original meaning of the word.—3 *Vēnātum*, Virg. Æn. IV. 118. Plaut. *Vēnātus*, having hunted, Ovid. Fast. *Vēnor*, pass. Enn. ap. Non.—4 *Versor*, though generally ranked with Deponents, is merely the Passive of *Verso*; 'nam qui in aliquo loco, aut re immoratur, quodammodo in ea huc et illuc sese versat, et quasi volutatur, aut corpore, aut mente.' *Facciolat.*—5 *Vōcĭfěrant*. Varr. Liv. VII. 12. VIII. 38. *Vōcĭfěrātus*, Colum.

III. EXCEPTIONS.

*Crĕpo,[1] crĕpāre, crĕpui, ——,	*make a noise.*
*Cŭbo,[2] cŭbāre, cŭbui, ——, cŭbĭtum,	*lie down.*
Do,[3] dăre, dĕdi, dătus, dătum, dătūrus, dandus,	*give.*
Dŏmo,[4] dŏmāre, dŏmui, dŏmĭtus, dŏmĭtūrus, domandus,	*conquer.*
Frĭco,[5] frĭcāre, frĭcui, frictus, *or* frĭcātus, frĭcandus,	*rub.*
Jŭvo,[6] jŭvāre, jūvi, jūtus, jŭvātūrus, jŭvandus,	*help.*
*Lăbo,[7] lăbāre, —, ——, labasse,	*droop, totter.*
Lăvo,[8] lăvāre, lāvi, lautus, *or* lōtus, *or* lăvātus, lautum, *or* lăvātum, lăvātūrus, lăvandus,	*wash.*
*Mĭco,[9] mĭcāre, mĭcui, ——,	*vibrate, glitter.*

[1] So *Concrĕpo,* I rattle, ring. * *Discrĕpo,* I differ in sound, I disagree, makes *ui,* or *āvi: Discrĕpuit,* Hor. Art. Poët. 219. *Discrĕpāvit,* Cic. de Or. III. 30. *Increpo,* I sound, strike, chide, *ui,* sometimes *āvi; Increpāvit,* Plaut. *Incrĕpĭtus,* chidden, Liv. XXIII. 26. *Incrĕpātus,* Prudent. Cathem. VII. 195, where the Juntine ed. has *Incrĕpĭtus.* The Perfect and Participles of *Rĕcrĕpo,* I resound, do not occur.—[2] *Cŭbasse,* Quintil. VIII. 2. *Cŭbāris,* Propert. *Incŭbāvēre,* Plin. *Incŭbui,* Virg. Æn. VII. 88. et passim. *Sŭpercŭbasse,* Apul. Met. *Cŭbĭtum,* Cic. pro Rosc. *Incŭbandus,* Plin. When the compounds of *Cŭbo* take an M, they are of the third conj.—[3] So four Compounds, *Circumdo,* I surround; *Pessumdo,* I destroy; *Sătisdo,* I give good bail; *Vēnumdo,* I set to sale. The other Compounds are of the third Conj. *Dătum īri,* Cæs. B. C. *Dătūrus,* Catull. *Dandus,* Cic. Off. I. 21. The first person pass. *Dor,* does not occur except in Diomed. I. p. 375.—[4] *Dŏmāvi,* Ennius. *Dŏmāvērunt,* Flor. *Dŏmātus,* Petron. Hence *Dŏmātor,* a tamer, Tibull. IV. 116. *Dŏmĭtūrus,* Virg. Georg. IV. 102. *Dŏmandus,* Propert. II. 34. 50. So *Edŏmo,* I subdue; *Perdŏmo,* I subdue wholly. *Perdŏmĭtūrus,* Justin. II. 13.—[5] Some Grammars and Dictionaries give this verb a Perfect in *-avi;* but no such Perfect exists now in the Latin classics. *Frictus,* Juv. Sat. VI. 577. *Frĭcātus,* Plin. *Frĭcandus,* Plin. *Affrĭcātus,* Apul. Met. *Confrĭcātus,* Plin. *Dēfrictus,* Colum. *Dēfrĭcātus,* Colum. *Infrĭcātus,* Plin. *Perfrictus,* Apul. Met. *Perfrĭcātus,* Vitruv. *Rĕfrĭcātūrus,* Cic. The Perfects of *Confrĭco* and *Infrĭco* seem not to exist.—[6] *Jŭvĕrint,* Catull. LXV. 18. and in some edd. *Juĕrint.* Vossius quotes *Jūvāvi* from Manilius. *Jūvārit,* Pallad. but Gesner reads *jŭvābit Jūtus,* Tacit. Ann. *Jūtūrus,* Colum. *Jŭvātūrus,* Sall. Jug. c. 47. *Jŭvandus,* Ovid. *Adjūvi,* Cic. *Adjuĕro,* for *adjūvĕro,* Cic. de Senect. c. 1. *Adjūtus,* Macrob. *Adjūtum,* Corn. Nep. *Adjūtūrus,* Liv. *Adjuvatūrus,* Petron. c. 18. *Adjuvandus,* Cic.—[7] Of the Perfect of *Lăbo* we find no trace in the classics, except that we read *Lăbasse* in Plin. XIV. 28.—[8] *Lăvo, ĭs, ĕre,* &c. Hor. III. Od. 12. 2. IV. Od. 6. 26. I. Sat. 5. 24. Ovid. IV. 340. Virg. Georg. III. 221. Æn. III. 663. Plaut. passim. *Lăvāvit,* Plaut. *Lautus,* Cic. pro Deiot. c. 10. Hor. II. Sat. 3. 282. Ter. and Plaut. *Lōtus,* Stat. *Lăvātus,* Plaut. *Lautum,* Ter. and Plaut. *Lăvātum,* Hor. I. Sat. 3. 137. I. Sat. 6. 125. & Ter. *Lăvātūrus,* Ovid. Fast. III. 12. *Lăvandus,* Ovid. Fast. IV. 136. & Plin.—[9] *Mĭcui,* Ovid. *Mĭcāvĕrit,* Sollin. c. 53. *Dīmĭco,* I fight, *āvi,* sometimes *ui: Dīmĭcāvi,* Sueton. *Dīmĭcui,* Ovid. *Dīmĭcātūrus,* Cæs. B. G. III. 24. *Emĭco,* I spring forth, I shine forth, *ui, ĕre: Emĭcui,* Virg. Æn. II. 174. et passim. Quintil. I. 6. finds fault with those, who, too scrupulously following analogy, preferred *Emĭcāvi* to *Emĭcui.* *Emĭcātūrus,* Senec. ad Helv. 11. The Perfects of *Intermĭco,* I shine among, and *Promĭco,* I spring out, do not occur. *Prōmĭcandus,* Næv. ap. Non. I. 329.

Něco,[1] něcāre, něcāvi, *or* něcui, něcātus, něcātūrus, něcandus, *kill.*
*Nexo,[2] nexāre, ——, ——, *tie, knit.*
Plĭco,[3] plĭcāre, ——, plĭcātus, *or* plĭcĭtus, *fold.*
Pōto[4] pōtāre, pōtāvi, pōtus, *or* pōtātus, pōtum, *or* pōtātum, pōtūrus, *or* pōtātūrus, pōtandus, *drink.*
Sěco,[5] sěcāre, sěcui, sectus, sěcātūrus, sěcandus, *cut.*
*Sŏno,[6] sŏnāre, sŏnui, ——, sŏnātūrus, sŏnandus, *sound.*

---

[1] *Nĕcāvi*, Cic. pro Leg. Manil. c. 5. *Nĕcui*, Phædr. *Nĕcātus*, Sall. Jug. c. 50. et al. passim. *Nectus* in some edd. of Cic. de Leg. III. 10. 'Proprie *nĕcātus*, FERRO, *nectus* vero ALIA VI peremtus.' *Nĕcātūrus*, Ovid. *Nĕcandus*, Juv. Sat. VI. 596. *Enĭco*, ἀρχαικῶς. *Enĕco*, I slay, *ui, ctus;* sometimes *āvi, ātus: Enĕcui*, Sueton. *Enĕcāvi*, Plaut. *Enĭcasso*, for *ēnĭcāvĕro*, Plaut. *Enectus*, Cic. de Divin. *Enĕcātus*, Plin. *Enĕcandus*, Cels. The Perfect of *Internĕco*, I utterly destroy, and its Participles in *ns, rus, dus*, are not found in the classics. *Internĕcātus*, Plaut. *Internectus*, quoted from Cic. Phil. XIV. 3. does not exist in correct copies.—[2] *Nexo* has neither Perfect nor Participle. See *Necto* and *Nexo*, third Conj.—[3] The perfects *Plĭcui* and *Plĭcāvi* are found only in Priscian, and without example. *Plĭcātus*, Lucr. VI. 1085. *Plĭcĭtus*, Mart. *Dŭplĭco*, I double; *Multĭplĭco*, I multiply; *Rĕplĭco*, I unfold, make *avi, atus*. *Rĕplĭcasse*, Plin. *Rĕplĭcātus*, Plin. and *Rĕplictus*, Stat. Sylv. *Supplĭco* makes *avi*, and has no Perfect Participle. *Supplĭcātum*, Plaut. *Supplĭcātūrus*, Ter. *Supplĭcassis*, for *Supplicāvĕris*, Plaut. *Dŭplĭcātūrus*, Cic. Att. v. 18. 'Ad *Dŭplĭcanda* verba,' Liv. XXVII. 11. *Applĭco*, I apply, *Implĭco*, I entangle, make *ui, ĭtus*, and *āvi, ātus*. *Complĭco, ui, ĭtus*, and *ātus*. *Complĭcāvi* does not occur. *Applĭcui*, Justin. *Applĭcāvi*, Cic. *Applĭcĭtus*, Plin. *Applĭcātus*, Cæs. B. C. III. 101. &c. *Applĭcĭtūrus*, Justin. *Implĭcui*, Virg. Æn. XI. 751. et passim. *Implĭcāvi*, Liv. *Implĭcĭtus*, Hor. Art. Poët. 423. Liv. I. 31. et passim. *Implĭcātus*, Cæs. B. G. VII. 73, &c. OBS. *Implĭcĭtus morbo*, not *implĭcātus*. *Implĭcĭtūrus*, Ov. *Explĭco* makes *ui, ĭtus*, and *āvi, ātus*. When it means to *explain, āvi, ātus*, are the more usual forms: in the sense of *unfolding, ui, ĭtus* are more usual. *Explĭcui*, Petron. Virg. Georg. II. 280. et al. passim. *Explĭcāvi*, Plaut. and Cic. Gellius remarks, that *Explĭcui* was more usual in the time of Cicero, than *Explĭcāvi*. *Explĭcĭtūrus*, Stat. Theb. *Explĭcātūrus*, Cæs. B. C. I. 78. *Complĭcui*, Senec. *Complĭcātus*, Cic. *Complĭcĭtus*, Apul. Met.—[4] *Pōtus sum*, for *pōtāvi*, Varr. *Pōtus*, act. Cic. Fam. VII. 22. Ovid. *Pōtus* pass. Cic. Ovid. Hor. *Pōtātus*. Cic. Tusc. v. 5. *Pōtūrus*, Plin. *Pōtātūrus*, Sueton. *Pōtum*, Virg. Ecl. VII. 11. *Pōtātum*, Plaut. *Potandus*, Ovid. *Epōto*, I drink up, makes *ēpōtāvi, ēpōtus; Perpōto, perpōtāvi*, and has no Perfect Participle, nor the Participles in *rus* and *dus*. *Epōto*, has not the Participles in *ns, rus* and *dus*.—[5] *Sĕcui*, Virg. Georg. III. 444. al. passim. *Sĕcāvi*, mentioned by the Oxford Commentators on Lily, and by some others, does not exist in the classics. *Sectus*, Cic. Tusc. II. 53. et al. passim. *Sĕcātūrus*, Colum. *Sĕcandus*, Ovid. The Compounds make *ui, ctus*, *Præsĕco*, I chop off, pare off, and *Resĕco*, I cut off, *ui ctus*, rarely *atus*. *Præsĕcātus*, Apul. Met. *Rĕsĕcātus*, Apul. The Perfects of *Circumsĕco*, I cut about, and *Intersĕco*, intersect, are not in use; nor the Participles *Intersectus, Persectus*. *Intersĕcandus*, Colum. *Rĕsĕcandus*, Cic. Cat. II. 5.—[6] *Sŏnĕre*, third Conj. Lucr. *Sŏnit*, Accius, ap. Non. *Sŏnunt*, Accius et Enn. *Sŏnīvi*, Non. *Sŏnui*, Propert. *Sŏnāvĕrint*, Turtull. whence *Sŏnātūrus*, Hor. I. Sat. 4. 43. *Sŏnandus*, Ovid. *Sŏnantur*, pass. Albinov. ad Liv. I. 107. For *Assŏno*, I resound; *Circumsŏno*, I sound around; *Dissŏno*, I am discordant, we find no Perfect. *Rĕsŏno*, I re-echo, makes *āvi;* Manil. *Consŏno*, I sound together; *Exsŏno*, I resound; *Insŏno*, I resound; *Persŏno*, I sound loudly; *Præsŏno*, I sound before, make *ui*. Yet *Persŏnāvit*, Apul. Met. *Resŏnit*, for *resŏnat*, Accius ap. Non. *Resŏnunt*, Accius et Enn. ap. Prisc.

*Sto,[1] stāre, stĕti, ——, stātūrus, *stand.*
*Tŏno,[2] tŏnāre, tŏnui, ——, *thunder.*
Vĕto,[3] vĕtāre, vĕtui, vĕtĭtus, *forbid.*

---

[1] *Stăturus*, Lucan. et Liv. III. 60. The Compounds, *Consto*, I consist; *Exto*, I exist, appear; *Insto*, I press on, am near; *Obsto*, oppose; *Persto*, I persist; *Præsto*, I surpass, make *stĭti*, *stātūrus*. *Præstandus*, Ovid. Liv. x. 36. Cic. Fam. VI. 8. *Asto*, I stand near, *stĭti*, *stĭtūrus;* Porcin. ap. Prisc. *Prosto*, I stand to be hired; *Resto*, I remain, make *stĭti*, without the Perfect Participle. *Antesto*, or *antisto*, I excel; *Circumsto*, I stand about: *Intersto*, I stand between; *Supersto*, I stand over, make *stĕti*, without the Perfect Participle. See Cic. de Inv. Cæs. B. G. *Disto*, I am distant, I differ; *Substo*, I stand under, I bear up, have neither Perfect nor Perfect Participle. 'Multa quæ in præteritis efferuntur, ad *sisto*, commode reduci possunt.; *Facciolat.* See the Compounds of *Sisto*, third Conj. *Præstāvi*, Ammian. *Præstāvĭmus*, Paul. Dig. *Præstĭturus* in some edd. of Cic. Fam. VI. 8.—[2] *Tŏnĭmus*, third Conj. Varr. ap. Non. I. 245. *Tŏnāvi*, given by the Oxford commentators on Lily, and by Gesner in his Thesaur. Lat. and *Tŏnīvi*, quoted from Plautus, do not exist. *Attŏno*, I astonish, *ui, ĭtus; Circumtŏno*, I thunder round, *ui; Intŏno*, I thunder on, *ui, ātus; Intŏnāvi*, Paulin. Epist. *Intŏnātus*, thundered on, Hor. Epod. II. 51. *Rĕtŏno*, I resound, has neither Perfect nor Perfect Participle.—[3] *Vĕtāvi*, Plaut. according to the Mss. of Langius and seven others. *Vĕtāvisti*, vs. 46. according to five Palatine Mss. and three others. See the Delphin Plautus printed by Valpy. *Vĕtāvit*, Pers. Sat. which some have altered to *nŏtāvit*, others to *rĕtābit*. *Vĕtāvĕram*, Planc. ad Cic. Fam. x. 23. where the ed. Vindel. 1469. and the Ald. 1533. have *vĕtuĕram*. Some from Stat. Theb. III. 71. cite *vĕtātam;* but the two Mss. at Cambridge, one in the Peter-house Col. and the other in St. John's, with more than twenty printed copies, have in this passage *nĕgātam*.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

I. Verbs of the Second Conjugation end in *-eo,* and change *-eo* into *-ēre* long in the Infinitive; into *ui* in the Perfect; and into *-ĭtus* in the Perfect Participle Passive; as,

Mŏneo,[1] mŏnēre, mŏnui, mŏnĭtus, R. D. *advise.*

—So,

Admŏneo,[2] R. D,	*admonish.*	Dēbeo,[14] R. D.	*owe.*
Commŏneo,	*warn.*	Mĕreo,[15] R.	*deserve.*
Præmŏneo,	*forewarn.*	Commĕreo,[16]	*deserve well or ill.*
*Arceo,[3] D.	*tie hard, drive away.*	Dēmĕreo,[17] D.	*earn.*
Coërceo,[4] D.	*restrain.*	Emĕreo,	*merit.*
Exerceo,[5] D.	*exercise.*	*Permĕreo,	*serve in war.*
Hăbeo,[6] R. D.	*have.*	Prōmĕreo,[18]	*deserve.*
Adhĭbeo,[7] R. D.	*admit, use.*	Terreo,[19] D.	*terrify.*
Cŏhĭbeo,[8] D.	*restrain.*	Absterreo,[20]	*deter.*
Inhĭbeo,[9] D.	*hinder.*	Conterreo,[21]	*affright.*
Exhĭbeo,[10] R. D.	*show.*	Dēterreo,[22] D.	*deter.*
*Perhĭbeo,[11] D.	*report.*	Exterreo,	*scare.*
Prŏhĭbeo,[12] R. D.	*hinder.*	Perterreo,	*frighten.*
Posthăbeo,	*postpone.*	Tăceo,[23] R. D.	*be silent, conceal.*
Præbeo,[13] R. D.	*afford.*		

---

1 *Mŏnĭtūrus,* Propert. I. *Mŏnendus,* Plaut—2 *Admŏnĭtūrus,* Ovid. *Admonĭtum,* Cic. *Admŏnendus,* Plin.—3 *Arcendus,* Cic. Off. I. 34.—4 *Coërcendus,* Cels.—5 *Exercendus,* Cic. de Orat. I. 157.—6 *Hăbĭtūrus,* Cic. Philip. III. 27. *Hăbendus,* Ovid.—7 *Adhĭbĭtūrus,* Curt. *Adhĭbendus,* Auson.—8 *Cŏhĭbendus,* Cels. *Cŏhĭbessit,* for *cŏhĭbuĕrit,* Lucr. III. 445.—9 *Inhĭbendus,* Sen.—10 *Exhĭbĭtūrus,* Petron.—*Exhĭbendus,* Plin. Epist.—11 *Perhĭbendus,* Cic. The Perfect Participle, and the Participles in *ns* and *rus* do not occur.—12 *Prŏhĭbĭtūrus,* Liv. XXXI. 25. *Prŏhĭbendus,* Cic. Off. I. 25. *Prŏhĭbesso, is, it,* for *prŏhĭbeam,* or *prŏhĭbuĕrim,* Plaut.—13 *Præbĭtūrus,* Liv. *Præbendus,* Cic. Off. I. 41.—14 *Dēbĭtūrus,* Curt. *Debitu iri,* for *debitum iri,* ap. Ulp.—15 *Mĕrĭtūrus,* Cic. Acad. I. 7. Liv. II. 38.—16 *Commĕrĭtus,* pass. Plaut. *Commĕrĭtus,* having deserved, comes from the Deponent *Commĕrĕor.*—17 *Dēmĕrendus,* Colum. I. 4. The Participles in *ns* and *rus* do not occur. 18 *Prōmĕrĭtus,* pass. Plaut. *Prōmĕrĭtus,* having deserved, from *Prōmĕreor,* Virg. Æn. IV. 333. '*Prōmĕrendi,* ămōris stŭdium,' Sueton. Calig. c. 3.—19 *Terrendus,* Aul. Gell.—20 *Absterrĭtus,* Liv.—21 *Conterrĭtus,* Virg. Æn. III. 507.—22 *Dēterrendus,* Hirt. B. G.—23 *Tăcĭtus,* concealed, Virg. Æn. IV. 67. *Tăcĭtūrus,* Cic. *Tăcendus,* Hor. OBS. The Participles in *ns, rus,* and *dus* of *Commŏneo, Posthăbeo, Commĕreo, Emĕreo, Absterreo, Conterreo, Exterreo, Perterreo,* do not occur in the classics. *Permĕreo* has no Participle.

II. Neuter Verbs of the Second Conjugation generally make *-ui*, and have no Perfect Participle:

*Aceo,[1] *be sour.*
*Areo,[2] *be dry.*
*Căleo,[3] R. *be warm, hot.*
*Candeo,[4] *be white, hot.*
*Cāneo.[5] *be hoary.*
*Căreo,[6] R. *want.*
Clāreo,[7] *be bright, renowned.*
Dŏleo,[8] R. D. *grieve.*
Egeo,[9] R. *want.*
*Emĭneo,[10] *be raised above.*
*Flacceo,[11] *wither.*
*Flōreo,[12] *flourish.*
*Horreo,[13] D. *be rough, tremble with cold.*
*Jăceo,[14] R. *lie.*
*Langueo,[15] uï, *languish.*
*Lăteo,[16] *lie hid.*
*Lĭceo,[17] *be put to sale, be valued.*
*Mădeo,[18] *be wet.*
*Nĭgreo,[19] *be black.*
*Nĭteo,[20] *shine.*
*Olĕo,[21] *emit a smell.*
*Palleo,[22] *be pale.*
*Pāreo,[23] M. R. *appear, obey.*
*Păteo,[24] *be open.*
*Percalleo,[25] *be hardened, understand well.*
*Plăceo,[26] *please.*
*Pubeo,[27] *arrive at puberty.*
*Puteo,[28] *stink.*
*Pŭtreo. *be rotten.*
*Rĭgeo,[29] *be stiff.*
*Rŭbeo,[30] *be red.*

---

[1] *Acui*, Ulpian.—[2] *Aruit*, Prudent.—[3] *Călui*, Stat. Theb. *Călĭtūrus*, Ovid.—[4] *Candui*, Ovid.—[5] *Cānui*, Ovid. Fast. III. 880. *Cānĕret*, Propert.—[6] *Cărui*, Plaut. *Carilūrus*, Ovid Met.—[7] *Clārui*, Sueton.—[8] *Dŏlui*, Virg. Æn. I. 673. *Dŏlĭtus est*, for *dŏluit*, Inscr. *Dŏleātur*, for *dŏleat*, ibid. *Dŏlēri*, Stat. *Dŏlĭtūrus*, Liv. XXXIX. 43. *Dŏlendus*, Ovid.—[9] *Egui*, Cic. in Brut. c. 67. *Eguĭtūrus*, Tertul. *Egĭtūrus*. See Sciop.—[10] The Perfect of the simple *Mĭneo* does not occur. *Emĭnui*, Vell. [11] *Flaccuit*, Varr. where Gesner reads *Flăcuit*. '*Flaccente*, sententia,' Mamert,' [12] *Flōrui*, Ovid.—[13] *Horrui*, Ovid. Fast. II. 502. *Horrendus*, Virg. Æn. IX. 112.—[14] *Jăcui*, passim. *Jăcĭtūrus*, Stat Theb.—[15] *Langui*, three syll. Lucan. VII. 245. Ovid. Met.—[16] *Lătui*, Virg. Æn. I. 134. et passim.—[17] *Lĭcui*, Cic.—[18] *Mădui*, Ovid. [19] *Nĭgrui*, Colum.—[20] *Nĭtui*, Tibull.—[21] *Olui*, Hor. The compounds of *Oleo*, when they signify to *smell*, make UI: *Adŏleo*, I smell, burn, *ui*, Varr. *Adultus*, Antias ibid. *Adŏlendus*, Ovid. *Obŏleo*, smell, *ui*, Plaut. *Rĕdŏleo*, smell strongly, *ui*; *Rĕdŏluĕrat*, had got a scent, Capitolin. in Gordian. *Sŭbŏleo*, smell a little, *ui*; but of this there is no classical proof: *Subolēvi* certainly does not exist. *Perolesse*, to have smelt strongly, is cited from Lucil. by Prisc. In the signification, *to grow, grow out of use, fade*, &c., they make EVI: *Abŏleo*, I efface, *ēvi*, Gell. *Abolitus*, Tacit. *Abolitūrus*, Sueton. *Abolendus*, Sueton. *Adolesco*, I grow up, *ēvi*, Sall. Jug. c. 2. *Adolesse*, Ovid. *Exoleo* occurs only in Prisc. *Exolesco*, I fade, *ēvi*, Plin. *Exolētus*, Cic. pro Mil. *Obsoleo*, or *Obsolesco*, I grow out of use, *ēvi*, Cic. Manil. c. 17. *Obsoletus*, Cic. *Inolesco*, I grow upon, implant. *evi*, Gell. *Inolescendus*, Gell. The Perfects *Abolui*, *Adolui*, I have grown up; *Adolēvi*, I have burned. *Exŏlui*, *Inŏlui*, do not occur in the entire body of classical Latinity. Priscian, gives *Abŏlui*, but without authority.—[22] *Pallui*, Propert. [23] *Pārui*, Mart. *Pārĭtūrus*, Justin. *Pārĭtum*, Symmach.—[24] *Pătui*, Ovid. Met. [25] *Percallui*, Cic. Milon. The Perfect of the simple *Calleo* does not occur.—[26] *Plăcui*, Ovid.—[27] *Pŭbui*, Ulp. Dig.—[28] *Pŭtuit*, Hor. II. Sat. 4. 66. So the Mss. of Cruquius, Torrentius, Bentley, three of the Harleian Mss. in the British Museum, and most of the modern edd. *Pŭtruit*, one of the Harleian Mss. with the edd. Mediol. 1477, Florent. 1482, and some others.—[29] *Rĭgui*, Ovid. Met. IV. 554, [30] *Rŭbui*, Ovid.

*Sordeo,[1]	*be filthy.*	*Torpeo,[6]	*be torpid, numb.*
*Squāleo,[2]	*be foul.*	*Tŭmeo,[7]	*swell.*
*Stŭdeo,[3]	*study.*	*Văleo,[8] R.	*be able.*
*Stŭpeo,[4]	*be amazed.*	*Vĭgeo,[9]	*be strong.*
*Tĕpeo,[5]	*be warm.*	*Vĭreo,[10]	*be green.*

To these add the Actives *Tĭmeo,*[11] *ēre, ui, endus,* fear: and *Nŏceo,*[12] *ēre, ui, nŏcĭtum, nŏcĭtūrus,* hurt. Also *Sĭleo,*[13] *ēre, ui, sĭlendus,* keep silent, conceal.

---

1 *Sordui,* Alcim.—2 *Squālui,* Paulin. Nolan.—3 *Stŭdui,* Cic.—4 *Stŭpui,* Val. Flac.—5 *Tĕpui,* Mart.—6 *Torpui,* Ovid.—7 *Tŭmui,* Ovid.—8 *Vălui,* Tibull. *Vălĭtūrus,* Cic.—9 Anciently *Vĭgo.* *Vĭgui,* Ovid. Met. xv. 426.—10 *Vĭrui,* Flor.—11 *Tĭmui,* Cæs. *Tĭmendus,* Hor.—12 *Nŏcui,* Cic. Att. et passim. *Noxim, -is, -it,* for *nŏcuĕrim,* Lucil. ap. Fest. in 'Tama.' *Nŏcĭtum iri,* Cæs. B. G. v. 36. *Nŏscĭtūrus.* Cic. Off. *Nŏscĭtus,* Vet. Interp.—13 *Sĭlui,* Senec. Med. *Sĭlĭtum est,* August. de Civ. Dei. *Sĭlendus,* Ovid.

EXCEPTIONS.

III. Verbs in *-beo* and *-ceo:*

Jŭbeo,[1] jŭbēre, jussi, jussus, jussūrus,	***order.***
***Sorbeo,[2] sorbēre, sorbui, ——,**	***sup.***
Dŏceo,[3] dŏcēre, dŏcui, doctus, dŏcendus,	***teach.***
Misceo,[4] miscēre, miscui, mistus *or* mixtus, R. D.	***mix.***
Mulceo,[5] mulcēre, mulsi, mulsus, mulcendus,	***soothe.***
***Lūceo,[6] lūcēre, luxi, ——,**	***shine.***

IV. Verbs in *deo:*

Ardeo,[7] ardēre, arsi, arsus, arsūrus,	***burn.***
Audeo,[8] audēre, ausus sum, ausūrus, audendus,	***dare.***
Gaudeo,[9] gaudēre, gavisus sum, gavīsūrus,	***rejoice.***
Mordeo,[10] mordēre, mŏmordi, morsus, mordendus,	***bite.***
***Pendeo,[11] pendēre, pĕpendi, ——,**	***hang.***
Prandeo,[12] prandēre, prandi, pransus, pransūrus,	***dine.***
Rīdeo,[13] rīdēre, rīsi, rīsus, rīsum, rīsūrus, rīdendus,	***laugh.***

---

[1] Anciently *Jūsi.* See Quintil. I. 7. *Jussūrus,* Lucan.—[2] *Sorbui,* Plin. *Sorpsi,* Diomed. but without authority. *Absorbui,* Plin. *Absorpsi,* Lucan. *Exsorbui,* Plin.—[3] *Dŏcendus,* Cic. de Or. II. 17.—[4] *Mistus* seems preferable to *Mixtus;* though in the ancient Mss. of Virgil and Inscript. ap. Manut. this Participle is written with XT. which is approved of by Dausquius. *Mistūrus,* Lucan. *Miscendus,* Ovid.—[5] *Mulsi,* Enn. ap. Prisc. The Participle *Mulsus* is used only in the sense of *sweet,* as in Plaut. or *mixed with honey,* as in Colum. Plin. XXII. 24., *Mulcendus,* Ovid. *Permulsi,* Pacuv. ap. Gell. *Permulsus,* Cæs. B. G. IV. 6. *Permulctus,* Sall. in Frag. Hist. IV. ap. prisc. l. l. Gell. I. 11., where some read *Permulsus.*—[6] So the Compounds, *Dīlūceo,* 'dawn;' *Elūceo,* 'shine forth;' *Pellūceo,* 'shine through;' *Prælūceo,* 'shine before,' without the Perfect Participle. But *Pollūceo,* 'I offer in sacrifice,' 'prepare a banquet,' 'consecrate,' makes *xi, ctus.* —[7] *Ardui,* Inscr. *Arduĕrint,* Inscript. *Arsus,* in the sense of *tostus,* Plin. *Arsūrus,* Ovid.—[8] *Ausi,* for *ausus sum,* Cato ap. Prisc.; hence *Ausim,* for *ausĕrim,* Liv. in Præf. *Ausint,* Stat. Theb. *Ausĕrim,* Lactant. where Cellarius reads *ausis.* *Ausus,* Virg. Æn. VI. 624. *Ausūrus,* Ovid. *Audendus,* Liv. XXXV. 35.—[9] *Gavīsi,* for *gavīsus sum,* Liv. in Odyss. ap. Prisc. IX. 868. *Gavīsūrus,* Terent. *Gaudendus,* pass. Symmach.—[10] *Mĕmordi,* Gell. The Compounds do not double the first syllable: *Admordeo, admordi, admorsus,* &c. Yet *Admĕmordi,* Plaut. *Mordendus,* Ovid.—[11] The Participle *Pensus,* occurs only in the compound, *Prōpendeo,* Pers. Sat. *Pensūrus* comes from *Pendo, -is,* of the third Conj., which also makes *Pĕpendi.*—[12] Some give this Verb another Perfect, *Pransus sum.* See Liv. XXVIII. 14. *Pransūrus,* Plaut.—[13] *Rīdo, -is,* Lucr. *Irrīdunt,* Brut. ap. Diomed. *Rīdear,* pass. Ovid. *Rīdētur,* Mart. *Rīsus est,* was laughed at, Val. Max. *Rīsūrus,* Plaut. *Rīdendus,* Hor. *Rīsum,* Cic. *Irrīsum,* Plaut. *Dērīsum,* Id.

*Sĕdeo,[1] sĕdēre, sēdi, ——, sessum, sessūrus,	*sit.*
Spondeo,[2] spondēre, spŏpondi, sponsus,	*promise.*
Suādeo,[3] suādēre, suāsi, suāsus, suāsūrus, suadendus,	*advise.*
Tondeo,[4] tondēre, tŏtondi, tonsus,	*clip.*
Vĭdeo,[5] vĭdēre, vīdi, vīsus, vīsum, vīsu, vīsūrus, videndus,	*see.*

V. Verbs in *geo:*

*Algeo,[6] algēre, alsi, ——,	*be cold, shiver with cold.*
Augeo,[7] augēre, auxi, auctus, auctūrus,	*increase.*
*Fulgeo,[8] fulgēre, fulsi, ——,	*shine.*
Indulgeo,[9] indulgēre, indulsi, indultus, R. D.	*indulge.*
*Lūgeo,[10] lūgēre, luxi, ——, lūgendus,	*mourn.*
*Mulgeo,[11] mulgēre, mulsi, ——,	*milk.*
Tergeo,[12] tergēre, tersi, tersus,	*wipe.*
*Turgeo,[13] turgēre, tursi, ——,	*swell, be angry.*
*Urgeo,[14] urgēre, ursi, ——, urgendus,	*press.*

VI. Verbs in *-ieo* and *-leo:*

Cieo,[15] ciēre, [cīvi,] cĭtus,	*stir up.*

---

1 *Sessum*, Cic. *Sessūrus*, Hor. Art. Poet. *Sĕdeātur*, impers. Gell.—2 *Spŏpondi*, Liv.; never *Spospondi*. The Compounds do not double the first syllable: *Despondeo, despondi, desponsus*, Cic.; yet *Despŏpondi*, Plaut. *Spĕpondi*, Valer. *Spondĕrat*, Tertull.—3 *Suāsus*, Plaut. *Suāsūrus*, Quintil. III. 8. *Suādendus*, Trajan.—4 The Perfect, though not found in the classics, is acknowledged by all the old Grammarians; and is confirmed by the Compound *Dētŏtondĕrat* in Varr. ap. Prisc. IX. p. 868., and *Dēque tŏtondit* in Enn. ibid., though *Dētondeo* generally makes *Dētondi*; see Colum. VII. 4.; and so the other compounds, without doubling the syllable *to*.—5 *Vīsum*, Cic. *Vīsu*, Juv. *Vīsūrus*, Virg. Georg. II. 68. Æn. v. 107. *Vĭdendus*, Terent. We use the tense *Vĭdĕris, -it, -int*, imperatively, when we disclaim the care of any thing, and leave it entirely to others. *Viderint alii*, let others look to it; for it is no concern of mine. The passive *Vĭdeor* is often used in a neuter sense, *I seem, I appear;* and generally with the datives *mihi, tibi, sibi: Vĭdeor mĭhi, Vĭdēris tĭbi*, &c.—6 *Alsit*, Hor. Art. Poët. 413. *Alsius*, Cic. Att. IV. 8., as if from *Alsus*.—7 *Auctūrus*, Liv. I. 7. 'Ad fruges *augendas*,' Lucr. *Auxim, -is, -it*, for *augeam, -as, -at*, or *auxĕrim, -is, -it*, Liv. XXIX. 7.—8 *Fulceo*, Diomed. *Fulgo*, Prisc. *Fulgit*, Lucr. *Fulgĕre*, Virg. Æn. VI. 827.—9 *Indultus*, Ovid. *Indultūrus*, Ulpian. *Indulgendus*, Ulpian — 10 *Luxti*, for *luxisti*, Catull. *Lūgendus*, Ovid. *Lūgētur*, impers. Catull.—11 *Mulsi*, Virg. Georg. III. 400. '*Mulxi*, differentiæ causa, quidam protulerunt, quia *Mulceo* quoque *Mulsi* facit.' *Prisc.* IX. p. 870. Neither *Mulxi* nor *Mulctus* occur in the classics.—12 *Tergunt*, Cic. *Terguntur*, Varr. L. L. *Tersti*, for *tersisti*, Catull. '*Tergendus* mensis utilis,' Mart. The Participles in *ns* and *rus* do not occur.—13 *Tursĕrat*, Enn. ap. Prisc. IX. p. 870. *Turgo* and *Turgit* occur in the ancient Glossaries.—14 Some write *Urgueo*, contrary to the opinion of Longus, Papir., Cassiodor., Bede, Dausq.; but Pierius on Virg. Æn. v. 202., Barth., Heins., Cort., Drakenb. and Oudend. seem to prefer it, from its more frequent occurrence in Mss. *Ursi*, Cic. *Urgendus*, Quintil.—15 *Civi* properly belongs to

Compleo,[1] complēre, complēvi, complētus, *fill.*
Dēleo,[2] dēlēre, dēlēvi, dēlētus, dēlendus, *blot out.*
Fleo,[3] flēre, flēvi, flētus, flētūrus, flendus, *weep.*
Sŏleo,[4] sŏlēre, sŏlĭtus sum *or* sŏlui, *be accustomed.*

VII. Verbs in *-neo -queo, -reo, -seo:*

Censeo,[5] censēre, censui, census, censendus, *think, judge.*
*Hæreo,[6] hærēre, hæsi, ——, hæsūrus, *stick, hesitate.*
*Maneo,[7] mănēre, mansi, ——, mansum, mansūrus, *stay.*
Neo,[8] nēre, nēvi, nētus, *spin.*
Sĕneo,[9] sĕnēre, sĕnui, sĕnectus, *grow old.*
Tĕneo,[10] tĕnēre, tĕnui, tentus, tentūrus, tĕnendus, *hold.*
Torqueo,[11] torquēre, torsi, tortus, torquendus, *whirl.*
Torreo,[12] torrēre, torrui, tostus, *roast.*

VIII. Verbs in *-veo:*

Căveo,[13] căvēre, cāvi, cautus, cautum, cavendus, *beware of.*
*Connīveo,[14] connīvēre, connīvi, ——, *wink at.*
*Făveo,[15] făvēre, fāvi, ——, fautūrus, *favour.*
*Ferveo,[16] fervēre, ferbui, ——, *boil, be hot.*

Cio of the Fourth Conj., which see in List. I. The Perfect *Cii*, mentioned by Charis. III. init. takes place only in the Compounds. *Cĭtus*, Cels. *Concĭtus*, Ovid. *Excĭtus*, Virg. Æn. IV. 301.

[1] Of the simple Verb we find only *Plentur. Complērunt*, for *complēvērunt*, Cæs. B. G. 'Ad fossas, *complendas*,' Hirt. B. H.—[2] *Dēlendus*, Cic. pro Leg. Manil. c. 7.—[3] *Flesse*, for *flēvisse*, Plin. *Flētus*, Virg. Æn. VI. 481. *Flētūrus*, Hor. Epod. V. 74. *Flendus*, Ovid. Trist.—[4] *Soluĕrat*, Sallust, in Fragm. *Soluĕrint*, Cœl. Antipater ap. Non. *Sŏlĭtus sum*, Cic. de Orat. I. 30. et passim. *Sŏlens*, Plaut.—[5] *Census*, Liv. III. 3. *Rĕcensus*, Sueton. *Censĭtus*, Cod. Justin; hence *Rĕcensĭtus*, Sueton. *Censendus*, Ovid.—[6] *Hæsūrus*, Ovid. [7] *Mansti*, for *mansisti*, Lucil. ap. Gell. *Mansum*, Terent. *Mansūrus*, Virg. Æn. III. 85. *Manenda*, Lucr.—[8] *Nēvit*, Ovid. *Nesse*, Claud. in Eutrop. I. 274. *Nētus*, Alcim. Avit.—[9] *Sĕnui*, Sueton. *Sĕnectŭs*, Lucr. Sall. in Orat.—[10] *Tĕnui*, Virg. Georg. IV. 483. et passim. *Tĕnīvi*, Charis. *Tĕtĭni*. Festus. *Tĕtĭnĕrim, -is, -it*, Accius et Pacuv. ap. Non. II. 838. *Tĕtĭnisse*, Pacuv. ibid. *Tentus*, held, Ammian. *Tentūrus*, Claud. de Torp. 19. *Tĕnendus*, Ovid.—[11] *Tortus*, Virg. Æn. IV. 575. So *Contorquo, -si, -tus*, whirl about; *Detorqueo, -si, -tus*, turn aside; but the Participle *Dĕtorsus* is used by Cato ap. Prisc. IX. p. 871., and the Supine *Torsum* is given by Prisc. ibid., but without authority. *Torquendus*, Liv. XXIV. 5.—[12] *Torrui*, Ovid. *Tostus*, Cic. Tusc. III. 19. et passim.—[13] *Cāvi*, Ter. Cic. et passim. *Cautus, legally secured*, Hor.; *avoided*, Plaut.; *defended*, Mart. *Cautus* is a contraction of *Căvĭtus*. It is more frequently used in an active sense, *cautious, circumspect*. *Cautum*, Liv. *Căvendus*, Propert. Cic. Or. II. 195. *Căvĕrem*, for *căvērem*, Tibull.; hence *Căvĕ*, Hor. II. Sat. 3.—[14] *Connīvi*, Cassius ap. Prisc. IX. 866. Plaut. 'Dum ego *connixi* somne,' Turpil. ap. Prisc. l. c.; but this seems to come from *Connīvo, -is*, of the third Conj. *Connīvĕre*, Calvus ap. Prisc. ibid. At all events *Connīvi* is more certain, and more consonant with analogy.—[15] *Fāvi*, Cic. pro Planc. 'Huic Romæ ita *fautum* est, ut,' &c. Spartian. *Fautūrus*, Cic. [16] *Ferbui*, Pallad. *Deferbui*, Cato R. R. c. 96. *Conferbui*, Cels. *Fervĕrit*, Cato R. R. c. 157., where some Mss. have *ferbuĕrit*. '*Fervit* aqua, et *fervet*; *fervit*

Fŏveo,[1] fŏvēre, fōvi, fōtus, fŏvendus, *cherish.*
Mŏveo,[2] mŏvēre, mōvi, mōtus, mōtūrus, mŏvendus, *move.*
*Păveo,[3] păvēre, pāvi, ——, păvendus, *fear.*
Vŏveo,[4] vŏvēre, vōvi, vōtus, *vow.*

IX. The Perfects of the following Verbs are doubtful:

*Dīrĭbeo,[5] ui,	*count over, distribute.*
Frendeo,[6] ui, fressus *or* frēsus,	*gnash.*
*Frīgeo,[7] frixi,	*be cold.*
*Frondeo,[8] ui,	*bear leaves.*
Splendeo,[9] ui,	*shine.*
Strīdeo,[10] ui,	*hiss, creak.*
Vieo,[11] viēvi, viētus,	*bind with twigs, hoop.*

Marceo, I fade, is said to have *Marcui,* which does not occur in the classics; but is confirmed by the compound *Emarcesco, emarcui,* fade away, Plin. xv. 29.

X. These Verbs have neither Perfects nor Perfect Participles:

*Albeo,[12]	*be white.*
*Aveo,	*covet.*
*Calveo,[13]	*be bald.*
*Cēveo,[14]	*fawn as a dog.*
*Clueo,	*be famous, exist, be.*
*Denseo,[15]	*thicken.*
*Flāveo,	*be yellow.*
*Fœteo,	*stink.*
*Glăbreo,[16]	*be bare.*
*Hĕbeo,	*be dull.*
*Hūmeo,	*be moist.*
*Lacteo,	*suck milk.*
*Lenteo,	*be slow.*
*Līveo,	*be black and blue.*
*Măceo,	*be lean.*
*Mœreo,[17]	*grieve.*
*Mūceo,[18]	*be mouldy.*
*Nideo,[19]	*shine.*
*Polleo,	*be powerful.*
* Rĕnīdeo,[20]	*glitter.*
*Scăteo,[21]	*overflow.*
*Uveo,[22]	*be moist.*
*Vĕgeo,	*be strong.*

---

nunc, *fervet* ad annum,' Lucil. ap. Quintil. *Fervat* Pompon et Accius ap. Non. *Fervĕre*, Virg. Georg. I. 455.

[1] *Fōvi*, Virg. Æn. XII. 420. *Fōtus*, Virg. Æn. I. 699. *Fŏvendus*, Colum. VI. 12.—[2] *Motūrus*, Liv. *Mŏvendus*, Virg. Georg. II. 418. *Mostis*, for *mōvistis*, Mart. *Mōrunt*, for *mōvērunt*, Sil.—[3] *Pāvi*, Petron. *Expāvi*, Hor. I. Od. 37, 23. *Păvendus*, Plin.—[4] *Votus*, Cic. de Nat. Deor.—[5] *Dirĭbui* is found in dictionaries only.—[6] *Frendui*, Bibl. Vulgat. Psalms. XXXIV. 16. *Frendi*, Lowe Gramm. p. 14. *Fressus*, Cels. *Frĕsus*, Colum.—[7] *Frixi*, Diomed.; also *Perfrīgesco* makes *perfrixi*, Cels., and *Rĕfrīgesco*, *rĕfrixi*, Cic. Att. I. 11.—[8] *Frondui*, Prisc.—[9] *Splendui*, Charis.—[10] *Strīdui*, Prisc. *Strīdĕre*, Hor. II. Sat. 8. 78. Vid. Heins. et Burmann. ad Ovid. Met. IX. 171. 'rostrisque *strĭdentĭbus*,' in some Mss.—[11] *Viĕvi* Grammatici. *Viētus, weak, flaccid*, is used as a mere adjective. *Vietis* in Hor. Epod. XII. 7. is considered by some as an Anapest; it would be more correct to make it a Spondee by Synæresis.—[12] *Albui* Grammatici.—[13] *Calvi* occurs only in dictionaries.—[14] *Cēvi*, Valer. Prob. in Cathol. p. 1482. *Cēvo, cēvis, cēvi*, Idem ibid. p. 1484.—[15] *Densco, densi*, Charis. III. p. 233. See Heinsius on Ovid. Fast. III. 820.—[16] Of this verb *Glăbrentĭbus* only occurs, and that in Colum. II. 9. 8. ed. Gesn., where Schneider and others read *călentibus*.—[17] '*Mœrui* debuit facere, sed in usu non est.' *Prisc.* VIII. p. 817. Some give this Verb *Mœstus sum* as a Perfect, which does not differ in signification from *Mœreo*, since *Mœstus* is a mere adjective.—[18] *Mūcui* is found in dictionaries only.—[19] This Verb occurs only in Petron. 'Areaqua attritis *nīdet*,' &c. where others read *ridet*.—[20] *Rĕnīduit*, Gloss. Vett.—[21] 'Præteritum *Scătui* analogia defenditur, ut *Pătui*, *Lătui*, &c. Facciolat.—[22] Of this Verb the Participle *Uvens* only occurs in the classics.

DEPONENTS.

Pollĭceor,[1] -ēris *or* -ēre, -ēri, -ĭtus, *promise.*

Făteor,[2] fassus, R. D.	*confess.*	*Mĕdeor,[6] ———, D.	*cure.*
Confĭteor,[3] confessus, D.	*acknowledge.*	Mĭsĕreor,[7] mĭsĕrĭtus *or* mĭsertus,	*pity.*
*Diffĭteor, ———,	*deny.*	Reor,[8] rătus,	*think.*
Prōfĭteor,[4] professus, D.	*declare.*	Tueor,[9] tuĭtus, D.	*see, protect.*
Lĭceor,[5] lĭcĭtus,	*bid a price.*	Vĕreor, vĕrĭtus,[10] D.	*fear.*

---

[1] *Pollĭcĭtus*, having promised, Cæs. B. G. II. 4. *Pollĭcĭtus*, pass. promised. Ovid. *Pollĭceor*, pass. Ulpian. *Pollĭcēres*, act. Varr. ap. Non.—[2] *Fassus*, Plaut. *Fassūrus*, Ovid. *Fătendus*, Id. Trist. I. 9. 16. *Făteātur*, pass. Cic. But see Ernesti.—[3] *Confessus*, act. Plaut. passim. *Confessus*, pass. confessed, manifest, Cic. Quintil. et Plin. *Confĭtētur*, pass. Ulpian. *Confĭtendus*, Cic.—[4] *Prōfessus*, Cic. passim. *Prōfessus*, pass. Ovid. *Prōfĭtendus*, Cic. de Orat. *Prōfĭtēmĭno*, for *prōfĭteātur*, Vet. Tab. æn. ap. Murator. p. 582.—[5] *Lĭcĭtus*, Cic. Verr. v. 11.—[6] *Mĕdeor* has no Perfect; but in its stead *Mĕdĭcātus* from *Mĕdĭcor*, I heal, is used. See Diomed, I. p. 376. *Mĕdendus*, Stat. Theb. *Mĕdendo*, pass. Virg. Æn. XII. 46. 'Ut huic vitio *mĕdeātur*,' that this fault may be obviated, Vitruv.—[7] 'Ipse sui *mĭsĕret*,' Lucr. *Mĭsĕrĭtus*, Phædr. *Mĭsertus*, Justin. *Mĭsĕrērier*, for *mĭsĕrēri*, Lucr. *Mĭsĕreātur*, pass. Cic.—[8] Of this Verb the following forms only are found in the classics: *Reor*, Hor. II. Ep. I. 69. *Rēris*, Virg. Æn. VI. 96. *Rērin*, for *rēris ne?* Plaut. *Rēre*, Virg. Æn. VII. 437. *Rētur*, Stat. Theb. *Rēmur*, Cic. Off. *Rēmĭni*, Arnob. *Rentur*, Plaut. *Rēbar*, Cic. *Rēbāre*, Virg. Æn. X. 608. *Rēbātur*, Cic. *Rēbāmur*, Plaut. *Rēbantur*, Cic. de Nat. Deor. *Rēbor*, Senec. *Rēbĭtur*, Plaut. *Rear*, Id. *Reāre*. *Reāris*, Auson. *Reantur*, Plaut. *Rătus*, Cic. See Quintil. VIII. 3. and Cic. Or. III. 38. Wherefore this and many other Verbs might, with as much propriety, be classed among the Defectives, as *Aio*, *Inquio*, &c.—[9] *Tuor*, Stat. Theb. Hence *Tūtus*, protected, Sall. Jug. c. 56. Liv. x. 37. *Tuĭtus*, Quintil. v. 13. *Tuentur*, pass. Varr. *Tuendus*, Cic. Virg. Æn. IX. 175.—[10] *Vĕrĭtus*, Cic. *Vĕrendus*, Ovid. Met. *Vĕrēri*, pass.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Dĕcet,[1] dĕcēre, dĕcuit,	*it becomes.*
Lĭbet,[2] lĭbēre, lĭbuit *or* lĭbĭtum est,	*it pleases.*
Lŭbet,[3] lŭbēre, lŭbuit *or* lŭbĭtum est,	*it pleases.*
Lĭcet,[4] lĭcēre, lĭcuit *or* lĭcĭtum est,	*it is lawful.*
Lĭquet,[5] lĭquēre, līquit *or* lĭcuit,	*it is clear.*
Mĭsĕret,[6] mĭsĕrēre, mĭsĕruit *or* mĭsĕrĭtum est,	*it pities.*
Oportet,[7] ŏportēre, ŏportuit,	*it behoves.*
Pĭget,[8] pĭgēre, pĭguit *or* pĭgĭtum est,	*it grieves.*
Pœnĭtet,[9] pœnĭtēre, pœnĭtuit,	*it repents.*
Pŭdet,[10] pŭdēre, pŭduit *or* pŭdĭtum est,	*it shames.*
Tædet,[11] tædēre, tæduit *or* tæsum est,	*it wearies.*

---

1 *Dĕceant,* Cic. *Dĕcuĕrint,* Sall. Jug. c. 53. 'Si non *dēdĕcui,*' If I have not dishonoured, Stat. Theb.—2 'Sciendum, quod hæc omnia inveniuntur perfectorum declinationem, habentia in usu veterum, teste, Capro, *Pĭgeo, Pŭdeo, Tædeo, Pœnĭteo, Lĭqueo, Lĭceo, Lĭbeo, Oporteo,* quomodo, *Plăceo, Contingo,*' &c. Priscian. XI. p. 528. *Lĭbĭtum ĕrit,* Plaut. Asin. I. 1. 9.—3 *Lŭbet* is the ancient form for *Lĭbet,* especially in the comic writers. *Lŭbet,* Plaut. *Lŭbuit,* Pseud. *Lŭbēre,* Cic. Att. 4 *Lĭcessit,* for *lĭcuĕrit,* Plaut. *Lĭcĭtum, ĕrit,* Cic. *Lĭcĭtum esset,* Id. Att. II. 1.—5 *Lĭquĕret,* Cic. Nat. Deor. I. 42. *Lŭcuĕrit,* Ulp. Dig. For *lĭcuit* some write *lĭquuit. Lĭcĭtum,* which some give to this Verb, belongs to *Lĭcet.*—6 *Mĭsĕrēte,* Enn. ap. Non. *Mĭsĕrērent,* Enn. ap. Prisc. 'Ipse sui *miseret,*' Lucr. *Mĭsĕruit,* Apul. Met. *Mĭserĭtum est,* Terent.—7 *Oportēbant,* Terent. *Oportent,* Id. Andr. *Oportuĕrint,* Cæcil. ap. Prisc. *Oportēto,* for *oporteat,* Vet. Leg.—8 *Pĭguet,* Petron. *Pĭgĭtum,* Sil. *Pĭgens,* Apul. Met. *Pĭgendus,* Propert.—9 *Pœnĭtēbunt,* Pacuv. ap. Non. *Pœnĭtens,* Cic. Phil. XII. 2. *Pœnĭtūrus* Quintil. *Pœnĭtendus,* Colum. Liv. I. 35. Some write *Pænĭtet* with Æ; and so it is in an Inscript. ap. Grut. p. 502., and in some ancient Mss. of Virgil. Gellius seems to have written it in the same manner, since he derives it, XVII. 1., not from *Pœna,* but from *Pæne,* or *Pænūria.*—10 *Pŭdeo,* Plaut. *Pŭdent,* Terent. *Pŭdēbunt,* Lucan. *Pŭdĭtum est,* Plaut. *Pŭdĭtum esset,* Cic.—11 *Tædui,* Sidon. Ep. *Tæsum est,* Plaut. Mostel. So *Pertædet, pertæduit, pertæsum est,* Cic. Virg. Æn. v. 714. *Pertæduissent,* Gell. I. 2. Some of the ancients used to write *Pertīsum,* (as from *Cædo, Concīsum,*) which is disapproved of by Cic. Orat. 159.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

I. Verbs of the Third Conjugation end in *-o*, and change *-o* into *-i* or *-si* in the Perfect; into *-ĕre* short in the Infinitive; and into *-ĭtus*, *-tus*, or *-sus* in the Perfect Participle Passive; as,

Trĭbuo, trĭbuĕre, trĭbui, trĭbūtus, R. D. *give, divide.*

II. Verbs in *-co*, *-cto*, and *-go* generally take *-si;* but the letters *cs* and *gs* unite to form *x;* as, *Dīco*, I say, *(di*CS*i) dixi; Rĕgo*, I rule, *(re*GS*i,) rexi.*

III. *G* before *-tus* becomes *c;* as, *Lĕgo*, I read, *(lĕgĭtus, le*GT*us) lectus; Jungo*, I join, *(jungĭtus, jun*GT*us) junctus*, &c.

IV. *B* before *-si and -tus* becomes *p;* as, *Nūbo*, I veil, *nupsi, nuptus; Scrībo*, I write, *scripsi, scriptus.*

V. *R* before *-si* and *-tus* becomes *s;* as, *ūro*, I burn, *ussi, ustus; Gĕro*, I carry, *gessi, gestus.*

VI. *D* and *t* are generally dropped before *-si, -sus, -tus;* as, *Claudo*, I shut, *clausi, clausus, Dīvĭdo*, I divide, *dīvīsi, dīvīsus; Lædo*, I hurt, *læsi, læsus; Lūdo*, I play, *lūsi, lūsus; Plaudo*, I applaud, *plausi, plausus; Rādo*, I shave, *rāsi, rāsus; Trūdo*, I thrust, *trūsi, trūsus; Vādo*, I go, *vāsi; Flecto*, I bend, *(fle*CS*i,) flexi, (fle*CS*us,) flexus*, &c.

VII. *D* and *t* sometime become *s* before *s; as, Cēdo*, I yield, *cessi, cessus; Mitto*, I send, *mīsi, missus; Quătio, I shake, quassi, quassus*, &c.

VIII. *G* is sometimes dropped before *-si* and

-sus; as, *Spargo,* I scatter, *sparsi, sparsus; Vergo,* I incline, *versi, versus; Mergo,* I dip, *mersi, mersus,* &c. So *Parco,* I spare, drops *c* in *parsūrus;* and *Pasco,* I feed, drops *c* in *pastus.*

IX. Verbs in *-sco* change *-sco* into *-vi* for the Perfect, and drop *sc* before *-tus;* as, *Cresco,* I grow, *crēvi, crētus; Nosco,* I learn to know, *nōvi, nōtus.*

X. *m* and *n* are frequently dropped both in the Perfect and Perfect Participle Passive; as, *Temno,* I despise, *temsi; Frango,* I break, *frēgi, fractus; Rumpo,* I burst, *rūpi, ruptus,* &c. *M* becomes *s* before *-si* in *Prĕmo,* I press, *pressi, pressus: n* becomes *s* in *Pōno,* I place, *pŏsui, pŏsĭtus.*

XI. Verbs changing *-o* into *-i* for the Perfect, and into *-itus, -tus,* or *-sus,* for the Perfect Participle Passive:

*Abnuo,[1] abnuĕre, abnui, ——, abnuĭtūrus, abnuendus, *refuse.*
Accendo,[2] accendĕre, accendi, accensus, *set on fire.*
Acuo,[3] ăcuĕre, ăcui, ăcūtus, ăcuendus, *sharpen.*
Appendo, appendĕre, appendi, appensus, *weigh.*
Arguo,[4] arguĕre, argui, argūtus, argūtum, arguĭtūrus, arguendus, *show, prove, accuse.*
*Bătuo,[5] bătuĕre, bătui, ——, bătuendus, *beat.*
Bĭbo[6] bĭbĕre, bĭbi, bĭbĭtus, bĭbendus, *drink.*
*Congruo,[7] congruĕre, congrui, ——, *come together, agree.*
Dēfendo,[8] dēfendĕre, dēfendi, dēfensus, R. D. *ward off.*
*Dēgo,[9] dēgĕre, dēgi, ———, dēgendus, *live, dwell.*

---

1 Neither the Participle *Abnūtus* nor the Supine *Abnūtum* are found except in dictionaries. *Abnuĭtūrus,* Sallust. Fragm. Hist. I. *Abnuendus,* Senec.—2 '*Accendendis* offensionibus callidi,' Tacit. Ann.—3 *Acūtus,* Prisc.; but it is used as a mere Adjective. *Acuendus,* Cic. Phil. II.—4 *Argui,* Liv. *Argūtus,* Plaut. *Argūtum,* Supine, Festus. *Arguĭtūrus,* Sallust. *Arguendus,* Tacit.—5 *Bătui.* Cic. Fam. *Bătuendus,* Næv. ap. Fulgent. 21. Some incorrectly write *Battuo;* hence *Battūtum, Vett. Gloss.*—6 *Bĭbĭtus,* Plin. Valer. *Bĭbendus,* Ovid.—7 *Congrui,* Val. Flac.—8 *Dēfensūrus,* Claud. *Dēfendendus,* Cæs. B. G. & Terent. *Dēfensum,* Nepos. *Dēfensu,* Sallust.—9 The Perfect of *Dēgo* occurs only in Auson. Epist. XVII. ad Symmach., where some copies have *Dēguĭmus. Dēgendus,* Cic. de Amic.

Edo,[1] ĕdĕre, ēdi, ēsus, ēsum, ēsūrus, ĕdendus, *eat.*
Emo,[2] ĕmĕre, ēmi, emtus, emtūrus, ĕmendus, *buy.*
Excūdo,[3] excūdĕre, excūdi, excūsus, *shake out, stamp.*
Exuo,[4] exuĕre, exui, exūtus, exuendus, *put off, strip.*
Fervo. See *Ferveo,* Second Conj. List VIII.
Findo,[5] findĕre, fĭdi, fissus, findendus, *cleave.*
Fundo,[6] fundĕre, fūdi, fūsus, fūsūrus, fundendus, *pour.*
Ico,[7] īcĕre, īci, ictus, ictūrus, *strike.*
Imbuo,[8] imbuĕre, imbui, imbūtus, imbuendus, *imbrue.*
Induo,[9] induĕre, indui, indūtus, *put on.*
Insuo,[10] insuĕre, insui, insūtus, *sow in, join to.*
*Lambo,[11] lambĕre, lambi, ——, *lick.*
Lĕgo,[12] lĕgĕre, lēgi, lectus, lectūrus, legendus, *gather, read.*
*Linquo,[13] linquĕre, liqui, ———, linquendus, *leave.*
*Luo,[14] luĕre, lui, ——, luĭtūrus, luendus, *pay, atone.*
Mando,[15] mandĕre, mandi, mansus, mandendus, *chew.*
Mĕtuo,[16] mĕtuĕre, mĕtui, mĕtūtus, mĕtuendus, *fear.*
Mĭnuo,[17] mĭnuĕre, mĭnui, mĭnūtus, mĭnuendus, *lessen.*
Pinso,[18] pinsĕre, pinsi *or* pinsui, pinsĭtus, pinsus *or* pistus, *bake.*

---

[1] See Irregular verbs.—[2] *Emtus,* not *Emptus;* because P. is never inserted in the Present *Emo.* So *Sumtus, Comtus, Demtus,* &c. See the old Grammarians, Terentius Scaurus and Marius Victorinus. *Emtūrus,* Justin. *Emendus* Cic. *Emissim,* for *ēmĕrim.* Plaut.—[3] The Perfect of the simple *Cūdo* does not occur. It makes *Cūsi* according to some; according to others, *Cūdi.* See Priscian. x. p. 889. In Colum. XI. we have *Excūdit,* and VIII. 5. *Percūdĕrint.* The Participle *Cūsus* does not occur in the classics; yet we find *Excūsus,* hatched, Varr. R. R. *Incūsus,* Virg. Georg. I. 275. 'Pullis *excudendis* triginta diebus opus est.' Colum. [4] '*Exuendam* ad fidem, hostes emercari,' Tacit. Ann. XII. 14.—[5] '*Findo* quoque *fĭdi* facit; licet quidam *fīsi* putaverunt.' Prisc. x. p. 890. *Fĭdĕrit,* Cels. *Findendus,* Cels.—[6] *Fūsūrus,* Lucan. *Fundendus,* Curt.—[7] Of this Verb the following forms only are found: *Icĕre,* infin. Plaut. *Icit,* Lucr. *Icĭtis,* Cœl. ap. Prisc. x. p. 886. *Icĭtur,* Plin. *Icĭmur,* Lucr. *Ici,* perf. Plaut. *Icĕras,* Cic. in Pison. *Icĕris,* Turpil. ap. Non. *Icisse,* Cic. pro Balb. *Ictus,* passim. *Ictūri,* Senec. [8] *Imbui,* perf. Catull. *Imbuendus,* Curt.—[9] *Indui,* Cic. Tusc. *Indūtus,* Virg. Æn. II. 275. It has no other Participle.—[10] The Perfect of the simple *Suo* occurs only in Prisc.; but we have *Insuĕre,* Plin. *Insuisses,* Cic. and *Insuĕrat,* Liv. *Sūtus,* Ovid. *Suendus,* Cels. *Assūtus* does not occur. *Consūtus,* Plaut. *Circumsuo* is not found in the classics; yet *Circumsūtus,* Plin. *Dissūtus,* Ovid. *Dissuendus,* Cic. Off. I. 33.—[11] *Lambĕrat,* Lucil. ap. Prisc. *Lambui,* Bibl. Vulgat. Priscian ibid. gives the supine *Lambĭtum,* but without authority. *Lambo, -is, -īvi,* Cassiodor. de Orthogr. p. 2309. Putsch.—[12] *Lectūrus,* Ovid. Met. *Lĕgendus,* Ovid. [13] '*Lictus,* particip. quidam putant legi ap. Capitolin. in M. Anton. Philosc. c. 7., sed locus ille incertus valde est, et mendo corruptus.' *Facciolat.* *Rĕlictus,* Virg. Georg. IV. 127. et passim. *Linquendus,* Ovid. Met.—[14] *Lui,* Justin. 'In præteritis U dicimus longum. *lūit, plūit;* in præsenti breve, *lŭit, plŭit.*' So writes Varro, *Luĭtūrus,* Claud. *Luendus,* Tacit. *Eluendus,* Cic. Off. *Ablūtūrus,* August. *Abluendus,* Plin. *Dīluendus,* Liv.—[15] 'Quidam præteritum *mandui,* alii *mandidi* esse voluerunt; sed neutrum obtinuit.' *Priscian.* *Mandisset,* Liv. *Mansus,* Quintil. *Mandendus,* Cels.—[16] *Mĕtui,* Terent. *Mĕtūtus,* Lucr. *Mĕtuendus,* Senec.—[17] *Mĭnuendus,* Cic. Off.—[18] *Pinsērunt,* Varr. *R. R.* *Pinsui,* Pompon. ap. Diomed. *Pinsĭtus,* Colum. *Pinsus,* Vitruv. *Pistus,* Plin.

*Pluo,[1] pluĕre, plui *or* pluvi, ——,	*rain.*
Prĕhendo,[2] prĕhendĕre, prĕhendi, prĕhensus, R. D, *or*	
Prendo, prendĕre, prendi, prensus, R. D.	*take, seize.*
*Psallo, psallĕre, psalli, ——,	*play on an instrument.*
Rumpo,[3] rumpĕre, rūpi, ruptus, ruptūrus, D.	*break.*
Ruo,[4] ruĕre, rui, rŭtus, ruĭtūrus,	*rush, fall.*
*Scăbo,[5] scăbĕre, scābi, ——,	*scratch.*
*Scando,[6] scandĕre, scandi, ——, scandendus,	*climb.*
*Sido,[7] sīdĕre, sīdi, ——,	*sink down.*
Solvo,[8] solvĕre, solvi, sŏlūtus, sŏlūtūrus, D.	*loose.*
*Spuo,[9] spuĕre, spui, ——,	*spit.*
Stătuo,[10] stătuĕre, stătui, stătūtus, stătuendus,	*place.*
*Sternuo,[11] sternuĕre, sternui, ——,	*sneeze.*
Strīdo,[12] strīdĕre, strīdi, ——,	*hiss, creak.*
Trĭbuo,[13] trĭbuĕre, trĭbui, trĭbūtus, trĭbūtūrus. D.	*give.*
Verro,[14] verrĕre, verri, versus, verrendus,	*brush.*
Verto,[15] vertĕre, verti, versus, versūrus, vertendus,	*turn.*
Vinco,[16] vincĕre, vīci, victus, victūrus, D.	*conquer.*
Volvo,[17] volvĕre, volvi, vŏlūtus, volvendus,	*roll.*

XII. Verbs changing *-o* into *-si* for the Perfect, and into *-tus*, or *-sus*, for the Perfect Participle Passive:

---

[1] *Pluisse,* Cic. Div. *Pluvĕrat,* Plaut. The Perfect *Pluit* according to Varro L. L. VIII. 60, had the first syllable long. See *Luo.*—[2] *Prendĕrat,* Stat. Theb. *Prehensūrus,* Ovid. 10. *Prĕhendendus,* Ovid. Some write *Præhendo,* others *Preendo.* See Dausqu. in Orthogr.—[3] *Ruptūrus,* Plaut. *Rumpendus,* Justin.—[4] This Verb is mostly used in the imperfect Tenses. *Ruĕrant,* Claud. *Rŭtus* is found only in the Neut. pl. *Rŭta cæsa,* Cic. Varro de L. L. VIII. 60., makes the U long in the simple *Rutus.* *Ruĭtūrus,* Ovid. *Dīruendus,* Vell. *Obruendus,* Colum.—[5] *Scābĕrat,* Lucil. None of the Participles are found.—[6] The Perfect *Scandi* cannot be found: Ainsworth cites *scandisse,* Liv. XXI. 62.; but the reading is *escendisse, ascendisse.* Cic. *Conscendĕrat,* Virg. Æn. IV. 646. *Descendĕrit.* Liv. XXXVI. 7. Yet *Descendĭdit,* Gell. *Descendĭdĕrat,* ibid. *Ascendi,* Cic. pro Dom. c. 28. *Scandendus,* Propert. *Ascensūrus,* Tibull. *Ascendendus,* Cæs. B. C.—[7] *Sīdĕrat,* Stat. Sylv. *Sīdĕrit,* Colum. *Consīdĕrant,* Tacit. Ann. The Perfect *Sēdi* given in grammars and dictionaries does not come from *Sīdo,* but from *Sĕdeo,*—[8] *Solvi,* Cic. Off. III. 12. et passim. *Sŏluisse,* Tibull. *Sŏlūtūrus,* Cic. Off. *Solvendus,* Plin. Epist.—[9] *Spuisse,* Solin. This Verb has no Participle. *Respuĕrit,* Cic. Nat. Deor. *Respuendus,* Aul. Gell.—[10] *Stătūtus,* Varr. *Stătuendus,* Colum. *Constĭtuendus,* Aul. Gell.—[11] *Sternuĕrit,* Plin.—[12] *Strīdĕrat.* See *Strideo,* Second Conj. List IX.—[13] *Trĭbūtūrus,* Ovid. Met. *Trĭbuendus,* Lucr.—[14] *Verrĕrint,* Hieronym. in Helvid. in fin. The Perfect *Verri* occurs nowhere else, except in Charis. III. p. 218.; and in Prisc. X. p. 900. But Servius on Virg. Æn. I. 63. gives *Versi.* *Versus,* Propert. *Vorsus,* Plaut. *Verrendus,* Ovid.—[15] *Verti,* Cic. Propert. The Perfect *Versi,* found in Ovid. ex Pont. I. 9. 52., does not come from *Verto,* as some suppose, but from *Vergo.* See Heinsius and Burman on the passage. *Versus,* Hor. III. Od. 29. 2. et passim. *Versūrus,* Liv. *Vertendus,* Colum.—[16] *Victūrus,* Liv. *Vincendus,* Martial.—[17] *Volvi,* Virg. VI. 748. *Vŏlūtus,* Virg. Georg. III. 521. *Volvendus,* Cic.

Carpo,[1] carpĕre, carpsi, carptus, carpendus,	*pluck.*
Cēdo,[2] cēdĕre, cessi, cessus, cessūrus,	*yield.*
Claudo,[3] claudĕre, clausi, clausus, clausūrus, claudendus,	*shut.*
*Clĕpo,[4] clĕpĕre, clepsi, ——,	*steal.*
Cōmo,[5] cōmĕre, comsi, comtus,	*deck.*
Dēmo,[6] dēmĕre, demsi, demtus, demtūrus, demendus,	*take away.*
Dīvĭdo,[7] dīvĭdĕre, dīvīsi, dīvīsus, dīvīsūrus, D.	*divide.*
Gĕro,[8] gĕrĕre, gessi, gestus, gestūrus, gĕrendus,	*carry.*
Lædo,[9] lædĕre, læsi, læsus, læsum, læsūrus,	*hurt.*
Lūdo, lūdĕre, lūsi, lūsus, lūsūrus,	*play.*
Mergo,[10] mergĕre, mersi, mersus, mersūrus,	*dip.*
Nūbo,[11] nūbĕre, nupsi, nuptus, nuptum, R.	*veil, marry.*
Plaudo,[12] plaudĕre, plausi, plausus, plaudendus,	*applaud by clapping the hands.*
Prĕmo,[13] prĕmĕre, pressi, pressus, pressūrus, D.	*press.*
Prōmo,[14] prōmĕre, promsi, promtus, promtūrus, prōmendus,	*bring out.*
Rādo,[15] rādĕre, rāsi, rāsus, rādendus,	*shave.*
*Rēpo,[16] rēpĕre, repsi, ——,	*creep.*
Rōdo,[17] rōdĕre, rōsi, rōsus, rōsūrus,	*gnaw.*
Scalpo,[18] scalpĕre, scalpsi, scalptus,	*scratch.*
Scrībo,[19] scrībĕre, scripsi, scriptus, scriptūrus, D.	*write.*

---

[1] *Carptus*, Ovid. *Carpendus*, Cic. de Orat. III. 49.—[2] *Cessi*, Ovid. *Cesse*, for *cessisse*, Lucr. *Cessus*, Liv. *Cessūrus*, Tacit. Ann.—[3] *Clausi*, Hor. II. Od. 4. et passim. *Clūsi*, Nummus Neronis, ap. Patin. *Claudo*, *-is* for *claudus sum*, I am lame, has no Perfect. *Clausus*, Virg. Æn. VI. 734. et passim. *Clūsus*, Senec. *Clausūrus*, Ovid. *Claudendus*, Ovid. *Clūdendus*, Scribon. Larg. c. 42. The Compounds drop A of the root.—[4] *Clepsi*, Manil. *Clepsit*, for *clepsĕrit*, Liv. XXII. 10. The Perfect *Clēpi* is found in Cic. de Leg. II. 9. This Verb has no Participles. *Cleptus* is found only in dictionaries.—[5] *Comsi*, Tibull. See note on *Emo*, foregoing list.—[6] *Demsi* Liv. *Demtūrus*, Justin. *Dēmendus*, Cels.—[7] *Dīvisse*, for *dīvīsisse*, Hor. II. Sat. 3. 169. *Dīvīsūrus*, Liv. *Dīvĭdendus*, *Dīvĭdundus*, Aul. Gell.—[8] *Gestūrus*, Lucan. *Gĕrendus*, Cic. de Senec.—[9] *Læsum*, Cic. Fam. *Læsūrus*, Lucan. The compounds make *līdi*; *Allīdo*, I dash against; *Collīdo*, I dash together; *Elīdo*, I dash out; *Illīdo*, I dash against.—[10] *Lūsus*, played, Ovid. Trist. deluded. Id. Fast. *Lūsūrus*, Id. Trist.—[11] *Mersūrus*, Ovid.—[12] *Nupsi*, Cic. passim. *Nūbui*, Valer. Prob. in Cathol. *Nupta sum*, Cic. 'Novus *nuptus*,' Plaut. *Nuptum*, Cæs. B. G. We should always say, '*Nuptum* dăre collŏcāre,' never *Nuptui*, as is found in some grammars and dictionaries. See Drakenborch on Liv. I. 49. *Nuptūrus*, Ovid.—[13] *Plausus*, Virg. Georg. III. 185. *Plaudendus*, Ovid. *Plōdĕre*, Varr. ap. Non. whence the compounds, *Complōdo*, I clap together; *Explōdo*, I hiss or clap off, explode, &c.—[14] *Pressūrus*, Ovid. *Prĕmendus*, Cic. Tusc. The Compounds make *prĭmo, pressi, pressus*; *Comprĭmo*, I press together; *Exprĭmo*, I squeeze out, &c. *Dēpressum* eunt, Plaut.—[15] *Promtūrus*, Apul. Florid. *Prōmendus*, Cic. *Dēpromtum*, Plaut. See note on *Emo*, foregoing List.—[16] *Rāsi*, Plin. XXVIII. 4. *Rādendus*, Tacit. Ann.—[17] *Rōsisse*, Plin. *Circumrōsĕrit*, Plin. *Corrōsĕrint*, Cic. de Divin. II. 27. *Perrōsĕrint*, Cels. *Rōsus*, Stat. *Rōsūrus*, Phædr. The Perfects of *Abrōdo*, *Arrōdo*, *Erōdo*, *Obrōdo*, *Prærōdo*, are not found in the classics.—[18] *Scalpsi*, Plin. *Scalptus*, Cic. Acad. *Circumscalptus*, Plin. *Inscalptus*, Plin. though *Circumscalpo*, *Inscalpo*, do not occur. *Exscalpo*, Varr. L. L. Quintil. *Exscalptus*, Cato, R. R.—[19] *Scripsti*, for *scripsisti*, Plaut. *Scripse*, for *scripsisse*, Auson. *Scriptūrus*, Tacit. Ann. Decemvir legibus *scribendis*, Sueton. *Describendus*, Aul. Gell.

Sculpo,[1] sculpĕre, sculpsi, sculptus, sculpendus,	*carve.*
*Serpo,[2] serpĕre, serpsi, ——,	*creep.*
Spargo,[3] spargĕre, sparsi, sparsus, sparsūrus, D.	*spread.*
Sūmo,[4] sūmĕre, sumsi, sumtus, sumtūrus, D.	*take.*
*Temno,[5] temnĕre, temsi, ——, temnendus,	*despise.*
Tergo. See *Tergeo*, Second Conj. List V.	
Trūdo,[6] trūdĕre, trūsi, trūsus,	*thrust.*
Uro,[7] ūrĕre, ussi, ustus, ūrendus,	*burn.*
*Vādo,[8] vādĕre, vāsi, ——,	*go.*
Vergo,[9] vergĕre, versi, versus,	*incline.*

XIII. Verbs making *-xi* in the Perfect, and *-xus*, or *-ctus* in the Perfect Participle Passive:

*Ango,[10] angĕre, anxi, ——,	*strangle, vex.*
Cingo,[11] cingĕre, cinxi, cinctus, cingendus,	*surround.*
Cŏquo,[12] cŏquĕre, coxi, coctus, coctum, cŏquendus,	*cook.*
Dico,[13] dīcĕre, dixi, dictus, dictu, dictūrus, dīcendus,	*say.*
Dilígo,[14] dilĭgĕre, dīlexi, dīlectus,	*love dearly.*
Dūco,[15] dūcĕre, duxi, ductus, ductum, ductūrus, D.	*lead.*

[1] Diomed. I. p. 574., does not admit of *Sculpo;* but derives the Compounds, *Exsculpo, Insculpo*, from *Scalpo.* It is rejected also by Gesner in his Thesaur. L. L. *Sculpsit*, Ovid. where some read *Scalpsit*, others *Sculpit* or *Scalpit. Sculpendus*, Vitruv. '*Sculpendis* gemmis laus,' Apul. where others read *Scalpendis.* Cf. Plin. XXXVI. 4.—[2] *Serpsi* is found only in Festus, lib. XVII., where he says, '*Serpsit*, antiqui pro *serpsĕrit* usi sunt.'—[3] *Sparsi*, Virg. Georg. IV. 28. *Sparsūrus*, Ovid. *Spargendus*, Vell. The Compounds make *spergo, spersi, spersus.*—[4] *Sumse*, for *sumsisse*, Næv. ap. Gell. *Sumtūrus*, Ovid. *Sūmendus*, Sueton. The difference between *Sūmo* and *Accĭpio* is this: *Sūmĭmus*, IPSI; *accĭpĭmus*, AB ALIO.—[5] *Temsēre*, Lucil. where Scaliger reads *Temnēre*, supposing the Perfect to be *Temni. Temsi* does not occur elsewhere in the classics, except in the Compound *Contemsi*, Cic. pro Mur. Tibull. *Temtus* occurs only in the Compound *Contemtus*, Cic. *Temnendus*, Ovid.—[6] *Trūsi*, Claud. *Trusus*, Tacit.—[7] *Ussi*, Plin. *Urendus*, Hor.—[8] *Vāsit*, Tertull. It occurs nowhere else, except in the Compounds *Evāsi*, Cic. Catil. *Invāsi*, Cic. Phil. *Pervāsi*, Tacit. Ann. *Evāsūrus*, Liv. XXV. 11. *Invāsūrus*, X. 35. *Invādendus*, XXIII. 44. *Pervāsūrus*, XXXVII. 25.—[9] *Versi*, Ovid. See note on *Verto*, foregoing List. *Verxi*, Diomed. but without example. The Compounds, *Dēvergo*, I incline downwards, *Evergo*, I send forth, *Invergo*, I invert, pour out, have neither Perfect nor Perfect Participle. Yet we read in Festus, '*Deversus*, dicebant, deorsum versus.' *Versus*, Liv.—[10] *Anxit*, Gell. The Participles *Anxus* and *Anctus*, and Supine *Anxum*, given by Prisc. do not exist elsewhere, though Scaliger would read, '*Anctos*, excruciatos,' in Festus, where others read *Antios.*—[11] *Cinxi*, Virg. Æn. V. 13. *Cingendus*, Ovid.—[12] *Coxi*, Cic. Tusc. *Coctum*, Plaut. *Cŏquendus*, Id.—[13] *Dixti, dixis*, for *dixisti, dixĕris*, Gell. *Dixe*, for *dixisse*, Varr. ap. Non. *Dice*, for *dic*, Plaut. *Dictu*, Plin. *Dictūrus*, Liv. *Dīcendus*, Vell.—[14] An irregular compound of *Lĕgo. Dīlexi*, Cic. Fam. So *Collĭgo*, I collect, *collexi. Collectu*, Plin.—[15] *Duce*, for *duc*, Plaut. *Duxti*, for *duxisti*, Varr. ap. Non. *Ductum*, Cæs. B. C. *Ductūrus*, Liv. I. 44. *Ducendus*, Cels.

Emungo,[1] ēmungĕre, ēmunxi, ēmunctus,		*wipe.*
Extinguo,[2] extinguĕre, extinxi, extinctus, R. D.		*quench.*
Fīgo,[3] fīgĕre, fixi, fixus, fixūrus,		*fix, fasten.*
Fingo,[4] fingĕre, finxi, fictus, fingendus,		*feign, form.*
Flecto,[5] flectĕre, flexi, flexus, flectendus,		*bend.*
*Flīgo,[6] flīgĕre, flixi, ——,		*dash.*
Fluo,[7] fluĕre, fluxi, fluxus, fluxūrus,		*flow.*
Intellĭgo,[8] intellĭgĕre, intellexi, intellectus, intellectu, intellectūrus, intelligendus,		*understand.*
Jungo,[9] jungĕre, junxi, junctus, junctūrus, D.		*join.*
*Mingo,[10] mingĕre, minxi, ——, mictum,		*make water.*
Mungo. See *Emungo.*		
Necto,[11] nectĕre, nexui *or* nexi, nexus, nectendus,		*knit.*
Neglĭgo,[12] neglĭgĕre, neglexi, neglectus, R. D.		*neglect.*
Pango,[13] pangĕre, panxi *or* pēgi, pactus, pancturus, pangendus,		*drive in, fix, fasten.*
Pecto,[14] pexui *or* pexi, pectĕre, pexus *or* pectĭtus, pectendus,		*comb, dress, beat.*
*Pergo,[15] pergĕre, perrexi, ———, perrectūrus,		*go forward.*

[1] *Emunxti,* for *ēmunxisti,* Plaut. The simple *Mungo* occurs only in the Vett. Gloss., and in the various reading of a Fragment of Cato, where the text has *ēmungentur.*—[2] Some derive *Extinguo* from *Tinguo,* 'quia ignis aqua tinctus opprimitur.' *Extinxit,* for *extinxĕrit,* Plaut. *Extinctūrus,* Liv. *Extinguendus,* Cic. de Orat. I. 14.—[3] *Fixus,* Virg. Æn. IV. 495. et passim. *Fictus,* for *fixus,* Varr. R. R. So '*confictus* sagittis,' Scaur. ap. Diomed. *Fixūrus,* Ovid. *Affixit,* for *affixisset,* Sil.—[4] *Fingendus,* Auson.—[5] *Flectendus,* Plin.—[6] *Flixi,* Lucr. Some cite *Flictus* from Virgil, but no such Participle occurs in that poet. *Afflictus,* Cæs. B. G. et passim. *Conflictus* does not occur.—[7] *Fluxus,* Apul. Met. *Fluxūrus,* Lucan. *Fluctūrus,* Prisc.—[8] An irregular compound of *Lĕgo.* *Intellexi,* Cic. *Intellexti,* for *intellexisti,* Cic. *Intellexes,* for *intellexisses,* Plaut. *Intellīgi,* for *intellexi,* Ulpian. ap. Voss. *Intellectus,* Ovid. *Intellectu,* Nepos. *Intellectūrus,* Ovid. *Intelligendus,* Cic.—[9] *Junctūrus,* Liv. XXIX. 5. *Jungendus,* Cels. *Ad junctum īri,* Cic. Fam.—[10] The imperfect tense of *Mingo* and its Compounds are scarcely ever found. *Minxi,* Hor. Art. Poët. 471. *Meio,* which is of more frequent use, has no Perfect, though Valer. Prob. Cathol. p. 1483, gives it *Mexi,* and Diomed. I. p. 366, *Meiāvi.* The latter also gives *Mio, -is, -it,* but cites no example to prove either. *Mictum,* Hor. I. Sat. 8. 38.—[11] *Nexui,* Sallust. Fragm. *Nexi,* Propert. *Annexui,* Plin. *Connexui,* Claud. Rufin. *Innexui,* Virg. Æn. v. 425. *Nēxus,* Cic. Tusc. *Annexus,* Id. de Iuv. *Connexus,* Id. Nat. Deor. et passim. *Innexus,* Virg. Æn. v. 510. *Nectendus,* Hor.—[12] An irregular Compound of *Lĕgo.* *Neglexi,* Cic. Fam. et passim. *Neglēgi,* for *neglexi,* Æmil. Macer ap. Diomed. *Neglectūrus,* Cæs. B. G. *Neglĭgendus,* Id. B. G.—[13] This Verb should be carefully distinguished from *Pāgo,* List XVI. *Panxi,* Colum. *Pēgĕrit,* Cic. de Leg. (ubi Steph. et al. *Pĕpĭgĕrit*); *Pēgi,*-Pacuv. ap. Fest. *Pactus,* fixed, fastened, Pallad. *Panctūrus,* Id. *Pangendus,* Colum.—[14] *Pexisti,* Mecænas. ap. Prisc. *Pexui,* plerique ap. Prisc. *Pectīvi,* Asper. l. c. et ap. Prisc. The Perfects of *Dēpecto,* I trim, I curry, and *Rĕpecto,* I comb again, do not exist. *Pexus,* Hor. I. Epist. I. 95. et passim. *Pectĭtus,* Colum. *Pectendus,* Ovid. *Impexus,* Hor. though *Impecto* does not occur in the classics.—[15] *Porgo,* Lucr. I. 930. *Perrexi,* Cic. pro Planc. *Perrectūrus,* Cic. Tusc.

*Plango,[16] plangĕre, planxi, ———, planctūrus,	*beat, bewail.*
Plecto,[2] plectĕre, plexi, plexus, plectendus,	*twine.*
Rĕgo,[3] rĕgĕre, rexi, rectus, rectūrus, rĕgendus,	*rule.*
Stinguo. See *Extinguo.*	
Stringo,[4] stringĕre, strinxi, strictus, strictūrus, stringendus,	*tie hard, graze, strip.*
Struo, [5] struĕre, struxi, structus, struendus,	*build.*
Sūgo,[6] sūgĕre, suxi, suctus,	*suck.*
Surgo,[7] surgĕre, surrexi, surrectus, surrectūrus,	*rise.*
Tĕgo,[8] tĕgĕre, texi, tectus, tectūrus, tĕgendus,	*cover.*
Tingo,[9] tingĕre, tinxi, tinctus, tinctūrus, D.	*dip, die.*
Trăho,[10] trăhĕre, traxi, tractus, tractūrus, D.	*draw.*
Ungo,[11] ungĕre, unxi, unctus, ungendus,	*anoint.*
Vĕho,[12] vĕhĕre, vexi, vectus, vectūrus,	*carry.*
*Vīvo,[13] vīvĕre, vixi, ———, victūrus,	*live.*

XIV. Verbs changing *-o* into *-ui:*

*Accumbo,[14] accumbĕre, accŭbui, ———,	*lie down.*
Alo,[15] ălere, ălui, ălĭtus *or* altus, ălendus,	*nourish.*
Assĕro,[16] assĕrĕre, assĕrui, assertus, R. D.	*assert, claim.*

---

1 *Planxi,* Stat. Theb. *Planctūrus,* Germanic. in Arat. 198.—2 *Plecto,* in the sense of *implĭco, necto, texo,* has the Perfect *Plexi,* Liv. Erotopægn. ap. Prisc. IX. p. 903. The Perfect *Plexui,* given by Voss. Gram. v. 31, is found only in St. Jerome's translation of the Bible, called the Vulgate, Jud. XVI. 13. *Plecto,* in the sense of *verbĕro,* has no Perfect, and is scarcely ever used in the Active. '*Plectĕre eum,*' Impp. Dioclet. et Maxim. Cod. '*Fustis plectĭto,*' Plaut. '*Plecte pugnis,*' Id.; but the true reading is *pectĭto, pecte. Plexus,* Lucr. *Plectendus,* Solin. XV. 25.—3 *Rexi,* Propert. passim. *Rectus,* Sidon. Carm. *Rectūrus,* Manil. *Regendus,* Ovid. So the Compounds *Arrĭgo* and *Erigo,* I raise up; *Dīrĭgo,* I direct; *Corrĭgo,* I correct; *Surrĭgo,* I raise up; *Porrigo,* I stretch out, sometimes contracted to *Porgo,* whence *Porxit,* Stat.—4 *Strinxi,* Stat. *Strictus,* Id. *Strictūrus,* Sueton. *Stringendus,* Cic. Off.—5 *Struxi,* Ovid. Met. *Struendus,* Tacit. Ann. *Obstructum īri,* Justin.—6 *Suxisse,* Cic. Tusc. *Suctus,* Pallad.—7 *Surrexi,* Cic de Inv. *Surrexti,* for *surrexisti,* Martial. v. 80. *Surrectus,* Liv. passim. *Surrectūrus,* Colum.—8 *Texi,* Propert. *Tectūrus,* Lucan. *Tĕgendus,* Ovid.—9 Manut. Pier. on Virg. Dausq. and Broukhus. on Propert. prefer *Tinguo. Tinxi,* Ovid. Met. *Tinctus,* Hor. III. Od. 10. 14. et passim. *Tinctūrus,* Ovid. *Tingendus,* Propert.—10 *Traxi,* Senec. *Tractus,* Ovid. Met. *Tractūrus,* Liv. XXXIII. 9. *Trăhendus,* Plin. *Attractum īri,* Cic. Att. *Distrăhendus,* Gell.—11 Some write *Unguo,* whence the Perfect *Ungui,* ap. Prisc. but without authority. *Unxi,* Ovid. *Unctus,* Hor. *Ungendus,* Cels.—12 *Vexi,* Cic. Nat. Deor. *Vectus,* Virg. Æn. I. 528. et passim. *Vectūrus,* Claud.—13 *Vixi,* Cic. Off. III. 2. et passim. *Vixet,* for *vixisset,* Virg. Æn. XI. 118. *Vīvēbo,* Nonius ap. Vos. v. 35. *Victūrus,* Cic. Verr. IV. 47. Cæs. B. C.—14 The Compounds of *Cŭbo,* of this Conjugation, take M in the imperfect Tenses, and drop it in forming the Perfect and Supine. *Accŭbui,* Liv. XXVIII. 18. *Discŭbui,* Cic. *Discŭbĭtum,* Plaut.—15 *Alui,* Hor. *Alĭtus,* Curt. *Altus,* Cic. Nat. Deor. *Alendus,* Ovid.—16 The Perfect of the simple *Sĕro,* I knit, does not exist now. Its Participle is *Sirtus,* Lucan. pas-

Cŏlo,[1] cŏlĕre, cŏlui, cultus, cŏlendus, *till, adorn, worship.*
*Compesco,[2] compescĕre, compescui, ———, compescendus, *restrain.*
Consĕro,[3] consĕrĕre, consĕrui, consertus, consertūrus, *join together.*
Consŭlo,[4] consŭlĕre, consŭlui, consultus, consultum,
consultūrus, consŭlendus, *consult.*
Depso,[5] depsĕre, depsui, depstus, *knead, tan leather.*
Dēsĕro,[6] desĕrĕre, dēsĕrui, desertus, dēsertûrus, *forsake.*
*Desterto,[7] destertĕre, destertui, ——, *cease snoring.*
*Dissĕro,[8] dissĕrĕre, dissĕrui, ——, *discourse, debate.*
Excello,[9] excellĕre, excellui, excelsus, *be raised high, excel.*
Exsĕro,[10] exsĕrĕre, exsĕrui, exsertus, *put forth.*
*Frĕmo,[11] frĕmĕre, frĕmui, ——, frĕmendus, *roar.*
*Gĕmo,[12] gĕmĕre, gĕmui, ——, gĕmendus, *groan.*
Gĕno,[13] gĕnui, *or*
Gigno, gignĕre, gĕnui, gĕnĭtus, gĕnĭtūrus, *beget, produce.*
Insĕro,[14] insĕrĕre, insĕrui, insertus, insĕrendus, *ingraft.*
*Mālo. See Irregular verbs.
Mŏlo,[15] mŏlĕre, mŏlui, mŏlĭtus, *grind.*
*Nōlo. See Irregular Verbs.
Occŭlo,[16] occŭlĕre, occŭlui, occultus, *hide.*

---

sim. *Assĕrui*, Ovid. *Assertus*, Sueton. *Assertūrus*, Sueton. Claud. *Assĕrendus*, Sueton. Jul. So the other Compounds, *Consĕro*, I join together; *Dēsĕro*, I forsake; *Dissĕro*, I discuss; *Edissĕro*, I declare, discourse of; *Exsĕro*, I put forth; *Insĕro*, I ingraft.

1 *Colui*, Virg. Æn. I. 19. et passim. *Cŏlendus*, Curt.—2 *Compescuit*, Ovid. The Perfect Participle does not occur in the classics: yet we have 'saxo *compescĭta*,' in an ancient inscription. The Supine *Compescĭtum* is found only in Priscian. x. p. 887. *Compescendus*, Plin. Epist.—3 See *Assĕro*. *Consertūrus*, Liv. VI. 12.—4 *Consŭlui*, Cæs. B. C. *Consultus*, Stat. Achill. *Consultum*, Plaut. Bacch. *Consultūrus*, Tacit. Ann. *Consŭlendus*, Aul. Gell. *Consŭlĭtūrus*, ap. Fortunat. Carm., is a barbarism not to be imitated.—5 *Depsui*, Cato R. R. *Depsi*, Varr. ap. Non. *Condepsui*, Pompon. ap. Prob. *Perdepsui*, Catull. *Depstus*, Cato R. R. It has no other Participle.—6 *Dēsĕrui*, Quintil. *Dēsertus*, Cic. Fam. *Dēsertūrus*, Terent. Andr. '*Dēsĕrendæ* Italiæ conjurātio,' Liv. XXIV. 43.—7 *Destertui*, Pers. This Verb has no Participles. *Stertui*, the Perfect of the simple *Sterto*, does not occur in the classics; but it is given by Prisc. x. p. 903. *Stertens*, Cic. de Div.—8 See *Assĕro*. *Dissertus*, disputed, debated, occurs only in St. Jerome on Isaia. XI. 4.—9 *Excelleas*, of the second Conj. is found in Cic. Fragm. ap. Prisc. The simple *Cello* does not exist; though many grammars and dictionaries give it the Perfects *Cĕcŭli* and *Cellui*. *Cillĕrentur*, i. e. *mŏvĕrentur*, is read in Servius on Virg. Georg. II. 389., and *Cillentur*, for *mŏventur*, in Isid. *Excellui*, Gell. *Antĕcello*, I excel; *Præcello*, I surpass, *Rĕcello*, I move or draw back, have no Perfects. See *Percello*, List XVIII. *Celsus* and *Excelsus* are used adjectively.—10 See *Assĕro*. *Exsertus*, Plin. passim.—11 *Frĕmui*, Martial. *Frĕmendus*, Stat. Theb.—12 *Gĕmui*, Propert. *Gĕmendus*, Ovid.—13 *Gĕnunt*, Varr. ap. Prisc. *Gĕnendi*, Id. R. R. *Gĕnui*, Cic. Nat. Deor. *Gĕnĭtus*, Virg. Æn. IX. 642. et passim. *Gĕnĭtūrus*, Curt. '*Gignendæ* herbæ aptior,' Curt.—14 See *Assĕro*. *Insĕrendus*, Cels. See *Sĕro*, List XVIII.—15 *Mŏlui*, Petron. Sat. *Mŏlĭtus*, Cæs. B. G.—16 A Compound of *Cŏlo*. *Occului*, Ovid. Met. *Occultus*, Virg. Georg. III. 397. et passim. The other Participles do not occur.

Pōno,[1] pōnĕre, pŏsui, pŏsĭtus, pŏsĭtūrus, D. *put, place.*
Sterto. See *Dēsterto.*
*Strĕpo,[2] strĕpĕre, strĕpui, ——, *make a noise, murmur.*
Texo,[3] texĕre, texui, textus, texendus, *weave.*
*Trĕmo,[4] trĕmĕre, trĕmui, ——, trĕmendus, *tremble.*
*Vŏlo. See Irregular Verbs.
Vŏmo,[5] vŏmĕre, vŏmui, vŏmĭtus, vŏmĭtūrus, D. *cast up.*

XV. The following make *-ivi:*

Arcesso,[6] arcessĕre, arcessīvi, arcessītus, arcessītūrus, arcessendus, *call, send for.*
*Căpesso,[7] căpessĕre, căpessīvi *or* capessii, ———, căpessītūrus, căpessendus, *take in hand.*
*Incesso,[8] incessĕre, incessīvi *or* incessi, ——, *attack.*
Lăcesso,[9] lăcessĕre, lăcessīvi, lăcessii *or* lăcessi, lăcessītus, lăcessītūrus, lăcessendus, *provoke.*
Pĕto,[10] pĕtĕre pĕtīvi *or* pĕtii, pĕtītus, pĕtītum, pĕtītu, pĕtītūrus, pĕtendus, *ask.*
Quæro,[11] quærĕre, quæsīvi *or* quæsii, quæsītus, quæsītum, quæsītūrus, quærendus, *seek.*

Făcesso,[12] I execute, go away, makes *făcessi, facessītus.*

XVI. Verbs doubling the first syllable in the Perfect:

---

[1] *Pŏsui*, Cæs. B. C. *Pŏsīvi*, Plaut. Pseud. So *Appŏsīvi*, Plaut. Mil. III. 3. 30. *Compŏsīvi*, Inscript. *Dēpŏsīvi*, Plaut. Curc. IV. 3. 4. Catull. XXXIV. 8. *Dēpŏsisse*, for *dēpŏsīvisse*, Catal. Virg. de Sab. *Expŏsīvi*, Plaut. *Impŏsīvi*, Id. *Impŏsisse*, for *impŏsīvisse*, Most. *Oppŏsīvi*, Curt. *Rĕpŏsīvi*, Asin. *Suppŏsīvi*, Truc. Terent. Eun. *Pŏsĭtus*, Virg. Ecl. II. 54. et passim. *Postus*, Lucr. *Pŏsĭtūrus*, Ovid. Met. *Pōnendus*, Cic. Orat. *Præpŏsĭtum īri*, Terent. Eun.—[2] *Strĕpui*, Virg. Æn. VIII. 2. The Participle in *ns* only is found in the classics.—[3] *Texui*, Martial. Some dictionaries add *Texi*, which, however, does not occur in the classics, except as the Perfect of *Tĕgo*. *Textus*, Ovid. Fast. *Texendus*, Virg. Georg. II. 371.—[4] *Trĕmui*, Virg. Æn. VIII. 296. *Trĕmendus*, Stat. Theb.—[4] *Vŏmui*, Pers. Sat. *Vŏmĭtus*, Cœl. Aurel. *Vŏmĭtūrus*, Plin. *Vŏmendus*, Lucr.—[6] *Arcesso*, not *accerso*, Voss. in Etym. *Arcessīvi*, Cic. Quint. *Arcessītus*, Propert. *Arcessītūrus*, Plaut. Cas. *Arcessendus*, Cels.—[6] *Căpessīvi*, Tacit. Ann. *Căpessii*, Ann. XII. 30. *Căpessītūrus*, Apul. Met. Tacit. Ann. *Căpessendus*. Plin. Paneg.—[8] *Incessīvi*, Plin. *Incessĕrint*, Tacit. Hist. II. 23., which is also the Perfect of *Incēdo*, I go.—[9] *Lăcessīri*, Colum. *Lăcessīvi*, Cic. Fam. *Lăcessii*, Liv. XXVIII. 12. *Lăcessisti*, Cic. Phil. *Lăcessītus*, Virg. Æn. VII. 526. *Lăcessītūrus*, Liv. *Lăcessendus*, Cæs. B. G.—[10] *Petīvi*, Cic. *Pĕtii*, Cæs. B.G. *Pĕtisse*, Cic. *Pĕtītus*, Ovid. Met. *Pĕtītum*, Catull. *Pĕtītu*, Claudian. *Rĕpĕtītum*, Liv. III. *Pĕtītūrus*, Tibull. *Pĕtendus*, Propert.—[11] *Quæsīvi*, Cic. *Quæsii*, Cic. pro Quint. c. 3. *Quæsītus*, Virg. Æn. VII. 758. et passim. *Quæsītum*, Terent. *Quæsītūrus*, Cic. *Quærendus*, Lucr. *Exquīsītum*, Plaut. *Inquīsītum*, Liv. XL. 20.—[12] *Făcessĕris*, Cic. *Făcessisset*, Tacit. Hist. Neither the Perfect *Făcessīvi*, nor the Participle *Făcessus*, given in some grammars and dictionaries, occurs in the classics. *Făcessītus*, Cic. Verr. IV. 64.

*Cădo,[1] cădĕre, cĕcĭdi, ——, cāsūrus,	*fall.*
Cædo,[2] cædĕre, cĕcīdi, cæsus, cæsūrus, D.	*cut, beat.*
*Căno,[3] cănĕre, cĕcĭni, ——, cănendus,	*sing.*
*Curro,[4] currĕre, cŭcurri, ——, cursūrus,	*run.*
*Disco,[5] discĕre, dĭdĭci, ——, discĭtūrus, discendus,	*learn.*
Fallo,[6] fallĕre, fĕfelli, falsus, fallendus,	*deceive.*
Pāgo,[7] pāgĕre, pĕpĭgi, pactus,	*bargain, lay a wager.*
*Parco,[8] parcĕre, pĕperci *or* parsi, ——, parsūrus,	*spare.*
*Pēdo, pēdĕre, pĕpēdi, Hor. 1. Sat. 8. 46. ——,	*πέρδω.*
Pello,[9] pellĕre, pĕpŭli, pulsus, pellendus,	*drive.*
Pendo,[10] pendĕre, pĕpendi, pensus, pensūrus,	*weigh.*
*Posco,[11] poscĕre, pŏposci, ——, poscendus,	*demand.*
Pungo,[12] pungĕre, pŭpŭgi, punctus,	*prick, sting.*
Tango,[13] tangĕre, tĕtĭgi, tactus, tactūrus, tangendus,	*touch.*
Tendo,[14] tendĕre, tĕtendi, tensus *or* tentus,	*stretch.*
Tundo,[15] tundĕre, tŭtŭdi, tunsus *or* tusus,	*beat, pound.*

Also *Părio*, I bring forth, List XXV.

---

[1] *Cĕcĭdi*, Virg. Æn. I 158. et passim. *Cāsūrus*, Cic. *Cădit*, for *cădat*, Plaut.—[2] *Cĕcīdi*, Juvenal. *Cæsus*, Liv. *Cæsūrus*, Justin. *Cædendus*, Cic. *Occīsum īri*, Cic. Att. [3] *Cĕcĭni*, Virg. Georg. I. 378. et passim. *Cănĕrit*, for *cĕcĭnĕrit*, Festus in 'Rumentum.' *Cănui*, for *cĕcĭni*, Serv. ad. Virg. Georg. II. 384.: hence *Cănĭtūrus*, Vulgat. Apocalyps. VIII. 13. *Cante*, for *cănĭte*, Carmen Saliare ap. Varr. L. L. VI. 3. *Cănendus*, Stat. Theb.—[4] *Cŭcurri*, Cic. *Cĕcurri*, Gell. *Curristi*, Tertull. *Cursūrus*, Ovid.—[5] *Dĭdĭci*, Cic. de Senect. *Discĭtūrus*, Apul. Fragm. ap. Prisc. *Discendus*, Plaut.—[6] *Fĕfelli*, Cic. *Falsus sum*, I am deceived, Plaut. *Fĕfellĭtus sum*, Petron. *Fallendus*, Catull.—[7] *Pāgunt*, Quintil. *Pĕpĭgi*, Quintil. *Pēgi*, Prisc. but he does not prove it by any authority. *Paxim*, for *pĕpĭgĕrim*, I will lay a wager, Plaut. *Pactus*, Cic off. I. 10. See *Pango*, List XIII. and *Paciscor*, List XXIX.—[8] *Pĕperci*, Cic. *Parsi*, Terent. *Parcuit*, for *parsit*, Næv. ap. Non. *Parso*, for *peppercĕro*, Plaut. *Parcĭtum est*, in some edd. of Plin. XXXIII. 4., where Harduin reads *parci*. *Parsūrus*, Liv.—[9] *Pĕpŭli*, Liv. *Pulsi*, for *pĕpŭli*, Ammian. but this is not to be imitated. *Pulsus*, Cic. de Orat. *Pellendus*, Justin.—[10] *Pĕpendi*, Justin. *Pendissent*, Liv. XLV. 26. So in all the Mss. and in all edd. except Sigonius and Drakenborch., who read from conjecture, *pĕpendissent*. See Voss. Gram. v. 26. *Pensus*, Ovid. Met. *Pensūrus*, Liv.—[11] *Pŏposci*, Cic. *Pĕposci*, Valer. Antias ap. Gell. VII. 9. *Dēpŏposci*, Cic. *Expŏposci*, Liv. *Rĕpŏposci* seems not to exist in the classics. See *Mordeo*, Second Conj. List IV. *Poscendus*, Sil. *Poscĭtus*, given by Priscian and other grammarians, does not exist.—[12] *Pŭpŭgi*. Cic. *Pĕpŭgi*, Atta ap. Gell. *Punxi*, Diomed. I. p. 369., but without authority. *Pŭpūgĕrat*, with the second syllable long, occurs in Prudent. *Punctus*, Cic. Of the Compound *Rĕpungo*, I vex again, *Rĕpungĕre* only is found, Cic. Fam. *Compungo*, I puncture, makes *Compunxi*, Senec. *Compunctus*, Cic. Off. *Dispungo*, I mark off, reckon. *Dispunxi*, Vell. I. 13. *Dispunctus*, Tertull.—[13] *Tăgo*, for *tango*, Pacuv. ap. Fest. *Tĕtĭgi*, Cic. *Taxis*, for *tĕtĭgĕris*, Varr. ap. Non. *Tactūrus*, Cic. *Tangendus*, Hor.—[14] *Tĕtendi*, Virg. Æn. v. 508. *Tendisti*, Propert. in the Mss. and early edd., but two Vatican Mss., and the edd. since Scaliger have *nexisti*. *Carbăsa tendĕrant*, Senec. *Tensus*, Lucan. *Tentus*, Lucr. [15] *Tŭtŭdi*, Varr. de L. L. *Tunsi*, Diomed. *Tūsērunt*, Næv. ap. Merulam in Collect. Fragm. Ennii p. 42. *Tunsus*, Virg. Georg. IV. 302. *Tusus*, Vitruv. The Compounds of *Tango*, *Tendo*, and *Tundo*, drop the reduplication of the Perfect. The Compounds of Tundo make *tŭdi*, *tūsus*; yet *Dētunsus*, Apul. Met. *Obtunsus*, Virg. Georg. I. 252. *Rĕtunsus*, Plaut.

XVII. The Compounds of *do* make *-dĭdi, -dĭtus:*

Abdo[1] **abdĕre, abdĭdi, abdĭtus, abdendus,**	***hide.***
Addo,[2] **addĕre, addĭdi, addĭtus, addĭtūrus,** D.	***add.***
Condo,[3] **condĕre, condĭdi, condĭtus, condendus,**	***hide, lay up, build.***
Crēdo,[4] **crēdĕre, crēdĭdi, crēdĭtus, crēdĭtūrus,** D.	***believe.***
Dēdo,[5] **dēdĕre, dēdĭdi, dēdĭtus, dēdĭtūrus,** D.	***surrender.***
Dīdo,[6] **dīdĕre, dīdĭdi, dīdĭtus,**	***give out, divide.***
Ēdo,[7] **ēdĕre, ēdĭdi, ēdĭtus, ēdĭtūrus, ēdendus,**	***publish.***
Indo,[8] **indĕre, indĭdi, indĭtus, indendus,**	***put in.***
Obdo, obdĕre, obdĭdi, obdĭtus,	***oppose.***
Perdo,[9] **perdĕre, perdĭdi, perdĭtus, perdĭtum, perdĭtūrus, perdendus,**	***destroy.***
Prōdo,[10] **prōdĕre, prōdĭdi, prōdĭtus, prōdĭtūrus, prōdendus,**	***betray.***
Reddo,[11] **reddĕre, reddĭdi, reddĭtus, reddĭtūrus,**	***restore.***
Subdo, subdĕre, subdĭdi, subdĭtus,	***put under.***
Trādo,[12] **trādĕre, trādĭdi, trādĭtus, trādĭtūrus,** D.	***deliver.***
Vendo,[13] **vendĕre, vendĭdi, vendĭtus, vendĭtūrus,** D.	***sell.***

XVIII. Verbs that cannot be classed with any of the foregoing:

***Conquĭnisco,**[14] **conquĭniscere, conquexi,——,**	***stoop, sit, squat.***
Fĕro,[15] **ferre, [tŭli,] [lātus, lātūrus,] fĕrendus,**	***bear, suffer.***
Confīdo,[16] **confīdĕre, confīsus sum** *or* **confīdi,**	***rely on.***
Mĕto,[17] **mĕtĕre, messui, messus, mĕtendus,**	***mow, reap.***

---

[1] *Abdendus*, Liv.—[2] *Addĭtūrus*, Tacit. Ann. *Addendus*, Ovid.—[3] *Condendus*, Liv.—[4] *Crēdĭtūrus*, Gell. *Crēdendus*, Cic. pro Cœl.—[5] *Dēdĭtūrus*, Cæs. B. G. *Dēdendus*, Cic.—[6] The Participles in *ns, rus,* and *dus*, do not occur.—[7] *Edĭtūrus*, Sueton. *Edendus*, Cic. Fam.—[8] *Indendus*, Cels.—[9] *Perduis, perduit, perduint*, for *perdas, at, ant*, Plaut. *Perduunt*, for *perdunt*, Plaut. *Perdĭtum*, Sallust. Catil. 52. *Perdĭtūrus*, Cic. de Orat. *Perdendus*, Ovid.—[10] *Prōduit*, in Lege Censorina ap. Fest. *Prōdĭtūrus*, Terent. *Prōdendus*, Cic.—[11] *Reddībo*, Plaut. *Reddĭtu īri*, Paul. Dig. *Reddĭtūrus*, Tacit. 'Ad vota Herculi *reddenda*,' Justin.—[12] *Trādĭtu īri*, Paul. Dig. *Trādĭtūrus*, Liv. *Trādendus*, Cic de Orat—[13] *Vendĭtūrus*, Plaut. *Vendendus*, Cic.—[14] *Conquexi*, Pompon. ap. Prisc.—[15] *Tŭli* comes from the obsolete *Tŭlō*, or *Tŏlo*, whence *Tŏlĕro, -as, -avi*. See Diomed. Hence *Tĕtŭli*, Plaut. *Tĕtŭlissem*, Terent. Andr. *Tĕtŭlĕro*, Plaut. *Tĕtŭlisse*, Rud. See note on *Tollo*. *Ferre* is a contraction of *Fĕrĕre*. *Lātus*, seems to be formed from *Tŭlātus*. See Voss. *Lātūrus*, Hor. *Fĕrendus*, Cic.—[16] *Confīsus sum*, Cæs. *Confīderunt*, Liv. *Fisus sum*, The Perfect of the simple *Fīdo*, given by Prisc. VIII. p. 818 Charis. and Diomed. does not occur. *Fīdēbo*, Næv. ap. Non.—[17] *Messui*, Cato, ap. Prisc. *Dēmessui*, Cæs. Hemina ap. Prisc. *Messum fēci*, for *messui*, Charis. Another Perfect, *Messīvi* is quoted by Prisc., but he condemns it. *Messus*, Virg. Æn. IV. 513. *Mĕtendus*, Cic.

Mitto,[1] mittĕre, misi, missus, missūrus, mittendus, *send.*
Percello,[2] percellĕre, percŭli *or* perculsi, perculsus, *strike, shock.*
*Rŭdo,[3] rŭdĕre, rŭdīvi, ——, *bray like an ass.*
Scindo,[4] scindĕre, scĭdi, scissus, scindendus, *cut.*
Sĕro,[5] sĕrĕre, sēvi, sătus, sătūrus, sĕrendus, *sow.*
*Sĭno,[6] sĭnĕre, sīvi, ——, sĭtūrus, *suffer.*
*Tollo,[7] tollĕre, tolli, ——, tollendus, *raise, lift up.*
Sustollo,[8] sustollĕre, sustŭli, sublātus, sublātūrus, *raise, take away.*
Vello,[9] vellĕre, velli *or* vulsi, vulsus, vellendus, *pull, pinch.*

XIX. Verbs forming the Perfect by transposition or elision:

---

1 *Misi*, Ovid. Met. III. 38. et passim. *Misti*, for *misisti*, Catull. *Missus*, Virg. Æn. III. 595. et passim. *Missūrus*, Hor. Art. Poët. 476. *Mittendus*, Justin.—2 *Percŭli*, Val. Flac. Terent. Cic. pro Mil. *Perculsi*, Ammian. *Perculsit* in some edd. of Horace, I. Od. 7. 11., and Terent. Andr. I. 1. 98.; but the true reading in the two last passages is *percussit*. *Percŭlit*, passively for *perculsus fuit*, Flor. *Perculsus*, Catull. passim, which is also often confounded with *Percussus*. See Bentl. on Hor. Epod. XI. 2. Burm. on Ovid. Met. IV. 138.—3 Persius Sat. III. 9. makes the first syllable in *Rudo* long. *Rŭdīvi*, as if from *Rudio*, Apul. Met. *Rūdi* occurs only in grammars and dictionaries.—4 *Scĭdi*, Stat. III. Sylv. *Scicĭdi*, Afran. ap. Prisc. *Scĕscĭdi*, Gell. *Scissus*, Liv. passim. *Scindendus*, Liv. *Abscissūrus*, Quintil. *Discindendus*, Cic.—5 *Sēvi*, Cic. Verr. *Sătus*, Tibull. *Satūrus*, Plin. *Sĕrendus*, Tibull. *Sĕrundus*, Varr. R. R. *Consĕro*, in the sense of *sowing, planting*, makes *ēvi, ĭtus;* in the sense of *joining, putting together*, it makes *erui, ertus;* as in Quintil. Decl. IX 3. Ovid. Heroid. Epist. II. 58, &c. Yet 'arbŏrem *consĕruisset*,' Liv. X. 24., where some read *sĕruisset*, others *consēvisset*. *Consertūrus*, Liv. VI. 12. *Assertūrus*, Sueton. *Consĕrendus*, Arnob. So, *Insĕro*, I sow, plant, *ēvi, ĭtus;* *Insĕro*, I ingraft, innoculate, insert, *ĕrui, ertus*. Yet these are sometimes used one for the other. *Insĭtūrus*, Colum. See *Sĕro*, List XVIII.—6 *Sīvi*, Cic. *Sĭtūrus*, Cic. Plaut. *Sii*, for *sīvi*, Varr. ap. Diomed. Terent. *Siĕrit*, Liv. *Sistis*, Cic. *Sissem*, Liv. III. 18. *Sīni*, for *sīvi*, in some edd. of Plaut. and Terent. Andr. I. 2. 17. But this may have arisen from the similarity of *n* and *v* in the ancient Mss.—7 *Tollisse*, Ulpian. Dig. *Tollit*, Pers. Sat. IV. 2., which is undoubtedly a Perfect, and the reading of all the Mss. and printed copies. See the passage, and Scaliger on Varr. R. R. I. 69. *Tĕtŭli*, Diomed. See following note. *Tollendus*, Hor. I. Sat. 10. 51.—8 *Sustollĕre*, Plaut. *Sustolle*, Plaut. Pœn. *Sustolli*, inf. Plaut. *Sustollens*, Catull. *Sustollant*, Id. *Sustollat*, Plaut. *Sustollit*, Seren. Samm. XXXVIII. 716. *Sustŭli*, Cic. *Sublātus*, Cæs. B. G. *Sublātūrus*, Cic. Att.—9 *Velli*, Cic. Verr. *Vulsi*, Lucan. *Vulsus*, Propert. *Vellendus*, Colum. So *Avello*, I tear away; *Avelli*, Curt. *Avulsi*, Lucan. *Avellendus*, Cic. Verr. *Dīvello*, I tear asunder; *Dīvelli*, Hirt. B. A. *Dīvulsi*, Senec. Hippol. *Evello*, I pluck up; *Evelli*, Cic. pro Sext. c. 28. Phædr. II. 2. 10. *Evulsi*, Quintil. Decl. *Evellendus*, Cic. *Prævello*, I pluck before; *Prævelli*, Tertull. adv. Gnost. c. 13. *Prævulsi*, Labr. ap. Diomed. *Rĕvello*, I tear away; *Rĕvelli*, Cic. *Revulsi*, Ovid. Met. In the former passage Heins. and Burm. read *rĕvellit*, and in the latter *rĕvelli;* which renders *Rĕvulsi* doubtful; though Pierius reads so in Virg. Æn. IV. 427. the Vatican Ms. *Convello*, I tear in pieces, makes *Convelli*, Cic. pro. Dom. c. 21. *Convellendus*, Cels. III. 4. *Convulsūrus*, Cic. 2. *Dēvello*, I pull away, *Dēvelli*, Plaut. Pœn. IV. 2. 50. *Pervello*, I twitch, *Pervelli*, Cic. Tusc. II. Ascon. *Intervello*, I pluck here and there, *Intervulsi* only, Colum. V. 10.

Cerno,[1] cernĕre, crēvi, crētus, cernendus, *sift, distinguish, see, decree, &c.*
Sperno,[2] spernĕre, sprēvi, sprētus, spernendus, *separate, spurn, despise.*
Sterno,[3] sternĕre, strāvi, strātus, sternendus, *strew.*
Tĕro,[4] tĕrĕre, trīvi, trītus, tĕrendus, *rub, wear.*
Sisto,[5] sistĕre, stĭti, stătus, *stop, make stand.*

XX. These change the vowel of the root:

Ago,[6] ăgĕre, ēgi, actus, actūrus, ăgendus, *do, drive.*
Frango,[7] frangĕre, frēgi, fractus, fractūrus, D. *break.*
Lĭno,[8] lĭnĕre, līvi *or* lēvi, lĭtus, *anoint, daub.*

To which add *Allĭcio, Căpio, Făcio, Jăcio,* and *Părio,* from List XXV.

XXI. These Verbs in *-sco* make *-vi, -tus:*

---

[1] The Perfect *Crēvi* is used in the signification of *I have decreed,* Cic. de Leg. III. 3. *I have resolved,* Plaut. *I have taken possession of an inheritance,* Cic. Att. VI. 1. *I have perceived,* i. e. *I have heard,* Titin. ap. Prisc. In this sense it occurs nowhere else. *Cerno,* I see, has no Perfect. *Crētus,* separated, sifted, Pallad. *Cernendus,* Ovid.—[2] *Sprēvi,* Virg. Æn. IV. 679. *Sprētus,* Id. Georg. IV. 233. *Spernendus,* Colum.—[3] *Strāvi,* Virg. Æn. VIII. 719. et passim. *Strārat,* Manil. *Strasset,* Varr. ap. Non. *Strātus,* Virg. Ecl. VII. 54. et passim. *Sternendus,* Liv.—[4] *Trīvi.* Hor. I. Sat. 1. 45. et passim. *Tristi,* for *trīvisti,* in some edd. of Catull. See *Tergeo,* Second Conj. List V. *Intristi,* for *intrīvisti,* Terent. *Terui,* for *trīvi,* Plaut. Hence *Attĕruisse,* for *attrīvisse,* Tibull. *Trītus,* Ovid. *Tĕrendus,* Ovid. Art. Am.—[5] The Perfect *Stĭti* seems to be used only in the sense of *appearing in court to a summons,* or *of appearing to one's recognizance.* See Cic. pro Quint. c. 6. Corn. Nep. Att. c. 9., and particularly Aul. Gell. II. 14. The grammarians make the Perfect *Stĕti,* when the verb is used absolutely, and *Stătui,* when it is used actively. But they adduce no authority. *Stătus,* Cic. Off. & Ovid. These Compounds make *stĭti,* but have no Perfect Participle: **Absisto,* I stand off, desist; **Assisto,* I stand by; **Consisto,* I stand fast, halt; **Dēsisto,* I desist: **Existo,* I come forth, appear; **Insisto,* I tread upon, insist; * *Intersisto,* I stop in the midst; **Obsisto,* I oppose; **Persisto,* I persevere; **Rĕsisto,* I stand still; and **Subsisto,* I stop, withstand. **Circumsisto,* has neither Perfect nor Perfect Participle.—[6] *Egi,* Hor. *Actus,* Id. III. Od. 7. 5. et passim. *Actūrus,* Liv. *Agendus,* Cæs. B. G. *Axim,* for *ēgĕrim,* Pacuv. Vid. Voss. Gramm.—[7] *Frēgi,* Ovid. Met. *Fractus,* Cic. Phil. *Fractūrus,* Claud. *Frangendus,* Vell.—[8] Some grammars and dictionaries give us three perfects for *Lĭno: Līvi, Lēvi,* and *Līni;* and the Oxford annotators on Lily add a fourth, *Lĭnii. Līvi,* Juvenal. Sat. Quintil. *Levi,* Hor. (*Oblēvērunt,* Gell.); and this seems to be the Perfect of the obsolete *Leo.* For *Līni* we have only the authority of Prisc., who quotes *Oblīnĕrunt* from Varr., where no such word is to be found; and of Voss. Gram. v. 29, who cites *Līnisti,* from Quintil. Decl. I. 15., where the Mss. and best edd. have *Lūsisti. Lĭnii* is a contraction of *lĭnīvi* and comes from *Lĭnio* of the Fourth Conj. So *Oblĭnīĕrit,* for *oblĭnīvĕrit,* Paul. *Lĭtus,* Plin. *Lisse,* for *līvisse,* Spartian. in Adrian.

*Cresco,[1] crescĕre, crēvi, ——, *grow.*
Nosco,[2] noscĕre, nōvi, nōtus, noscĭtūrus, noscendus, *learn to know.*
Ignosco,[3] ignoscĕre, ignōvi, ignōtus, ignōtūrus, ignoscendus, *pardon.*
Agnosco,[4] agnoscĕre, agnōvi, agnĭtus, agnōtūrus, agnoscendus, *recognize.*
Cognosco,[5] cognoscĕre, cognōvi, cognĭtus, cognĭtu, cognĭtūrus, cognoscendus, *know.*
Pasco,[6] pascĕre, pāvi, pastus, pastum, pastūrus, pascendus, *feed.*
Quiesco,[7] quiescĕre, quiēvi, quiētus, quiētūrus, *rest.*
Scisco,[8] sciscĕre, scīvi, scītus, sciscendus, *ordain.*
Suesco,[9] suescĕre, [suēvi,] suētus, *be accustomed.*

XXII. Inceptives in *-sco*, when their Primitives exist, have no Perfect of their own. The following, whose Primitives are obsolete, make *-ui:*

Coălesco,[10] coălescĕre, coălui, coălĭtus, *grow together.*
*Consānesco,[11] consānescĕre, consānui, ——, *grow sound.*
*Consĕnesco,[12] consĕnescĕre, consĕnui, ——, *grow old.*
*Contĭcesco,[13] contĭcescĕre, contĭcui, ——, *be silent.*
*Convălesco,[14] convălescĕre, convălui, —— *grow strong.*

---

[1] *Crēvi*, Cic. *Crētus*, born, descended, comes by Syncope from *creātus;* neither does the Supine *Crētum*, nor the Participle *Crētūrus*, as coming from *Cresco*, occur in the classics. *Cresse*, for *crēvisse*, Lucr.—[2] *Nōvi*, Ter. *Nosti, nōram, nosse, nōrim*, &c. Cic. passim. *Nōmus*, for *nōvĭmus*, Enn. ap. Diomed. *Nōtus*, Cic. passim. *Noscĭtūrus*, Liv. VIII. 32. ap. Ainsworth, *Noscendus*, Liv.—[3] *Ignōvi*, Cic. *Ignōtus*, Hirt. *Ignōtūrus*, Cic. *Ignoscĭtūrus*, Piso Frugi. *Ignoscendus*, Virg. Georg. IV. 489. *Ignosset*, for *ignōvisset*, Sil.—[4] *Agnōvi*, Cic. *Agnōrunt*, Ovid. *Agnĭtus*, Tacit. Ann. *Agnōtus*, Pacuv. ap. Prisc. *Agnōtūrus*, Sallust. Hist. II. ap. Prisc. *Agnoscendus*. Sil.—[5] *Cognōvi*, Virg. Æn. IX. 245. *Cognossem, Cognōram, Cognōro*, &c. Cic. passim. *Cognĭtus*, Cic. Off. I. 6. et passim. *Cognĭtu*, Val. Max. *Cognĭtūrus*, Aul. Gell. *Cognoscendus*, Ovid.—[6] *Pāvi*, Tibull. *Pastus*, Cic. c. 25. *Pastum*, Plaut. *Pastūrus*, Varr. R. R. *Pascendus*, Hor. *Pascor*, in Plin. IX. 3. Virg. Georg. III. 314. IV. 181. Æn. II. 471. &c. &c., may be considered as a Deponent, (see Serv. on Virg. Æn. I. 189. II. 215.) or as a Passive, with a Greek construction. But the former seems preferable. Prisc. cites the Supine *Compescĭtum*, but without authority. *Compescĭta*, Inscript.—[7] *Quiēvi* Virg. Æn. VI. 226. *Quiētus* is used as an adjective. *Quiētūrus*, Cic. de Orat.—[8] *Scīvi*, Cic. Off. *Scītus*, decreed, Cic. de Leg. I. 15. *Sciscendus*, ibid. *Sciscor*, depon. Prisc. *Rescītum*, Terent.—[9] *Suēvi*, dissyll. Propert.; but this seems to come rather from *Sueo* of the Second Conj., which we find in Lucr. I. 54. 301. *Suērunt*, for *suēvērunt*, Cic. de Nat. Deor. *Suērint*, dissyll. for *suēvĕrint*, Sil. *Suesti*, for *suēvisti*, Cic. Fam. XV. 8. *Suētus*, Lucan. or *Suëtus*, Hor. I. Sat. 8. 17.—[10] *Coălui*, Sallust. Jug. *Coălĭtus*, Tacit. Hist. IV. 55.—[11] *Consānui*, Cels.—[12] *Consĕnui*. Ovid.—[13] *Contĭcui*, Ovid.—[14] *Convălui*, Ovid.

*Crēbresco,[1] crēbrescĕre, crēbrui *or* crēbui, ——, *increase more and more.*
*Dēlĭquesco,[2] dēlĭquescĕre, dēlĭcui, ——, *become liquid.*
*Dēlĭtesco,[3] dēlĭtescĕre, dēlĭtui, ——, *lurk.*
*Dulcesco,[4] dulcessĕre, dulcui, ——, *grow sweet.*
*Dūresco,[5] dūrescĕre, dūrui, ——, *grow hard.*
*Elanguesco,[6] ēlanguescĕre, ēlangui, ——, *become feeble.*
*Emarcesco,[7] ēmarcescĕre, ēmarcui, ——, *fade away.*
*Erubesco,[8] ērŭbescĕre, ērŭbui, ——, *blush.*
*Evānesco,[9] ēvānescĕre, ēvānui, ——, ēvānĭtūrus, *disappear.*
*Evīlesco,[10] ēvīlescĕre, ēvīlui, ——, *grow cheap.*
*Exāresco,[11] exārescĕre, exārui, ——, *grow dry, wither.*
*Excandesco,[12] excandescĕre, excandui, ——, *grow hot, be enraged.*
*Exhorresco,[13] exhorrescĕre, exhorrui, ——, *shudder, dread.*
*Expallesco,[14] expallescĕre, expallui, ——, *turn pale, dread.*
*Extĭmesco,[15] extĭmescĕre, extĭmui, ——, *be afraid.*
*Frăcesco,[16] frăcescĕre, frăcui, ——, *grow mouldy.*
*Inăresco,[17] ĭnārescĕre, ĭnārui, ——, *grow dry, wither.*
*Incrēbresco,[18] incrēbrescĕre, incrēbrui *or* incrēbui, ——, *increase, grow frequent.*
*Indŏlesco,[19] indŏlescĕre, indŏlui, ——, indŏlescendus, *grieve.*
*Innōtesco,[20] innōtescĕre, innōtui, ——, *become known.*
*Intŭmesco,[21] intŭmescĕre, intŭmui, ——, *begin to swell.*
*Irraucesco,[22] irraucescĕre, irraucui, ——, *grow hoarse.*
*Măcresco,[23] măcrescĕre, măcrui, ——, *grow lean.*
*Mātūresco,[24] mātūrescĕre, mātūrui, ——, *ripen.*
*Obbrūtesco,[25] obbrūtescĕre, obbrūtui, ——, *become brutish, or senseless.*
*Obcallesco,[26] obcallescĕre, obcallui, ——, *become callous.*
*Obdūresco,[27] obdūrescĕre, obdūrui, *grow hard.*

---

1 *Crebresco* and its Compounds make *bui* oftener than *brui*: *Crebuerat*, Apul. Met. al. *crebruerat.* 'Libri et Mss. variant, et cum iis eruditorum sententiæ.' *Facciolat.*—2 *Delicui*, Ovid. Trist.—3 *Dēlĭtui*, Cæs. B. G. Though *Dĭliteo* does not exist now, yet we find its Participle *Dēlĭtens* in Plin. xxxv. 1.—4 *Dulcui*, Paulin. Nolan. *Dulcit* occurs in Lucr. ii. 473., where some read *Dulcis*; others *Dulcet*, as if from *Dulceo.*—5 *Durui*, Ovid. Met. *Dureo*, mentioned by Prisc., and by Servius on Virg. Georg. i. 91., does not exist.—6 *Elangui*, Val. Flac. iv. 572.—7 *Emarcui*, Plin.—8 *Erŭbui*, Ovid. Fast.—9 *Evānui*, Virg. Æn. ix. 658. *Evānĭtūrus*, Lactant.—10 *Evīlui*, Sueton. Claud.—11 *Exārui*, Cic. Fam.—12 *Excandui*, Cic. Tusc.—13 *Exhorrui*, Ovid. Met. Yet *Exhorreat* is found in Colum. x. 154.—14 *Expallui*, Hor.—15 *Extĭmui*, Terent. Hec. *Extĭmērentur* occurs in Tacit. Ann. xv. 71., but it is rendered doubtful by various readings.—16 *Frăcui*, Cato, R. R.—17 *Inārui*, Colum.—18 Some prefer writing *Incrēbesco.* See *Crēbresco.* *Incrēbrui*, Cic. Orat. c. 20. Phil. xiv. 5.—19 *Indŏlui*, Ovid. Trist. *Indŏlescendus*, Sidon.—20 *Innōtui*, Ovid. Am.—21 *Intŭmui*, Ovid. Fast.—22 *Irraucuĕrit*, Cic. Or. i. 61., where some some read *irrausĕrit.*—23 *Măcrui*, Festus in 'Curionem.'—24 *Mātūrui*, Ovid.—25 *Obbrūtui.* Festus in 'Obrutuit.'—26 *Obcallui*, Cels.—27 *Obdūrui*, Cic. Tusc.

*Obmūtesco,[1] obmūtescĕre, obmūtui, ——, *grow dumb, become silent.*
*Obstŭpesco,[2] obstŭpescĕre, obstŭpui, ——, *be amazed.*
*Obsurdesco,[3] obsurdescĕre, obsurdui, ——, *grow deaf.*
*Pĕrāresco,[4] pĕrārescĕre, pĕrārui, ——, *grow dry.*
*Percrēbresco,[5] percrēbrescĕre, percrēbrui *or* percrēbui, *be divulged, prevail.*
*Pĕrhorresco,[6] pĕrhorrescĕre, pĕrhorrui, ——, *shudder, dread.*
*Pertĭmesco,[7] pertĭmescĕre, pertĭmui, ——, pertĭmescendus, *fear greatly.*
*Rĕcrūdesco,[8] rĕcrūdescĕre, rĕcrūdui, ——, *grow raw, be sore again.*
*Rĕlanguesco,[9] rĕlanguescĕre, rĕlangui, ——, *be languid.*
*Rĕvĭresco,[10] rĕvĭrescĕre, rĕvĭrui, ——, *become green again.*
*Vīlesco,[11] vīlescĕre, vīlui, ——, *become worthless.*

XXIII. These make *-ēvi:*

Adŏlesco,[12] ădŏlescĕre, ădŏlēvi, ădultus, *grow up.*
Exŏlesco,[13] exŏlescĕre, exŏlēvi, exŏlētus, *grow old.*
Mansuesco,[14] mansuescĕre, mansuēvi, mansuētus, *grow mild, become tame; make tame.*

To which add:

Exardesco,[15] exardescĕre, exarsi, exarsus, *be inflamed.*
*Rĕfrīgesco,[16] rĕfrīgescĕre, rĕfrixi, ——, *grow cool.*
*Rĕvīvisco,[17] rĕvīviscĕre, rĕvixi, ——, rĕvictūrus, *revive, come to life.*

XXIV. The following Inceptives, though having no other verbal form, want the Perfect:

*Ægresco, *grow sick.*
*Dītesco, *grow rich.*
*Grandesco, *grow big.*
*Grăvesco, *grow heavy.*
*Fătisco, *gape, grow faint.*
*Incurvesco, *bow down.*
*Intĕgrasco, *be renewed.*
*Jŭvenesco, *grow young.*

[1] *Obmūtui*, Plin. Virg. Æn. IV. 279.—[2] *Obstŭpui*, Cic. de Div.—[3] *Obsurdui*, Cic. Somn. Scip.—[4] *Perrārui*, Colum.—[5] *Percrēbrui*, Cæs. B. C. *Percrēbui*, Cic. Verr. Tacit. Ann. XII. 6.—[6] *Pĕrhorrui*, Ovid. Met. VI. 704.—[7] *Pertĭmui*, Nepos in Alcib. 5. Yet *Pertĭmens*, Lactant. *Pertĭmescendus*, Cic. Fam. I. 9.—[8] *Recrūdui*, Liv. x. 19.—[9] *Relangui*, Ovid. Amor. II. 9. 27.—[10] *Rĕvĭrui*, Auct. ad Heren. IV. 34. *Rĕvĭrens* occurs in Albinor. II. 113.—[11] *Vīlui*, Avien. in Arat. 318. Of this Verb the Perfect only is found. See *Evīlesco*.—[12], [13] See *Oleo*, Second Conj. List. II. *Adŏlui*, in the same sense, Varr. ap. Prisc. *Adultus*, Cic. Tusc. *Exŏleo*, mentioned by Prisc. does not exist in the classics.—[14] *Mansuevi*, Lucan. *Mansuētus*, Varr. R. R.; but it is generally used as a mere Adjective.—[15] *Exarsi*, Virg. Æn. VIII. 219. *Exarsus*, Cod. Justin.—[16] *Rĕfrixi*, Cic. *Rĕfrīgui*, Veget. R. V.—[17] *Rĕvixi*, Cic. Verr. Yet *Revīvent*, Paulin. Nolan. *Revicturus*, Senec. Med.

*Lăpĭdesco,	*petrify.*	*Rancesco,	*grow mouldy.*
*Mītesco,	*grow mild.*	*Rĕpuĕrasco,	*become childish.*
*Mollesco,	*grow soft.*	*Stĕrĭlesco,	*grow barren.*
*Pinguesco,	*grow fat.*	*Tĕnĕrasco, *or*	
*Plūmesco,	*be fledged.*	*Tĕnĕresco,	*grow tender.*
*Puĕrasco,	*play the child.*	*Uvesco,	*grow moist.*

XXV. Twelve Verbs of the Third Conjugation end in *-io:*

Allĭcio,[1] allĭcĕre, allexi *or* allĭcui, allectus, allĭciendus, ***allure.***
Aspĭcio,[2] aspicĕre, aspexi, aspectus, aspĭciendus, ***behold.***
Căpio,[3] căpĕre, cēpi, captus, captūrus, căpiendus, ***take.***
Cupio, cupĕre, cupui *or* cupii, cupītus, cupiendus, ***desire.***
Făcio,[4] făcĕre, fēci, factus, factum, factu, factūrus, făciendus, ***do make.***
Fŏdio,[5] fŏdĕre, fōdi, fossus, ***dig.***
*Fŭgio,[6] fŭgĕre, fūgi, ——, fŭgĭtūrus, fŭgiendus, ***fly.***
Jăcio,[7] jăcĕre, jēci, jactus, jăciendus, ***cast.***
Părio,[8] părĕre, pĕpĕri, partus, părĭturus, păriendus, ***bring forth, procure, get.***

Concŭtio,[9] concŭtĕre, concussi, concussus, concŭtiendus, ***shake, move violently.***

---

1 *Allexi*, Plaut. *Allĭcui*, Piso. Hist. ap. Prisc. et Hygin, Poët. Astron. Charis, III. p. 217., and Diomed. I. p. 364., give *Allĭceo, -es;* and the latter adds that *Allĭcio* was the ancient form. *Allectūrus* comes from *Allĕgo*. *Allĭciendus*, Ovid. Art. Am. *Elĭcio*, I draw out, makes *Elĭcui*, Liv. v. 15. *Elexi*, Arnob. *Illĭcio*, I inveigle, *Illexi*, Plaut. Sallust. Cat. c. 59. *Pellĭcio*, I entice, deceive, *Pellexi*, Cic. pro Cluent. Terent. *Pellĭcui*, Liv. Laodam, ap. Prisc. *Pellĭceo, -es*, Charis.—2 *Aspexi*, Cic. passim. *Aspexit*, for *aspexĕrit*, Plaut. *Aspectus*, Tacit. Agric. c. 40. *Aspĭciendus*, Ovid. *Inspectūrus*, Virg. Æn. II. 47. *Inspĭciendus*, Ovid. *Perspectu*, Festus.—3 *Cēpi*, Propert. *Captus*, Cic. Cat. III. 7. et passim. *Exceptum īri*, Cic. *Captūrus*, Sueton. Vesp. *Căpiendus*, Terent. *Capsis*, for *căpĕ si vis*, Cic. Orat. 45. Quintil. I. 5. *Capso, is, it*, for *cēpĕro, is, it*, Plaut.—4 *Fēci*, Virg. Ecl. I. 6. et passim. *Factus*, Cic. Verr. VI. 18. et passim. *Factum īri*, Cic. Fam. *Factu*, Id. ibid. VII. 3. *Factūrus*, Liv. XXVI. 25. *Făciendus*, Val. Flac. *Făcĕ*, for *fac*, Val. Flac. *Făciem*, for *făciam*. Cato ap. Quintil. *Faxo, -is, -it*. See Irreg. Verbs.—5 *Fōdi*, Sil. *Fossus*, Plin. 'Ad *fŏdiendos*, puteos,' Hirt. B. Alex.—6 *Fūgi*, Stat. Theb. Albinov. shortens the first syllable: 'Sic illi vixere, quibus fuit aurea virgo, Quæ bene præcinctos postmodo pulsa *fŭgit;*' unless this can be accounted for by Heterosis. *Fŭgĭtūrus*, Ovid. *Fŭgiendus*, Cic. Off. 'Mors fŭgĭtur,' Cic. de Leg.—7 *Jēci*, Liv. I. 12. et passim. *Jactus*, Virg. Ecl. VI. 41. et passim. *Dējectum*, Hor. *Rĕjectum*, Cic. *Jăciendus*, Curt. *Abjectūrus*, Cic. *Adjĭciendus*, Quintil.—8 *Pĕpĕri*, Tibull. *Pării*, for *pĕpĕri*, Cato, R. R. *Părībit*, for *păriet*, Pompon. ap. Non. *Părīre*, for *părĕre*, Enn. ap. Varr. L. L. *Partus*, Virg. Æn. VI. 89. *Partus* is used like the Participle of a Deponent in Colum., *having brought forth*. *Părĭtūrus*, Cic. Orat. *Păriendus*, Cic. Fam.—9 See *Quatio*, List XXVIII. *Concussi*, Juv. Sat. x. 328. *Concussus*, Virg. Georg. I. 159. *Concŭtiendus*, Cels. *Discussūrus*, Liv. *Discŭtiendus*, Cels. *Dēcussu*, Plin.

Răpio,[1] răpĕre, răpui, raptus, raptūrus, răpiendus, *snatch.*
*Săpĭo,[2] săpĕre, săpīvi *or* săpii, ——, *savour, be wise.*

XXVI. To which add four Deponents in *-ior:*

Grădior,[3] grădĕris *or* grădĕre, [grădi,] gressus, *go, walk, advance.*
Mŏrior,[4] mŏrĕris *or* mŏrĕre, mŏri *or* mŏrīri, mortuus, mŏrĭtūrus, *die.*
Orior,[5] ŏrĕris *or* ŏrĕre, ŏrīri, ortus, ŏrĭtūrus, ŏriundus, *rise, spring up.*
Pătior,[6] pătĕris *or* pătĕre, păti, passus, passūrus, pătiendus, *suffer, endure.*

XXVII. The following have neither the Perfect nor the Perfect Participle Passive:

*Ambĭgo,	*doubt.*	*Glisco,[9]	*grow, increase.*
*Clango,[7]	*sound as a trumpet.*	*Gruo,[10]	*crunk like a crane.*
*Claudo,	*be lame.*	*Nexo,[11]	*bind, tie.*
*Cluo,[8]	*be famous.*	*Sătăgo,	*be busily employed.*

Sallo,[12] I season with salt, makes *salsus, salsūrus;* but has no Perfect.

XXVIII. The Perfects of the following are doubtful:

Frendo,[13] frendĕre, frendi, fressus *or* frēsus, *gnash the teeth, break, bruise.*

---

[1] *Răpui,* Phædr. *Raptus,* Virg. Æn. I. 382. et passim. *Raptūrus,* Stat. Theb. *Răpiendus,* Ovid. *Dĭreptum,* Sil. *Ereptum,* Terent. *Præreptum,* Plaut.—[2] *Săpīvi,* Næv. ap. Prisc. *Săpisti,* Mart. *Săpisset,* Plaut. Rud. IV. 1. 8., where Priscian, VII. p. 328. ed. Krehl. reads *săpuisset;* but two of Krehl's Mss. of Priscian have *săpisset,* and another *săpīvisset.* The editio princeps of Plautus in the British Museum, the Mediol. an. 1490., and the edd. of Carpentar, Lucas Olchinensis, and Lambinus, exhibit *săpuisset;* but the Burney Ms., No. 228., in the British Museum, all the Palatine Mss. and the edd. since Lambinus, have *săpisset.* The Mss. of Bohte seem to have the same, since he does not mention a various reading. *Rĕsĭpio,* I savour of, makes *īvi, ii,* or *ui: Rĕsĭpīvi,* Sueton. *Rĕsĭpui,* Cic. *Rĕsĭpisti,* Plaut. *Rĕsipiisse,* Terent. *Consĭpui* and *Dēsipui,* the Perfects of *Consĭpio,* I am perfectly in my senses, and *Dēsipio,* I am foolish, occur only in grammars and dictionaries.—[3] The infinitive does not occur except in the Compounds. *Gressus,* Virg. Æn. VI. 633. The Compounds make *grĕdior: Prŏgrĕdior,* I advance, *prōgrĕdĕris* or *prōgrĕdĕre, prōgrĕdi, prōgressus, prōgressūrus,* &c. [4] *Mŏrīmur,* Enn. ap. Prisc. *Mŏri,* Tibull. *Mŏrīri,* Ovid. Met. *Mortuus,* Cic. passim. *Mŏrĭtūrus,* Tacit. Hist. III. 10.—[5] *Orīri,* Lucr. Cic. Quintil. *Ortus,* Hor. *Orĭtūrus,* ibid. *Oriundus, descended,* Liv. I. 49. et passim.—[6] *Passus,* Virg. Æn. I. 203. et passim. *Passūrus,* Ovid. *Pătiendus,* Id. Trist.—[7] Some give this verb the Perfect *Clanxi,* others *Clangui;* but we have not any authority for either.—[8] *Cluit,* Prudent. *Cluĕrent,* Auson. Prof.—[9] *Glisco* seems to be an Inceptive. *Gliscĕrētur,* pass. Sempron. ap. Non.—[10] This Verb occurs in the Carmen de Philom. v. 23., and in Paul. ex Festo.—[11] Neither *Nexo, ĭs,* nor *Nexo, ās,* has a Perfect. See *Necto,* List XIII.—[12] *Sallĕrent,* Sallust. ap. Prisc. *Sallĕre,* Lucil. *Sallunt,* Id. ap. Diomed. *Salsus,* salted. Colum. *Salsūrus,* Mummius ap. Prisc. See *Sallio,* Fourth Conj. List IV.—[13] *Frendi* and *Frendui* are given in some grammars and dictionaries. See *Frendeo,* Second Conj. List. IX.

Frīgo,[1] frīgĕre, frixi, frictus *or* frixus,	*fry, parch.*
*Fŭro,[2] fŭrĕre, fŭrui, ——,	*be mad, rage.*
Lingo,[3] lingĕre, linxi, linctus, lingendus,	*lick.*
Pando,[4] pandĕre, pandi, passus *or* pansus,	*open.*
Quătio,[5] quătĕre, quassi, quassus,	*shake, agitate.*
*Vīso,[6] vīsĕre, vīsi, ——,	*go see, visit.*

[1] *Frixi*, Diomed. *Frictus*, Cels. *Frixus*, Cels. Sidon.—[2] *Fŭrui*, Serv. ad. Æn. I. 45. *Fŭruĕrunt*, Sedul. I. 196., where some read *fervērunt ; Fŭruit*, Plin. XXXIII. 53. edd Harduin. Bipont. Miller. Franz. *Fuĕrit* in the edd. before Harduin. *Fŭrit*, Brotier.; but he does not say on what authority. *Fŭro, fŭrĭtis*, and all the persons of the Futures and Imperative are nowhere to be found. We meet with *Fŭrĭmus* and *fŭrant* in Senec. Ep. 95. *Fŭrio, is*, Sidon. Carm. XXII. 94.—[3] *Linxi*, given in grammars and dictionaries, does not occur in the classics now extant. Yet we have *Linctus*, Plin. XXXV. 15. and *Lingendus*, XXXI. 9.—[4] *Pandi*, Prisc. X. p. 891.; but he cites no authority. *Passus*, Ovid. Virg. Æn. I. 483. et passim. *Pansus*, Vitruv. The Compounds also want their Perfects. *Dispando*, I spread abroad, has only *Dispansus*, Plin. *Expando*, I spread out, *Expassus*, Tacit. Hist. Cæcil. ap. Non. *Expansus*, Plin. *Oppando*, I spread over against, *Oppassus*, Tertull. Apol. *Oppansus*, Id. *Prōpando* does not occur; yet *Prōpassus*, Apul. Florid. *Prōpansus*, Id.—[5] *Quassi* is found only in grammars and dictionaries. *Quassus*, Ovid. *Dĕcussu*, Plin. See *Concŭtio*, List XXV.—[6] The Perfects *Vīsi*, *Invīsi*, *Rĕvīsi*, are found only in grammars and dictionaries.

XXIX. DEPONENTS.

Amplector,[1] **amplectĕris** *or* **amplectĕre, amplecti, amplexus, amplectendus,** ***embrace, encircle.***
Apiscor,[2] **ăpiscĕris** *or* **ăpiscĕre, ăpisci, aptus,** ***get.***
Commĭniscor,[3] **commĭniscĕris** *or* **commĭniscĕre, commĭnisci, commentus,** ***devise, invent.***
Complector,[4] **complectĕris** *or* **complectĕre, complecti, complexus,** ***embrace, compass, comprehend.***
Dēfĕtiscor,**[5] **dēfĕtiscĕris** *or* **dēfĕtiscĕre, dēfĕtisci, ——** ***be weary.
Expergiscor,[6] **expergiscĕris** *or* **expergiscĕre, expergisci, experrectus,** ***awake, rise.***
Fruor,[7] **fruĕris** *or* **fruĕre, frui, fruĭtus** *or* **fructus, fruĭtūrus, fruendus,** ***enjoy, reap the fruits of.***
Fungor,[8] **fungĕris** *or* **fungĕre, fungi, functus, functūrus,** ***discharge, perform a duty.***
Irascor,**[9] **īrascĕris** *or* **īrascĕre, īrasci, ——,** ***be angry.
Lābor,[10] **lābĕris** *or* **lābĕre, lābi, lapsus, lapsūrus,** ***glide, slip, err, fall gently, decay.***
Lŏquor,[11] **lŏquĕris** *or* **lŏquĕre, lŏqui, lŏcūtus, lŏcūtūrus, lŏquendus,** ***speak.***
Nanciscor,[12] **nanciscĕris** *or* **nanciscĕre, nancisci, nactus,** ***find by chance, find, obtain.***

---

[1] *Amplecto, is,* Prisc. and Diomed. *Amplexētur, amplecti,* pass. Prisc. VIII. p. 791. *Amplector, āris,* Prisc. ibid. *Amplexus,* having embraced, Ovid. *Amplexus,* pass. Petron. ap. Prisc. *Amplectendus,* Manil., where some Mss. have *amplectandus.*—[2] *Apiscuntur,* pass. C. Fannius ap. Prisc. VIII. p. 791. *Aptus,* Plaut. '*Apiscendi,* favoris facultas,' Tacit. Ann. I. 31. The compounds make *-eptus.*—[3] *Commĭniscĭmus,* act. Apul. Met. *Commentus,* having devised, Cic. Nat. Deor. *Commentus,* pass. feigned, fictitious, Ovid.—[4] *Complecto,* act. Pompon. ap. Non. *Complecti,* pass. Cic. ap. Prisc. *Complexus,* having embraced, Stat. Sylv. *Complexus,* enfolded, interwoven, Lucr. and Plaut. Amph.—[5] *Dēfătiscens,* Plin. as if from *Dēfătiscor. Dēfessus* is a mere adjective. The simple *Fătiscor* occurs in Lucr. v. 309. *Fătisco,* I faint, am exhausted, Val. Flac. and Stat. Sylv. passim.—[6] *Experrectus essem,* Cic. Att.—[7] *Fruĭtus,* Senec. Epist. *Fructus,* Lucr. III. 953. *Perfructus,* Cic. Fragm. ap. Prisc. x. p. 883. *Fruĭtūrus,* Cic. Tusc. *Fruĭtūrum,* Apul. Apol. where some read *Fructūrum.* See Voss. Anal. III. 32. *Fruendus,* Ovid.—[8] *Fungi,* pass. Sex. Pedius ap. Paul. Dig. *Functus,* Hor. *Functūrus,* Apul. Met. 'Ad suum munus *fungendum,*' Cic. Tusc. III. 7.—[9] *Irascĕre,* act. for *īrasci,* Pompon. *Irātus* is an adjective.—[10] *Lapsus.* Val. Flac. Some Mss. of Virgil have *lapsus,* Georg. III. 448. and *ēlabsus,* II. 305. *Lapsūrus,* Ovid.—[11] *Lŏquĕre, lŏquis,* act. Petron. Frag. Trag. *Lŏcūtus,* Cic. *Lŏcūtūrus,* Ovid. *Lŏquendus,* Mart. v. 26.—[12] *Nactus,* Cic. in Orat. et passim. *Nanctus,* optt. codd. Liv. XXIII. 2. and Plaut.

Nascor,[1] nascĕris *or* nascĕre, nasci, nātus, nātu, nascĭtūrus, *be born, spring up.*
Nitor,[2] nitĕris *or* nitĕre, nīti, nixus *or* nīsus, nīsūrus, *strive, endeavour, be in labour.*
Oblīviscor,[3] oblīviscĕris *or* oblīviscĕre, oblīvisci, oblītus, oblīviscendus, *forget.*
Păciscor,[4] păciscĕris *or* păciscere, păcisci, pactus, păciscendus, *bargain.*
Prŏfĭciscor,[5] prŏfĭcisceris *or* prŏfĭciscĕre, prŏfĭcisci, prŏfectus, prŏfectūrus, *set out on a journey, go.*
Quĕror,[6] quĕrĕris *or* quĕrĕre, quĕri, questus, questum, questūrus, quĕrendus, *lament, bewail.*
*Rĕmĭniscor,[7] rĕmĭniscĕris *or* rĕmĭniscĕre, rĕmĭnisci, ———, *call to mind, recollect.*
*Ringor, ringĕris *or* ringĕre, ringi, ———, *grin, show the teeth.*
Sĕquor,[8] sĕquĕris *or* sĕquĕre, sĕqui, sĕcutus, sĕcūtūrus, sĕquendus, *follow.*
Tuor,[9] tuĕris *or* tuĕre, ——, tūtus, tuendus, *see, protect.*
Ulciscor,[10] ulciscĕris *or* ulciscĕre, ulcisci, ultus, ultum, ulciscendus, *avenge, punish.*
Utor,[11] ūtĕris *or* ūtĕre, ūti, ūsus, ūsūrus, ūtendus, *use.*
*Vescor,[12] vescĕris *or* vescĕre, vesci, ——, vescendus, *feed upon.*

---

1 *Nātus*, Terent. Andr. et passim. *Nātu*, Plin. vi. 33. *Nascĭtūrus*, Pallad. Jun. *Nascĕre*, for *nasci*, Cato R. R.; but the reading is doubtful.—2 *Nixus*, Ovid. passim. *Nīsus*, Cic. pro Cluent. c. 57. Vitruv. i. 2. In all the Mss. of Livy *Nīsus* is more frequent than *Nixus*. Some distinguish them from each other, thus: *Nixus* CORPORE, *nisus* ANIMO; but this distinction does not appear from the classics. *Nīsūrus*, Cæs. B. C. ii. 37. *Annītor*, I lean upon, makes *Annixus*, Virg. Æn. i. 148. et passim; *Annīsus*, Liv. v. 25. *Connītor*, I struggle, bring forth, *Connixus*, Liv. i. 33. et passim; *Connīsus*, Val. Flac. iii. 193. *Enītor*, I struggle hard, bring forth, *Enixus*, Liv. vi. 24. et passim. *Enīsus*, Cic. an Q. Fr. iii. 9. Diomed. i. p. 371. confines *Enixus* to the labour of *bringing forth*, and takes *Enīsus* in a sense of *general exertion*; but this distinction is not favoured by Mss. authority. *Innītor*, I lean upon, *Innixus*, Cæs. B. G. ii. 27. et passim; *Innīsus*, Tacit. *Obnītor*, I struggle against, *Obnixus*, Virg. ix. 724. et passim. *Obnīsus*, Liv. xxxiv. 46. *Rĕnītor*, I resist, has no Perfect Participle Passive. *Subnītor* is not found in the classics; yet *Subnixus*, Virg. Æn. i. 510. et passim.—3 *Oblītus*, Cic. *Oblīviscendus*, Hor.—4 *Păcisco*, Næv. ap. Non. *Pactus sum*, Cic. Servius on Virg. Æn. xi. 133. gives this Verb another Perfect, *Pĕpīgi*. See *Pango* and *Pāgo*, Lists xiii. xvi. *Paciscendus*, Ammian. xxxi. 12.—5 *Prŏfĭcisco*, Plaut. Mil. iv. 8. 19. *Prŏfectus sum*, Cic. passim. *Prŏfectūrus*, Justin.—6 *Questus sum*, Liv. *Questum*, Nepos in Chabr. Plaut. *Questūrus*, Stat. Theb. *Quĕrendus*, Ovid. Met.—7 *Rĕmĭnisco*, Rufus ap. Auson. Epigr.—8 *Sĕcutus sum*, Virg. Ecl. x. 23. et passim. *Sĕcūtūrus*, Lucan. *Sĕquendus*, Ovid. *Sĕquo*, Prisc. viii. p. 799.—9 See *Tueor*, Second Conj. p. 140.—10 *Ultus sum*, Propert. *Ultum*, Sallust. Jug. c. 71. Tacit. Ann. iv. 73. *Ulciscendus*, Cic. Fam. xii. 23. *Ulciscĕrem*, Enn. ap. Non. *Ulcisci*, pass. Sallust. Jug. c. 34. Hence *Ultus*, avenged, punished, Liv. ii. 17.—11 *Utor*, pass. Novius ap. Gell. *Uto, is*, Cato R. R. *Usus sum*, Nepos Att. *Usūrus*, Cic. Verr. *Utendus*, Cic. Verr. iv. 18.—12 *Vescet*, Tertul. de Jejun. c. 5., quoting the Old

IMPERSONALS.

Ningit,[1] ningĕre, ninxit, *it snows.*
Vespĕrascit,[2] vespĕrascĕre, ———, *it draws towards evening.*

[An Alphabetical List of the preceding Verbs of the Third Conjugation, for easy reference. If the compound verb cannot be found in this List, look for the simple; then refer to it in its proper place, and the compound may be found in the notes.]

Test. Num. XI. 4., where the Vulgate has, 'Quis dabit nobis ad *vescendum* carnes?' *Vescendus*, Plin. XX. 5.

[1] *Ningĭtur*, pass. impers. Apul. Florid. I. 2. 2. *Ningunt*, Lucr. II. 627., where some read *pingunt*. *Ninxĕrit*, Accius ap. Prisc. *Ninguit* is approved of by Pierius on Virg. Georg. III. 367.; and by Prisc. ibid. *Ningit* by Caper de Verb. Dub. p. 2249.—[2] *Vespĕrascit* has no Perfect. *Vespĕrascens* occurs in Nepos Pelop. c. 2., and in Tacit. Ann. XVI. 34.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

I. Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation end in *-io*, and change *-io* into *-is* long in the Second Person Present; into *-ivi* long in the Perfect; into *-ire* long in the Infinitive, and into *-itus* long in the Perfect Participle Passive; as,

Audio,[1] audīre, audīvi *or* audii, audītus, audītum, audītu, audītūrus, audiendus, *hear.*—So,

*Cio,[2] cīvi,	*move, excite.*	Impĕdio,[10] īvi *or* ii, D.	*entangle.*
Condio[3] īvi *or* ii,	*season.*	*Insānio,[11] īvi *or* ii,	*be mad.*
Custōdio,[4] īvi *or* ii, D.	*keep.*	Irrētio,[12] īvi *or* ii,	*ensnare.*
*Dormio,[5] īvi *or* ii, M. R. D.	*sleep.*	Lēnio,[13] īvi *or* ii, D.	*mitigate.*
Erŭdio[6] īvi *or* ii, D.	*instruct.*	Mollio,[14] īvi *or* ii, D.	*soften.*
Expĕdio,[7] īvi *or* ii,	*disentangle.*	*Mūgio,[15] īvi *or* ii,	*bellow.*
Fīnio,[8] īvi *or* ii, R. D.	*finish.*	Mūnio,[16] īvi *or* ii, R. D.	*fortify.*
*Gestio,[9] īvi *or* ii,	*leap, desire.*		

---

1 *Audībam*, Ovid. *Audībis*, Plaut. Many of the Verbs of this Conj. making *-īvi*, have also *-ii* in the Perfect. *Audii*, Virg. Ecl. VI. 83. *Audītum*, Hor. *Audītu*, Cæs. B. Afr. *Audītūrus*, Lucan. *Audiendus*, Cæs. B. G.—2 *Cīvi*, Tacit. Ann. XV. 33. & Plaut. The Participle *Cītus* exists only in the Compounds, *Concītus*, summoned, Val. Flac. excited, Lucan. v. 597. *Excītus*, called out, Virg. Æn. X. 38. *Excītūrus*, Liv. *Excībat*, Liv. XXXII. 13. See *Cieo*, Second Conj. —3 *Condīvi*, Cic. pro Cluent. Colum. *Condii*, Varr. R. R. *Condītus*, Cic. de Orat. III. 25.—4 *Custōdībant*, Catull. *Custōdībitur*, Plaut. *Custōdīvi*, Plin. *Custōdii*, Sueton. *Custōdisset*, Auson. Epist. *Custōdītus*, Ovid. *Custōdiendus*, Cæs. B. G.—5 *Dormībo*, Plaut. *Dormīvi*, Ovid. *Dormii*, Cic. Att. *Dormītum*, Hor. I. Sat. 5. 48. *Dormītūrus*, Cels. *Dormiendus*, Catull.—6 *Erŭdīvi*, Cic. Tusc. I. 26. *Erŭdii*, Val. Flac. *Erŭdītus*, Cic. passim. *Erŭdiendus*, Ovid.—7 *Expĕdībo*, Plaut. *Expĕdīvi*, Liv. IX. 9. *Expĕdii*, Val. Flac. *Expedisses*, Cic. *Expĕdītus*, Cic. Mil. c. 10. 'Ad *expediendas* pecunias,' Sueton. Jul. —8 *Fīnīvi*, Ovid. Met. *Finii*, Id. *Fīnītus*, Ovid. Trist. *Fīnītūrus*, Id. Art. Am. *Fīniendus*, Tertull. Scorp.—9 *Gestībant*, Plaut. *Gestīvi*, Gell. *Gestiērunt*, Vell.—10 *Impĕdīvi*, Cic. *Impĕdii*, Hor. I. Sat. 6. 27. Ovid. Met. *Impĕdītus*, Cic. pro Cœl. et passim. *Impĕdiendus*, Ovid. Met.—11 *Insānīvi*, Plaut. *Insānisti*, Cic. Or. c. 67.—12 *Irrētīvi*, Colum. *Irrētisses*, Cic. Catil. I. 6. *Irrētītus*, Cic. Fin. v. 18. et passim.—13 *Lēnībam*, *Lēnībo*, Virg. Æn. v. 527. VI. 468. Propert. *Lēnīvi*, Cic. Att. vi. 2. *Lēnii*, Id. Phil. II. 45. *Lēnītus*, Liv. I. 16. *Lēniendus*, Cels. *Lēniundus*, Sallust. Cat. c. 48.—14 *Mollīvi*, Vell. *Mollii*, Ovid. Met. *Mollītus*, Sil. *Molliendus*, Cic.—15 *Mūgīvi*, Propert. *Mūgissent*, Liv. I. —16 *Mœnio*, anciently. *Mūnīvi*, Cic. Cat. I. 4. *Mūnii*, Nep. Hannib. c. 3. Liv. IX. 29 et passim. *Mūnītus*, Cic. passim. *Mūnītūrus*, Hirt. *Mūniendus*, Cic. *Mūnībis*, Veget. de R. V.

Mūtio,[1] īvi,	*mutter.*	Scio,[7] scīvi, U. R.	*know.*
Nūtrio,[2] īvi *or* ii, D.	*nourish.*	*Servio,[8] īvi *or* ii. M.	*serve, obey.*
Partio,[3] īvi *or* ii, R.	*divide.*	Sōpio,[9] īvi *or* ii.	*lull asleep.*
Pŏlio,[4] īvi, D.	*polish.*	Stăbĭlio,[10] īvi *or* ii,	*establish.*
Pūnio,[5] īvi *or* ii, D.	*punish.*	Tinnio,[11] īvi *or* ii, R.	*tinkle.*
Rĕdĭmo,[6] īvi,	*crown, encircle.*	Vestio,[12] īvi *or* ii,	*clothe.*

II. The following are irregular either in the Perfect, or Perfect Participle Passive, or in both:

Amĭcio,[13] ămĭcīre, ămixi *or* ămicui, ămictus, ămĭciendus, *clothe.*
Apĕrio,[14] ăpĕrīre, ăpĕrui, ăpertus, ăpertūrus, ăpĕriendus, *open.*
Bullio,[15] bullīre, bullii, bullītus, *boil, bubble.*
Compĕrio,[16] compĕrīre, compĕri, compertus, *find out.*
Farcio,[17] farcīre, farsi, farctus, *cram.*
Fastīdio,[18] fastīdīre, fastīdii, fastīdītus, fastīdiendus, *disdain.*
Fulcio,[19] fulcīre, fulsi, fultus, fulciendus, *prop.*

---

1 *Mūtīvi,* Plaut. *Mūtītus,* Terent.—2 *Nūtrībam,* Virg. Æn. VII. 484. *Nūtrībo,* Rhemm. *Nūtrīmus,* for *Nūtrīvīmus.* *Nūtrītor,* for *nūtrīto,* Virg. Georg. II. 425. *Nūtrivi,* Senec. *Nūtrii,* Pers. Sat. *Nūtrissent,* Ovid. *Nūtrītus,* Hor. *Nūtriendus,* Cels.—3 *Partior,* depon. Virg. Æn. I. 198. et passim. *Partīvi,* Sallust. Jug. c. 47. *Partisses,* Lucil. *Partītus,* Cic. Orat. III. 30. *Partītūrus,* Cæs. B. Civ. I. 4.—4 *Pŏlīvi,* Phædr. *Pŏlītus,* Cic. passim. *Pŏliendus,* Vitruv. *Pŏlībant,* Virg. Æn. VIII. 435.—5 *Pūnivi,* Apul. Met. *Pūnii,* Sueton. Jul. c. 74. *Pūnisse,* Tib. c. 61. *Pūnītus,* punished, Cic. Inv. *Pūnītus,* having punished, Cic. Mil. *Pūniendus,* Cic. *Pœnībat,* anciently, Lucr. See *Mūnio* in this List.—6 *Rĕdĭmīvit,* Sueton, where Baumgarten-Crusius reads *rĕdĭmiit.* *Rĕdĭmītus,* Tibull. passim. *Rĕdĭmībat,* Virg. Æn. x. 538.—7 *Scīvi,* Terent. 'Pro *scivisse,* rectius dicimus *scisse.*' Facciolat. *Scisse,* Liv. Ovid. Fast. *Scisti,* Ovid. *Scissent,* Cic. Att. The Participle *Scītus* is used in an active signification, *knowing, shrewd.* *Scītūrus,* Liv. III. Senec. Epist. 6. *Scitu* facile, Terent.—8 *Servīvi,* Plaut. 21. *Servii,* Vell. *Servisset,* Cic. *Servistis,* Liv. *Servītum,* Virg. Æn. II. 786. *Servītum est,* impers. Cic. Or. *Servības,* Plaut. *Servibo,* Merc.—9 *Sōpīvi,* Liv. *Sōpiit,* Vell. *Sōpierat,* Tibull. *Sōpistis,* Ovid. Met. *Sōpītus,* Virg. Æn. x. 642. et passim.—10 *Stăbĭlīvi,* Plin. *Stăbĭlisset,* Gell. *Stăbĭlītus,* Lucr.—11 *Tinnīvi,* *Tinnii,* Plaut. *Tinnītūrus,* Sueton.—12 *Vestīvi,* Cic. de Nat. Deor. *Vestīĕrint,* Colum. *Vestītus,* Propert. passim.—13 *Amĭcui,* Brut. ap. Diomed. *Amixi,* Varr. ibid. Some add *Amĭcīvi,* but without authority. *Amictus,* Hor. *Amĭciendus,* Fronton. ad M. Aurel.—14 *Apĕrībo,* Plaut. *Apĕrui,* Liv. passim. Some think the Perfect *Apĕrii* might also be used, reading in Cic. Att. VII. 3. *Apĕriĕrīmus,* where the true lection is *Apĕruĕrīmus.* *Apertus,* Cic. passim. *Apertūrus,* Liv. *Apĕriendus,* Sallust. Cat. c. 58.—15 *Bullii,* Apic. *Bullītus,* Veget. Veter.—16 *Compĕri,* Cic. passim. *Compertus,* Cic. passim. *Compĕrior,* depon. *I know assuredly,* Sall. Jug. c. 49. Hence *Compertus est,* for *compĕrit,* Tertull.—17 *Farsi,* Senec. Epist. *Farctus,* Cic. passim. 'Ita in melioribus libris exaratum est.' Voss. Anal. III. 33. Some write *Fartus.* The Oxford Annotators on Lily quote *Farcītus* from Cicero; others quote it from Varro; but this appears to be a mistake. *Farsus,* Hygin. Fab.—18 *Fastīdii,* Mart. *Fastīdīvi* is found only in grammars and dictionaries. *Fastīdītus,* Ovid. Trist. *Fāstīdiendus,* Plin.—19 *Fulsi,* Cic. *Fulxi,* Prisc. *Fulcīvi,* Vet. Inscript. sub Honor. et Theodos. ap. Murator. p. 466. *Fultus,* Virg. Ecl. VI. 53. *Fulcītus,* Cœl. Aurel. Tard, *Fulciendus,* Cels.

*Glūtio,[1] glūtire, glūtii, ——, *swallow.*
*Grunnio,[2] grunnire, grunnii, ——, *grunt.*
Haurio,[3] haurīre, hausi, *rarely* haurii, haustus, haustūrus *or* hausūrus, hauriendus, *draw, drink up, absorb.*
*Lascīvio,[4] lascivīre, lascīvii, ——, *be wanton, frisk.*
*Lĭgūrio,[5] lĭgūrire, lĭgūrii, ——, *feed delicately.*
*Obēdio,[6] ŏbēdire, ŏbēdii, ——, ŏbēdītūrus, *obey.*
Opĕrio,[7] ŏpĕrire, ŏpĕrui, ŏpertus, ŏpĕriendus, *cover, hide.*
*Prōsĭlio,[8] prōsĭlire, prōsĭlui *or* prōsĭlīvi, ——, *sally forth.*
Rĕpĕrio,[9] rĕpĕrire, rĕpĕri, rĕpertus, rĕpertūrus, D. *find.*
*Sævio,[10] sævīre, sævii, ——, sævītūrus, *rage.*
*Sălio,[11] sălire, sălui *or* sălii, ——, *leap.*
Sancio,[12] sancīre, sanxi *or* sancii, sancītus *or* sanctus, sanciendus, *establish, ratify.*
Sarcio,[13] sartus, sarsi, sarcīre, *patch, repair.*
Sarrio,[14] sarrīre, sarrīvi *or* sarrui, sarrītus, sarriendus, *weed with a hook, hoe.*

---

[1] *Glūtisse,* Juv. Sat. IV. 28. *Glutīvi,* found in grammars and dictionaries, does not occur in the classics. 'Mors *glūtīta,*' Tertull. adv. Marc.—[2] *Grunnisse,* Juv. *Grunnīvi* is found only in grammars and dictionaries.—[3] *Hausi,* Virg. Æn. I. 742. *Haurii,* Varr. ap. Prisc. *Haustus,* Val. Flac. et passim. *Hauses,* Solin. *Haurītus,* Apul. Met. *Haurītum,* ibid. *Haurītu,* ibid. *Haustūrus,* Cic. *Hausūrus,* Virg. Æn. IV. 384. *Haurītūrus,* Juvenc. *Hauriendus,* Colum. *Hauribant,* Lucr.—[4] *Lascīvisset,* Gell.—[5] *Lĭgūrii,* Hor. *Oblĭgūrii,* Cic. Catil. II. 5. *Lĭgūrīvi,* given in grammars and dictionaries, does not exist.—[6] *Obēdībo,* Afran. ap. Non. *Obēdisse,* Apul. Florid. *Obedīvi* is not found in the classics. *Obēdītūrus,* Plin.—[7] *Opĕrui,* Terent. *Opertus,* Virg. Georg. I. 465. et passim. *Opĕriendus,* Cels.—[8] *Prōsĭlui,* Val. Flac. Lucan. *Prōsĭlīvi,* Curt. VII. 4., and so some read in Liv. l. c.; but the Perfect in *ui* seems more correct. See *Sălio* in this List. *Transĭlio,* I leap over, makes *Transĭlui,* Liv. I. 7. *Transĭlīvi,* Plin. et Plaut. or *Transĭlii,* Hirt. *Transĭliendus,* Ovid.—[9] *Rĕpĕri,* Ovid. Met. et passim. When the first syllable of this Perfect is made long, some double the P. *Rĕpertus,* Virg. Æn. VI. 343. *Rĕpertūrus,* Curt. *Rĕperiendus,* Cic. *Rĕpĕrībo,* Cæcil. et Pompon. ap. Non.—[10] *Sævii,* Gell. *Sævit,* for *Sæviit,* Ovid. Met. *Sævītum est* impers. *cruelty was exercised,* Liv. I. 1. Curt. VIII. 10. 6. *Sævītūrus,* Liv. *Sævībat,* Lucr.—[11] *Sălui,* Virg. Georg. II. 384. Ovid. *Sălii,* Claud. See Heins on Ovid. *Sălīvi,* found in grammars and dictionaries, does not exist in the classics. So *Dĕsĭlio,* I dismount, I alight, *dēsĭlui,* Virg. Æn. XI. 501. *dēsĭlii,* Cæs. B. G. IV. 12. *Exsĭlio,* I spring forth, *exsĭlui,* Plaut. *exsĭlii,* Sil. *Subsĭlio,* I spring up, *subsĭlui,* Propert. IV. 8. 46. *subsĭlii,* Senec. Epist. 13. Three have *ui* only: *Assĭlio,* I leap upon, *assĭlui.* Val. Flac. I. 258. *Dissĭlio,* I fly asunder, I burst, *dissĭlui,* Virg. Æn. III. 415. *Insĭlio,* I leap upon, *insĭlui,* Ovid. Met. III. 367. & Plaut. See *Prosĭlio.*—[12] *Sanxi,* Cic. Tusc. I. 27. Liv. XXIV. 8. Propert. *Sancii,* Pompon. ap. Diomed. *Sancīvi* is quoted by Nizolius from Cic. pro Planc., where no such form is to be found; and by others from Liv. X. 9., where the Mss. and best edd. have *sanxi.* *Sancītus,* Cic. de Harusp. Resp. *Sanctus,* Liv. X. 9. & Quintil. *Sanciendus,* Liv. VIII. 7.—[13] *Sarci,* Cato R. R. *Sartus,* Juvenal. III. 254. et passim. '*Sarciendæ* infamiæ,' &c. Cæs. B. C. III. 74.—[14] *Sarrīvi,* Colum. *Sarrui,* Cato R. R. *Sarrii,* given in some dictionaries, does not occur, except in the various reading of Cato. *Sarrītus,* Colum. *Sarriendus,* Colum.

Sentio,[1] sentīre, sensi, sensus, sensūrus, *feel, perceive.*
Sĕpĕlio,[2] sĕpĕlīre, sĕpĕlīvi, sĕpĕlii *or* sĕpĕli, sĕpultus,
sĕpultūrus, sĕpĕliendus, *bury, inter.*
Sēpio,[3] sēpīre, sepsi, septus, *hedge in, enclose.*
*Sĭtio,[4] sĭtīre, sĭtii, ——, *thirst, thirst after.*
Suffio,[5] suffīre, suffii, suffītus, suffiendus, *fumigate.*
*Vāgio,[6] vāgīre, vāgii, ———, *cry as a child.*
*Vĕnio,[7] venīre, vēni, ———, ventūrus, *come.*
Vincio,[8] vincīre, vinxi, vinctus, vinctūrus, vinciendus, *bind.*

III. These Verbs end in *-eo:*

*Eo,[9] īre, ii *or* īvi, ——, itūrus, *go.*
*Queo,[10] quīre, quīvi *or* quii, ——, *be able.*
*Nĕqueo,[11] nĕquīre, nĕquīvi *or* nĕquii, ——, *cannot.*
*Vēneo,[12] vēnīre, vēnii, ———, vēnitūrus, *be sold.*

---

1 *Sensi,* Cæs. B. G. v. 32. & Hor. *Sensti,* for *sensisti,* Terent. *Sensus,* Arnob. *Sensūrus,* Ovid. Met.—2 *Sĕpĕlīvi,* Senec. Epist. *Sĕpĕlii,* Petron. *Sĕpĕli,* Pers. Sat. *Sĕpultus,* Virg. Æn. II. 265. et passim. *Sĕpĕlītus,* Cato. ap Prisc. *Sĕpultūrus,* Sidon. Carm. *Sĕpĕliendus,* Cic. Tusc. II. 13.—3 Dausqu. Cellar. Noris. Pier. write *Sæpio,* with a diphthong; Voss. Heins. Erythræus and others write it with a single vowel. *Sepsi,* Cic. Fam. xv. 4. Nat. Deor. Virg. Æn. I. 415. & Tacit. Ann. Dictionaries give *Sēpīvi, Sēpītum;* but neither *sēpītus,* nor *sēpītum* have any place in the classics; nor is *sēpīvi* to be found, with the exception of the contracted form *sēpissent* in Liv. XLIV. 39., where the true reading is *sepsissent.* See Gronov. on the passage, Voss. Anal. III. 33. *Septus,* Virg. Æn. IX. 551. et passim.—4 *Sĭtisti,* Justin. *Sĭtīvi,* given by grammars and dictionaries, does not occur in the classics.—5 *Suffii,* Propert. IV. 8. 83. See Broukhus & Burman on the passage. *Suffītus,* Ovid. Fast. *Suffiendus,* Colum.—6 The author of the Carmen de Philom. makes the first syllable short. *Vāgii,* Ovid.—7 *Vēnībo,* Pompon. ap. Non. *Vēni,* Cic. *Ventūrus,* Virg. VI. 66. *Vĕnītur, ventum est,* impers. passim. *Inventu* ardua, Plin. II. 46.—8 *Vinxi,* Virg. Æn. XI. 81. *Vinxtus,* Ovid. et passim. *Vinctūrus,* Virg. Georg. II. 94. *Vinciendus,* Cic.—9 *Ivi* is rare; it occurs in Aul. Gell. XIII. 12. 3. *Ii,* Liv. Cic. Fam. Virg. Æn. I. 376. et passim. These Compounds make *ii: Abeo,* I depart, *ăbii; Adeo,* I approach, *ădii; Anteeo,* I go before, *anteii; Coĕo,* I meet, *coii; Exeo,* I go out, *exii; Intĕreo,* I die, *intĕrii; Introĕo,* I enter, *introii; Prōdeo,* I come forth, *prōdii; Transeo,* I pass over, *transii.* But *Ineo,* I enter, makes *ĭnii,* Cic. et passim; *ĭni,* Stat. Theb. *Obeo,* I go about, undergo, die, *ŏbīvi,* Virg. Æn. VI. 802. *Obii,* Lucr. *Pĕreo,* I perish, *pĕrii,* Ovid. *Pĕrīvi* occurs only in Apul. Met. *Præeo,* I go before, *præīvi,* Plin. *præii,* Liv. *Prætĕreo,* I go beyond, *prætĕrii,* Ovid. Art. Am. et passim; *prætĕrīvi,* Apul. Met. *Rĕdeo,* I return, *rĕdii,* Cic. et passim; *rĕdīvi,* Lucil. ap. Non. *Sŭbeo,* I go under, *sŭbīvi,* Ovid. *sŭbii,* Hor. I. Sat. 9. 21. *Itūrus,* Cic.—10 *Quīvi,* Virg. Æn. VI. 463. Terent. *Quii,* Lucr. VI. 855. See Irregular Verbs. *Quĭtus,* Accius ap. Diomed.—11 *Nĕquīvi,* Virg. Æn. VI. 507. *Nĕquii,* Sall. Jug. c. 18. See Irregular Verbs.—12 *Vēnii.* Cic. Cato R. R. et passim. *Vēnisse,* Liv. II. 14. *Vēnīvi,* given in grammars and dictionaries, does nor occur in the classics. Some give this Verb a Supine, *Vēnum,* which is a noun, and one of its component parts, (*Vēnum eo,*) and of which the ablative *Vēno* occurs in Tacit. Ann. XIII. 51 *Vēnītus,* Sedul. Hymn. *Vēnītūrus,* Senec. de Const. Sap. c. 3. See Irregular Verbs.

P 2

IV. The Perfects of the following Verbs are doubtful:

*Cambio,[1] campsi,	*exchange.*	*Lippio,[5] īvi, R.	*be blear-eyed.*
*Dēmentio,[2] īvi,	*be mad.*	*Raucio,[6] rausi, R.	*be hoarse.*
Effūtio,[3] īvi, ītus,	*speak foolishly.*	Sallio,[7] īvi, ītus, R. D.	*season with salt.*
*Fĕrio,[4] fĕrii, D.	*strike.*		

V. These have neither Perfects nor Perfect Participles:

*Balbūtio,[8]	*stammer.*	*Ineptio,	*trifle.*
*Cæcūtio,	*be dimsighted.*	*Prūrio,	*itch, tickle.*
*Fĕrōcio,	*be fierce.*	*Rūgio,	*roar as a lion.*
*Gannio,	*yelp, whine.*	*Sāgio,	*foresee.*
*Glōcio,	*cluck as a hen.*	*Scatūrio,	*gush out.*
*Grandio,	*make great.*	*Singultio,	*sob.*
*Hinnio,	*neigh.*	*Tussio,	*cough.*

Păvio, I beat, pave, has no Perfect; but the Perfect Participle *Păvītus* is found in Varr. R. R. I. 51. 1. and in Plin. IX. 10.

---

1 *Campsi*, Prisc. x. p. 906.—2 *Dēmentīvi*, Grammatici.—3 *Effūtīvi*, Grammatici. *Effūtītus*, Cic. Div.—4 *Fĕrii*, Acron in his commentary on Hor. I. Od. 7. 11. The Perfect of the Compound *Rĕfĕrio*, I strike again, does not occur.—5 *Lippivi*, Grammatici. *Lippītūrus*. Plin.—6 The Perfect *Rausi*, and Supine *Rausum* occur only in Prisc. x. p. 907. *Rausūrus*, Lucil, ap. Prisc. ibid.—7 *Sallīvi*, or *salīvi*, Grammatici. *Sallitus*, or *salītus*, Colum. *Salliturus*, Næv. ap. Prisc. ibid. *Salliendus*, Colum. The Participles *Salsus*. Colum. and *Salsūrus*, Mumm. ap. Diomed. l. c. come from *Sallo, is*, of the Third Conjugation.—8 *Balbūtivi* in some dictionaries.

VI. DEPONENTS.

Blandior,[1] **-īris** *or* **-īre, -īri, -ītus,** *soothe, flatter.*—So,

Largior,[2]	*give liberally, lavish.*	**Partior,**[5] D.	*divide.*
Mentior,[3] R.	*lie.*	**Pŏtior,**[6] R. D.	*obtain, enjoy.*
Mōlior,[4] D.	*attempt something difficult, contrive, plan.*	**Sortior,**[7] R.	*draw lots.*

VII. EXCEPTIONS.

Assentior,[8] **assentīris** *or* **assentīre, assentīri, assensus, assensūrus,** *assent.*
Expĕrior,[9] **expĕrīris** *or* **expĕrīre, expĕrīri, expertus, experturus, expĕriendus,** *try.*
Mētior,[10] **mētīris** *or* **mētīre, mētīri, mensus** *or* **mētītus, mētiendus,** *measure.*
Oppĕrior,[11] **oppĕrīris** *or* **oppĕrīre, oppĕrīri, oppertus** *or* **oppĕrītus, oppĕriendus,** *wait for.*
Ordior,[12] **ordīris** *or* **ordīre, ordīri, orsus, ordiendus,** *begin.*

---

[1] *Blandītus*, Ovid. Met. *Blandītus*, pass. Verrius ap. Prisc. VIII. p. 792.—[2] *Largio*, Accius ap. Non. Hence *Largītus*, pass. Tibull. *Largītus*, having bestowed, Cic.—[3] *Mentio*, Prisc. Hence *Mentītus*, pass. Virg. Æn. II. 422. Ovid. *Mentībor*, Plaut. *Mentītus*, having lied, Propert. *Mentītūrus*, Ovid.—[4] *Mōliebātur*, pass. Apul. Met. *Mōlītus*, Ovid. Am. Virg. Georg. I. 494. *Mōliendus*, Cic. Orat.—[5] *Partītus*, Cic. de Univ. *Partiendus*, Cic. See *Partio*, List I.—[6] This verb is sometimes used by the poets in the Third Conj. in the Pres. Indic. and Imperf. Subj. See Virg. Æn. III. 55. Ovid. Met. XIII. 130. Also in the Pres. Infin. *Pŏti*, Pacuv. ap. Non. VII. 66. *Pŏtīvit*, Plaut. *Pŏtītus*, Cæs. B. G. et passim. *Pŏtītūrus*, Cic. Tusc. I. 37. *Pŏtiundus*, Ovid. Met.—[7] *Sortītus*, Virg. Æn. VIII. 444. & Ovid. *Sortītūrus*, Cic.—[8] *Assentio*, act. passim. Hence *Assensus*, pass. Cic. Acad. IV. 31. *Assensus*, having assented, Cic. *Assensūrus*, Cic.—[9] *Expĕrībis*, Catull. *Expertus*, Val. Flac. *Expertūrus*, Plaut. *Experītūrus*, Cato R. R. *Expĕriendus*, Ovid.—[10] *Mētiātur*, pass. Arnob. Hence *Mensus*, measured, Cic. N. D. II. 27. *Mensus*, having measured, Val. Flac. v. 476. *Mētītus*, Claud. Ep. *Mētiendus*, Cic. Orat. c. 57.—[11] *Oppertus*, Terent. *Oppĕrītus*, Plaut. *Oppĕriendus*, Tacit. Ann. IV. 6.—[12] *Orsus*, Virg. Æn. VI. 125. et passim. *Ordītus*, pass. Sidon. Ep. *Ordiendus*, Cic. Leg. I. 7.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

The IRREGULAR VERBS are, *Sum*, 'I am;' *Eo*, 'I go; *Queo*, 'I am able;' *Volo*, 'I am willing;' *Fero*, 'I bear *or* suffer;' *Fio*, 'I am made,' 'I become;' *Edo*, 'I eat,' and their compounds.

SUM has already been conjugated. After the same manner are formed its compounds.[1]

Prosum, *to do good*, has a *d* where *sum* begins with *e*.
Prosum, prodesse, profui.

Indicative Mode.

PR. Pro-sum, prod-es, prod-est; pro-sŭmus, prod-estis, *&c.*
IMP. Prod-ĕram, prod-ĕras, prod-ĕrat; prod-erāmus, *&c.*
PER. Pro-fui, pro-fuisti, pro-fuit; pro-fuĭmus, pro-fuistis, *&c.*
PLU. Pro-fuĕram, pro-fuĕras, pro-fuĕrat; pro-fuerāmus, *&c.*
FUT. Prod-ĕro, prod-ĕris, prod-ĕrit; prod-erĭmus, *&c.*

Subjunctive Mode.

PR. Pro-sim, pro-sis, pro-sit; pro-sīmus, pro-sītis, pro-sint.
IMP. Prod-essem, prod-esses, prod-esset; prod-essēmus, *&c.*
PER. Pro-fuĕrim, pro-fuĕris, pro-fuĕrit; pro-fuerĭmus, *&c.*
PLU. Pro-fuissem, pro-fuisses, pro-fuisset; pro-fuissēmus, *&c.*
FUT. Pro-fuĕro, pro-fuĕris, pro-fuĕrit; pro-fuerĭmus, *&c.*

---

[1] Compounds of *Sum*:—*Absum*, I am absent; *Adsum*, I am present; *Dēsum*, I am wanting; *Intersum*, I am present; *Obsum*, I am against, I hurt; *Possum*, I am able; *Præsum*, I am before, I preside over; *Prōsum*, I avail, I do good; *Subsum*, I am under, I lurk; *Sŭpersum*, I am over and above, I survive; and *Insum*, I am in, which wants the Perfect. *Prōsum* takes D after *pro*, when the simple Verb begins with E; as, *Prosum*, *prodest*, *prodesse*, &c. Compounds of *Eo*:—*Abeo*, I depart; *Adeo*, I approach; *Anteeo*, I go before; *Coeö*, I assemble, I meet; *Exeo*, I go out; *Ineo*, I enter; *Intĕreo*, I perish, I die; *Introeo*, I come in; *Obeo*, I am about, I manage, I die; *Pĕreo*, I perish; *Præeo*, I go before; *Prætĕreo*, I pass by; *Prōdeo*, I go forth; *Rĕdeo*, I return; *Sŭbeo*, I go under; *Transeo*, I pass over; *Vēneo*, I am sold. Compound of *Queo*:—*Nĕqueo*, I am unable. Compounds of *Vŏlo*:—*Nōlo*, I am unwilling; *Mālo*, I am more willing. Compounds of *Fĕro*:—*Affĕro*, I bring; *Antĕfĕro*, I prefer; *Aufĕro*, I take away; *Circumfĕro*, I carry round; *Confĕro*, I contribute; *Dēfĕro*, I convey; *Diffĕro*, I disperse; *Effĕro*, I carry forth; *Infĕro*, I bring in; *Offĕro*, I offer; *Perfĕro*, I carry through; *Præfĕro*, I prefer; *Prōfĕro*, I bring forward; *Rĕfĕro*, I bring back; *Suffĕro*, I take up, I endure. Compounds of *Edo*:—*Adĕdo*, I devour; *Ambĕdo*, I eat around, I gnaw; *Cŏmĕdo*, I eat ap; *Exĕdo*, I consume; *Pĕrĕdo*, I eat through.

Imperative Mode.

Pr.	2. Prod-es *or* prod-esto,	2. Prod-este *or* prod-estōte,
	3. Prod-esto;	3. Pro-sunto.

Infinitive Mode.

Pr.	Prod-esse.	Fut.	Esse pro-futūrus, -a, -um.
Per.	Pro-fuisse.		Fuisse pro-futūrus.

Participle.

Fut. Pro-futūrus.

Possum is compounded of *pŏtis*, able, and *sum:* and is thus conjugated:

Possum,[1] posse, pŏtui. *To be able.*

Indicative Mode.

Pr.	Possum,	pŏtes,	pŏtest;	possŭmus,	potestis,	possunt.
Imp.	Pot-ĕram,	-ĕras,	-ĕrat;	-erāmus,	-erātis,	-ĕrant.
Per.	Pot-ui,	-uisti,	-uit;	-uĭmus,	-uistis,	-uērunt *or* -uēre.
Plu.	Pot-uĕram	-uĕras,	-uĕrat;	-uerāmus,	-uerātis,	-uĕrant.
Fut.	Pot-ĕro,	-ĕris,	-ĕrit;	-erĭmus,	-erĭtis,	-ĕrunt.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr.	Pos-sim,	-sis,	-sit;	-sīmus,	-sītis,	-sint.
Imp.	Pos-sem,	-ses,	-set;	-sēmus,	-sētis,	-sent.
Per.	Pot-uĕrim,	-uĕris,	-uĕrit;	-uerĭmus,	-uerĭtis,	-uĕrint.
Plu.	Pot-uissem,	-uisses,	-uisset;	-uissēmus,	-uissētis,	-uissent.
Fut.	Pot-uĕro,	-uĕris,	-uĕrit;	-uerĭmus,	-uerĭtis,	-uĕrint.

Infinitive Mode.

Pr. Posse. Per. Potuisse. *The rest wanting.*

Note: *Possum* wants the Fut. Infin. and has no Gerunds or Supines. *Pŏtens* is considered as a mere Adjective; and not as a Participle.

[1] *Possum* is compounded of *pŏtis* and *sum.* They sometimes occur separately, (Virg. Æn. III. 671. XI. 148. Ter. Eun. II. 2. 32. Adelph. IV. 1. 5. Lucr. I. 451. II. 849. 911. IV. 718. V. 718. Catull. LXXI. 7. LXXV. 24. Varr. R. R. II. 2. Cic. Tusc. II. 16. Gell. XIX. 9, &c.) and then *pŏtis* is Masc, Fem, or Neut. and Plur, as well as Sing. Cf. Plaut. Pœn. I. 2. 17. We find the following forms also:— *Pŏtessim*, Plaut. Pers. I. 1. 41. *Pŏtesset*, Lucil. ap. Non. V. 98. where some read *Pŏtisset*. Cf. Ascon. in Divin. Verr. 13. *Pŏtissum*, Plaut. Curc. V. 3. 23. *Possiem, ēs, ĕt*, Cic. in Arat. 304. Plaut. Bacch. IV. 5. 2. Most. II. 2. 34. IV. 2. 68. *Pŏtestŭr*, Lucr. III. 1024. Pacuv. ap. Non. X. 34. cf. Pier. ad Virg. Æn. VIII. 402. *Possĭtur*, Cat. R. R. 154. *Possētur*, Claud. Quadrig. Ap. Non. X. 30. *Pŏtesse*, Lucr. I. 665. Ter. Eun. IV. 3. 24. Charis. III. p. 231. cites, *Pŏteste, pŏtesto, pōtestōte, possunto*, but without authority.

EO,[1] īre, īvi, ĭtum. *To go.*

Indicative Mode.

Pr.	Eo,	is,	it;	īmus,	ītis,	eunt.
Imp.	Ibam,	ibas,	ibat;	ibāmus,	ibātis,	ibant.
Per.	Ivi,	ivisti,	ivit;	ivĭmus,	ivistis,	ivērunt *or* ivēre.
Plu.	Ivĕram,	ivĕras,	ivĕrat;	iverāmus,	iverātis,	ivĕrant.
Fut.	Ibo,	ibis,	ibit;	ibĭmus,	ibĭtis,	ibunt.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr.	Eam,	eas,	eat;	eāmus,	eātis,	eant.
Imp.	Irem,	ires,	iret;	irēmus,	irētis,	irent.
Per.	Ivĕrim,	ivĕris,	ivĕrit;	iverĭmus,	iverĭtis,	ivĕrint.
Plu.	Ivissem,	ivisses,	ivisset;	ivissēmus,	ivissētis,	ivissent.
Fut.	Ivĕro,	vĕris,	ivĕrit;	iverĭmus,	iverĭtis,	ivĕrint.

Imperative Mode.

Pr. { I, Ito, } ito; { ite, itōte, } eunto.

Infinitive Mode.

Pr. Ire.
Per. Ivisse.
Fut. Esse itūrus, -a, -um.
Fuisse itūrus, -a, -um.

Participles.

Pr. Iens, *Gen.* euntis.
Fut. Itūrus, -a, -um.

Gerunds.

Eundum.
Eundi.
Eundo, &c.

Supines.

1. Itum.
2. Itu.

The compounds of *Eo* are conjugated after the same manner; *ăd-, ăb-, ex-, cŏ-, ĭn-, inter-, ŏb-, rĕd-, sŭb-, pĕr-, præ-, ante-, prōd-eo;* only in the perfect, and the tenses formed from it, they are usually contracted: thus, *Adeo, adii,* seldom *adīvi, adĭtum, adīre,* to go to; perf. *Adii, adiisti,* or *adīsti,* &c. *adiĕram, adiĕrim,* &c. So likewise VENEO *venii,* ——, to be sold, compounded of *venum* and *eo.*) But AMBIO, *-īvi, -ītum, -īre,* to surround, is a regular verb of the fourth conjugation.

---

[1] Of this Verb the Infinitive Passive *Irī* occurs frequently joined with the Perfect Participle Passive of other verbs. We also find the Impersonals, *Ĭtŭr, eātŭr, ībātŭr, īrētŭr, ībĭtŭr, ĭtum est, &c.* Virg. Æn. vi. 179. Plaut. Truc. iii. 1. 21. Senec. Med. 460. Cic. Att. ii. 1. *Eundus* occurs in Claud. Eutrop. ii. 419. *Issem, Isse,* Cic. Phil xii. 12. Verr. iii. 44. and in Ovid. Propert. Stat. Sil. passim. *Istis,* Lucan. vii. 834. *Iam, iēs, iēt,* Cic. Agr. ii. 25. Cf. Tibull. i. 4. 23. Senec. Benef. ii. 1. Apul. Met. vi. p 122. Most of the Compounds of *Eo* make *ii* in the Perfect, rather than *īvī*. *Adeo, Ineo, Prætereo, Subeo, Transeo,* being used transitively, are found in the Passive. Cic. Q. Fr. i. 2. 5. Offic. i. 19. Cæs. B. G. vii. 9. Cic. Tusc. v. 19. Manil. iv. 398. Juv. xvi. 2. *Ambio* is conjugated regularly like *Audio, Vēneo, vēnii* is conjugated like *Eo;* yet we find *Vēniet,* Murator. p. 1311. ii. n. 2. *Vēnear,* and *Vēneātur,* Diomed. i. p. 365. *Vēnītus,* Sedul. Hymn. i 21. *Vēnĭtum,* (Supine) Priscian. x. p. 907.

Eo, like other neuter verbs, is often rendered in English under a passive form thus, *it*, he is going; *īvit*, he is gone; *ĭvĕrat*, he was gone; *ivĕrit*, he may be gone, *or* shall be gone. So, *vĕnit*, he is coming; *vēnit*, he has come; *vēnĕrat*, he was come, &c. In the passive voice these verbs for the most part are only used impersonally; as, *itur ab illo*, he is going; *ventum est ab illis*, they are come. We find some of the compounds of *eo*, however, used personally; as, *pericŭla adeuntur*, are undergone. Cic. *Libri sibyllīni adĭti sunt*, were looked into. Liv. *Flumen pedĭbus transīri potest*. Cæs. *Inimicitiæ subeantur*. Cic.

QUEO, I can, and *NEQUEO*,[1] I cannot, are conjugated the same way as *eo*; only they want the imperative and the gerunds; and the participles are seldom used.

VOLO,[2] velle, vŏlui. *To will*, or *to be willing*.

Indicative Mode.

Pr.	Vŏl-o,	vis,	vult;	volŭmus,	vultis,	volunt.
Imp.	Vol-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat;	-ebāmus,	-ebātis,	-ēbant.
Per.	Vol-ui,	-uisti,	-uit;	-uĭmus,	-uistis,	-uērunt *or* -ēre.
Plu.	Vol-uĕram,	-uĕras,	-uĕrat;	-uerāmus,	-uerātis,	-uĕrant.
Fut.	Vol-am,	-es,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr.	Velim,	velis,	velit;	velīmus,	velītis,	velint.
Imp.	Vellem,	velles,	vellet;	vellēmus,	vellētis,	vellent.
Per.	Vol-uĕrim,	-uĕris,	-uĕrit;	-uerĭmus,	-uerĭtis,	-uĕrint.
Plu.	Vol-uissem,	-uisses,	-uisset;	-uissēmus,	-uissētis,	-uissent.
Fut.	Vol-uĕro,	-uĕris,	-uĕrit;	-uerĭmus,	-uerĭtis,	-uĕrint.

Infinitive Mode. — *Participle.*

Pr. Velle. Per. Voluisse. — Pr. Volens.

The rest not used.

---

[1] Of *Queo* and *Nequeo* these forms occur: *Quii*, Priscian, x. p. 905. 907. *Quiit*, Accius ap. Macrob. vi. 1. *Quistis*, Juvenc. Hist. Ev. ii. 679. *Quissent*, Auson. Epigr. cxxxix. 7. *Quisse*, Lucr. v. 1421. *Quiens*, Apul. Met. vi. 113. ix. 206. *Quitur*, Cæcil. ap. Diomed. i. p. 380. *Quitus*, Id. ibid. Apul. Apol. p. 402. Terent. Hecyr. iv. 1. 57. *Queuntur*, Cæcil. ap. Diomed. i. p. 380. *Queatur*, Lucr. i. 1043. *Queantur*, Plaut. Pers. ii. 2. 12. *Quĭ-tum*. (Supine) Priscian, ix. p. 867. *Nĕquissent*, Lucr. iv. 1248. Sallust. Jug. c. 18. *Nequitur*, Sallust, Jug. c. 34. Plaut. Rud. iv. 4. 20. *Nequitum*, Pacuv. ap. Fest. et Cato ibid. *Nequĭtus*, Caper Priscian. x. p. 899. *Nequiens*, Sallust, Fragm. Apul. Met. viii. p. 162. Auson. Prof. ii. sub. fin. Ammian. xv. 10.

[2] *Vīs*, *vult*, *vultĭs*, or, as they were anciently written, *volt*, *voltĭs*, (Auson. Epigr. xxxix. Ter. Andr. v. 3. 1. Plaut. Most. iii. 2. 68. 71. Novius ap. Non. x. 18, &c.) are contractions of *vŏlĭs*, *vŏlĭt*, *vŏlĭtis*. In Lucil. lib xxvii ap. Non. vii. 88. and Plaut. Asin. i. 2. 26. we find *Vŏlam* for *vĕlim*.

NOLO,[1] nolle, nolui. *To be unwilling.*

Indicative Mode.

PR.	Nōlo,	non-vis,	non-vult;	nolŭmus,	non-vultis,	nolunt.
IMP.	Nol-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat;	-ebāmus,	-ebātis,	-ēbant.
PER.	Nol-ui,	-uisti,	-uit;	-uĭmus,	-uistis,	-uērunt *or* -uēre
PLU.	Nol-uĕram,	-uĕras,	-uĕrat;	-uerāmus,	-uerātis,	-uĕrant.
FUT.	Nolam,	noles,	nolet;	nolēmus,	nolētis,	nolent.

Subjunctive Mode.

PR.	Nolim,	nolis,	nolit;	nolīmus,	nolītis,	nolint.
IMP.	Nollem,	nolles,	nollet;	nollēmus,	nollētis,	nollent.
PER.	Nol-uĕrim,	-uĕris,	-uĕrit;	-uerĭmus,	-uerĭtis,	-uĕrint.
PLU.	Nol-uissem,	-uisses,	-uisset;	-uissēmus,	-uissētis,	-uissent.
FUT.	Nol-uĕro,	-uĕris,	-uĕrit;	-uerĭmus,	-uerĭtis,	-uĕrint.

Imperative.			*Infinitive.*		*Participle.*
	2 *Sing.*	2. *Plur.*			
PR.	Noli *or* Nolīto.	nolīte *or* nolitōte.	PR. Nolle.	PER. Noluisse.	PR. Nolens. *The rest wanting.*

MALO,[2] malle, malui. *To be more willing.*

Indicative Mode.

PR.	Māl-o,	mavis,	mavult;	malŭmus,	mavultis,	malunt.
IMP.	Mal-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat;	-ebāmus,	-ebātis,	-ēbant.
PER.	Mal-ui,	-uisti,	-uit;	-uĭmus,	-uĭstis,	-uērunt *or* -uēre.
PLU.	Mal-uĕram,	-uĕras,	-uĕrat;	-uerāmus,	-uerātis,	-uĕrant.
FUT.	Mal-am,	-es,	-et; &c.	*This is scarcely in use.*		

---

[1] *Nolo* is a contraction of *nōn vŏlo*. For *nōnvīs* we find *nēvīs*, Plaut. Trin. v. 2. 32. Most. III. 2. 75. for *nōnvult, nēvolt*, Plaut. Most. I. 2. 29. *Nolĭis* for *nonvultĭs*, Lucil. ap. Diomed. I. p. 381. Putsch.

[2] *Mālo* is a contraction of *măgĭs*, or *măgĕ vŏlo*. Of this Verb we find the following forms: *Māvŏlo*, Plaut. Asin. v. 1. 8. Pœn. I. 2. 90. *māvŏlet*, Asin. I. 1. 108. *māvŏlunt*, Næv. ap. Fest. in 'Stuprum;' *māvŏluit*, Petron. Fragm. *māvĕlim* Plaut. Truc. IV. 2. 29. *māvĕlis*, Capt. II. 2. 20. Pseud. I. 2. 8. *māvĕlit*, Trin II. 2. 25. *māvellem*, Plaut. Mil. II. 2. 16. Amph. 1. 3. 14. Pseud. I. 1 128.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr.	Malim,	malis,	malit;	malīmus,	malītis,	malint.
Imp.	Mallem,	malles,	mallet;	mallēmus,	mallētis,	mallent.
Per.	Mal-uĕrim,	-uĕris,	-uĕrit;	-uerĭmus,	-uerĭtis,	-uĕrint.
Plu.	Mal-uissem,	-uisses,	-uisset;	-uissēmus,	-uissetis,	-uissent.
Fut.	Mal-uĕro,	-uĕris.	-uĕrit;	-uerĭmus,	-uerĭtis,	-uĕrint.

Infinitive Mode.

Pr. Malle. Per. Maluisse. *The rest not used.*

FERO, ferre, tŭli, lātum. *To carry, to bring*, or *suffer.*

ACTIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mode.

Pr.	Fĕro,	fers,	fert;	ferĭmus,	fertis,	ferunt.
Imp.	Fer-ēbam,	-ebas,	-ēbat;	-ebāmus,	-ebātis,	-ēbant.
Per.	Tuli,	tulisti,	tulit;	tulĭmus,	tulistis,	tulērunt *or* -ēre.
Plu.	Tul-ĕram,	-ĕras,	-ĕrat;	erāmus,	-erātis,	-ĕrant.
Fut.	Feram,	feres,	feret;	ferēmus,	ferētis,	ferent.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr.	Feram,	feras,	ferat;	ferāmus,	ferātis,	ferant.
Imp.	Ferrem,	ferres,	ferret;	ferrēmus,	ferrētis,	ferrent.
Per.	Tul-ĕrim,	-ĕris,	-ĕrit;	-erĭmus,	-erĭtis,	-ĕrint.
Plu.	Tul-issem,	-isses,	-isset;	-issēmus,	-issētis,	-issent.
Fut.	Tul-ĕro,	-ĕris,	-ĕrit;	-erĭmus,	-erĭtis,	-ĕrint.

Imperative Mode.

Pr. Fer, Ferto, ferto; { ferte, fertōte, ferunto,

Infinitive Mode.

Pr. Ferre.
Per. Tulisse.
Fut. Esse latūrus, -a, -um.
Fuisse latūrus, -a, -um.

Participles.

Pr. Fĕrens.
Fut. Latūrus, -a, -um.

Gerunds.

Ferendum,
Ferendi,
Ferendo, &c.

Supines.

1. Lātum,
2. Lātu.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Fĕror, ferri, lātus. ***To be brought.***

Indicative Mode.

Pr.	Fĕror,	ferris, *or* ferre,	fertur; ferĭmur, ferimĭni, feruntur.
Imp.	Fer-ēbar.	-ebāris, *or* -ebāre,	-ebātur; -ebāmur, -ebāmĭni, -ebantur.

Per. Latus sum, &c. latus fui, &c.
Plu. Latus eram, &c. latus fuĕram, &c.

Fut.	Ferar,	ferēris, *or* ferēre,	ferētur; ferēmur, feremĭni, ferentur.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr.	Ferar,	ferāris, *or* ferāre,	ferātur; ferāmur, feramĭni, ferantur.
Imp.	Ferrer.	ferrēris, *or* ferrēre,	ferrētur; ferrēmur, ferremĭni, ferrentur.

Per. Latus sim, &c. latus fuĕrim, &c.
Plu. Latus essem, &c. latus fuissem, &c.
Fut. Latus fuĕro, &c.

Imperative Mode.

Pr. Ferre *or* fertor, fertor; ferimĭni, feruntor.

Infinitive Mode.

Pr. Ferri.
Per. Esse *or* fuisse latus, -a, -um,

Participles.

Per. Latus, -a, -um.
Fut. Ferendus, -a, -um.

In like manner are conjugated the Compounds of *fĕro;* as, *affĕro, attŭli, allātum; aufĕro, abstŭli, ablātum; diffĕro, distŭli, dilātum; confĕro, contŭli, collătum; infĕro, intŭli, illātum; offĕro, obtŭli, oblātum; effĕro, extŭli, elātum.* So, *circum-, per-, trans-, de-, pro-, ante-, præ-, re-fĕro.* In some writers we find *adfĕro, adtŭli, adlātum; conlātum; inlātum; obfĕro,* &c. for *affĕro,* &c.

Obs. 1. Most part of the above verbs are made irregular by contraction. Thus, *nolo* is contracted for *non volo; malo* for *magis volo; fero, fers, fert,* &c. for *feris, ferit,* &c. *Feror, ferris* or *ferre, fertur,* for *ferrĕris,* &c.

Obs. 2. The imperatives of *dīco, dūco,* and *făcio,* are contracted in the same manner with *fer:* thus we say, *dic, duc, fac;* instead of *dīce, dūce, făce.* But these often occur likewise in the regular form.

FIO,[1] fiĕri, factus. *To be made or done, to become.*

Indicative Mode.

PR.	Fio,	fis,	fit;	fimus,	fitis,	fiunt.
IMP.	Fiēbam,	fiēbas,	fiēbat;	fiebāmus,	fiebātis,	fiēbant.
PER.	Factus sum, &c. factus fui, &c.					
PLU.	Factus eram, &c. factus fuĕram, &c.					
FUT.	Fiam,	fies,	fiet;	fiēmus,	fiētis,	fient.

Subjunctive Mode.

PR.	Fiam,	fias,	fiat;	fiămus,	fiātis,	fiant.
IMP.	Fiĕrem,	fiĕres,	fiĕret;	fierēmus,	fierētis,	fiĕrent.
PER.	Factus sim, &c. factus fuĕrim, &c.					
PLU.	Factus essem, &c. factus fuissem, &c.					
FUT.	Factus fuĕro, &c.					

Imperative Mode.

PR. { Fi, / Fito, } fito: { fite, / fitōte, } fiunto,

Infinitive Mode.

PR. Fiĕri.
PER. Esse *or* fuisse factus, -a, -um.
FUT. Factum iri.

Participles.

PER. Factus, -a, -um.
FUT. Faciendus, -a, -um.

Supine.

Factu.

NOTE.—The Compounds of *făcio* which retain *a*, have also *fio* in the passive, and *fac* in the imperative active; as *calefacio*, too warm, *calefio*, *calĕfac*: but those which change *a* into *i*, form the passive regularly, and have *fĭce* in the imperative; as, *conficio*, *confĭce*; *conficior*, *confĭci*, *confectus*. We find, however, *confit*, it is done, and *confiĕri*; *defit*, it is wanting; *infit*, he begins.

Edo[2], ĕdĕrĕ, ēdī, *or* esse, ēsŭs, *eat.*

Infinitive Mode.

Present. Edĕrĕ, *or* esse. *Past.* Edisse.
Future. Esūrŭs, *or* ēsūrum esse.

---

[1] *Făcior*, the Passive of *Făcio*, very rarely occurs in the classics. *Fīo* was used in its stead. *Făcĭtur*, however, is read Nigid. ap. Non. x. 19. *Făciātur*, Petron. Frag. Priscian. VIII. p. 101. Putsch. The Indicatives, *Fīs*, *Fīmus*, and the Imperatives, *Fī*, *Fīto*, *Fīte*, *Fītōte*, rarely occur. *Fis* is read in Hor. II. Ep. 2. 211. *Fīmus*, Arnob. II. p. 53. and in some edd. of Terent. Heaut. III. 1. 74. ubi. al. *Sŭmus*. *Fī*, Hor. II. Sat. 5. 38. Plaut. Curc. I. 87. *Fīto*, 2d Pers. Cato ap. Non. VII. 62. *Fīte*, Plaut. Curc. I. 1. 89. *Fītōte*, Cato. Crassus, Liv. in Odyss. ap. Non. l. c. Of *Fītis* no trace can be found. *Fiens* occurs only in Diomed. I. pp. 352. 177. *Fītur*, Cato ap. Priscian. VIII. p. 789. *Fiēbantur*, id. ibid. *Fītum* est, Liv. in Odyss. ap. Non. l. c.—*Fio* is sometimes used impersonally: *Fit*, it happens; *Fiēbat*, it happened, &c.

[2] *Edo* is a regular Verb of the third Conjugation; but in the Infinitive and Imperative Modes, in the Present-imperfect Indicative, and the Imperfect Sub-

Indicative Mode.

Pres.	Edo,	ĕdĭs, *or* ēs,	ĕdĭt, *or* est;	ĕdĭmŭs,	ĕdĭtĭs, *or* estĭs,	ĕdunt.
Imp.	Ed-ēbam,	-ēbās,	-ēbăt;	-ēbāmŭs,	-ēbātĭs,	-ēbant.
Perf.	Ed-ī,	-istī,	-ĭt;	-ĭmŭs,	-istĭs,	-ērunt, *or* -ēre.
Plup.	Ed-ĕram,	-ĕrās,	-ĕrăt;	-ĕrāmŭs,	-ĕrātĭs,	-ĕrant.
Fut.	Ed-am,	-ēs,	-ĕt;	-ēmŭs,	-ētĭs,	-ent.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pres.	Ed-am.	-ās,	-ăt;	-āmŭs,	-ātĭs,	-ant.
Imp.	Ed-ĕrem, *or* Essem,	-ĕrēs, *or* essēs,	-ĕrĕt, *or* essĕt;	-ĕrēmŭs, *or* essēmŭs,	-ĕrētĭs, *or* essētĭs,	-ĕrent. *or* essent.
Perf.	Ed-ĕrim,	-ĕrĭs,	-ĕrĭt;	-ĕrĭmŭs,	-ĕrĭtĭs,	-ĕrint.
Plup.	Ed-issem,	-issēs,	-issĕt;	-issēmŭs,	-issētĭs,	-issent.
Fut.	Ed-ĕro,	-ĕrĭs,	-ĕrĭt;	-ĕrĭmŭs,	-ĕrĭtĭs,	-ĕrint.

Imperative Mode.

Singular.	*Plural.*
No first person.	1. *Edāmŭs,
2. Edĕ, ĕdĭto, *or* ēs, esto,	2. Edĭte, ĕdĭtōte, *or* estĕ, estōtĕ,
3. *Edăt, ĕdĭto, *or* esto.	3. *Edant, ĕdunto.

Participles.

Pres.	Edens.	*Fut. in* -RUS,	Esūrŭs.
Perf.	Esŭs.	*Fut. in* -DUS,	Edendŭs.

Gerunds.		*Supines.*	
Gen.	Eden-di,	*Former,*	Esum.
Dat. & Abl.	Eden-do,	*Latter,*	Esū.
Nom. & Acc.	Edendum.		

---

junctive, it assumes other forms, as if from the Verb *Sum.* *Esse,* Cic. Nat. Deor. II. 3. *Esse,* 'to be eaten,' Plaut. Most. IV. 2. 42. *Es,* Plaut. Cas. II. 3. 32. *Est,* Hor. II. Sat. 2. 57. I. Epist. 2. 39. Virg. Æn. IV. 66. V. 683. *Essēs,* Val. Max. IV. 3. *Esset,* Virg. Georg. I. 151. *Essēmus,* Terent. Eun. III. 4. 2. *Esto,* Cato R. R. 156. *Este,* Plaut. Most. I. 1. 61. *Esus,* Gell. IX. 6. *Esūrus,* Ovid. Heroid. Epist. IX. 37. *Edens,* Ovid. Met. II. 768. *Edendus,* Cic. de Amic. 69. Ovid. Heroid. Epist. I. 95. *Esum,* Plaut. Stich. I. 3. 29. *Esu,* Plaut. Pseud. III. 2. 35. *Estum,* Priscian. x.p 893. These forms also occur: *Esus sum,* 'I have eaten,' Solin. 17—27. *Edim, is, it,* for *Edam, as, at,* Plaut. Aul. III. 2. 16. Pœn. III. 1. 34. IV. 2. 45. Capt. III. 1. 1. *Edĭtis* for *Edātis,* Cæcil. Nov. and Pompon. ap. Non. II. 114. X. 18. Cf. Virg. Æn. XII. 801. Hor. Epod. III. 3. *Cŏmĕdim, is, it,* Cic. Fam. IX. 20. Plaut. Curc. IV. 4. 4. *Esĕrim,* for *Edĕrim,* Apul. Met. IV. p. 152. 32. *Estur,* Sen. de Ira, III. 15. Cels. V. 27. 3. Ovid. ex. Pont. I. 1. 69. Plaut. Pœn. IV. 2. 13.—Of the quantity of *Es* no proof can be found. It would therefore be better to follow Servius, Vossius, Alvarex, and others, who suppose it long, than pronounce it short with some later grammarians.

NEUTER PASSIVE VERBS.

To irregular verbs may properly be subjoined what are commonly called NEUTER PASSIVE *Verbs*, which, like *fio*, form the preterite tenses according to the passive voice, and the rest in the active. These are, *sōleo, solēre, solĭtus*, to use; *audeo, audēre, ausus*, to dare; *gaudeo, gaudēre, gavīsus*, to rejoice; *fīdo, fidĕre, fīsus*, to trust. So, *confīdo*, to trust; and *diffīdo*, to distrust; which also have *confīdi* and *diffīdi*. Some add *mœreo, mœrēre, mœstus*, to be sad; but *mœstus* is generally reckoned an adjective. We likewise say *jūrātus sum* and *cœnātus sum*, for *jurāvi* and *cœnāvi*, but these may also be taken in a passive sense.

To these may be referred verbs wholly active in their termination, and passive in their signification; as, *vapŭlo, -āvi, -ātum*, to be beaten or whipped; *vēneo*, to be sold; *exŭlo*, to be banished, &c.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

DEFECTIVE VERBS are those of which several Tenses and Persons are not found in the ancient classics. The Verbs usually so called are, 1. *Aio*, 'I say;' 2. *Inquio*, 'I say;' 3. *Fari*, 'to speak;' 4. *Apăge*, 'begone;' 5. *Ave*, 'hail;' 6. *Salve*, 'hail;' 7. *Ausim*, 'I dare;' 8. *Cedo*, 'give me, tell me;' 9. *Confit*, 'it is done;' 10. *Defit*, 'it is wanting;' 11. *Infit*, 'he begins;' 12. *Ovat*, 'he rejoices;' 13. *Quæso*, 'I pray;' 14. *Faxo*, 'I will take care;' 15. *Odi*, 'I hate;' *Memĭni*, 'I remember;' *Cœpi*, 'I have begun.'

1. IND. Pres. Sing. *Aio*, Plaut. Capt. I. 1. 3. *Ais*, Hor. II. Sat. 7. 67. *Ait*, Terent. Andr. V. 4. 4. Plur. *Aiunt*, Terent. Andr. II. 1. 21.—Imp. Sing. *Aiēbam*, Hor. I. Sat. IX. 12. *Aiēbas*, Plaut. Men. III. 3. 9. *Aiēbat*, Cic. Verr. III. 18. Plur. [*Aiēbāmus*, Diomed. p. 371. Putsch.] *Aiēbātis*, Plaut. Capt. III. 5. 18. *Aiēbant*, Sallust. Cat. c. 49. [*Aībant*, Accius ap. Priscian. x. p. 906.]—Perf. Sing. [*Ai*, Prob. Gram. p. 1482. *Aisti*, idem. ibid. et Augustin. Epist. 54. et 174. *Ait*, Prob. ibid. Plur. *Aistis*, Gramm. *Aiērunt*, Tertul. de Fug. in Persec. c. 6.]

SUBJ. Pres. Sing. *Aias*, Plaut. Rud. II. 4. 14. *Aiat*, Cic. de Fin. II. 22. Plur. [*Aiāmus*, Priscian. 1. l.] *Aiant*, Apul. Apol. p. 448.

IMPERAT. *Ai*, Næv. ap. Priscian. x. p. 906. et Plaut. Truc. v. 49.

PARTICIP. *Aiens*, Cic. Top. c. 11. et Apul. Met. VI. p. 118.

The Infinitive *Aiĕre*, occurs in St. Augustin, de Trinit. IX. 10. *Ain'*, do you

say so? Plaut. Amph. I. 1. 188. Apul. Met. I. p. 6. The ancients wrote, *Aiio, aiis, aiit.* See Quintil. I. 4. Voss. Etym. Lat. p. 132. and Anal. III. p. 140.

2. IND. Pres. Sing. *Inquio*, Catul. X. 27. or *Inquam*, Cic. Phil. II. 44. *Inquĭs*, Hor. I. 4. 78. *Inquit*, Nepos Alcib. c. 8. *Inquĭmus*, Hor. I. Sat. 3. 66. *Inquĭtis*, Arnob. II. p. 44. *Inquiunt*, Cic. Verr. VI. 14.—Imp. Sing. *Inquiēbat*, al. *Inquībat*, Cic. Top. 12. Plur. [*Inquībant*, Grammatici.]—Fut. Sing. *Inquies*, Catull. XXIV. 7. *Inquiet*, Cic. Verr. IV. 18.—Perf. Sing. *Inquisti*, Cic. de Orat. II. 64. *Inquit*, Cic. pro Cluent. c. 34.

SUBJ. Pres. Sing. *Inquiat*, Auct. ad Heren. IV. 3.

IMPERAT. Sing. *Inquĕ*, Terent. Heaut. IV. 7. I. *Inquĭto*, Plaut. Aulul. IV. 10. 58. Rud. V. 2. 55.

PARTICIP. [*Inquiens*, Grammatici.]

Inquio, according to Priscian, lib. X. is of the third Conj. but according to Diomed. I. p. 375, of the fourth. *Inquiit* occurs in some edd. of Catull. X. 14. and *Inquii* ibid. vs. 27. *Inquit* and *Inquam* are of frequent occurrence. Vid. Voss. Etym. Lat. p. 133. and Anal. III. 40.

3. INFIN. *Fāri*, Horat. IV. Od. 6. 18. *Fārier*, Virg. Æn. XI. 242.

INDIC. Pres. Sing. *Fātur*, he speaks, Val. Flac. III. 616. Virg. Æn. I. 131. et passim. *Fātur*, is spoken, Sueton. ap. Prician. VIII. p. 793.—Fut. *Fābor*, Propert. IV. 4. 1. *Fābĭtur*, Gell. XV. 6.

SUBJ. Imp. *Fārer*, St. August. Conf. I. 8.

IMPERAT. *Fāre*, Virg. Æn. V. 389. et passim. *Fāmĭno*, Cato R. R. c. 141.

PARTICIP. Pres. *Fans*, Plaut. Pers. II. 1. 7. Propert. III. 5. 19.—Perf. *Fātus*, Virg. Æn. II. 323. et passim.—Fut. in *-dus*, *Fandus*, Pacuv. ap. Cic. de Divin. I. 31.

GERUNDS: *Fandi*, Virg. Æn. X. 225. et passim. *Fando*, in or by speaking, Stat. Theb. I. 655. *Fando*, by report, by hearsay, Cic. Nat. Deor. I. 29.

SUPINE: *Fātu*, Virg. Æn. XII. 25.

Fŏr and *Fāris* do not occur in the classics, although cited by Diomed. I. p. 375. and by Priscian. VIII. p. 791. Neither does, *Dor*, nor the Subjunctives *Fer*, *Der*. Similarly defective are the Compounds *Affāri*, *Effāri*, *Profāri*.

4. IMPERAT. Sing. and Plur. *Apăgĕ* is considered by some as an Interjection. *Apăgĕte* is found in Oudendorp's ed. of Apul. Met. I. p. 13. Elmenh. also in Cic. Fam. V. 10. Terent. Eun. V. 2. 65. Plaut. Cas. II. 8. 24. Amph. II. 1. 32. where the best Mss. and most edd. have *Apăgĕ te*. See Faciolati's Lat. Lex.

5. INFIN. *Avēre*, Martial, I. 109. III. 5.

IMPERAT. Sing. *Ave*, Martial, III. 95. et passim. *Avēto*, Sallust. Cat. c. 35. Plur. *Avētĕ*, Grut. Inscr. p. 735. n. 6. Sueton. Claud. c. 21.

The Eton and other grammars add *Avētōte* for which there is no authority. Some write *Hăvē*, *hăvēre*, &c. Quintil. Inst. I. 6. finds fault with many learned men of his day for writing and saying *Avēte*, with the second syllable long, in place of *Hăvĕte*, with an aspiration and the second syll. short.—The Verb *Aveo*, I covet, is complete.

6. INFIN. *Salvēre*, Plaut. Rud. I. 5. 5. Petron. c. 98.

IND. Fut. *Salvēbis* (for *Salve*) Cic. Att. VI. 2.

IMPERAT. Sing. *Salve*, Virg. Geo. II. 173. Æn. XI. 97. et passim. *Salvēto*, Plaut. Rud. II. 4. 3. Men. V. 9. 17. Plur. *Salvēte*, Plaut. Trin. III. 2. 39.

Salveo is humorously put in the mouth of a clown by Plautus, Truc. II. 2. 4. To the Defectives *Ave* and *Salve*, some add *Văle, vălēte, vălēbis, văleas;* but these come from *Văleo*, I am well.

7. SUBJ. Pres. Sing. *Ausim*, Virg. Ecl. III. 32. et passim; *Ausīs*, Fest. et Lactant. de Pass. Dom. vs. 66. where some read *Ausĕris; Ausit*, Stat. Theb. XII. 101. Achil. I. 544. Plur. *Ausint*, Stat. Theb. XI. 126. See Voss. de Anal. III. 41. p. 124.

8. IMPERAT. Sing. *Cĕdŏ*, Cic. de Orat. c. 86. et passim. Plur. *Cette*, Plaut. Merc. v. 4. 4. Enn. ap. Non. II. 122. Accius, ibid.

Cĕdŏ is used in the Plur. Cic. Senect. c. 6. *Cette* is a contraction of *Cĕdĭte* which last some cite from the Fragm. of Plautus, p. 1216. ed. Gronov., but it is very uncertain.

9. INFIN. *Confĭĕri*, Cæs. B. G. VII. 58.

INDIC. Pres. Sing. *Confit*, Lucr. IV. 292. Terent. Adelph. v. 8. 23. Plur. *Confīunt*, Arnob. VI. p. 219.—Fut. Sing. *Confīet*, Lucr. III. 413.

SUBJ. Pres. Sing. *Confīat*, Colum. I. 8. Imp. Sing. *Confĭĕret*, Liv. v. 50. Cic. ad Att. IX. 8. VIII. 15. Liv. v. 50. Plur. *Confĭĕrent*, Arnob. II. p. 73.

10. INFIN. *Dēfĭĕri*, Terent. Hecyr. v. 2. 1. Liv. IX. 11.

INDIC. Pres. Sing. *Dēfit*, Virg. Ecl. II. 22. et passim; Plur. *Dēfīunt*, Gell. XX. 8.—Fut. Sing. *Dēfīet*, Liv. IX. 11. ubi al. *Dēfĭciet*.

SUBJ. Pres. Sing. *Dēfīat*, Plaut. Men. I. 4. 3. Rud. IV. 4. 63.

11. INDIC. Pres. Sing. *Infit*, Virg. Æn. v. 708. Lucr. III. 516. et passim; Plur. *Infīunt*. Mart. Capell. II. in fin.

Infīo, Varr. ap. Priscian. VIII. p. 818. '*Infe, αρξαι* i. e. incipe,' in Glossis. Some to these add *Explĭcit*, it is finished.

12. INDIC. Pres. Sing. [*Ovas*, Grammatici;] *Ovat*, Val. Flac. II. 506. IV. 342. Virg. Æn. x. 500.

SUBJ. Pres. Sing. *Ovet*, Stat. Sylv. IV. 1. 8.—Past-imp. Sing. *Ovāret*, Gell. VI. 7.

PARTICIP. *Ovans*, Liv. v. 31. Cic. de Orat. c. 47. et passim. *Ovātus*, Persius, II. 55. *Ovātūrus*, Solin. cap. 45—57.

GERUND. *Ovandi*, Sueton, Claud. c. 1. Gell. v. 6. 5.

13. INFIN. *Quæsĕre*, Plaut. Bacch. II. 2. 1.

INDIC. Pres. Sing. *Quæso*, Terent. Eun. III. 2. 13. *Quæsit*, Lucr. v. 1229. Plur. *Quæsŭmus*, Sil. XVI. 250. et passim.

IMPERAT. *Quæse*, Plaut. ap. Non. I. 213. IV. 39.

PARTICIP. *Quæsens*, Apul. Met. IV. p. 70. Elmenh.

Quæsĭs, given in some grammars, does not occur in the classics. *Quæsī*, Perf. Priscian, x. p. 505. ed. Krehl. *Quæsīvit*, Sallust. ap. Priscian. ibid. who says that *Quæsīvi* is a perfect common to *Quæso* and *Quæro*.

14. INDIC. Fut. Sing. *Faxo*, for *făciam*, or *fēcĕro*, Virg. Æn. IX. 158. et passim.

SUBJ. Perf. Sing. *Faxim*, for *fēcĕrim*, Plaut. Amph. I. 3. 13. et passim; *Faxis*, Terent. Andr. IV. 4. 14. *Faxit*, Cic. de Leg. II. 8. *Faxīmus*, Plaut. Truc. I. 1. 40. Plur. *Faxītis*, Liv. XXIX. 27. *Faxint*, Terent. Heaut. I. 1. 9. et passim.—Imp. *Faxem*, for *făcĕrem*, or *fēcissem*, Plaut. Pseud. I. 5. 84.

15. These three, *Odi*, *Cœpi*, and *Mĕmĭni*, are only used in the preterite tenses; and therefore are called *Preteritive Verbs;* though they have sometimes likewise a present signification; thus,

Odi, I hate, *or* have hated, *odĕram, odĕrim, odissem, odĕro, odisse.* Participles, *osus, osūrus; exōsus, perōsus.*

Cœpi, I begin, *or* have begun, *cœpĕram, -ĕrim, -issem, -ĕro, -isse.* Supine, *cœptu.* Participles, *cœptus, cœptūrus.*

Mĕmĭni, I remember, *or* have remembered, *meminĕram, -ĕrim, -issem, -ĕro, -isse.* Imperative, *memento, mementōte.*

Instead of *odi*, we sometimes say, *osus sum:* and always *exōsus, perōsus sum*, and not *exōdi, perōdi.* We say, *opus cœpit fiĕri*, or *cœptum est.*

The following forms also occur: *Odio*, C. Gracch. ap. Fest. *Odivit*, Cic. Phil. XIII. 19. *Odiit*, Tertul. de An. c. 10. *Odies*, Tertul. adv. Marc. IV. 35. *Osus sum*, Plaut. Amph. III. 2. 19. Gell. IV. 18. *Osūrus*, Cic. de Amic. c. 16. *Odiendi*, Apul. de D. Plat. III. p. 631. *Odiens*, Petron. c. 132. *Odientes*, Tertul. adv. Marc. IV. 16. *Odērem* et *Odēre*, infin. Charis. III. p. 228. *Odītur*, Tertul. Apol. III. in fin. *Odīrēmur*, Hieronym. Epist. 43.—*Cœpio*, Plaut. Men. v. 5. 57. *Cœpiam*, Cato ap. Fest. *Cœpiat*, Plaut. Truc. II. 1. 23. *Cœpĕret*, Terent. An. III. 3. 43. edd. Rivii, Faërn. et Bothe; sic. codd. Bentl. Bœcl. et Donat. et Priscian. X. p. 879. *Cœpĕrit* al. *Cœpēre*, Plaut. Pers. I. 3. 41. *Cœptus est*, Cæs. B. G. IV. 18. *Cœptūrus* Quintil. X. 1. Plin. N. H. XVI. 25. Cf. Cæcil. ap. Non. II. 159.—*Mĕmĭnens*, Liv. ap. Priscian. XI. p. 922. Auson. Prof. II. 4. Sidon. II. 10. ad. fin. IV. 12. VI. 3. VII. 6.

Some to the *Defective Verbs* add *Nōvi*, I know; but this is the Perfect of *Nosco*, I am learning. See Voss. Anal. III. 39.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

A verb is called *Impersonal*, which has only the terminations of the third person singular, but does not admit any person or nominative before it.

Impersonal verbs, in English, have before them the neuter pronoun *it*, which is not considered as a person; thus, *dēlectat*, it delights; *dĕcet*, it becomes; *contingit*, it happens; *ēvĕnit*, it happens.

		1st. Conj.	*2d. Conj.*	*3d. Conj.*	*4th. Conj.*
Ind.	PR.	Delectat,	Dĕcet,	Contingit,	Evĕnit,
	IMP.	Delectābat,	Decēbat,	Contingēbat,	Eveniēbat,
	PER.	Delectāvit,	Decuit,	Contĭgit,	Evēnit,
	PLU.	Delectavĕrat,	Decuĕrat,	Contigĕrat,	Evenĕrat,
	FUT.	Delectābit.	Decēbit.	Continget.	Eveniet.
Sub.	PR.	Delectet,	Dĕceat,	Contingat,	Eveniat,
	IMP.	Delectāret,	Decēret,	Contingĕret,	Evenīret,
	PER.	Delectavĕrit,	Decuĕrit,	Contigĕrit,	Evenĕrit,
	PLU.	Delectavisset,	Decuisset,	Contigisset,	Evenisset,
	FUT.	Delectavĕrit.	Decuĕrit.	Contigĕrit.	Evenĕrit.
Inf.	PR.	Delectāre.	Decēre.	Contingĕre.	Evenīre.
	PER.	Delectavisse.	Decuisse.	Contĭgisse.	Evenisse.

Most Latin verbs may be used impersonally in the passive voice, especially Neuter and Intransitive verbs, which otherwise have no passive ; as, *pugnātur, făvētur, currĭtur, vĕnītur :* from *pugno,* to fight ; *faveo,* to favour ; *curro,* to run ; *venio,* to come.

Ind.	PR.	Pugnātur,	Făvētur,	Currĭtur,	Vĕnītur,
	IMP.	Pugnabātur,	Favebātur,	Currebātur,	Veniebātur,
	PER.	Pugnātum est,	Fautum est,	Cursum est,	Ventum est,
	PLU.	Pugnātum erat,	Fautum erat,	Cursum erat,	Ventum erat,
	FUT.	Pugnabĭtur.	Favebĭtur.	Currētur.	Veniētur.
Sub.	PR.	Pugnētur,	Faveātur,	Currātur,	Veniātur,
	IMP.	Pugnarētur,	Faverētur,	Currerētur,	Venirētur,
	PER.	Pugnātum sit,	Fautum sit,	Cursum sit,	Ventum sit,
	PLU.	Pugnātum esset,	Fautum esset,	Cursum esset,	Ventum esset,
	FUT.	Pugnātum fuĕrit.	Faūtum fuĕrit.	Cursum fuĕrit.	Ventum fuĕrit.
Inf.	PR.	Pugnāri.	Favēri.	Curri.	Venīri.
	PER.	Pugnātum esse.	Fautem esse.	Cursum esse.	Ventum esse.
	FUT.	Pugnātum iri.	Fautum iri.	Cursum iri.	Ventum iri.

Obs. 1. Impersonal verbs are scarcely used in the imperative; but instead of that we use the subjunctive; as, *delectet,* let it delight; &c. nor in the supines, participles, or gerunds, except a few; as, *pœnĭtens, -dum, -dus,* &c. *Indūci ad pudendum et pigendum.* Cic. In the preterite tenses of the passive voice, the participle perfect is always put in the neuter gender.

Obs. 2. Grammarians reckon only ten real impersonal verbs, and all in the second conjugation; *dĕcet,* it becomes; *pœnĭtet,* it repents; *oportet,* it behoves; *misĕret,* it pities; *pĭget,* it irketh; *pŭdet,* it shameth; *lĭcet,* it is lawful; *lĭbet or lŭbet,* it pleaseth; *tædet,* it wearieth; *lĭquet,* it appears. Of which the following have a double preterite; *misĕret, miseruit,* or *misertum est; piget, piguit,* or *pigĭtum est; pudet, puduit,* or *pudĭtum est ; licet, licuit,* or *licĭtum est ; libet, libuit,* or *libĭtum est ; tædet, tæduit, tæsum est,* oftener, *pertæsum est.* But many other verbs are used impersonally in all the conjugations.

In the first, *Jŭvat, spectat, văcat, stat, constat, præstat, restat,* &c.

In the second, *Appāret, attĭnet, pertĭnet, dēbet, dŏlet, nŏcet, lătet, lĭquet, pătet, plăcet, displĭcet, sĕdet, sŏlet,* &c.

In the third, *Accĭdit, incĭpit, desĭnit, suffĭcit,* &c.

In the fourth, *Convĕnit, expĕdit,* &c.

Also, irregular verbs, *Est, obest, prōdest, pŏtest, intĕrest, supĕrest ; fit, prætĕrit, nĕquit,* and *nequītur, subit, confert, rĕfert,* &c.

Obs. 3. Under impersonal verbs may be comprehended those which express the operations or appearances of nature; as, *Fulgŭrat, fulmĭnat, tŏnat, grandĭnat, gĕlat, pluit, ningit, lucescit, advesperascit,* &c.

Obs. 4. Impersonal verbs are applied to any person or number, by putting that which stands before other verbs, after the impersonals, in the cases which they govern; as, *placet mihi, tibi, illi,* it pleases me, thee, him; *or* I please, thou pleasest, &c. *pugnātur a me, a te, ab illo,* I fight, thou fightest, he fighteth, &c. So, *Currĭtur, venītur a me, a te,* &c. I run, thou runnest, &c. *Favētur tibi a me,* Thou art favoured by me, *or* I favour thee, &c.

Obs. 5. Verbs are used personally, or impersonally, according to the particular meaning which they express, or the different import of the words with which they are joined: thus, we can say, *ego placeo tibi*, I please you; but we cannot say, *si places audīre*, if you please to hear, but *si placet tibi audīre*. So we can say, *multa homĭni contingunt*, many things happen to a man; but instead of *ego contĭgi esse domi* we must either say, *me contĭgit esse domi*, or *mihi contĭget esse domi*, I happened to be at home. The proper and elegant use of Impersonal verbs can only be acquired by practice.

REDUNDANT VERBS.

Those are called Redundant Verbs, which have different forms to express the same sense. Some are *Redundant* 1. in Signification; as, *Crimĭnor*, 'I blame *or* I am blamed;' 2. in Termination; as, *Fabrĭco* and *Fabrĭcor*, 'I frame;' 3. in Conjugation; as, *Lavo, lavāre*, and *Lavo, lavĕre*, 'I wash;' 4. in Tenses; as, *Suesco*, 'I am accustomed,' Perf. *Suēvi* and *Suetus sum*.

I. Verbs of the same signification used in different Conjugations:

Cieo, ēs, *Cio, īs,	*stir up.*	Lĭno, ĭs, Lĭnio, īs,	*anoint.*
Claudo, ĭs, Claudeo, ēs,	*be lame.*	*Nexo, ās, *Nexo, ĭs,	*knit.*
*Denseo, ēs, *Denso, ās,	*thicken.*	*Oleo, ēs, Olo, ĭs,	*smell.*
Excello, ĭs, Excelleo, ēs,	*excel.*	*Scăteo, ēs, *Scato, ĭs,	*abound.*
*Ferveo, ēs, *Fervo, ĭs,	*be hot.*	*Strīdeo, ēs, Strīdo, ĭs,	*creak.*
Fŏdio, ĭs, Fŏdio, īs,	*dig.*	Tergeo, ēs, Tergo, ĭs,	*wipe.*
*Fulgeo, ēs, Fulgo, ĭs,	*shine.*	Tueor, ēris, Tuor, ĕris,	*behold, protect.*
Lăvo, ās, Lăvo, ĭs,	*wash.*		

II. Verbs spelt alike, or nearly alike, but differing in sound or signification:

Abdĭco, ās,	*abdicate.*	Cælo, ās,	*carve.*
Abdīco, ĭs,	*refuse.*	Censeo, ēs,	*think.*
*Accĭdo, ĭs,	*happen.*	Sentio, īs,	*feel.*
Accīdo, ĭs,	*cut short.*	Claudo, ĭs,	*shut.*
Addo, ĭs,	*add.*	*Claudo, ĭs,	*be lame.*
Adeo, īs,	*go to.*	Collĭgo, ās.	*tie together.*
Aggĕro, ās,	*heap up.*	Collĭgo, ĭs,	*collect.*
Aggĕro, ĭs,	*lay in a heap.*	Cōlo, ās,	*strain.*
Allēgo, ās,	*plead, send.*	Cŏlo, ĭs,	*till, deck.*
Allĕgo, ĭs,	*choose.*	Compello, ās,	*accost.*
Appello, ās,	*call.*	Compello, ĭs,	*force.*
Appello, ĭs,	*drive, land.*	Concīdo, ĭs,	*chop off.*
*Cădo, ĭs,	*fall.*	*Concĭdo, ĭs,	*fall.*
Cædo, ĭs,	*beat.*	Conscendo, ĭs,	*climb.*
Cēdo, ĭs,	*yield.*	Conscindo, ĭs,	*cut in pieces.*
*Căleo, ēs,	*be hot.*	Consterno, ās,	*terrify.*
*Calleo, ēs,	*be hard.*	Consterno, ĭs,	*strew over.*
*Căno, ĭs,	*sing.*	*Dēcĭdo, ĭs,	*fall down.*
*Cāneo, ēs,	*be white.*	Dēcīdo, ĭs,	*cut off.*
*Căreo, ēs,	*want.*	Dēcĭpio, ĭs,	*deceive.*
*Căro, ĭs,	*card wool.*	*Dēsĭpio, ĭs,	*dote.*
Cēlo, ās,	*conceal.*	Dēlĭgo, ās,	*tie up.*

Dēlĭgo, ĭs,	*choose.*
Dīlĭgo, ĭs,	*love.*
Dīco, ĭs,	*say.*
Dĭco, ās,	*dedicate.*
Edo, ĭs,	*eat.*
Edo, ĭs,	*speak, publish.*
Edŭco, ās,	*educate.*
Edūco, ĭs,	*draw out.*
Effĕro, ās,	*make wild.*
Effĕro, effers,	*carry off, lift up.*
*Excĭdo, ĭs,	*fall out.*
Excīdo, ĭs,	*cut off.*
*Fĕrio, īs,	*strike.*
Fĕro, fers,	*bear.*
Fērior, āris,	*keep holiday.*
*Frīgeo, ēs,	*be cold.*
Frīgo, ĭs,	*fry.*
Fŭgo, ās,	*put to flight.*
*Fŭgio, ĭs,	*fly.*
Fundo, ās,	*found.*
Fundo, ĭs,	*pour out.*
*Incĭdo, ĭs,	*fall into.*
Incīdo, ĭs,	*cut.*
Indĭco, ās,	*show.*
Indīco, ĭs,	*proclaim.*
Infĭcio, is,	*infect.*
Infĭtior, āris,	*deny.*
*Intercĭdo, ĭs,	*happen.*
Intercīdo, is,	*cut asunder.*
Jăceo, ēs,	*lie, lie down.*
Jăcio, ĭs,	*throw.*
*Lăbo, ās,	*totter.*
Lābor, ĕris,	*slip, glide.*
*Lacto, ās,	*suckle, suck.*
*Lacto, ās,	*deceive.*
*Lacteo, ēs,	*grow milky.*
Lēgo, ās,	*send.*
Lĕgo, ĭs,	*gather, read.*
Lĭceo, ēs,	*be lawful.*
Lĭceor, ēris,	*bid for.*
Lĭquo, ās,	*melt.*
*Lĭqueo, ēs,	*become liquid, be manifest.*
*Līquor, ĕris,	*melt.*
*Māno, ās,	*flow.*
*Măneo, ēs,	*stay.*
Mando, ās,	*deliver.*
Mando, ĭs,	*eat.*
Mĕto, ĭs,	*mow, reap.*
Mētor, āris,	*measure.*
Mētior īris,	*measure.*
Mĕtuo, ĭs,	*fear.*
Mĭsĕror, āris,	*pity.*
Mĭsĕreor, ēris,	*pity.*
Mŏror, āris,	*delay.*
*Mōror, āris,	*play the fool.*
Mŏrior, ĕris,	*die.*
*Nicto, ās,	*wink.*
Nicto, ĭs,	*open as a hound.*
*Nĭteo, ēs,	*glitter.*
Nītor, ĕris,	*strive.*
Obsĕro, ās,	*lock up.*
Obsĕro, ĭs,	*sow, plant.*
*Occĭdo, ĭs,	*fall.*
Occīdo, ĭs,	*kill.*
Opĕrio, īs,	*cover.*
*Oppĕrior, īris,	*wait for.*
Opĕror, āris,	*work.*
Pando, ās,	*bend, bow.*
Pando, ĭs,	*open, spread.*
Păro, ās,	*prepare.*
*Pāreo, ēs,	*appear.*
Părio, ĭs,	*beget.*
*Părio, ās,	*balance.*
*Pēdo, ĭs,	*πέρδω.*
Pĕdo, āre,	*prop up.*
*Pendeo, ēs,	*hang.*
Pendo, ĭs,	*weigh.*
Percōlo, ās,	*filter.*
Percŏlo, ĭs,	*adorn.*
*Permăneo, ēs,	*remain.*
*Permāno, ās,	*flow over.*
Prædĭco, ās,	*publish.*
Prædīco, ĭs,	*foretel.*
Prælēgo, ās,	*bequeath in the first place.*
Prælĕgo, ĭs,	*read to one.*
Prōdo, ĭs,	*betray.*
*Prōdeo, ēs,	*come forth.*
*Rĕcēdo, ĭs,	*retire.*
*Rĕcĭdo, ĭs,	*fall back.*
Rĕcīdo, ĭs,	*cut off.*
Reddo, ĭs,	*restore.*
*Redeo, īs,	*return.*
Rĕfĕro, refers,	*bring back.*
*Rĕfĕrio, īs,	*strike again.*
Rēlĕgo, ās,	*remove.*
Rĕlēgo, ĭs,	*read over.*
Sēdo, ās,	*allay.*
*Sĕdeo, ēs,	*sit.*
*Sīdo, ĭs,	*sink.*
*Sēro, ĭs,	*sow.*
Sĕro, ĭs,	*knit, join.*
Sĕro, ās,	*lock, bolt.*
*Succĭdo, ĭs,	*fall down.*
Succīdo, ĭs,	*cut down.*
*Vādo, ĭs,	*go, walk.*
Vădor, āris,	*give bail.*
*Vēneo, īs,	*be sold.*
*Vĕnio, īs,	*come.*
Vĕnor, āris,	*hunt.*
Vincio, īs,	*bind.*
Vinco, ĭs,	*conquer.*
Vŏlo, ās,	*fly, hasten.*
*Vŏlo, vīs,	*be willing.*

III. Verbs having the same Perfect:

*Aceo, ăcui,	*be sharp.*	Acuo, ăcui,	*sharpen.*
Cresco, crēvi,	*grow.*	Cerno, crēvi,	*take possession.*
*Fulgeo, fulsi,	*shine.*	Fulcio, fulsi,	*prop.*
*Lūceo, luxi,	*shine.*	*Lūgeo, luxi,	*mourn.*
Mulceo, mulsi,	*soothe*	*Mulgeo, mulsi,	*milk.*
*Păveo, pāvi,	*fear.*	Pasco, pāvi,	*feed.*
*Pendeo, pĕpendi,	*hang.*	Pendo, pĕpendi,	*weigh.*

To these add *Sto, Sisto,* and some of their Compounds.

IV. Verbs having the same Perfect Participle:

Cerno, crētus,	*sift.*	Pando, passus,	*expand.*
Cresco, crētus,	*grow.*	Pătior, passus,	*suffer.*
Păsciscor, pactus,	*bargain.*	Vergo, versus,	*incline.*
Pāgo, pactus,	*lay a wager.*	Verro, versus,	*brush.*
Pango, pactus,	*fasten.*	Verto, versus,	*turn.*

DERIVATION AND COMPOSITION OF VERBS.

I. Verbs are derived either from nouns or from other verbs.

Verbs derived from nouns are called *Denominative;* as,

Cœno, to sup; *laudo,* to praise; *fraudo,* to defraud; *lapĭdo,* to throw stones; *opĕror,* to work; *frumentor,* to forage; *lignor,* to gather fuel; &c. from *cœna, laus, fraus,* &c. But when they express imitation or resemblance, they are called *Imitative;* as, *Patrisso, Græcor, būbŭla, cornīcor,* &c. I imitate or resemble my father, a Grecian, an owl, a crow, &c. from *pater, Græcus, bubo, cornix.*

Of those derived from other verbs, the following chiefly deserve attention; namely, *Frequentatives, Inceptives,* and *Desideratives.*

1. *FREQUENTATIVES* express frequency of action, and are all of the first conjugation. They are formed from the last supine, by changing *ātu* into *ĭto,* in verbs of the first conjugation; and by changing *u* into *o,* in verbs of the other three conjugations; as, *clamo,* to cry, *clamĭto,* to cry frequently; *terreo, terrĭto; verto, verso; dormio, dormīto.*

In like manner, Deponent verbs form Frequentatives in *or;* as, *minor,* to threaten; *minĭtor,* to threaten frequently.

Some are formed in an irregular manner; as, *nato* from *no; noscĭto,* from *nosco; scitor,* or rather *sciscĭtor,* from *scio; pavĭto,* from *paveo, sector,* from *sequor; loquĭtor,* from *loquor.* So, *quærĭto, fundĭto, agĭto, fluĭto,* &c.

From Frequentative verbs are also formed other Frequentatives; as, *curro, curso, cursĭto; pello, pulso, pulsĭto,* or by contraction *pulto; capio, capto, captĭto; cano, canto, cantĭto; defendo, defenso, defensĭto; dico, dicto, dictĭto; gero, gesto, gestĭto; jacio, jacto, jactĭto; venio, vento, ventĭto; mutio, musso,* (for *mutĭto,*) *mussĭto,* &c.

Verbs of this kind do not always express frequency of action. Many of them have much the same sense with their primitives, or express the meaning more strongly.

2. *INCEPTIVE Verbs* mark the beginning or continued increase of any thing. They are formed from the second person singular of the present of the indicative, by adding *co;* as, *caleo*, to be hot; *cales*, *calesco*, to grow hot. So in the other conjugations, *labasco*, from *labo;* *tremisco*, from *tremo;* *obdormisco*, from *obdormio*. *Hisco*, from *hio*, is contracted for *hiasco*. Inceptives are likewise formed from substantives and adjectives; as, *puerasco*, from *puer;* *dulcesco*, from *dulcis;* *juvenesco*, from *juvĕnis*.

All Inceptives are neuter verbs, and of the third conjugation. They want both the preterite and supine; unless very rarely, when they borrow them from their primitives.

3. *DESIDERATIVE Verbs* signify a desire or intention of doing a thing. They are formed from the latter supine by adding *rio*, and shortening the *u;* as, *cœnātŭrio*, I desire to sup, from *cœnātu*. They are all of the fourth conjugation; and want both preterite and supine, except these three, *ēsŭrio*, *-īvi*, *-ītum*, to desire to eat; *partŭrio*, *-īvi*,—to be in travail; *nuptŭrio*, *-īvi*, —, to desire to be married.

There are a few verbs in *LLO*, which are called Diminutive; as, *cantillo*, *sorbillo*, *-āre*, I sing, I sup a little. To these some add *albĭco*, and *candĭco*, *-are*, to be, or to grow whitish; also, *nigrĭco*, *fodĭco*, and *vellĭco*. Some verbs in *SSO* are called *Intensive;* as, *Capesso*, *facesso*, *petesso*, or *petisso*, I take, I do, I seek earnestly.

II. Verbs are compounded with nouns, with other verbs, with adverbs, and chiefly with prepositions. Many of the simple verbs are not in use; as, *Fūto*, *fendo*, *specio*, *gruo*, &c. The component parts usually remain entire. Sometimes a letter is added; as, *prodeo*, for *pro-eo;* or taken away; as, *asporto*, *omitto*, *trado*, *pejĕro*, *pergo*, *debeo*, *præbeo*, *&c.* for *absporto*, *obmitto*, *transdo*, *perjūro*, *perrĕgo*, *dehibeo*, *præhibeo*, *&c.* So, *demo*, *promo*, *sumo*, of *de*, *pro*, *sub*, and *emo*, which anciently signified, *to take*, or *to take away*. Often the vowel or diphthong of the simple verb, and the last consonant of the preposition is changed; as, *damno*, *condemno;* *calco*, *conculco;* *lædo*, *collīdo;* *audio*, *obedio*, *&c.* *Affĕro*, *aufĕro*, *collaudo*, *implĭco*, *&c.* for *adfĕro*, *abfĕro*, *conlaudo*, *inplĭco*, *&c.*

REMARKS ON THE VERB.

A Verb has been defined as a word which signifies *doing*, *suffering*, or *being*. It would have been more simple and much more intelligible to have said, *A verb is that part of speech which* MENTIONS SOME ACT, EVENT, *or* CIRCUMSTANCE *of or concerning* PERSONS, PLACES, THINGS, *or* IDEAS; as, *Cæsar vĭcit*, Cæsar conquered; *Rōma ruit*, Rome falls; *Argentum splendet*, silver shines; *Prŏbĭtas laudātur et alget*, honesty is praised and starves. A Verb being the most essential word in a sentence, and without which a sentence cannot subsist, any word that, placed after the names of Persons, Places, Things, or Ideas, will make full sense, is a Verb. An English Verb may be known by its making sense with the words *he will*, or *it shall*, placed before it; as, *He will conquer*, *It shall fall*.

The letters which precede the Infinitive terminations, *-āre*, *-ēre*, *-ĕre*, *-īre*, are called *Radicals*, and always remain unchanged. Thus, *Am* is the radical part of *Amāre;* *Mŏn* of *Mŏnēre;* *Rĕg* of *Rĕgĕre;* *Aud* of *Audīre*. By prefixing the radicals

to the changeable parts, or terminations, which are the same in all Verbs of a similar Conjugation, every person of the simple Tenses of a regular Verb may be formed with the greatest facility.

Verbs seem to have had but one uncontracted Conjugation originally. At present there are four Conjugations; one uncontracted in *-ĕre*, as *Lĕgĕre*; and three contracted in (*ăĕre*) *-āre*, as *Amāre*; in (*-ĕĕre*) *-ēre*, as *Mŏnēre*; and in (*ĭĕre*) *-īre*, as *Audīre*. Charis. lib. II. and some other ancient grammarians admit of but three Conjugations; and Vossius de Anal. III. 33. shows the fourth to be a mere contraction of the third.

The Participles in *-rus* and *-dus* in the Future Infinitive and the Perfect Participle in the Past Infinitive Passive are used only in the Nom. and Accus. but in all Genders and Numbers; as, *Amātūrus, -a, -um, esse; Amatur-um, -am, -um, esse; Amatur-i, -æ, -a esse; Amatur-os, -as, -a esse; Amatur-us, a, -um fuisse; Amatur-um, -am, -um fuisse,* &c. *Amăt-us, -a, -um esse; Amat-um, -am, -um esse; Amat-i, -æ, -a esse,* &c. In the Future Infinitive Passive the termination *-um* of the Supine remains always unchanged. The Past Infinitive Passive seems to have been anciently of no certain Gender. In Plautus, Amph. Prol. 33. we read, *Justam rem et facilem esse oratum a vobis volo*; and in Cic. Att. VIII. 18. *Cohortes ad me missum facias.* The Neuter of the Future in *-rus* is found construed in the same manner. See Cic. II. Ver. v. 65. Aul. Gell. I. 7. Lambin. ad Plaut. Casin. III. 5. 37. Jan. Gulielm. Quæst. Plaut. p. 4. Voss. de Anal. III. 16. Perizon. ad Sanct. Min. I. 15. p. 125.

To the Present Infinitive Passive the syllable *-er* was occasionally added by the early poets; as, *Amārier* for *Amari*; *Fārier* for *Fāri*. So *Dīcier*, Pers. Sat. I. 28.

The Future Infinitive Active occurs sometimes in *-ssere*; as, *Expugnassĕre*, Plaut. Amph. I. 1. 55. *Impetrassĕre*, Aul. IV. 7. 6. Casin. II. 3. 53. Mil. IV. 3. 35. Stich. I. 2. 23. *Rĕconciliassĕre*, Capt. I. 2. 65.

The Perfect Infinitive Active is frequently contracted; the syllable *vi* is omitted before *s*; as, *Amasse, Complesse, Nosse, Isse,* &c. Also, *Cesse*, Lucr. I. 1104. *Consumse*, I. 234. *Dīvisse*, Hor. II. Sat. 3. 169. *Dixe*, Non. v. 17. *Prōduxe*, Ter. Ad. IV. 2. 22. *Prōmisse*, Catul. cx. 5. *Subduxe*, Varr., &c. In the 4th Conj. *vi* or *v* only is omitted; as, *Perisse*, Plaut. Capt. III. 5. 35. *Periisse*, Aul. II. 4. 21. A similar contraction takes place in the Perfects of the Indicative and Subjunctive; *vi* is dropped before *s*, and *ve* before *r*. Of Perfects in *-ovi*, *Nōvi* and *Mōvi* alone admit of contraction. Also, *Dixti* and *Dixis*, Cic. pro Cæcin. c. 29. Quintil. IX. 3. Terent. And. III 1. 1. Gell. VII. 17. *Accesti*, Virg. Æn. I. 205.

The Imperfect Indicative in the 4th Conj. anciently ended in *-ībam*, and the Future in *-ibo*; thus, *Scībo*, Plaut. Asin. I. 1. 13. Most. IV. 3. 5. Truc. II. 6. 69. *Servības*, Ter. And. I. 1. 11. Plaut. Capt. II. 1. 50. *Custōdībant*, Catull. LXIV. 319. *Vestibat*, Virg. Æn. VIII. 160. *Expĕdibo*, Plaut. Truc. I. 2. 36. *Largībĕre*, Bacch. IV. 7. 30. *Servībo*, Terent. Hec. III. 5. 45. *Mollībit*, Hor. III. Od. 23. 19. *Reddībĭtur*, Plaut. Epid. I. 1. 22. &c. &c.

The termination *-ēre* in the third Person Plur. Perfect Indicative is not so usual as that in *-ērunt*, especially in prose.

In the second Person Sing. of the Present Indic. Passive the termination *-re* for *-ris* is rare. In Cicero *-re* for *-ris* in the Imperfect and Future Indicative, and the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive, occurs frequently.

The Present Subjunctive anciently ended in *-im*; as, *Duim, Duis, Duit, Duint* for *Dem, Des, &c.* *Perduim, is, it, int,* for *Perdam, as, &c.* Vid. Plaut. Amph. II. 2. 215. Aul. I. 1. 23. IV. 6. 6. Terent. Andr. IV. 1. 42. Cic. Cat. I.

9. Att. xv. 4. Deiot. c. 7. Liv. x. 19. xxii. 10, *&c.* We also find such forms as *Perduunt*, Plaut. Rud. Prol. 24. *Creduis*, Amph. ii. 2. 40. Capt. iii. 4. 73. Truc. ii. 2. 52. *Creduam, as, at*, Plaut. Pœn. iii. 5. 2. Trin. iii. Bacch. iv. 8. 6. *Siem, es, et*, for *Sim, &c.* Plaut. Amph. Prol. 57. Lucr. ii. 1078. Terent. Eun. i. 1. 21. *Fuat*, for *sit*, Virg. Æn. x. 108.

The Future Subj. in a few instances occurs in *-sso*, and the Perfect Subjunctive in *-ssim;* thus, *Lĕvasso*, Cic. de Senect. c. 1. *Abjūrassit*, Plaut. Pers. iv. 3. 9. *Invītassitis*, Rud. iii. 5. 31. *Irrītassis*, Amph. i. 1. 298. Pers. v. 2. 47. Stich. ii. 2. 21. *Servassint*, Asin. iii. 3. 64. Casin. iii. 5. 16. Pseud. i. 1. 35. *Servassit*, Cistel. iv. 2. 76. *Servasso*, Most. i. 3. 71. *Lĭcessit*, Asin. iii. 3. 13. *Prŏhĭbessis*, Plaut. Pseud. i. 1. 11. Cic. de Leg. iii. 3. So *Jusso* for *Jussĕro*, Virg. Æn. xi. 467.

The Imperatives of *Dīco, Dūco, Fĕro*, and *Făcio*, drop the final *e;* thus, *Dīc, Dūc, Fĕr, Făc.* So *Ingĕr*, Catull. xxvii. 2. But the Compounds of *Făcio* retain the *e;* as *Confĭcĕ, Perfĭcĕ. Dīcĕ, Dūcĕ, Făcĕ* occur sometimes in the early poets. Vid. Voss. Gr. p. 131.

The Present Subjunctive is frequently used for the Imperative; as, *Nē făciās*, do not do it; and sometimes the Future-Indic.; as, *Nōn occīdēs*, thou shalt not kill. So *Vălēbis* and *Vĭdēbis* in Cic. for *Văle* and *Vĭde.* The Perfect Subjunctive is used also in the same manner; as, *Tū vīdĕrĭs*, see you to it; *Nē dixĕrĭs*, do not say it.

The termination *-mĭno* in the second Person Sing. Passive, and *-mĭnor*, for *-mĭni*, in the Plural, are exceedingly rare. *Arbitrāmĭnor*, Plaut. Epid. v. 2. 30. *Progrĕdĭmĭnor*, Pseud. iii. 2. 70. *Fāmĭno* for *Fāre*, Cato, R. R. c. 141.

The third Person in *-to* and *-nto* is used chiefly in law-giving; as, *Ad Dīvos ădeunto caste, piĕtātem cŏlunto*, Cic. Leg. ii. 19. Sometimes in the comic writers; as, *Phormiōnem lăcessīto*, Ter. Phorm. v. 7. 38.

The termination *-tōte* is rare. It occurs in Ennius, Cicero, Ovid, and Plautus. See Voss. Anal. iii. 4.

The Participle in *-rus* and the Participle in *-dus* are found joined with most of the tenses of *Sum.* But the Participle in *-rus* does not occur joined with *Fuĕro.*

PARTICIPLE.

A Participle is a kind of Adjective formed from a verb, which in its signification implies time.

It is so called because it partakes both of an adjective and of a verb, having in Latin, gender and declension from the one, time and signification from the other, and number from both.

Participles in Latin are declined like adjectives; and their signification is various, according to the nature of the verbs from which they come; only Participles in *dus*, are always passive, and import not so much future time, as obligation or necessity.

Latin verbs have four Participles, the present and future active; as, *Amans*, loving; *ămātūrus*,

about to love; and the perfect and future passive; as, *amātus*, loved; *amandus*, to be loved.

The Latins have not a participle perfect in the active, nor a participle present in the passive voice; which defect must be supplied by a circumlocution. Thus, to express the perfect participle active in English, we use a conjunction, and the pluperfect of the subjunctive in Latin, or some other tense, according to its connexion with the other words of a sentence; as, he having loved; *quum amavisset*, &c.

Neuter verbs have commonly but two Participles; as, *Sĕdens, sessūrus; stans, statūrus.*

From some Neuter verbs are formed Participles of the perfect tense; as, *Errātus, festinātus, jurātus, laborātus, vigilātus, cessātus, sudātus, triumphātus, regnātus, decursus, desĭtus, emerĭtus, emersus, obĭtus, placĭtus, successus, occāsus*, &c. and also of the future in *dus*; as, *Jurandus, vigilandus, regnandus, carendus, dormiendus, erubescendus*, &c. Neuter passive verbs are equally various. *Veneo* has no participle: *Fido*, only *fidens* and *fisus*; *soleo, solens*, and *solĭtus*; *vapŭlo, vapŭlans*, and *vapulatūrus*; *Gaudeo, gaudens, gavīsus*, and *gavisūrus*; *Audeo, audens, ausus, ausūrus, audendus*. *Ausus* is used both in an active and passive sense; as, *Ausi omnes immāne, nefas, ausōque potīti*. Virg. Æn. vi. 624.

Deponent and Common Verbs have commonly four Participles; as,

Loquens, speaking; *locutūrus*, about to speak; *locūtus*, having spoken; *loquendus*, to be spoken. *Dignans*, vouchsafing: *dignatūrus*, about to vouchsafe; *dignātus*, having vouchsafed, being vouchsafed, *or* having been vouchsafed; *dignandus*, to be vouchsafed. Many participles of the perfect tense from Deponent verbs have both an active and passive sense; as, *Abominātus, conātus, confessus, adortus, amplexus, blandītus, largītus, mentītus, oblītus, testātus, venerātus*, &c.

There are several Participles, compounded with *in*, signifying *not*, the verbs of which do not admit of such composition; as,

Insciens, inspērans, indīcens for *non dicens, inopīnans* and *necopīnans, immĕrens; Illæsus, impransus, inconsultus, incustodītus, immetātus, impunītus, imparātus, incomitātus, incomptus, indemnātus, indotātus, incorruptus interrĭtus*, and *imperterrĭtus, intestātus, inausus, inopinātus, inultus, incensus* for *non census*, not registered; *infectus* for *non factus; invīsus* for *non visus; indictus*, for *non dictus*, &c. There is a different *incensus* from *incendo; infectus* from *inficio; invīsus* from *invĭdeo; indictus* from *indīco*, &c.

If from the signification of a Participle we take away *time*, it becomes an adjective, and admits the degrees of comparison; as,

Amans, loving, *amantior, amantissĭmus; doctus*, learned, *doctior, doctissĭmus*; or a substantive; as, *Præfectus*, a commander or governor; *consŏnans*, f. sc. *littĕra*, a consonant; *contĭnens*, f. sc. *terra*, a continent; *confluens*, m. a place where two rivers run together; *oriens*, m. sc. *sol*, the east; *occĭdens*, m. the west; *dictum*, a saying; *scriptum*, &c.

There are many words in *atus, itus*, and *utus*, which, although resembling participles, are reckoned adjectives, because they come from nouns, and not from

verbs; as, *alātus, barbātus, cordātus, caudātus, cristātus, aurītus, pellītus, terrītus; astūtus, cornūtus, nasūtus, &c.* winged, bearded, discreet, &c. But *aurātus, ærātus, argentātus, ferrātus, plumbātus, gypsātus, calceātus, clypeātus, galeātus, tunicātus, larvātus, palliātus, lymphātus, purpurātus, prætextātus, &c.*, covered with gold, brass, silver, &c., are accounted participles, because they are supposed to come from obsolete verbs. So perhaps *calamistrātus*, frizzled, crisped, or curled; *crinītus*, having long hair; *perītus*, skilled, &c.

There is a kind of Verbal adjectives in *Bundus*, formed from the imperfect of the indicative, which very much resemble Participles in their signification, but generally express the meaning of the verb more fully, or denote an abundance or great deal of the action; as, *vitabundus*, the same with *valde vitans*, avoiding much. Sal. Jug. 60, and 101. Liv. xxv. 13. So, *errabundus, ludibundus, populabundus, moribundus, &c.*

GERUNDS AND SUPINES.

GERUNDS are participial words, which bear the signification of the verb from which they are formed; and are declined like a neuter noun of the second declension, through all the cases of the singular number, except the vocative.

There are, both in Latin and English, substantives derived from the verb, which so much resemble the Gerund in their signification, that frequently they may be substituted in its place. They are generally used, however, in a more undetermined sense than the Gerund, and in English have the article always prefixed to them. Thus, with the Gerund, *Delector legendo Cicerōnem*, I am delighted with reading Cicero. But with the substantive, *Delector lectiōne Cicerōnis*, I am delighted with the reading of Cicero.

The Gerund and Future Participle of Verbs in *-io*, and some others, often take *u* instead of *e*; as, *faciundum, -di, -do, -dus; experiundum, potiundum, gerundum, petundum, ducundum*, &c. for *faciendum*, &c.

SUPINES have much the same signification with Gerunds; and may be indifferently applied to any person or number. They agree in termination with nouns of the fourth declension, having only the accusative and ablative cases.

The former Supine is commonly used in an active, and the latter in a passive sense, but sometimes the contrary; as, *coctum non vapulātum, dudum conductus fui*, i. e. *ut vapulārem*, or *verberārer*, to be beaten. Plaut.

ADVERB.

An Adverb is an indeclinable part of speech, *added to a verb,* adjective, or other adverb, to express some circumstance, quality, or manner of their signification.

All adverbs may be divided into two classes, namely, those which denote *Circumstance;* and those which denote *Quality, Manner,* &c.

I. Adverbs denoting CIRCUMSTANCE are chiefly those of *Place, Time,* and *Order.*

1. Adverbs of *Place* are five-fold, namely, such as signify,

1. *Motion or rest in a place.*

Ubi?	*Where?*
Hic,	*Here.*
Illic, Isthic, Ibi,	*There.*
Intus,	*Within.*
Fŏris,	*Without.*
Ubīque,	*Every where.*
Nusquam,	*No where.*
Alĭcubi,	*Some where.*
Alĭbi,	*Else where.*
Ubĭvis,	*Any where.*
Ibīdem,	*In the same place.*

2. *Motion to a place.*

Quo?	*Whither?*
Huc,	*Hither.*
Illuc, Isthuc,	*Thither.*
Intro,	*In.*
Fŏras,	*Out.*
Eò,	*To that place.*
Aliò	*To another place.*
Alĭquò,	*To some place.*
Eōdem,	*To the same place.*

3. *Motion towards a place.*

Quorsum?	*Whitherward?*
Versus,	*Towards.*
Horsum,	*Hitherward.*
Illorsum,	*Thitherward.*
Sursum,	*Upward.*
Deorsum,	*Downward.*
Antrorsum,	*Forward.*
Retrorsum,	*Backward.*
Dextrorsum,	*Towards the right.*
Sinistrorsum,	*Towards the left.*

4. *Motion from a place.*

Unde?	*Whence?*
Hinc,	*Hence.*
Illinc, Isthinc, Inde,	*Thence.*
Indĭdem,	*From the same place.*
Aliunde,	*From elsewhere.*
Alĭcunde,	*From some place.*
Sicunde,	*If from any place.*
Utrinque,	*On both sides.*
Sŭperne,	*From above.*
Inferne,	*From below.*
Cœlĭtus,	*From heaven.*
Fundĭtus,	*From the ground.*

5. *Motion through or by a place.*

Quà?	*Which way?*
Hàc,	*This way.*
Illac, Isthac,	*That way.*
Alià,	*Another way.*

2. Adverbs of *Time* are three-fold, namely, such as signify,

1. *Some particular time, either present, past, future, or indefinite.*

Nunc,	*Now.*
Hŏdie,	*To-day.*
Tunc, Tum,	*Then.*
Hĕri,	*Yesterday.*
Dūdum, Prīdem,	*Heretofore.*
Prīdie,	*The day before.*
Nūdius tertius,	*Three days ago.*
Nūper,	*Lately.*
Jamjam,	*Presently.*
Mox,	*Immediately.*
Stătim,	*By and by.*
Prōtĭnus,	*Instantly.*
Illĭco,	*Straightway,*
Cras,	*To-morrow.*
Postridie,	*The day after.*
Pĕrendie,	*Two days hence.*
Nondum,	*Not yet.*
Quando?	*When?*
Alĭquando, Nonnunquam, Interdum,	*Sometimes.*
Semper,	*Ever, always.*
Nunquam,	*Never.*
Intĕrim,	*In the meantime.*
Quŏtĭdie,	*Daily.*

2. *Continuance of time.*

Diu,	*Long.*
Quamdiu?	*How long?*
Tamdiu,	*So long.*
Jamdiu, Jamdūdum, Jampridem,	*Long ago.*

3. *Vicissitude or repetition of time.*

Quŏties?	*How often?*
Sæpe,	*Often.*
Rārò,	*Seldom.*
Tŏties,	*So often.*
Alĭquŏties,	*For several times.*
Vĭcissim, Alternātim,	*By turns.*
Rursus, Itĕrum,	*Again.*
Sŭbinde, Identĭdem,	*Ever and anon, now and then.*
Sĕmel,	*Once.*
Bis,	*Twice.*
Ter,	*Thrice.*
Quăter,	*Four times, &c.*

3. Adverbs of *Order.*

Inde,	*Then.*
Deinde,	*After that.*
Dehinc,	*Henceforth.*
Porro,	*Moreover.*
Deinceps,	*So forth.*
Dēnuo,	*Anew.*
Dēnĭque,	*Finally.*
Postrēmò,	*Lastly.*
Primò, -um,	*First.*
Sĕcundò, -um,	*Secondly.*
Tertiò, -ùm,	*Thirdly.*
Quartò, -ùm,	*Fourthly, &c.*

II. Adverbs denoting QUALITY, MANNER, *&c.*, are either *Absolute* or *Comparative.*

Those called *Absolute* denote,

1. QUALITY, simply; as, *benè*, well; *malè*, ill; *fortĭter*, bravely; and innumerable others that come from adjective nouns or participles.

2. CERTAINTY; as, *prŏfectò, certè, sānè, plānè, næ, ŭtĭque, ĭta, ĕtiam*, truly, verily, yes; *quidni*, why not? *omnīno*, certainly.

3. CONTINGENCE; as, *forte, forsan, fortassis, fors*, haply, perhaps, by chance, peradventure.

4. NEGATION; as, *non, haud*, not; *nequāquam*, not at all; *neutĭquam*, by no means; *mĭnĭme*, nothing less.

5. PROHIBITION; as, *ne*, not.

6. SWEARING; as, *hercle, pol, edĕpol, mĕcastor*, by Hercules, by Pollux, *&c.*

7. EXPLAINING; as, *utpŏte, vĭdĕlĭcet, scĭlĭcet, nīmīrum, nempe*, to wit, namely.

8. SEPARATION; as, *seorsum*, apart; *sēpărātim*, separately; *sĭgil -ātim*, one by one; *vĭrītim*, man by man; *oppĭdātim*, town by town, *&c.*

9. JOINING TOGETHER; as, *sĭmul, unà, părĭter*, together; *gĕnĕralĭter*, generally; *ūnĭversalĭter*, universally; *plērumque*, for the most part.

10. INDICATION or POINTING OUT; as, *en, ecce*, lo, behold.

11. INTERROGATION; as, *cur, quāre, qūamobrem*, why, wherefore? *num, an*, whether? *quōmŏdo, quì*, how? To which add, *Ubi, quò, quorsum, unde, quà, quando, quamdiu, quoties.*

Those Adverbs which are called *Comparative* denote,

1. EXCESS; as, *valde, maxĭme, magnopĕre, maximopĕre, summōpĕre, admŏdum, oppĭdò, perquam, longè*, greatly, very much, exceedingly; *nimis, nimium*, too much; *prorsus, penĭtus, omnīno*, altogether, wholly; *magis*, more; *meliùs*, better; *pejus*, worse, *fortiùs*, more bravely; and *optĭmè*, best; *pessĭmè*, worst; *fortissĭmè*, most bravely; and innumerable others of the comparative and superlative degrees.

2. DEFECT; as, *Fermè, fĕrè, prŏpemŏdum, pēnè*, almost; *părum*, little; *paulò, paulŭlum*, very little.

3. PREFERENCE; as, *pŏtiùs, sătiùs*, rather; *pŏtissĭmùm, præcĭpue, præsertim*, chiefly, especially; *imò*, yes, nay, nay rather.

4. LIKENESS or EQUALITY; as, *ĭta, sic, ădeò*, so; *ut, ŭti, sicut, sicŭti, vĕlut, velŭti, ceu, tanquam, quasī*, as, as if; *quemadmŏdum*, even as; *sătìs*, enough; *ĭtĭdem*, in like manner; *juxta*, alike, equally.

5. UNLIKENESS or INEQUALITY; as, *alĭter, secus*, otherwise; *aliŏqui* or *aliōquin*, else; *nēdum*, much more, *or* much less.

6. ABATEMENT; as, *sensim, paulātim, pĕdĕtentim*, by degrees, piecemeal; *vix*, scarcely; *ægrè*, hardly, with difficulty.

7. EXCLUSION; as, *tantùm, sōlùm, modò, tantummŏdo, duntaxat, dēmum*, only.

DERIVATION, COMPARISON, AND COMPOSITION OF ADVERBS.

Adverbs are derived, 1. from Substantives, and end commonly in *tim* or *tus;* as, *Partim*, partly, by parts; *nominātim*, by name; *generātim*, by kinds, generally; *speciātim: vicātim, gregātim; radĭcĭtus*, from the root, *&c.* 2. From adjectives: and these are by far the most numerous. Such as come from Adjectives of the first and second declension usually end in *e;* as, *liberè*, freely; *plenè*, fully; some in *o, um*, and *ter*, as, *falsò, tantùm, gravĭter;* a few in *a, itus*, and *im;* as, *recta, antiquĭtus, privātim.* Some are used two or three ways; as, *primum*, or *-ò, purè, -ĭter; certē, -ò; caute, -tim; humanè, -ĭter, -ĭtus; publicè, publĭcĭtus, &c.* Adverbs from Adjectives of the third declension commonly end in *ter*, seldom in *e;* as, *turpĭter, felicĭter, acrĭter, parĭter; facĭle, repente;* one in *o, omnīno.* The neuter of Adjectives is sometimes taken adverbially; as, *recens natus*, for *recenter; perfĭdum ridens*, for *perfĭdè*, Hor. *multa reluctans*, for *multùm* or *valdè*, Virg. So in English we say, *to speak loud, high, &c.* for *loudly, highly, &c.* In many cases a substantive is understood; as, *primò*, sc. *loco; optatò advenis*, sc. *tempore; hàc*, sc. *viâ, &c.*

3. From each of the pronominal adjectives, *ille, iste, hic, is, idem, &c.* are formed adverbs, which express all the circumstances of place; as, from *Ille, illic, illuc, illorsum, illinc*, and *illac.* So from *Quis, ubi, quo, quorsum, unde* and *quà;* also of time; thus, *quando, quamdiu, &c.*

4. From verbs and participles; as, *cæsim*, with the edge; *punctim*, with the point; *strictim*, closely; from *cædo, pungo, stringo; amanter, prŏperanter, dubitanter; distinctè, emendātè, merĭtò, inopinātò; &c.* But these last are thought to be in the ablative, having *ex* understood.

5. From prepositions; as, *intus, intro*, from *in*; *clancŭlum*, fom *clam*; *subtus*, from *sub, &c.*

Adverbs derived from adjectives are commonly compared like their primitives. The *positive* generally ends in *e*, or *ter*; as, *durè, facĭlè, acrĭter*; the *comparative*, in *ius*; as, *duriùs, faciliùs, acriùs*; the *superlative*, in *ĭme*; as, *durissĭme, facillĭmè, accerrĭmè.*

If the comparison of the adjective be irregular or defective, the comparison of the adverb is so too; as, *benè, meliùs, optĭme; malè, pejùs, pessĭmè; parùm, minùs, minĭmò, & -ùm; multum, plus, plurĭmùm; prope, propiùs, proxĭmè; ocyùs, ocyssĭme; priùs, primò, -um; nuper, nuperrĭmè; novè, & novĭter, nòvissĭmè; merĭtò, meritissĭmò, &c.* Those adverbs also are compared whose primitives are obsolete; as, *sæpe, sæpiùs, sæpissĭmè; penitùs, penitiùs, penitissĭme; satìs, satiùs; secus, seciùs, &c. Magìs, maximè*; and *potius, potissĭmùm*, want the positive.

Adverbs are variously compounded with all the different parts of speech; thus, *postridie, magnopĕre, maximopĕre, summopĕre, tantopĕre, multimŏdis, omnimŏdis, quomŏdo, quare*; of *postĕro die, magno opĕre, &c. Ilĭcet, scilĭcet, videlĭcet*, of *ire, scire, vidēre, licet; illĭco*, of *in loco; quorsum*, of *quo versum; comminus*, hand to hand, of, *cum* or *con* and *manus, emĭnus*, at a distance, of *e* and *manus; quorsum*, of *quo versum; denuo*, anew, of *de novo; quin*, why not, but, of, *qui ne; cur*, of *cui rei; pedetentim*, step by step, as it were, of *pedem tendendo; perendie*, for *perempto die; nimīrum*, of *ne*, i. e. *non*, and *mirum; antea, postea, præterea, &c.* of *ante* and *ea, &c. Ubĭvis, quovis, undelĭbil, quousque, sicut, sicŭti, velut, velŭti, desŭper, insŭper, quamobrem, &c.* of *ubi* and *vis, &c, nudiustertius*, of *nunc dies tertius; identĭdem*, of *idem et idem; ĭmpræsentiārum*, i. e. *in tempŏre rerum præsentium, &c.*

Obs. 1. The Adverb is not an essential part of speech. It only serves to express shortly, in one word, what must otherwise have required two or more; as, *sapienter*, wisely, for *cum sapientiâ; hic*, for *in hoc loco; semper*, for *in omni tempŏre; semel*, for *unâ vice; bis*, for *duābus vicĭbus; Mehercŭle*, for *Hercŭles me juvet, &c.*

Obs. 2. Some adverbs of time, place, and order, are frequently used the one for the other; as, *ubi*, where, or when; *inde*, from that place, from that time, after that, next; *hactĕnus*, hitherto, thus far, with respect to place, time, or order, &c.

Obs. 3. Some adverbs of time are either *past, present*, or *future*; as, *jam*, already, now, by and by; *olim*, long ago, some time, hereafter. Some adverbs of place are equally various; thus, *esse peregrè*, to be abroad; *ire peregrè*, to go abroad; *redīre peregre*, to return from abroad.

Obs. 4. Interrogative adverbs of time and place doubled, or compounded with *cunque*, answer to the English adjection *soever*; as, *ubiŭbi*, or *ubicunque*, wheresoever; *quoquò, quòcunque*, whithersoever, &c. The same holds also in interrogative words; as, *quotquot*, or *quotcunque*, how many soever; *quantusquantus*, or *quantuscunque*, how great soever; *utut*, or *utcunque*, however or howsoever, &c.

PREPOSITIONS.

A *Preposition* is an indeclinable word which shows the relation of one thing to another.

There are Thirty-two Prepositions which govern the Accusative.

AD, expresses *conjunction* or *propinquity*, and its general signification is TO, as, *ad Carthagĭnem*, 'to Carthage;' *omnes ad unum*, 'all to a man.' AT or ON, as, *ad præstitūtam, diem*, 'at the appointed day;' *ad portam*, 'at the gate.' AFTER, as, *aliquanto ad rem avidior*, 'a little too greedy after money.' It is also used for *secundum*, 'according to;' as, *ad cursum lunæ*, 'according to the course of the moon.' FOR, as, *rebus ad profectionen comparatis*, 'things being ready for a march. BEFORE, as, *ductus est ad magistrātum*, 'he was led before a magistrate.' ABOUT, as, *ad duo milliă*, 'about two thousand.' IN COMPARISON OF, *nihil ad Cæsărem*, 'nothing in comparison of Cæsar.' But all these different renderings may be referred to the simple signification of 'TO.'—Phrases. *Ad summum*, 'at most,' or 'to the top;' *ad summam*, 'in the whole;' *ad ultĭmum*, 'at last,' 'finally;' *ad judĭcem agĕre*, 'to plead before a judge;' *ad hoc*, 'in addition to this,' 'besides;' *ad decem annos*, Cic. 'after ten years,' or 'ten years hence,' that is, up *to* the completion of ten years; *ad manus venīre*, 'to come to a close engagement;' *ad lunam*, 'by the light of the moon;' *ad amussim*, 'exactly,' (literally, 'to a mason's rule.')

ADVERSUS, or ADVERSUM. This is compounded of *ad*, 'to,' and the participle *versus*, 'turned.' So we have in English the same two prepositions compounded in the word, '*to-wards*.' The general idea of this Preposition is that of OPPOSITION, or tendency AGAINST something, and hence its general meaning is AGAINST; as, *adversus hostem*, 'against the enemy;' *adversus legem*, 'contrary to law.' Hence it signifies OPPOSITION of place; as, *adversus Italiam*, 'opposite Italy.' From this, it signifies BEFORE, OR IN THE PRESENCE OF, OR TOWARDS; as, *adversus me*, 'in my presence;' *piĕtas adversus deos*, 'piety towards the gods.' To, as, *adversus hunc loqui*, 'to speak to him.'

ANTE denotes *precedence* of time or place, and hence means 'BEFORE.' It is opposed to *Post*; as, *ante, non post, decimam horam*, 'before, not after the tenth hour;' *ante aciem*, 'in front of the army.' It also signifies *priority* in point of *degree*; as, *Una longè ante alias specie ac pulchutudine*, 'one far above the others in beauty and figure.' It is sometimes used adverbially, but in all such cases some noun or adjective may be supplied; as, *ille ante incessit*, 'he marched first,' that is, *ante omnes*, 'before all.'

APUD denotes *presence* of place and person, and is said to be corrupted from *ad pedes*, 'at the feet.' It may generally be translated by 'AT;' as, *apud forum*, 'at the forum;' hence it is used for *cum*, as, *cœnavit apud me*, 'he supped with me;' *potior apud exercĭtum*, 'in greater credit with the army.' Hence it also

signifies 'NEAR,' or 'BY,' being used for *juxta;* as, *sedens apud eum,* 'sitting by him.' From the notion of bodily presence, it comes to signify 'presence of mind;' as, *vix sum apud me,* I am hardly myself;' *tu fac, apud te ut sies,* Terent. 'take care to be self-collected.' From presence of place may easily be deduced its signification of *inter,* 'AMONG,' as, *apud majores nostros,* 'among our ancestors.' The difference between *Apud* and *Inter* is, however, very clear. *Inter* means 'among,' or 'in the number of,' as, *inter amīcos,* 'among,' or 'in the number of my friends;' *Apud* means 'among,' 'with,' 'in the writings of,' 'in the customs of;' as, *apud Ciceronem,* 'with Cicero,' or 'or in the opinion of Cicero;' *Apud Homerum invenio,* 'I find in the writings of Homer;' *Apud Romanos mos erat,* 'it was the custom among the Romans.' Another meaning is 'BEFORE,' as, *causam apud regem dicĕre,* 'to plead before the king.'

CIRCA, CIRCUM. This Preposition signifies *approximation* and *comprehension* of time, place, person, and number. It is derived from the Greek κιρκος 'a circle.' Its generic signification is 'ABOUT,' or 'ROUND ABOUT;' as, *circa portas,* 'about the gates;' *postĕro die circa eandem horam copias admōvit,* 'the next day, about the same hour, he advanced his army;' *oppida circa septuaginta,* 'about seven hundred towns;' *circa deos religionesque fuit negligens,* 'about the gods and their worship he was negligent.'

CIRCITER. This is nearly related to *circa* and *circum,* but is principally used in expressing approximation of *time;* as, *circĭter idus Mai,* 'about the Ides of May;' *octāvam circiter horam,* 'about the eighth hour.'

CIS expresses limitation of space and time, included within some distant boundary or distant time, to the place where we are, or the time when we are speaking. Its signification is, 'ON THIS SIDE,' 'WITHIN;' as, *cis Appenīnum,* 'on this side the Appenine;' *cis dies paucos,* 'within a few days.'

CITRA,* like *Cis,* signifies limitation within a certain boundary; as, *citra Rhenum,* on this side the Rhine.' It also means 'SHORT OF,' as, *peccāvi citra scelus,* 'I have committed an offence short of guilt.' Hence from the signification of 'short of,' it comes to imply 'deficiency,' and is used for *sine,* 'without,' as, *Phidias in ebore citra æmulum fuit,* 'Phidias was without a rival in ivory;' *citra hanc necessitātem,* 'without this necessity.'

---

* *Citra* is not immediately derived from *Cis,* but from its derivative *Citer;* and is, like *Extra, Infra, Intra, Supra, Ultra,* an ablative case feminine, governed by *a* or *ab,* and having *parte* understood with which it agrees. It governs the accusative not by any natural power of its own, but by an ellipsis of *quoad,* or *quod ad . . . attĭnet* understood after it. Thus, *citra Rubiconem,* 'on this side the Rubicon,' when fully explained, means, *a citerâ* (or *citra*) *parte quoad Rubiconem,* or, *a citrâ parte quoad ad Rubiconem attĭnet.* Thus we see how prepositions are used even for whole sentences, for convenience of speech, and shortening those circuitous expressions, the frequent recurrence of which would be very tedious and unpleasant in common discourse.

CONTRA,* in its general signification, implies *opposition*, and hence signifies 'AGAINST,' or 'IN OPPOSITION TO;' as *contra natūram*, 'against nature;' *contra expectatiōnem*, 'beyond expectation;' *Carthago est contra Italiam*, 'Carthage is opposite to Italy.' It is also frequently used adverbially, signifying, 'on the other hand;' as, *contra etiam*, &c. Cic. 'on the other hand also;' *stat contra, farique jubet*, 'he stands opposite and bids me speak;' *contra intuēri aliquem*, 'to look any one full in the face.' *Contra* is sometimes used to express 'price,' especially by Plautus, evidently from the idea of the *value* being put in the scale *opposite* to the commodity; as, *non carus est auro contra*, 'he is not dear for so much gold,' that is, 'he is worth an equal weight of gold put in the *opposite* scale;' literally—'he is not dear against gold.' So we say, 'worth its weight in gold.'

ERGA, 'TOWARDS,' as, *erga amīcos*, 'towards his friends;' 'BEFORE,' as, *quæ modo erga ædes habĭtat*, 'who lives now before our house.'

EXTRA† implies something *without* or *beyond* the limits of the thing spoken of, and is opposed to *Intra*. Its general meaning is 'WITHOUT;' as, *ingenium magis extra vitia, quam cum virtutĭbus*, 'a character rather without vices than accompanied with virtues.' 'BEYOND;' as, *extra modum*, 'beyond measure.' Hence it easily passes into the sense of *Supra*, 'above,' or 'exceeding;' as, *esse extra culpam*, 'to be above fault,' 'to be blameless.' Hence it is elegantly used for *Præter*, 'besides,' 'except;' as, *neque, extra unam anicŭlam, quisquam aderat*, 'neither was any one present, *besides* one poor old woman.' *Extra jocum*, 'without a joke,' 'joking apart.'

INFRA, expresses *inferiority* or *lower situation*, and may generally be rendered by '*below*,' or 'BENEATH,' as *infra tectum*, 'below the roof;' *infra se*, 'beneath himself;' *magnitudine paulo infra elephantos*, 'in size a little inferior to the elephant;' *infra infĭmos*, 'below the very lowest.' Hence it means 'WITHIN,' as *infra decem dies*, 'within ten days.'

INTER, 'BETWEEN,' as, *inter eos magna contentio fuit*, 'there was a great strife between them.' As that which is between two persons may be referred to one or the other, *inter* is often used for *invicem*, 'one another;' as, *puĕri amant inter se*, 'the boys love one another.' It also means 'among,' 'in the midst of;' as, *inter exercĭtum*, 'in the midst of the army;' *inter omnem vitam*, 'during their life time.'

INTRA,‡ is used to express the boundary *within* which any thing is contained referring either to time or space, and hence it signifies 'WITHIN;' as, *intra decem annos*, 'within ten years,' *intra muros*, 'within the walls;' *intra verba desipiunt*, 'they commit offence within words;' that is, 'no offence beyond words.'

JUXTA signifies *approximation* or *contiguity*, being derived from *jungo*, 'to join.' Its primary meaning is 'NEAR,' or 'by the side of;' as, *juxta murum, cas-*

---

* Probably the ablative feminine of the obsolete adjective *Contĕrus*, just as, *citra, extra, infra, intra*, and *supra*, are the ablatives of *citer, extĕrus, inferus, intĕrus, supĕrus*. ☞ See note on *Citra*.

† See note on *Citra*. ‡ See *Citra*.

tra posuit, 'he pitched his camp near the wall;' hence it means *proximity* of relationship; as, *velocĭtas juxta formidĭnem,* Tacit. 'rapidity is a-kin to cowardice.' Also, '*according to,*' as, *juxta præceptum Themistoclis,* 'according to the instructions of Themistocles.' It is also used adverbially for *alike, equally;* as, *Eōrum ego vitam, mortemque juxta aestĭmo,* 'I esteem their life and death alike.' Salust.

OB, in its more general signification is used to express the *reason* or *cause* of any thing, and may be rendered by 'FOR' or 'ON ACCOUNT OF;' as, *ob quæstum,* 'for gain;' *ob hanc rem,* 'on account of this thing;' also, 'BEFORE,' as, *ob ocŭlos exitium versatur,* 'destruction is before my eyes.'

PENES is said to be derived from *penus,* 'a store house,' being used to signify the absolute possession and power over a thing, as if it were laid up at our disposal. Its meaning is, 'IN THE POWER OF,' or, IN POSSESSION OF; as, *me penes est unum vasti custodia mundi,* 'in my power alone is the custody of the vast world.' Also, 'WITH;' as, *penes te culpa est,* 'the fault lies with you.'

PER, (derived probably from the Greek περαν, 'to pass through,') is of extensive use. It denotes the cause, means, or instrument of an action, or transition through some medium, and may generally be rendered by 'THROUGH;' as, *per mare, per saxa, per ignes,* Hor. 'through the sea, through rocks, through fire.' Also, '*through,*' or '*for,*' signifying continuation of space or time; as, *per triennium,* 'for the space of three years;' also, 'through,' denoting the instrument or subordinate agency;' as, *per servum epistolam misit,* 'he sent the letter through a servant.' Sometimes it may be translated 'under pretence,' as, *aliquem per fidem fallĕre,* 'to deceive any one under colour of security.' *Per se,* 'of himself,' 'by his own exertions.' *Per ludum et jocum,* 'in sport and jest' *Per me,* 'by my permission.' *Per silentium,* 'silently.'

PONE is derived like *post,* from the verb *pono,* and expresses the situation of a thing *behind* or *after* another in point of *place;* but it is not used, like *post,* to signify the same relation in point of *time.* It is opposed to *Ante.* It may always be rendered 'BEHIND.' *Pone ædem Castŏris,* 'behind the temple of Castor.' It is often used adverbially; *pone sequens,* 'following behind.'

POST has the same origin and general signification as *Pone,* but is used to express relations of time as well as place. Applied to place, *post montem,* 'behind the mountain.' In point of time, *post mortem,* after death.' *Post hominum memoriam,* 'since the memory of man.' It is often joined with *ea,* forming the adverb *postea,* 'afterwards,' that is, 'after these things;' and with *quam,* as, *post quam,* 'after that.'

PRÆTER implies exclusion, and may be translated 'EXCEPT,' or 'BUT;' as, *omnibus sententiis præter unum condemnatus est,* 'he was condemned by all the votes but one;' *neque illis vestītus, præter pelles,* 'neither have they any clothing besides skins.' Hence it easily passes into the sense of 'along,' or 'by the side of;' as, *præter oram Etrusci maris Neapolim transmisit,* 'he sent them by the shore of the Tuscan sea to Naples.' Hence it means 'before,' 'in sight of;' as, *præter ocŭlos,* 'before my eyes.' From the sense of 'exclusion,' it easily comes

to signify, 'beyond,' or 'above;' as, *Horum ille nihil egregie præter cetera studēbat*, Terent. 'he inclined to none of these particularly above the rest.' Also, 'contrary to;' as, *præter spem*, 'contrary to expectation.'

PROPE, 'NEAR,' is rather an adverb, and when it is followed by an accusative *ad* or *apud*, is understood. It is the neuter of the obsolete adjective *propis*, of which the comparative and superlative yet remain in *proprior* and *proximus*. *Prope hostium castra*, 'near the camps of the enemy;' *prope calendas Sextilis*, 'about the calends of August.' It is often used adverbially; as, *sapientia præditus prope singulāri*, 'endowed with almost singular wisdom.'

PROPTER is derived from *prope*, and has the same general signification of contiguity. Its primary meaning is 'NEAR,' or 'BY THE SIDE OF;' as, *In pratulo propter Platonis statuam consedĭmus*, Cic. 'we sat down in a little meadow by the statue of Plato.' Also, 'ON ACCOUNT OF,' 'FOR THE SAKE OF;' as, *Nam propter frigŏra, frumenta in agris matūra non erant*, 'for in consequence of the cold, the fruits of the earth were not ripe.' *Propter misericordiam*, 'out of pity.'

SECUNDUM. This preposition is the neuter gender of the ordinal adjective *secundus*, 'SECOND,' (which follows the first,) which itself comes from *sequor*, 'to follow.' Its general signification implies the notion of 'following after' something which has gone before. Here it is translated, 'next to,' 'after;' as, *Secundum te nihil est mihi amicius solitudĭne*, Cic. 'next to your company nothing is more agreeable to me than solitude.' As he who *follows after* another goes in the same direction, *secundum* signifies 'after,' or 'according to;' as, *omnia quæ secundum naturam fiunt, sunt habenda in bonis*, Cic. 'all things which happen according to nature are to be esteemed good.' Hence it signifies 'in favour of;' as, *Nuntiat populo pontifĭces secundum se decrevisse*, Cic. 'he tells the people that the pontifices had decreed in his favour.'

SECUS, as a preposition, is obsolete, being superseded by *secundum*, with the same sense. As an adverb it frequently occurs, but in a sense almost diametrically opposite, signifying *diversity* or *opposition*; as, *nemo dicet secus*, 'no one will say otherwise.'

SUPRA is in reality the ablative feminine of *supĕrus*; (see *Citra*,) and implies *elevation*, and may be translated, 'ABOVE,' 'HIGHER THAN;' as, *supra lunam*, 'above the moon;' *supra modum*, 'beyond measure;' *Tres prohibet supra rixarum metuens tangĕre Gratia*, 'the Graces, guarding against quarrels, forbid us to drink *more than* three.' *Cum hostes supra caput sint*, 'since the enemy are nigh at hand.' But the phrase *supra caput* is used to signify 'exceedingly;' as, *supra caput homo levis ac sordĭdus*, 'a fellow exceedingly contemptible and sordid.' It is also used adverbially; as, *omnia hæc quæ supra et subter unum esse*, 'that all these things which are above and below, are one system.'

TRANS, 'OVER,' 'ON THE OTHER SIDE,' 'BEYOND,' is opposed to *cis*, and is limited to *place*. *Trans mare*, 'across the sea;' *trans Euphratum*, 'on the other side of the Euphrates.'

ULTRA, 'BEYOND,' is referred to both *place*, *time*, and *degree*; as, *ultra termĭ-*

num vagāri, 'to wander beyond the bounds;' *ultra tempus*, 'beyond the time;' *ultra vires senecta*, 'beyond the strength of old age;' *ultra mortem*, 'beyond what was sufficient to occasion death.'

USQUE is more properly an adverb, and governs the accusative by the force of *ad* understood. Its signification is, 'AS FAR AS.' *Usque Miletum*, 'as far as Miletus.' As an adverb it is frequently used. *Usque ambo defessi sumus*, 'we were both *exceedingly* wearied.' *Ctesipho usque occidit*, 'Ctesipho has all but killed me.'

VERSUS, 'TOWARDS.' This preposition, like *Usque*, seems to govern the accusative by the force of *ad*, which, though sometimes omitted, is generally expressed. *Brundusium versus*, 'towards Brundusium.'

PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ABLATIVE.

There are fifteen Prepositions which govern the Ablative.

A, AB, ABS. This preposition is derived from the Greek ἀπο, 'from,' and in its primary notion signifies *beginning*. 'FROM,' as, *ab ovo usque ad mala*, 'from the egg to the apple,' that is, 'from beginning to end.' 'BY REASON OF.' *Vir ab innocentia clementissĭmus*, 'a man very mild by reason of his probity.' Also, 'ON THE SIDE OF,' 'TO TAKE ANY ONE'S PART;' as, *a mendacio contra verum stare*, 'to stand for a lie in opposition to truth.' *A principio*, 'from the very first.' *A pedĭbus*, 'a footman;' *a rationĭbus*, 'an accountant.' *A frigŏre*, 'against the cold.' *Hujus a morte*, 'after his death.'

ABSQUE, 'WITHOUT.' *Propositio nihil valet absque approbatione*, 'the proposition avails nothing without proof.' *Nam absque eo esset*, 'for had it not been for him,' &c.

CLAM* conveys the idea of privacy, or secrecy, and may be translated 'UNKNOWN TO,' 'WITHOUT THE KNOWLEDGE OF,' *Clam viro*, 'unknown to her husband.' It is also used *adverbially*; as, *plura clam de medio removebat*, 'he removed many more out of the way privately.'

CORAM marks the actual *presence* of a person before whom an action is done, and therefore signifies 'BEFORE,' 'IN THE PRESENCE OF;' as, *coram rege*, 'in the presence of the king.' It is also used *adverbially*; as, *cum coram sumus*, 'when we are together.'

CUM, 'WITH,' expresses the *society*, *presence*, or *accompaniment* of some thing or person with another. *Vagamur egentes cum conjugĭbus et libĕris*, 'we wande

---

* Clam is sometimes found with an Accusative; as, *Clam patrem*, Terent. Also with a Dative; as, *mihi clam*, Plaut.; and even with a Genitive, as, *clam patris*, Plaut.

in poverty with our wives and children;' *bellum gerĕre cum Jugurtha*, 'to carry on war with Jugurtha:' *exit cum nuntio*, 'he departed as soon as he saw the messenger;' *cum primâ luce*, 'at break of day.' This preposition is always added to the ablatives of the primitive pronouns, *ego*, *tu*, and *sui*; as, *mecum*, 'with me;' *nobiscum*, 'with us;' *vobiscum*, 'with you.'

DE. The primary signification of this preposition is, *derivation from something anterior*, *descent*, *effect*, *consequence*, or *dependence*; and hence it may be translated 'FROM,' 'OUT OF,' 'OF,' 'ON.' *Epicūri de grege porcus*, 'a hog of the herd of Epicurus.' Also, 'touching,' 'concerning;' as, *de periculis reipublicæ*, 'concerning the dangers of the republic.' *De sententiâ meâ*, 'according to my opinion.' *Somnus de prandio*, 'sleep after dinner.' *De loco superiōre*, 'from the higher ground.' *De integro*, 'afresh;' *de industria*, 'on purpose;' *de transverso*, 'across;' *de meo*, 'at my cost;' *de die*, 'by day;' *de improviso*, 'unexpectedly.'

E. EX. This preposition implies *motion out of*, *departure from the interior* of any place, and hence is translated 'FROM.' It differs from A or AB, in showing that the person or thing excluded had a more intimate connexion with that from which it was excluded. *Dejectus est* E *domo*, 'he was driven *out* of the house,' implies that the person had been *within it*; but *dejectus est* AB *domo*, 'he was driven *from* the house,' shows merely that the person was around or near it. *Ex Æthiopiâ est usque hæc*, Terent. 'this woman comes as far as from Ethiopia,' *Ex quo in provinciam venerunt*, 'from the time that they came into the province.' *Ex mea sententia*, 'according to my opinion;' *magnâ ex parte*, 'for the most part;' *poculum ex auro*, 'a cup made out of gold;' *ex equo*, 'on horseback;' *ex ordine*, 'in order;' *ex animo*, 'from the heart;' *ex industriâ*, 'on purpose;' *ex tempore*, 'without taking thought beforehand,' 'suddenly;' *ex toto*, 'on the whole.'

PALAM is opposed to *clam*, and expresses something done *openly*. It is translated 'BEFORE,' 'IN THE PRESENCE OF.' *Palam popŭlo*, 'before the people;' *palam omnibus*, 'in the presence of all.'

PRÆ, 'BEFORE,' signifies *precedence* in point of situation, and hence *precedence*, in comparison of, or superiority. *Præ oculis*, 'before the eyes.' Hence the phrase *præ se ferre* or *gerĕre*, 'to carry before,' or 'in front of a man,' means 'to profess,' 'to avow,' 'to have the appearance of.' *Præ nobis beatus est*, 'he is happy in comparison of us.' Also, 'through,' 'that is,' 'by reason of;' as, *nec loqui præ moerōre potuit*, 'neither could he speak through grief.' *Præ multitudine*, 'by reason of the multitude.'

PRO, 'FOR,' implies, primarily, *interchange* or *substitution*; as, *te, pro istis dictis et falsis, ulsiscar*, Terent. 'for these reports and falsehoods I will pay you handsomely.' *Cato mihi est pro centum millibus*, 'Cato is to me *instead of*,' that is, 'Cato is *worth* to me a hundred thousand.' *Pro tempŏre*, 'according to the time.' Also 'BEFORE,' 'IN FRONT OF;' as, *sedens pro æde Castōris*, 'sitting before the temple of Castor.'

SINE is in reality nothing but the imperative of the verb *sino*, 'to let

alone,' and signifies *privation*, or being WITHOUT a thing. *Sine pondĕre*, 'without weight.'

TENUS, 'UP TO,' 'AS FAR AS.' *Capŭlo tenus*, Cic. 'up to the hilt.' *Antiŏchus Tauro tenus regnāre jussus*, 'Antiochus was ordered to reign as far as mount Taurus.' *Tenus* is sometimes used with a genitive case, but the noun is then always in the plural number; as, *crurum tenus*, 'down to the legs;' *labiorum tenus*, 'as far as the lips.'

Four prepositions, IN, SUB, SUPER, and SUBTER, govern the Accusative and Ablative.

IN with an Accusative, 'TO,' or 'UNTO,' or 'INTO;' as, Ex Asia *in Eurōpam exercĭtum trajicĕre*, 'from Asia he marched his army into Europe.' Also 'towards;' as, *indulgentia in liberos*, 'indulgence towards children.' *Inflammare populum in improbos*, 'to inflame the people *against* the wicked.' *In lucem*, 'until day.' *In rem tuam est*, 'it is for your advantage.' *Potestes in filium*, 'authority over a son.' *In dies*, 'every day.' *Vivĕre in diem*, 'to live from hand to mouth.'

IN with an Ablative, 'IN.' *Esse in manu*, 'to be in one's power.' 'Towards,' as, *mitis in hoste*, 'merciful towards an enemy.' Hence it is even put for 'concerning,' 'about,' or as we sometimes say, 'at;' *In quo igĭtur homines exhorrescunt*, 'at whom then do men tremble?' Also, 'among,' as, *esse in clarissĭmus civibus*, 'to be ranked among the most illustrious citizens.' 'Within,' as, *talenta ducenta in sex mensibus promissa*, 'two hundred talents were promised within six months.' *In primis*, or *imprimis*, 'especially,' 'particularly.'

SUB implies *inferiority* and *contiguity*. When applied to time it generally governs an accusative; when applied to space it generally governs an ablative; but this rule is not invariable. With an Accusative, 'UNDER;' as, *sub ipsos muros*, 'under the very walls.' '*On*,' '*about*;' as, *Pompeius sub noctem naves solvit*, 'Pompey set sail about night;' *sub cantum galli*, 'at cock-crowing.' From the notion of proximity and inferiority which this word conveys, it sometimes signifies '*next after*,' or '*immediately following*;' as, *Sub eas literas statim recitatæ sunt tuæ*, 'immediately after them your letters were read aloud.' *Sub hæc dicta*, 'at these words.'

With an Ablative. 'UNDER,' or 'BENEATH.' *Manet sub Jove frigĭdo*, 'the hunter remains beneath the cold sky;' *Sub poena mortis*, 'on pain of death;' *Sub specie venationis*, 'under the pretence of hunting.'

SUBTER is derived from *Sub*, and like it, signifies contiguity and inferiority of *place*, but is not referred to time. It governs an accusative more frequently than an ablative. 'UNDER.' *Subter mare*, 'beneath the sea.' *Subter densa testudĭne*, 'under a thick testudo.' *Rhœteo subter litore*, 'beneath the Rhœtean shore.'

SUPER expresses, for the most part, *elevation*, or a situation *higher* than ourselves, or the object spoken of.

With an Accusative, '*upon*,' '*above*.' *Super ripas*, 'upon the banks.' '*Beyond*;' as, *famosissima super cætĕras fuit coena*, 'the supper was famous beyond all the rest.' '*Besides*,' as, *Punĭcum exercĭtum super morbum etiam fames affĕcit*, 'famine also, besides the disease, affected the Carthagenian army.'

With an Ablative. *Fronde super virĭdi*, 'upon the green leaf.' *Consultant bello super*, 'they take counsel about the war.' It is often used adverbially; as, *satis superque dictum est*, 'enough, and more than enough has been said.'

Obs. There are five or six syllables, namely, *am*, *di* or *dis*, *re*, *se*, *con*, which are commonly called *Inseparable Prepositions*, because they are only to be found in compound words.

PREPOSITIONS IN COMPOSITION.

A, AB, ABS, signify *privation*, or *separation*, and may generally be rendered by the English *Off*, as, *duco*, 'to lead;' *abduco*, 'to lead off,' 'to lead away;' *moveo*, 'to move;' *amoveo*, 'to move off,' 'to remove;' *scindo*, 'to cut;' *abscindo*, 'to cut off.' *A* is likewise added to nouns as a *privative*; as, *mens*, 'the mind;' *amens*, 'without mind,' 'senseless,' 'mad.' *Ab* is sometimes changed into *au* before words beginning with *f*, for the sake of euphony; as, *fero*, 'to bear;' *aufero*, 'to bear off,' 'to take away;' (in which verb the preposition *ab* resumes its place in those tenses which have not *f*, as, *abstuli*, *ablatum*;) *fugio*, 'to fly;' *aufugio*, 'to fly off,' 'to fly away.' *Abs* is used in composition before *t*; as, *teneo*, 'to hold;' *abstineo*, 'to hold off from,' 'to abstain.'

AD retains its primary signification of *approach*, or that of *accession* or *augmentation*, and may generally be translated 'to.' In the writers of the Augustan age it generally takes the consonant of the word with which it is compounded; as, *curro*, 'to run;' *adcurro* or *accurro*, 'to run to;' *figo*, 'to fix;' *adfigo* or *affigo*, 'to fix in addition,' or 'affix;' *loquor*, 'to speak;' *adloquor* or *alloquor*, 'to speak to,' 'to address;' *nuo*, 'to nod;' *annuo*, 'to nod to,' 'to assent;' *rogo*, 'to ask;' *arrogo*, 'to ask for one's self,' 'to claim;' *sumo*, 'to take;' *assumo*, 'to take to one's self,' 'to assume;' *do*, 'to give;' *addo*, 'to give in addition,' 'to add.' It also *increases* the signification of the primitive; as, *amo*, 'to love;' *adămo*, 'to love much,' 'to be enamoured of;' *bibo*, 'to drink;' *adbĭbo*, 'to drink hard.'

AM is an inseparable preposition, being never found alone. It is from the Greek *αμφι*, 'round about;' and may be translated 'around,' 'about;' as, *uro*, 'to burn;' *ambūro*, 'to burn all about;' *quero*, 'to seek;' *anquīro*, 'to seek about,' 'to search carefully.' From the signification 'around,' it comes to mean 'on all sides,' 'two ways;' as, *ago*, 'to lead;' *ambĭgo*, 'to be led around;' that is, 'to doubt,' 'to hesitate,' 'what course to take;' *capio*, 'to take;' *anceps*, 'that which may be taken two ways,' 'doubtful.'

ANTE signifies *precedence*, and is translated 'before;' as, *cedo*, 'to go;' *antecedo*, 'to go before;' *fero*, 'to bear;' *antefero*, 'to bear before,' 'to prefer.'

CUM signifies 'society,' 'participation,' or 'accompaniment;' but is changed into *com* before *m*; as, *memoro*, 'to relate;' *commemoro*, 'to relate together,' 'to commemorate;' or else into *con*, which varies its last consonant before several others, and sometimes even drops it; as, *curro*, 'to run;' *concurro*, 'to run together;' *ago*, 'to drive;' *con-ago* or *co-ago* or *cogo*, 'to drive together,' 'to collect;' *agito*, 'to agitate,' or 'revolve;' *con-agito*, or *cogito*, 'to agitate with one's self;' hence 'to think;' *natus*, 'born;' *con-natus* or *cognatus*, 'having a participation of birth,' or 'related;' *petītor*, 'a candidate;' *competitor*, 'a fellow candidate,' or 'rival;' *gradior*, 'to walk;' *congredior*, 'to come together;' hence 'to engage in battle.'

DE in composition takes the sense of 1. *privation;* 2. *diminution;* 3. *removal;* 4. *descent;* 5. *completion;* and sometimes from the notion of completion it signifies, 6. *excess*. Thus—1. *decŏro*, 'to adorn;' *dedecŏro*, 'to disgrace;' *spero*, 'to hope;' *despēro*, 'to be without hope,' 'to despair;' *mens*, 'the mind;' *demens*, 'out of one's mind,' 'mad.' 2. *facio*, 'to do;' *deficio*, 'to do less than one ought,' 'to fail,' 'to be deficient.' 3. *ferveo*, 'to be hot;' *deferveo*, 'to remove heat,' 'to grow cool.' 4. *cado*, 'to fall;' *decĭdo*, 'to fall down.' 5. *finio*, 'to bound;' *definio*, 'to bound completely,' 'to define.' 6. *flagro*, 'to burn;' *deflagro*, 'to burn excessively,' 'to burn to ashes.'

DIS, DI, is an inseparable preposition, denoting 'separation,' 'division,' 'denial;' as, *traho*, 'to draw;' *distrăho*, 'to pull asunder,' 'to disjoin,' 'to distract;' *puto*, 'to think;' *dispŭto*, 'to think differently,' 'to dispute.' From 'separation' it comes to denote 'distinction;' as, *judĭco*, 'to judge;' *dijudĭco*, 'to judge between,' 'to distinguish,' 'to discern.'

E, EX, generally signifies 'out,' and from this sense all its others may be deduced, such as, 'privation,' 'perfection,' 'elevation,' 'declaration,' &c. Before certain consonants *e* is only used, and before *f*, *x* is changed into *f*. Thus, *bibo*, 'to drink;' *ebibo*, 'to drink out,' 'to drink up;' *dico*, 'to tell;' *edico*, 'to tell out,' 'to publish;' *levo*, 'to lighten;' *elevo*, 'to lighten out and out,' that is 'to lighten thoroughly,' and so 'to raise,' 'to elevate;' *vado*, 'to go;' *evado*, 'to go out of,' 'to escape;' *capio*, 'to take;' *excipio*, 'to take out,' 'to except;' *quaero*, 'to seek;' *exquiro*, 'to seek out,' 'to search;' *sanguis*, 'blood;' *exsanguis*, 'out of blood,' 'bloodless;' *anima*, 'life;' *exanimis*, 'lifeless.'

IN, in composition, changes its consonant before the other liquids into the liquid it precedes; as, *illudo*, from *in* and *ludo*, and before *b* and *p* the *n* is changed into *m* as *imbibo*, from *in* and *bibo*.

The signification of *in* is very various in composition, and in some cases even contradictory. Thus it augments, as *minuo*, 'to lessen;' *imminuo*, 'to make less upon less,' or 'to make very small.' But it is more frequently used in the sense of 'negation,' as the *a* privative of the Greek, and the *un* or *in* prefixed to words in English; as, *mundus*, 'clean;' *immundus*, 'unclean.' But in some instances the augmentative and privative senses appear in the same word; thus, *impotens* is used in the sense of 'very powerful,' that is, 'ungovernable,' and in the sense of 'weak,' 'powerless.' It has also various other significations; as,

ludo, 'to play;' *illudo*, 'to play upon,' 'to mock;' *pono*, 'to place;' *impono*, 'to place upon,' 'to put upon,' 'to impose;' *habeo*, 'to have;' *inhibeo*, 'to have within control,' 'to check,' 'to rein in;' *albesco*, 'to grow white;' *inalbesco*, 'to begin to grow white;' *video*, 'to see;' *invideo*, 'to see' or 'look against,' and thus 'to envy' a person.

INTER has generally the same meaning in composition that it has when alone, namely: 'between,' or 'among;' as, *pono*, 'to place;' *interpono*, 'to place between,' 'to interpose.' Sometimes it signifies 'prevention,' as if from an opposing medium; as, *dico*, 'to say;' *interdico*, 'to say between,' and so 'to forbid,' 'to interdict;' *venio*, 'to come;' *intervenio*, 'to come between,' and thus 'to prevent.' It also augments as *interficio*, 'to do thoroughly,' 'to do up,' 'to kill.' Perhaps in this word the primitive meaning of 'between' may be traced, as *facio*, 'to do,' 'to make;' *interficio*, 'to make' or 'go between' a person and the period of life to which he is aiming, and thus 'to cut him off' from the living.

OB takes the sense of 'before,' 'against;' as, *ruo*, 'to rush;' *obruo*, 'to rush before,' or 'overwhelm;' *loquor*, 'to speak;' *obloquor*, 'to speak against;' *duco*, 'to lead;' *obduco*, 'to draw over,' 'to hide,' 'to blot.' Sometimes it increases the signification: as, *dormio*, 'to sleep;' *obdormio*, 'to sleep upon sleep,' 'to sleep soundly.'

PER retains its original notion of 'transition,' or its secondary one of 'intensity;' as, *eo*, 'to go;' *pereo*, 'to go through,' and so 'to go through life,' 'to perish;' *do*, 'to give;' *perdo*, 'to give thoroughly,' 'to give without hopes of recall:' and so 'to lose;' *adolescens*, 'young;' *peradolescens*, 'very young.' Sometimes it is privative: as *fidus*, 'faithful;' *perfidus*, 'perfidious.'

POST takes the sense of 'behind;' as, *pono*, 'to place;' *postpono*, 'to place behind' or 'postpone;' *habeo*, 'to have,' 'to esteem;' *posthabeo*, 'to esteem less.'

PRAE takes the sense of 'precedence,' or 'prevention.' Thus, *dico*, 'to tell;' *prædico*, 'to foretell;' *facio*, 'to make;' *præficio*, 'to make first' or 'head,' that is, 'to set over;' *claudo*, 'to shut;' *præclaudo*, 'to shut before a person can get in,' that is, 'to shut out,' or 'prevent admission.' From the notion of priority, it also conveys the idea of 'excellence,' or 'superlativeness,' or 'excess:' as, *potens*, 'powerful;' *præpotens*, 'very powerful;' *maturus*, 'early;' *præmaturus*, 'very early,' 'too early,' 'premature;' *stare*, 'to stand;' *præstare*, 'to stand before the rest,' 'to excel.'

PRO in composition has generally the sense of advancing: as, *moveo*, 'to move;' *promoveo*, 'to move forward,' 'to promote;' *cedo*, 'to go;' *procedo*, 'to go forward,' 'to proceed;' *habeo*, 'to have;' *prohibeo*, 'to have in advance' of another, and so in prevention of him, or 'to prohibit.' Sometimes it has the sense of 'substitution,' as, *curator*, 'a guardian;' *procurator*, 'a guardian for another,' 'a steward;' *nomen*, 'a noun;' *pronomen*, 'a word instead of a noun,' or 'a pronoun.' Also, 'presence' 'publicity;' as, *pono*, 'to place;' *propono*, 'to place before' or 'in presence of others,' 'to propose;' *scribo*, 'to write;' *proscribo*, 'to write in the presence of the public,' or 'publicly denounce,' or 'proscribe;' *voco*, 'to call;' *provoco*, 'to call out before the public,' or 'challenge.'

RE is an inseparable preposition, and means 'back again,' or 'against;' as, *capio*, 'to take;' *recipio*, 'to take again,' 'to receive;' *pono*, 'to place;' *repono*, 'to place again.'

SE is also inseparable, and means 'apart,' 'aside;' as, *voco*, 'to call;' *sevoco*, 'to call aside;' *claudo*, 'to shut;' *secludo*, 'to shut up.'

SUB. The last consonant of this word is frequently changed into others according to the word with which it is compounded. Most of its meanings in composition may be traced to its primitive signification of 'under;' and frequently corresponds with our termination '*ish*;' as, *jacio*, 'to throw;' *subjicio*, 'to cast under,' 'to subject;' *rufus*, 'red;' *subrufus*, 'reddish,' that is, a little 'under' red; *rideo*, 'to laugh;' *subrideo*, 'to smile;' *timeo*, 'to fear;' *subtimeo*, 'to fear a little;' *tristis*, 'sad;' *subtristis*, 'a little sad.' Sometimes it means something secret, or clandestine; as, *gero*, 'to carry;' *suggero*, 'to carry under,' 'to suggest;' *duco*, 'to lead;' *subduco*, 'to lead away,' 'to withdraw privily.'

SUBTER signifies simply 'under,' or 'beneath;' as, *labor*, 'to glide;' *subterlabor*, 'to glide beneath,' or something secret; as, *fugio*, 'to fly;' *subterfugio*, 'to fly away privily,' 'to escape *beneath* the shelter of something.'

SUPER, 'upon,' or 'over;' as, *gradior*, 'to go;' *supergredior*, 'to go beyond,' or 'surpass;' *scribo*, 'to write;' *superscribo*, 'to write upon,' 'to superscribe.'

TRANS in composition has the same signification that it has by itself; as, *eo*, 'to go;' *transeo*, 'to pass over;' *adigo*, 'to drive;' *transadigo*, 'to pierce through.' It sometimes drops its two final letters before other consonants; as, *do*, 'to give;' *trado*, 'to give over to another,' and so 'to deliver.'

INTERJECTION.

An Interjection is an indeclinable word *thrown in between* the parts of a sentence, to express some passion or emotion of the mind.

Some Interjections are natural sounds and common to all languages; as, *Oh! Ah!*

Interjections express in one word a whole sentence, and thus fitly represent the quickness of the passions.

The different passions have commonly different words to express them; thus,

1. JOY; as, *evax!* hey, brave, lo!
2. GRIEF; as, *ah, hei, heu, eheu!* ah, alas, woe is me!
3. WONDER; as, *papæ!* O strange! *vah!* hah!
4. PRAISE; as, *euge!* well done!
5. AVERSION; as, *apăge!* away, begone, avaunt, off, fie, tush!
6. EXCLAIMING; as, *Oh, proh!* O!
7. SURPRISE or FEAR; as, *atat!* ha, aha!

8. IMPRECATION; as, *va!* woe, pox on't!
9. LAUGHTER; as, *ha, ha, he!*
10. SILENCING; as, *au, 'st, pax!* silence, hush, 'st!
11. CALLING; as, *eho, ehŏdum, io, ho!* soho, ho, O!
12. DERISION; as, *hui!* away with!
13. ATTENTION; as, *hem!* ha!

Some Interjections denote several different passions; thus, *Vah* is used to express joy, and sorrow, and wonder, *&c*.

Adjectives of the neuter gender are sometimes used for interjections; as, *Malum!* with a mischief! *Infandum!* O shame! fy, fy! *Misĕrum!* O wretched! *Nefas!* O the villany!

CONJUNCTION.

A conjunction is an indeclinable word, which serves to join sentences together.

Thus, "*You* and *I* and *the boy read Virgil*," is one sentence made up of these three, by the conjunction *and* twice employed; *I read Virgil; You read Virgil; The boy reads Virgil.* In like manner, "You *and* I read Virgil, *but* the boy reads Ovid," is one sentence, made up of three, by the conjunctions *and* and *but*.

Conjunctions, according to their different meaning, are divided into the following classes:

1. COPULATIVE; as, *et, at, atque, que*, and; *ĕtiam, quŏque, item*, also; *cum, tum*, both, and. Also their contraries, *nec, nĕque, neu, neve*, neither, nor.

2. DISJUNCTIVE; as, *aut, ve, vel, seu, sive*, either, or.

3. CONCESSIVE; as, *etsi, etiamsi, tametsi, licet, quanquam, quamvis*, though, although, albeit.

4. ADVERSATIVE; as, *sed, verum, autem, at, ast, atqui*, but; *tamen, attămen, veruntămen, verumenimvēro*, yet, notwithstanding, nevertheless.

5. CAUSAL; as, *nam, namque, enim*, for; *quia, quippe, quoniam*, because; *quòd*, that because.

6. ILLATIVE or RATIONAL; as, *ergo, ideo, igĭtur, idcirco, ităque*, therefore; *quapropter, quocirca*, wherefore; *proinde*, therefore; *cum, quum*, seeing, since; *quandoquĭdem*, forasmuch as.

7. FINAL or PERFECTIVE; as, *ut, uti*, that, to the end that.

8. CONDITIONAL; as, *si, sin*, if; *dum, modo, dummŏdo*, provided, upon condition that; *siquĭdem*, if indeed.

9. EXCEPTIVE or RESTRICTIVE; as, *ni, nisi*, unless, except.

10. DIMINUTIVE; as, *saltem certe*, at least.

11. SUSPENSIVE or DUBITATIVE; as *an, anne, num*, whether; *ne, annon*, whether, not; *necne*, or not.

12. EXPLETIVE; as, *autem, vero*, now, truly; *quidem, equĭdem*, indeed.

13. ORDINATIVE; as, *deinde*, thereafter; *denĭque*, finally; *insŭper*, moreover; *cætĕrum*, moreover, but, however.

14. DECLARATIVE; as, *videlĭcet, scilĭcet, nempe, nimīrum, &c.* to wit, namely.

Obs. 1. The same words, as they are taken in different views, are both *adverbs* and *conjunctions*. Thus, *an, anne*, &c. are either *interrogative adverbs*, as, *An scribit?* Does he write? or, *suspensive conjunctions*, as, *Nescio an scribat*, I know not if he writes.

Obs. 2. Some conjunctions, according to their natural order, stand first in a sentence; as, *Ac, atque, nec, neque, aut, vel, sive, at, sed, verum, nam, quandoquĭdem, quocirca, quare, sin, siquĭdem, prælerquam*, &c.; some stand in the second place; as, *Autem, vero, quoque, quidem, enim*: and some may indifferently be put either first or second; as, *Etiam, equidem, licet, quamvis, quanquam, tamen, attămen, namque, quod, quia, quoniam, quippe, utpŏte, ut, uti, ergo, ideo, igĭtur, idcirco, ităque, proinde, propterea, si, ni, nisi*, &c.

Hence arose the division of them into *Prepositive, Subjunctive*, and *Common*. To the subjunctive may be added these three, *que, ve, ne*, which are always joined to some other word, and are called *Enclitics*; because, when put after a long syllable, they make the accent *incline* to that syllable; as in the following verse,

Indoctusque pilæ, discīve, trochīve, quiescit. Horat.

But when these enclitic conjunctions come after a short vowel, they do not affect its pronunciation; thus,

Arbuteos fœtus, montanăque fraga legēbant. Ovid.

SIGNIFICATIONS OF WORDS.

The signification of a Latin word is the notion or thought which it conveyed to the mind of a Roman, and to express this clearly in another language is often a work of no small difficulty, and constitutes one of the chief advantages derived from the study of the ancient classics. To translate accurately and elegantly from one language into another, calls into exercise the highest powers of the mind; and hence a classical foundation has ever been considered by every intelligent scholar as the only basis of a truly liberal and solid education.

Every word has a primitive and invariable sense, which it is most important to know. From this original signification the secondary and metaphorical are derived. This sense must be found by separating compound words; by tracing derivative words to their roots, and by resolving compound ideas or notions into their simple parts. Corporeal words, such as, *oculus, manus*, &c. are easy, and seldom have more than one meaning. Incorporeal words, such as *virtus, longitudo, nox*, &c. are more difficult, as well as more frequent with the ancients, and on these our greatest labour must be bestowed.

The danger into which every English scholar, from the lowest class in the Grammar-school to the senior in college, is perpetually

liable to run, is that of translating Latin words into those which resemble them in appearance and sound; as, *virtus*, 'virtue;' *crimen*, 'crime.' Against this fault they should be continually on their guard, and to aid them in this, we shall briefly point out, first, some erroneous interpretations, and second, attempt to facilitate the knowledge of the true meanings of words.

I. False significations not to be adopted.

Ambitio does not mean 'pride;' but rather, 'love of honour,' 'ambition,' 'vanity;' striving after honour and piquing one's self on certain outward things; liking to be praised, to display one's self, and be in office.

Aequor is, properly, 'a level,' or 'flat,' from *æquus*, 'level,' 'even;' thence, 'the sea,' because it is level.

Amœnus, 'pleasant,' 'agreeable to the senses,' particularly to the eyes; thence peculiarly applied to places and situations; as, *horti amœni, regio amœna. Homo amœnus*, or *fortuna amœna*, would be improper. It also means 'agreeable to the ears,' as, *verba amœna.*

Animal from *anima*, 'breath,' 'life,' denotes a living creature, and is therefore applied to *homo* and *bestia.*

Apparēre, not 'to appear,' that is, to seem, but to appear, that is, 'to be manifest;' as, *mendacium apparet*, 'the falsehood is apparent;' *nantes apparent*, 'men are seen swimming.'

Arma are properly 'arms for defence,' or 'armour;' *tela*, 'weapons of offence,' as darts, swords, &c.

Avărus, (from *avidus* and *æris*,) 'desirous of gold,' 'avaricious;' not covetous generally.

Calamĭtas is not every misfortune or trouble, but something accompanied with loss, and must often be translated, 'loss,' 'deprivation.'

Clemens is not, generally, 'merciful,' but 'soft,' 'mild,' 'gentle;' 'one who is not easily provoked.'

Convincĕre, not 'to convince,' or convict, generally, but of a bad thing, as of theft, error, &c. In a good sense we use *persuadēre.*

Crimen, not 'transgression,' unless that be implied in the charge; but 'charge,' 'accusation.'

Divertĕre, not 'to stop at an inn,' but 'to separate,' when a number of people separate and go different ways. *Devertere* means 'to stop at an inn.'

Exsistere, or *existere*, means, 1. 'to stand forth,' 'to be in sight,' 'to appear;' 2. 'to be.'

Imo, not merely 'yes,' but ironically, something like our 'yea rather.'

Infans, (*non* and *fans* participle of *fari*, 'to speak,') not every child, but 'an infant;' one that 'cannot yet speak.'

Legem ferre, 1. 'to propose a law,' or 'introduce a bill;' 2. 'to make or pass a law.'

Opinio, not every opinion, but such as 'an ungrounded suspicion,' 'fancy;' *opinari*, 'to fancy,' 'to think.'

Pietas must be understood according to the subject; it denotes love to God, parents, children, relatives, and benefactors, which will be shown by the connexion.

Publĭcus, not 'public, before the people,' but, 1. 'public,' what happened in the name, by the command, or with respect to the state; as, *bellum gerere publicè*, 'to carry on war in the name of the state;' 2. 'universal,' 'common,' 'mean.'

Stultus, not merely 'a fool,' but 'thoughtless,' 'hasty,' 'simple.'

II. To facilitate the knowledge of the true meaning of words:

First, we should observe whence a word is derived, as, *animal*, from *anima*, 'life,' thence 'animal,' or whatever lives:—*æquor*, 'a level,' from *æquus*, 'level,' 'even:'—*mollis*, from *mobĭlis*, (which is from *moveo*,) 'moveable,' 'bending,' 'soft:'—*momentum*, 'movement,' for *movimentum* from *moveo;* hence *res magni momenti*, 'a thing which has much weight in causing something, which was unsettled and in equilibrium, to be decided:'—*prudens* for *providens*, 'seeing before hand.'

Second, the import of terminations should be understood.

1. *Quam*, 'any;' *quisquam*, 'any one;' *usquam*, 'any where.'

2. *Cunque*, 'ever,' 'soever;' *quicunque*, 'whosoever;' *ubicunque*, 'wheresoever.' *Que* has the same force in many words: as, *utique*, 'howsoever,' 'at all events,' 'certainly.'

3. *O* and *Uc* in adverbs of place, denote 'whither;' as, *eo, quo, huc, istuc, illuc: Inc*, 'whence,' as, *hinc, illinc: Ic*, 'where,' as, *hic, illic*.

4. *Osus* denotes an 'abundance,' or 'fullness' of any thing; as, *piscosus*, 'full of fish;' *annosus*, 'full of years;' *vinosus, maculosus, verbosus*, &c. *Idus* also has the same import; as, *florĭdus*, 'flowery;' *herbidus*, 'grassy,' &c.

5. *Ibĭlis* denotes 'facility,' 'worth,' 'that something may be done,' or 'is worth doing;' as, *credĭbilis*, 'credible;' *tolerabilis, amabilis*, &c. To these belong *facilis, diffĭcĭlis*, which seem to stand for *facibĭlis*, &c.

6. *Fer*, or *ferus*, from *fero*, denotes 'bearing,' as *pinifer*, 'pine bearing,' &c.

7. *Eus* and *ātus* denote the material; but are thus distinguished: *eus* denotes the solid material, *ātus* what it is adorned with; as, *aureus*, 'golden,' 'of gold;' *auratus*, 'gilded;' so, *argenteus, argentātus; ferreus, ferrātus*, &c.

8. *Alis*, a 'resemblance,' or 'similarity;' as *regālis*, 'kingly,' 'like a king,' but *regius*, 'royal,' 'belonging to a king;' as, *divitiæ regales*, 'riches suited to a king;' *divitiæ regiæ*, 'riches belonging to a king;' so, *liberalis*, 'suited to a free, well-born man,' 'liberal,' 'genteel.'

9. In verbs, *urio* denotes 'an inclination' or 'desire;' as, *esurio*, 'to desire to eat,' 'to be hungry;' *parturio*, 'to desire to bring forth,' 'to be in labour:' *Sco* denotes 'increase,' or 'growing;' as, *calesco*, 'to grow warm;' *ditesco*, 'to grow rich:' *To* denotes 'a repetition;' as, *dicto*, *dictito*, 'to say often.' See Frequentative and Inceptive Verbs, pages 192 and 193.

10. *Etum* and *ĭum* denote a place or situation; as, *dumētum*, 'a place of bushes,' or 'full of bushes;' *vinetum*, 'a vineyard;' *museum*, 'an abode of the Muses,' 'a study,' or 'library;' *arium* denotes a place or habitation; as, *aviarium*, 'an aviary;' *sacrarium*, 'a place for sacred things,' 'a chapel.'

11. In verbal nouns, *or* denotes a male, *ix* a female agent, *io* and *us* (of the fourth declension) the action; as, *victor*, 'a conqueror;' *victrix*, 'a conqueress;' *actor*, 'a pleader;' *actio*, 'the suit;' *quæsitor*, 'an inquirer;' *questus*, 'complaint.'

12. *Mentum* denotes what any thing is fit for; as, *condimentum*, 'something for seasoning,' 'seasoning;' *atramentum*, 'something for blacking,' 'blacking,' 'ink.'

Third. In words which have several meanings, we must try to get the proper and first meaning, from which the rest may be derived, and see if there be a connexion between the original and secondary sense which leads from one to the other.

Ambīre, 1. 'to go round' any thing, or from one to another: 2. 'to solicit an office,' because at Rome the candidates 'went round' to beg for votes, or because going around for any thing shows a desire after it; hence, *ambitio* 1. 'the soliciting an office' by going round after it; 2. 'desire of honour,' 'ambition.'

Ango, 1. 'to make narrow,' 'to tie fast,' as the throat; 2. 'to cause anguish.'

Adfligo or *Affligo* (from *ad* and *fligo*) 1. 'to dash a thing against' something, as the wall, the ground: 2. 'to drive to the ground,' 'to make unfortunate,' 'to afflict.'

Callidus, 'thick skinned,' 'having hard lumps' from much labour, which supposes practice and experience: 2. 'experienced,' 'skilful.'

Calamĭtas, 1. 'injury to the stalk,' (from *calamus*, 'a stalk'): 2. 'a great loss' or 'hurt,' or misfortune attended with loss; as when one loses his property.

Confutare and *refutare*, 1. 'to quench boiling water by pouring in cold;' 2. 'to damp, drive back, confute.'

Egregius, 1. 'chosen from the flock;' 2. 'excellent.'

Gratia 1. 'agreeableness;' 2. *gratia hominis*, 'the favour which one has with the people,' or 'which he has towards others;' 3. 'complaisance;' 4. 'thanks.'

Offendere, 1. inadvertently to tread or 'stumble against any thing;' 2. 'to find, meet with;' 3. 'to hurt;' 4. 'to commit a fault,' 'to offend;' 5. 'to be unfortunate.'

Persona, 1. 'a mask;' 2. 'person,' 'part,' or 'character,' whether real or assumed, for the ancient actors wore 'masks' which corresponded to their assumed character; 3. 'person,' the man himself; *mea persona*, 'my person,' 'I.'

Probus, 1. 'good,' 'genuine,' 'sincere,' when any thing is what it was taken for; as, *aurum probum*; 2. 'good,' 'honourable,' 'upright,' as, *probus amicus*, 'a sincere friend.'

Scrupulus, 1. 'a small stone;' 2. any 'obstacle;' 3. 'hesitation,' 'uncertainty,' 'scruple.'

Sublevare, 1. 'to raise on high;' 2. 'to help,' 'to stand by;' 3. 'to lighten.'

SYNTAX,

OR

CONSTRUCTION OF WORDS IN SENTENCES.

SENTENCES.

A **Sentence** is any thought of the mind expressed by two or more words put together; as, *I read. The boy reads Virgil.*

That part of grammar, which teaches to put words rightly together in sentences, is called *Syntax* or *Construction.*

Words in sentences have a two-fold relation to one another; namely, that of *Concord* or Agreement; and that of *Government* or Influence.

Concord, is when one word agrees with another in some accidents; as, in gender, number, person, or case.

Government, is when one word requires another to be put in a certain case, or mode.

GENERAL PRINCIPLES OF SYNTAX.

1. In every sentence there must be a verb and a nominative expressed or understood.

2. Every adjective must have a substantive expressed or understood.

3. All the cases of Latin nouns, except the nominative and vocative, must be governed by some other word.

4. The genitive is governed by a substantive noun expressed or understood: or by a verbal adjective.

5. The dative is governed by adjectives and verbs.

6. The accusative is governed by an active verb, or by a preposition; or is placed before the infinitive.

7. The vocative stands by itself, or has an interjection joined with it.

8. The ablative is governed by a preposition expressed or understood.

9. The infinitive is governed by some verb or adjective.

SIMPLE AND COMPOUND SENTENCES.

* The two general divisions of Syntax in this Grammar are into SIMPLE SENTENCES and COMPOUND SENTENCES. The latter will be found under rule LVII—'The construction of Relatives.'

* A SIMPLE SENTENCE is that which has but one nominative and one verb; as, *præceptor docet,* 'the master teaches;' a COMPOUND SENTENCE is that which has more than one nominative and one verb; as, *præceptor, qui docet, labŏrat,* 'the master, who teaches, is sick;' here the relative pronoun *qui* introduces another verb, *docet,* into the sentence.

*In a SIMPLE SENTENCE there is only one *Subject* and one *Attribute* or *Predicate.* The *Subject* is the word, (whether it denotes a thing or a person) of which something is said : the *Predicate* is what is said of the subject. *The father is learned.* Here 'the father' is the Subject of discourse, or the person spoken of; 'learned' the Predicate, or what we affirm concerning the subject. Sometimes the subject is accompanied by an adjective; as, *the fine book is lost;* here 'the fine book' is the subject, and 'lost' the predicate.

*In a COMPOUND SENTENCE there are either several subjects and one predicate, or several predicates and one subject, or both several predicates and several subjects; as, 'My father, mother, brother and sister are dead;'—here, the predicate *dead* belongs to the four subjects, *father, mother, brother* and *sister,* which taken together form a plural; the predicate therefore with the verb should be plural. The subject is often separated from its predicate; as, 'my father, who has been absent many weeks, has not yet written;' where the words, *my father has not yet written* form a sentence, between which another sentence, *who has been absent many weeks,* is interposed : In the interposed sentence, *who* is the subject, *absent* the predicate.

CONCORD.

The following words agree together in sentences. 1. A substantive with a substantive. 2. An adjective with a substantive. 3. A verb with a nominative.

1. *Agreement of one Substantive with another.*

RULE I. (1) Substantives signifying the same thing agree in case; as,

Cicĕro orātor,	Cicero the orator;	*Cicerōnis oratōris,*	Of Cicero the orator.
Urbs Athēnæ,	The city Athens;	*Urbis Athēnārum,*	Of the city Athens.

* (2) This addition to a substantive, called *Apposition*, is properly a short mode of speaking for *qui, quæ, quod*, or *cum* with the verb *sum;* as, *Cicero*, Consul, *hoc fecit* 'Cicero the Consul did this,' the same as, *Cicero*, cum consul esset, hoc fecit.

* (3) It is not necessary that the nouns agree in gender, number or person; as, *Magnum pauperies approbrium*, Hor. where *opprobrium*, which is neuter, agrees in case with *pauperies*, fem. But if it be possible they should agree in gender and number: thus, *docuit hoc me* usus, magister optimus, 'experience, which is the best master, taught me this:' if for *usus* we substitute *exercitatio*, fem. we should say, *magistra optima.*

* (4) When a plural appellative is used as descriptive of two or more proper names of different genders, it must be of the more worthy gender; as, *Ad Ptolemaeum Cleopatramque* reges *legati* missi, Liv. in which *reges* is equivalent to *regem* et *reginam.*

* (4½) Sometimes the latter substantive is put in the Genitive; as, *Fons Timavi*, for *Timavus*, Virg.

2. *Agreement of an Adjective with a Substantive.*

II. (5) Adjectives, including Adjective pronouns and Participles, agree with their Substantives in gender, number, and case; as,

Bonus vir, a good man;	*Boni viri*, good men.
Fœmĭna casta, a chaste woman;	*Fœmĭnæ castæ*, chaste women.
Dulce pomum, a sweet apple;	*Dulcia poma*, sweet apples.

And so through all the cases and degrees of comparison.

Obs. 1. (6) The substantive is frequently understood, or its place supplied by an infinitive; and then the adjective is put in the neuter gender; as, *triste*, sc. *negotium*, a sad thing. Virg.; *Tuum scire*, the same with *tua scientia*, thy knowledge. Pers. We sometimes, however, find the substantive understood in the feminine; as, *Non posteriōres feram*, sup. *partes.* Ter.

Obs. 2. (7) An adjective often supplies the place of a substantive; as, *Certus amīcus*, a sure friend; *Bona ferīna*, good venison; *Summum bonum*, the chief good: *Homo* being understood to *amīcus*, *caro* to *ferīna*, and *negotium* to *bonum.* A substantive is sometimes used as an adjective; as, *incŏla turba vocant*, the inhabitants. Ovid. *Populum late regem*, Virg. for *regnantem*, 'ruling.'

Obs. 3. (8) These adjectives, *primus*, *medius*, *ultĭmus*, *extrēmus*, *infĭmus*, *imus*, *summus*, *suprēmus*, *relĭquus*, *cætĕra*, usually signify *the first part*, *the middle part*, &c. of any thing; as, *Media nox*, the middle part of the night; *Summa arbor*, the highest part of a tree.

*(9) An adjective joined with two substantives of different genders, generally agrees with that one which is chiefly the subject of discourse, though sometimes with the nearest, although it may not be the principal one; as, *non omnis error stultitia est dicenda*, Cic. where *dicenda* agrees with *stultitia*, instead of *dicendus*, to agree with *error*. But if the principal substantive be the name of a man or woman, the adjective agrees with it; as, *Semiramis puer esse credita est*, Justin. not *creditus* to agree with *puer*.

Obs. 4. (10) Whether the adjective or substantive ought to be placed first in Latin, no certain rule can be given. Only if the substantive be a monosyllable, and the adjective a polysyllable, the substantive is elegantly put first; as, *vir clarissĭmus*, *res præstantissĭma*, &c.

3. *Agreement of a Verb with a Nominative.*

III. (11) A Verb agrees with its Nominative in number and person; as,

Ego lego, I read.	*Nos legĭmus*, We read.
Tu scribis, Thou writest *or* you write.	*Vos scribĭtis*, Ye *or* you write.
Præceptor docet, The master teaches.	*Præceptōres docent*, Masters teach.

And so through all the modes, tenses, and numbers.

Obs. 1. (12) *Ego* and *nos* are of the first person; *tu* and *vos*, of the second person; *ille*, and all other words, of the third. The nominative of the first and second person in Latin is seldom expressed, unless for the sake of emphasis or distinction; as, *Tu es patrōnus*, *tu pater*. Ter. *Tu legis*, *ego scribo*.

Obs. 2. (13) An infinitive or some part of a sentence, often supplies the place of a nominative; as, *Mentīri est turpe*, to lie is base; *Diu non perlitātum tenuit dictatōrem;* the sacrifice not being attended with favourable omens, detained the dictator for a long time. Liv. 7, 8. Sometimes the neuter pronoun *id* or *illud* is added, to express the meaning more strongly; as, *Facĕre quæ libet*, id *est esse regem*. Sallust.

Obs. 3. (14) The infinitive mode often supplies the place of the third person of the imperfect of the indicative; as, *Milĭtes fugĕre*, the soldiers fled, for *fugiēbant*, or *fugĕre cœpĕrunt*. *Invidēre omnes mihi*, for *invidēbant*. This is called the *historical infinitive*, and is only used in animated narration.

Obs. 4. (15) A collective noun may be joined with a verb either of

the singular or of the plural number; as, *Multitūdo stat* or *stant;* the multitude stands, *or* stand.

A collective noun, when joined with a verb singular, expresses many considered as one whole; but when joined with a verb plural, signifies many seperately, or as individuals. Hence if an adjective or participle be subjoined to the verb, when of the singular number, they will agree both in gender and number with the collective noun; but if the verb be plural, the adjective or participle will be plural also, and of the same gender with the individuals of which the collective noun is composed; as, *Pars erant cæsi: Pars obnixæ trudunt*, sc. *formīcæ*. Virg. Æn. IV. 406. *Magna pars raptæ*, sc. *virgĭnes*. Liv. 1. 9. Sometimes, however, though more rarely, the adjective is thus used in the singular; as, *Pars arduus*, Virg. Æn. VII. 624.

* (16) The nominative fails to the third person of certain verbs, especially those which mean 'to say,' 'to tell,' &c.; as, *aiunt, dicunt, ferunt, narrant*, that is, *homines*. So also with the third person of *sum* when *qui* follows and represents the subject; as, *est qui dicat*, for *est aliquis qui dicat*, 'there is some one who says:' so, *sunt quos juvat*, Hor.

* (17) With certain verbs a nominative is always wanting; as passive verbs used impersonally; as, *parcĭtur mihi*, 'I am spared,' literally, 'it is spared to me.' So with the gerund; as, *mihi est eundum*, 'I must go.' So also in the expression *venit mihi in mentem illius diei*, where *illius diei* seems to stand for the nominative.: but perhaps *negotium* or *memoria* is to be supplied.

* (18) Sometimes the Nominative which fails must be supplied from the preceding sentence; as, *et, in quem primum egressi sunt locum, Troja vocatur*, (Liv. I. 1.) where the nom. *hic* from the preceding *locum* is understood with *vocatur;* or better, *et locus in quem egressi sunt Troja vocatur*. Sometimes from the following; as, *vastatur agri, quod inter urbem ac Fidenas est*, 'there was so much land laid waste as was between Rome &c.; (Liv. 1. 14.) where *id* governing *agri* is nom. to *vastatur;* and *quod* is used, as elsewhere, for *quantum*.

Accusative before the Infinitive.

IV. (19) The infinitive mode has an accusative before it; as,

Gaudeo te valēre, I am glad that you are well.

Obs. 1. (20) The particle *that* in English, is the sign of the accusative before the infinitive in Latin, when it comes between two verbs, without expressing intention or design. Sometimes the particle is omitted; as, *Aiunt regem adventāre*, They say the king is coming, *that* being understood.

Obs. 2. (21) The accusative before the infinitive always depends upon some other verb, commonly on a neuter or substantive verb; but seldom on a verb taken in an active sense.

Obs. 3. (22) The infinitive, with the accusative before it, seems sometimes to supply the place of a nominative; as, *Turpe est militem fugĕre*, That a soldier should fly is a shameful thing.

Obs. 4. (23) The infinitive *esse* or *fuisse*, must frequently be supplied, especially after participles; as, *Hostium exercĭtum cæsum fusumque cognōvi*, Cic. Sometimes both the accusative and infinitive are understood; as, *Pollicĭtus susceptūrum*, scil. *me esse*, Ter.

Obs. 5. (24) The infinitive may frequently be otherwise rendered by the conjunctions, *quŏd, ut, ne*, or *quin*; as, *Gaudĕo te valēre*, i. e. *quod valeas*, or *propter tuam bonam valetudĭnem: Jubeo vos bene sperāre*, or *ut bene sperētis; Prohibeo eum exīre*, or *ne exeat: Non dubĭto eum fecisse*, or much better, *quin fecĕrit. Scio quod filius amet*, Plaut. for *filium amāre. Miror, si potuit*, for *eum potuisse*. Cic. *Nemo dubĭtat, ut popŭlus Romānus omnes virtūte superārit*, for *popŭlum Romānum superâsse*. Nep. *Ex anĭmi sententiâ juro, ut ego rempublĭcam non desĕram*, for *me non desertūrum esse*. Liv. xxii. 53.

* (25) Care should be taken in using this construction not to render the meaning ambiguous, as in the famous answer of the oracle; *Aio te, Æacida, Romanos vincere posse*, in which it could not be ascertained from the mere words, which party was to prove victorious. The ambiguity might be prevented by changing the active into the passive voice.

The same Case after a Verb as before it.

V. (26) Any Verb may have the same Case after it as before it, *when both words refer to the same thing;* as,

Ego sum discipŭlus,	I am a scholar.
Tu vocāris Joannes,	You are named John.
Illa incēdit regīna,	She walks as a queen.
Scio illum habēri sapientem,	I know that he is esteemed wise.
Scio vos esse discipŭlos,	I know that you are scholars.

So *Redeo irātus, jaceo supplex; Evādent digni*, they will become worthy; *Rempublĭcam defendi adolescens; nolo esse longus*, I am unwilling to be tedious; *Malim vidēri timĭdus, quam parum prudens*. Cic. *Non licet mihi esse negligenti*. Cic. *Natūra dedit omnĭbus esse beātis*. Claud. *Cupio me esse clementem; cupio non putāri mendācem; Vult esse medium*, sc. *se*, He wishes to be neuter. Cic. *Disce esse pater; Hoc est esse patrem?* sc. *eum*. Ter. *Id est, domĭnum, non imperatōrem esse*. Sallust.

Obs. 1. (27) This rule implies nothing else but the agreement of an adjective with a substantive, or of one substantive with another; for those words in a sentence which refer to the same object, must always agree together, how much soever disjoined.

Obs. 2. (28) The verbs which most frequently have the same case after them as before them, are:

1. Substantive and neuter verbs; as, *Sum, fio, forem*, and *existo; eo, venio, sto, sedeo, evādo, jaceo, fugio*, &c.

2. The passive of verbs of naming, judging, &c. as, *Dicor, appellor, vocor, nomĭnor, nuncŭpor;* to which add, *videor, existĭmor, creor, constituor, salūtor, designor*, &c.

(29) These and other like verbs admit after them only the nominative, accusative, or dative. When they have before them the genitive, they have after them an accusative; as, *Intĕrest omnium esse bonos*, scil. *se*, it is the interest of all to be good. In some cases we can use either the nom. or accus. promiscuously; as, *Cupio dici doctus* or *doctum*, sc. *me dici; Cupio esse clemens, non putari mendax; vult esse medius.*

Obs. 3. (30) When any of the above verbs are placed between two nominatives of different numbers, they commonly agree in number with the former; as *Dos est decem talenta*, Her dowry is ten talents. Ter. *Omnia pontus erunt*. Ovid. But sometimes with the latter; as, *Amantium iræ amōris integrātio est*, The quarrels of lovers is a renewal of love. Ter. So when an adjective is applied to two substantives of different genders, it commonly agrees in gender with that substantive which is most the subject of discourse; as, *Oppĭdum est appellātum Posidōnia*. Plin. Sometimes, however, the adjective agrees with the nearer substantive; as, *Non omnis error stultitia est dicenda*. Cic.

Obs. 4. (31) When the infinitive of any verb, particularly the substantive verb *esse*, has the dative before it, governed by an Impersonal verb, or any other word, it may have after it either the dative or the accusative; as, *Licet mihi esse beāto*, I may be happy; or, *licet mihi esse beātum, me* being understood; thus, *licet mihi* (me) *esse beātum*. The dative before *esse* is often to be supplied; as, *Licet esse beātum*. One may be happy, scil. *alicui*, or *homĭni*.

Obs. 5. (32) The poets use certain forms of expression, which are not to be imitated in prose; as, *Rettŭlit Ajax Jovis esse pronĕpos*, for *se esse pronepōtem*. Ovid. Met. xii. 141. *Cum patĕris sapiens emendatusque vocāri*, for *te vocāri sapientem, &c.* Horat. Ep. 1. 16. 30. *Acceptum refĕro versĭbus esse nocens*. Ovid. *Tutumque putāvit jam bonus esse socer*. Lucan.

GOVERNMENT.

I. THE GOVERNMENT OF SUBSTANTIVES.

VI. (33) One Substantive governs another in the genitive, (*when the latter Substantive signifies a different thing from the former.*)

* (34) This rule might perhaps be better expressed, thus:

The latter of two Substantives signifying different things, is put in the Genitive, when it expresses the *Possessor*, *Cause*, or *Source* of the former; as,

Amor Dei, The love of God. *Lex natūræ*, The law of nature.
Domus Cæsăris, The house of Cæsar, or Cæsar's house.

* (35) The Genitive has three senses. 1. It is used *actively* or denotes an action,—that one does any thing; as, *Victoria Cæsăris*, 'the victory of Cæsar.' that is, which Cæsar gains. 2. It is used *possessively*, denoting that the thing which is put in the Genitive has or possesses something; as, *liber patris*, 'the

father's book,' 'the book which belongs to the father.' 3. It is used *objectively*, that is, denotes the object, whether person or thing, to which the action is directed; as, *amor mei*, 'love for me.'

Obs. 1. (36) When one substantive is governed by another in the genitive, it expresses in general the relation of property or possession, and therefore is often elegantly turned into a possessive adjective; as, *Domus patris*, or *paterna*, a father's house; *Filius heri* or *herīlis*, a master's son; and among the poets, *Labor Herculeus*, for *Hercŭlis; Ensis Evandrius*, for *Evandri*.

* (37) The Genitive also sometimes follows substantives to denote their use or service; as, *abaci vasa*, Cic. 'plate for the sideboard.' *Apparatus urbium expugnandarum*, Liv. 'Instruments for attacking cities.'

Obs. 2. (38) When the substantive noun in the genitive signifies a person, it may be taken either in an active or a passive sense; thus, *Amor Dei*, the love of God, either means the love of God towards us, or our love towards him: So *carĭtas patris*, signifies either the affection of a father to his children, or theirs to him. But often the substantive can only be taken either in an active or in a passive sense; thus, *Timor Dei* always implies *Deus timētur*; and *Providentia Dei, Deus provĭdet*. So, *carĭtas ipsius soli*, affection to the very soil. Liv. ii. 1.

Obs. 3. (39) Both the former and latter substantive are sometimes to be understood; as, *Hectŏris Andromăche*, scil. *uxor*; *Ventum est ad Vestæ*, scil. *ædem* or *templum*; *Ventum est tria millia*, scil. *passuum*; three miles.

* (40) The Latins often put an adjective instead of a genitive; as, *laus aliena*, for *alienorum*, Cic. See (36)

* (41) Instead of a genitive, verbal substantives are sometimes followed by the case which the verb, from which they are derived, governs; as, Quid tibi hanc *curatio* est *rem?* Plaut. for *hujus rei*, because *curare* governs an accusative. So in Cic. Quodsi justitia est *obtemperatio scriptis legibus institutisque* populorum; because *obtemperare* governs a dative.

Obs. 4. (42) We find the dative often used after a verb for the genitive, particularly among the poets; as, *cui corpus porrigĭtur*, whose body is extended. Virg. Æn. vi. 596.

Obs. 5. (43) Some substantives are joined with certain prepositions; as, *Amicitia, inimicitia, pax, cum alĭquo; Amor in*, vel *erga, alĭquem; Gaudium de re; Cura de alĭquo; Mentio illius*, vel *de illo; Quies ab armis; Fumus ex incendiis; Prædātor ex sociis*, for *sociōrum*. Sall. &c.

Obs. 6. (44) The genitive in Latin is often rendered in English by several other particles besides *of*; as, *Descensus Averni*, the descent *to* Avernus; *Prudentia juris*, skill *in* the law.

(45) SUBSTANTIVE PRONOUNS are governed in the genitive like substantive nouns; as, *pars mei*, a part of me.

(46) So also adjective pronouns, when used as substantives, or having a noun understood; as, *Liber ejus, illius, hujus*, &c. the book of him, or his book, sc. *homĭnis;* the book of her, or her book, sc. *fœmĭnæ*. *Libri eōrum*, or *eārum*, their books; *Cujus liber*, the book of whom, or whose book; *Quorum libri*, whose books, &c. But we always say, *meus liber*, not *mei: pater noster*, not *nostri; suum jus*, not *sui*.

(47) When a passive sense is expressed, we use *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri, nostrum, vestrum;* but we use their possessives when an active sense is expressed; as, *Amor mei,* The love of me, that is, The love wherewith I am loved; *Amor meus,* My love, that is, the love wherewith I love. We find, however, the possessives sometimes used passively, and their primitives taken actively; as, *Odium tuum,* Hatred of thee. Ter. Phorm. v. 8. 27. *Labor mei,* My labour. Plaut.

(48) The possessives *meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester,* have sometimes nouns, pronouns, and participles after them in the genitive; as, *Pectus tuum homĭnis simplĭcis,* Cic. Phil. ii. 43. *Noster duōrum eventus.* Liv. *Tuum ipsius studium.* Cic. *Mea scripta, timentis,* &c. Hor. *Solius meum peccātum corrĭgi non potest.* Cic. *Id maxĭmè quemque decet, quod est cujusque suum maxĭmè.* Id. * The reason of this is, because the adjective pronouns are equivalent to the genitive of the personal; as, *pectus tuum hominis* is the same as *pectus tui, hominis,* &c. where *hominis* would agree in case with tui.

(49) The reciprocals *SUI* and *SUUS* are used, when the action of the verb is reflected, as it were, upon the nominative; as, *Cato interfēcit se, Miles defendit suam vitam; Dicit se scriptūrum esse.* We find, however, *is* or *ille* sometimes used in examples of this kind; as, *Deum agnoscĭmus ex operĭbus ejus.* Cic. *Persuādent Raurăcis, ut una cum iis proficiscantur,* for *una secum.* Cæs. See page 87.

VII. (50) If the latter Substantive have an Adjective of praise or dispraise joined with it, they may be put in the genitive or ablative; as,

Vir summæ prudentiæ, or *summâ prudentiâ,*	A man of great wisdom.
Puer probæ indŏlis, or *probâ indŏle,*	A boy of a good disposition.

* (51) This Genitive or Ablative is called the GENITIVE or ABLATIVE of QUALITY, and the rule would have been better expressed by saying 'an adjective of *description*' instead of *praise* or *dispraise.* This Genitive or Ablative is used to express—1. PROPERTY OR CHARACTER; as, puer *bonæ indolis;* adolescens *summa virtute.* 2. FORM; as, mulier *formæ pulchræ,* or *egregia forma.* 3. WORTH, RANK; as, homo *parvi pretii.* 4. POWER; as, homo *sui juris,* 'a man at his own disposal,' 'one who is his own master.' 5. WEIGHT; as, lapis *centum librarum.* 6. TIME; as, exilium *decem annorum,* 'a banishment of ten years.' 7. LENGTH, SIZE, &c.; as, testudo *pedum sexaginta.*

Obs. 1. (52) The ablative here is not properly governed by the foregoing substantive, but by some preposition understood; as, *cum, de, ex, in,* &c. Thus, *Vir summâ prudentiâ* is the same with *vir cum summâ prudentiâ.*

Obs. 2. (53) In some phrases the genitive is only used; as, *Magni formīca labōris,* the laborious ant; *Vir imi subsellii, homo minĭmi pretii,* a person of the lowest rank. *Homo nullius stipendii,* a man of no experience in war, Sallust. *Non multi cibi hospĭtem accipies, sed multi joci.* Cic. *Ager trium jugĕrum.* In others only the ablative; as, *Es bono anĭmo,* Be of good courage. *Mirâ sum alacritāte ad litigandum.* Cic. *Capĭte aperto est,* His head is bare; *obvolūto,* covered. *Capĭte et supercilio semper est rasis.* Id. *Mulier magno natu.* Liv. Sometimes both are used in the same sentence; as, *Adolescens, eximiâ spe, summæ virtūtis.* Cic. The ablative more frequently occurs in prose than the genitive. Qui nunquam *ægro corpore* fuerunt, Cic.

Obs. 3. (54) Sometimes the adjective agrees in case with the former substantive, and then the latter substantive is put in the ablative: thus, we say, either, *Vir præstantis ingenii*, or *præstanti ingenio*; or *Vir præstans ingenio*, and sometimes *præstans ingenii*. Among the poets the latter substantive is frequently put in the accusative by a Greek construction, *secundum*, or *quad ad* being understood by the figure commonly called *Synecdŏche*; as, *Miles fractus membra*, i. e. *fractus* secundum *or* quod ad *membra*, or *habens membra fracta*. Horat. *Os humerosque deo simĭlis*. Virg.

Adjectives taken as Substantives.

VIII. (55) An adjective in the neuter gender without a substantive governs the genitive; as,

Multum pecuniæ, Much money. *Quid rei est?* What is the matter?

Obs. 1. (56) This manner of expression is more elegant than *Multa pecunia*, and therefore is much used by the best writers; as, *Plus eloquentiæ, minus sapientiæ, tantum fidei, id negotii; Quicquid erat patrum, reos dicĕres*. Liv. *Id loci; Ad hoc ætātis*. Sallust.

Obs. 2. (57) The adjectives which thus govern the genitive like substantives, generally signify quantity; as, *multum, plus, plurĭmum, tantum, quantum, minus, minĭmum*, &c. To which add, *hoc, illud, istud, id, quid, alĭquid, quidvis, quiddam*, &c. *Plus* and *quid* almost always govern the genitive, and therefore by some are thought to be substantives.

* (58) *Tantum* with the genitive always means 'so much,' 'so many:' but when it means 'so great,' it is always an adjective, and agrees with its substantive in gender, number, and case. Thus, *tantus labor*, 'so great a labour; *tantum labōris*, 'so much labour;' *tantum negotium*, 'so weighty a business;' *tantum negotii*, 'so much business,' or 'trouble:' it is therefore incorrect to say that *tantum laboris* is put for *tantus labor*. So with *quantum*, 'how much;' as, *quantum nogotium*, 'how great,' or 'how important a business;' *quantum negotii*, 'how much business,' or 'trouble.'

Obs. 3. (59) *Nihil*, and these neuter pronouns *quid, alĭquid*, &c. elegantly govern neuter adjectives of the first and second declension in the genitive; as, *nihil sincēri*, no sincerity; but seldom govern in this manner adjectives of the third declension, particularly those which end in *is* and *e*; as, *Nequid hostīle timērent*, not *hostīlis*: we find, however, *quicquid civīlis*. Liv. v. 3.

Obs. 4. (60) Plural adjectives of the neuter gender also govern the genitive, commonly the genitive plural; as, *Angusta viārum, Opāca locōrum, Tellūris operta, loca* being understood. So, *Amāra curārum, acūta belli*, sc. *negotia*. Horat. An adjective, indeed, of any gender may have a genitive after it, with a substantive understood; as, *Amīcus Cæsăris, Patria Ulyssis*, &c.

Opus and *Usus*.

IX. (61) *Opus* and *Usus*, signifying *need*, require the ablative; as,

Est opus pecuniâ, There is need of money; *Usus virĭbus*, Need of strength.

Obs. 1. (62) *Opus* and *usus* are substantive nouns, and do not govern the ablative of themselves, but by some preposition, as *pro* or the like, understood. They sometimes also, although more rarely, govern the genitive; as, *Lectiōnis opus est.* Quinct. *Opĕræ usus est.* Liv. *Temporis opus est.* Liv.

Obs. 2. (63) *Opus* is often construed like an indeclinable adjective; as, *Dux nobis opus est.* We need a general. Cic. *Dices nummos mihi opus esse.* Id. *Nobis exempla opus sunt.* Id.

* (64) Hence it is seen that *opus* is used in two ways; 1. PERSONALLY, that is, it has its subject with which it agrees in the Nominative, and is found in both numbers; as, *liber est mihi opus; libri sunt mihi opus; libri mihi opus fuerunt,* &c. 2. IMPERSONALLY, with *est* like other impersonal verbs, in which case it has its subject in the Ablative; as, *Auctoritate tua nobis opus est.* In both usages the person *to whom* something is necessary, is put in the Dative.

Obs. 3. (65) *Opus* is elegantly joined with the perfect participle; as, *Opus maturāto*, need of haste; *Opus consulto,* Need of deliberation; *Quid facto usus est?* Ter. The participle has sometimes a substantive joined with it; as, *Mihi opus fuit Hirtio convento,* It behoved me to meet with Hirtius. Cic.

Obs. 4. (66) *Opus* is sometimes joined with the infinitive, or the subjunctive with *ut;* as, *Siquid forte, sit, quod opus sit sciri.* Cic. *Nunc tibi opus est, ægram ut te adsimŭles.* Plaut. *Sive opus est imperitāre equis.* Horat. It is often placed *absolutely,* i. e. without depending on any other word; as, *sic opus est*; *si opus sit,* &c.

II. THE GOVERNMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

1. *Adjectives governing the Genitive.*

X. (67) Verbal adjectives, or such as signify an affection of the mind, govern the genitive; as,

Avĭdus gloriæ, Desirous of glory. *Ignārus fraudis,* Ignorant of fraud.
Memor beneficiōrum, Mindful of favours.

(68) To this rule belong, I. Verbal adjectives in AX; as, *capax, edax, ferax, tenax, pertĭnax,* &c. and certain participial adjectives in NS and TUS; as, *amans, appĕtens, cupiens, insŏlens, sciens; consultus, doctus, expertus, insuētus, insolĭtus,* &c. II. Adjectives expressing various affections of the mind; 1. Desire, as, *avārus, cupĭdus, studiōsus,* &c. 2. Knowledge, ignorance, and doubting; as, *callĭdus, certus, certior, conscius, gnarus, perītus, prudens,* &c. *Ignārus, incertus, inscius, imprūdens, imperītus, immĕmor, rudis; ambiguus, dubius, suspensus,* &c. 3. Care and diligence, and the contrary; as, *anxius, curiōsus, solicĭtus, provĭdus, dilĭgens; incuriōsus, securus, neglĭgens,* &c. 4. Fear and confidence; as, *formidolōsus, pavĭdus, timĭdus, trepĭdus; impavĭdus, interrĭtus, intrepĭdus* 5. Guilt and innocence; as, *noxius, reus, suspectus, compertus; innoxius, innŏcens, insons.*

(69) To these add many adjectives of various significations; as, *æger anĭmi; ardens, audax, aversus, diversus, egregius, erectus, falsus, felix, fessus, furens, ingens, intĕger, lætus, præstans anĭmi; modĭcus voti; intĕger vitæ; seri studiōrum.* Hor. But we say, *Æger pedĭbus, ardens in cupiditatĭbus, præstans doctrīnâ, modĭcus cultu; Lætus negotio, de re,* or *propter rem,* &c. and never *æger pedum,* &c.

Obs. 1. (70) Verbals in NS are used both as adjectives and participles; thus, *patiens algōris,* able to bear cold; and *patiens algōrem,* actually bearing cold. So, *amans virtutis,* and *amans virtūtem; doctus grammatĭcæ,* skilled in grammar; *doctus grammatĭcam,* one who has learned it.

Obs. 2. (71) Many of these adjectives vary their construction; as, *avĭdus in pecuniis.* Cic. *Avidior ad rem.* Ter. *Jure consultus* and *perītus,* or *juris.* Cic. *Rudis literārum, in jure civīli.* Cic. *Rudis arte, ad mala.* Ovid. *Doctus Latīnè, Latīnis litĕris.* Cic. *Assuētus labōre, in Omnia.* Liv. *Mensæ herīli.* Virg. *Insuētus morĭbus Romānis,* in the dat. Liv. *Labōris, ad onĕra portandu.* Cæs. *Desuētus bello et triumphis,* in the dat. or abl. rather the dat. Virg. *Anxius, solicĭtus, secūrus, de re aliquâ; diligens, in, ad, de.* Cic. *Neglĭgens in alĭquem, in* or *de re: Reus de vi, crimĭnĭbus.* Cic. *Certior factus de re,* rather than *rei.* Cic.

Obs. 3. (72) The genitive after these adjectives is thought to be governed by *causâ, in re,* or *in negotio,* or some such word understood; as, *Cupĭdus laudis,* i. e. *causâ* or *in re laudis,* desirous of praise, that is, on account of, *or* in the matter of praise. But many of the adjectives themselves may be supposed to contain, in their own signification, the force of a substantive; thus, *studiōsus pecuniæ,* fond of money, is the same with *habens studium pecuniæ,* having a fondness for money.

* (73) The following Adjectives are found with the Genitive ANIMI: *Abjectior,* Liv. *Æger,* Id. *Amens,* Virg. *Anxius,* Sall. *Augustior,* Apul. *Aversus,* Tac. *Cæcus,* Quintil. *Captus,* Tac. *Certus,* Liv. *Compŏs,* Ter. *Confĭdens,* Sueton. *Confirmātus,* Apul. *Confūsus,* Liv. *Crēdŭla spes,* Hor. *Dītior,* Stat. *Dĭversus,* Tac. and Ter. *Dŭbius,* Virg. *Egrĕgius,* Id. *Erectus,* Sil. *Exĭguus,* Claud. *Exĭmius,* Stat. *Explētus,* Apul. *Externātus,* Id. *Falsus,* Ter. *Fĕrox,* Tac. *Festīnus,* Apul. *Fīdens,* Virg. *Firmātus,* Sall. *Fŭrens,* Virg. *Illex,* Apul. *Impŏs,* Plaut. *Infēlix,* Virg. *Ingens,* Tac. *Insānus,* Apul. *Intĕger,* Hor. *Lapsus,* Plaut. *Lassus,* Id. *Macte,* Mart. *Mĭser,* Plaut. *Mutātus,* Apul. *Præceps,* Virg. *Præstans,* Id. *Rĕcreātus,* Apul. *Stŭpentes,* Liv. *Suspensus,* Apul. *Tantus,* Id. *Tĕnella,* Id. *Terrĭtus,* Liv. *Turbātus,* Sil. *Turbĭdus,* Tac. *Văgus,* Catull. *Vălĭdus,* Tac. *Vecors,* Apul. *Versus.* Tac. *Victus,* Virg. So *Alternus ănĭmæ,* Sil.

These are followed by the Genitive INGENII: *Æmŭlus,* Sil. *Audax,* Stat. *Fervĭdus,* Sil. *Lætus,* Vell. *Versūtus,* Plin.

These by MENTIS: *Dŭbius,* Ovid. *Intĕger,* Hor. *Mūtābĭle,* Sil. *Păres,* Id. *Pŏtens,* Ovid, *Sănus,* Plaut.

These by IRÆ: *Manĭfestus,* Sall. *Pervĭcax,* Tac. *Pŏtens,* Curt. *Pulcherrĭmus,* Sil. *Vĭrĭdissĭmus,* Id.

These by MILITIÆ: *Acer,* Tac. *Impĭger,* Id. *Inglōrius,* Id. *Lassus,* Hor. *Optĭmus,* Sil. *Strēnuus,* Tac.

These by BELLI: *Expertus,* Virg. *Fessus,* Stat. *Mĕdius,* Hor. *Promtus,* Tac. *Sĕrus,* Sil. *Rĕsĭdes bellōrum,* Stat.

These by Laboris: *Anhēlus*, Sil. *Insuētus*, Cæs. *Invictus*, Tac. *Lætus*, Virg. *Fortunātus lābōrum*, Virg. *Laudandus lābōrum*, Sil. *Liber labōrum*, Hor.

These by Rerum: *Fessus*, Virg. *Imperītus*, Ter. *Instăbĭlis*, Senec. *Sēcors*, Ter. *Trepĭdi*, Liv. et Sil. *Unĭcus*, Sil.

These by Fidei: *Præclārus*, Tac. *Prāvus*, Sil. *Sĭnister*, Id.

These by Ævi: *Æquāles*, Sil. *Floridior*, Id. *Matūrus*, Virg. *Maxĭmus*, Sil. *Mĕmor*, Virg. *Valĭdus*, Aurel. Vict.

These by Tui: *Fidissĭma*, Virg. *Sĭmĭlis*, Plaut.

These by Sui: *Mollior*, Apul. *Pĕrīclĭtābundus*, Id. *Sŭpĕrior*, Tac.

These by Morum: *Diversus*, Tac. *Exactus*, Ovid. *Fluxa*, Sil. *Grăvis*, Claud. *Spernendus*, Tac.

So, *Admirandus frūgālĭtātis*, Senec. *Æquus* absentium, Tac. *Aliēnus* consĭlii, Sall. *Dignĭtātis*, Cic. *Joci*, Ovid. *Pacis*, Lucr. *Ambĭguus* pudōris, Tac. *Anxius* furti, Ovid. *Ardens* Cædis, Stat. *Argūtus* făcĭnŏrum, Plaut. *Assuētus* tumultūs, Liv. *Atrox* odii, Tac. *Attonĭtus* serpentis, Sil. *Avĭdus* laudis, Cic. *Bĕnignus* vīni, Hor. *Bibŭlus*, Fălerni, Id. *Blandus* prĕcum, Stat. *Cæcus* fāti, Lucan. *Fŭtūri*, Stat. *Callĭdus* tempŏrum, Tac. *Catus* lĕgum, Auson. *Cĕler* nandi, Sil. *Certus* destinātiōnis, Tac. *Sălūtis*, Ovid. *Clāmōsus* undæ. Sil. *Clarissĭmus* disciplīnæ, Vell. *Commūne* omnium, Cic. *Compŏs* vōti, Liv. *Contermĭnus* jūgi. Apul.: cf. Sil. v. 511. *Crēdŭlus* adversi, Sil. *Cumŭlātissĭmus* scelĕrum, Plaut. *Cupĭdior* sălūtis, Nep. *Cupĭdus* rērum nŏvārum, Sall. *Damnandus* facti, Sil. *Dēformis* lēti, Id. *Degĕner* artis, Ovid. *Despectus* tædæ, Sil. *Dēvius* æqui, Id. *Recti*, Id. *Dĭsertus* lĕpōrum, ac făcētiārum, Catull. *Dispar* sortis, Sil. *Dīvīna* fŭtūri, Hor. *Dŏcĭlis* mŏdōrum, Id. *Doctus* virgæ, Sil. *Dubius* fāti, Sil. *Sententiæ*, Ovid. *Dulcissĭmus* fandi, Gell. *Durus* ōris, Liv. *Durior* ōris, Ovid. *Effusissĭmus* mūnĭfĭcentiæ, Vell. *Enuntiatīvi* corpŏrum, Senec. *Erectus* linguæ, Sil. *Fāti*, Stat. *Exsors* culpæ, Liv. *Sĕcandi*, Hor. *Pĕrīcŭli*, Ter. *Exul* patriæ, Hor. *Mundi*, Ovid. *Dŏmūs*, Quintil. *Extorris* regni, Stat. *Exūtus* formæ, Sil. *Facĭlis* frūgum, Claud. *Fallax* ămīcitiæ, Tac. *Falsus* cupīti, Sil. *Fatigātus* spei, Apul. *Felix* cĕrĕbri, Hor. *Opĕrum*, Sil. *Fessus* viæ, Stat. Măris et viārum, Hor. *Sălūtis*, Sil. *Fīdens* armōrum, Lucan. *Firmus* prŏpŏsĭti, Vell. *Flāvus* cŏmārum, Sil. *Formīdŏlōsior* hostium, Tac. *Frĕquens* sylvæ, Tac. *Frustrātus* spei, Gell. *Fŭgĭtīvus* regni, Flor. *Gaudens* alti, Stat. *Gravĭda* mĕtalli, Ovid. *Impavĭdus* somni, Sil. *Imprŏba* connūbii, Stat. *Incautus* fŭtūri, Hor. *Indecōra* formæ, Tac. *Indocĭlis* pācis, Sil. *Inexplēbĭlis* virtūtis, Liv. *Infirmus* corpŏris, Apul. *Ingrātus* sălūtis, Virg. *Innoxius* consĭlii, Q. Curt. *Insŏlens* infāmiæ, Cic. *Audiendi*, Tac. *Insŏlĭtus* servĭtii, Sall. *Insons* sanguĭnis, Ovid. *Intĕger* vītæ, Hor. *Urbis* V. Flac. *Ævi*, Virg. *Annōrum*, Stat. *Interrĭta* lēti, Ovid. *Cŭpīti*, Vell. *Intrĕpĭdus* ferri, Claud. *Invictus* opĕris et lābŏris, Tac. *Invĭdus* laudis, Cic. *Lætus* frūgum, Sall. *Lassus* măris et viārum mīlĭtiæque, Hor. *Lentus* cœpti, Sil. *Lĕvis* ŏpum, Id. *Lībĕrālis* pĕcūniæ, Sall. *Lūgendus* formæ, Sil. *Mădĭdus* rōris, Apul. *Mănĭfestus* crīmĭnis, Tac. *Mĕdius* pācis, Hor. Frātris et sŏrōris, Ovid. *Mĕlior* fāti, Sil. *Mŏdĭcus* pĕcūniæ, Tac. *Vōti*, Pers. *Orīgĭnis*, Tac. *Dignātiōnis*, Id. *Vīrium*, Vell. *Voluptātum*, Tac. *Munĭfĭcus* auri, Claud. *Nĭmius* impĕrii, Liv. *Sermōnis*, Tac. *Nōbĭlis* fandi, Auson. *Notus* fūgārum, Sil. *Nūdus* arbŏris, Ovid. *Occultus* ŏdii, Tac. *Onusta* rēmĭgum, Hirt. *Otiōsi* stŭdiōrum, Plin. *Păres* ætātis, Sil. *Păvĭdus* offensiōnum, Tac. *Pauper* ăquæ, Hor. *Perfĭda* pacti, Sil. *Pĕrinfāmes* disciplīnæ, Apul. *Pĕrītus* jūris lēgumque, Hor. *Pertĭnax* dŏcendi, Id. *Piger* pĕrīcli, Sil. *Pŏtens* lўræ, Hor. *Ætātis*, Sil. *Vōti*, Ovid. *Măris* et terræ tempestātumque, Virg. *Præcĭpuus* virtūtis, Apul. *Præscia* fŭtūri, Virg. *Præstans* săpientiæ, Tac. *Prŏcax* ōtii, Tac. *Prŏfŭgus* regni, Id. *Prŏpĕrus* occā-

siōnis, Id. *Prospĕra* frūgum, Hor. *Pūrus* scĕlĕris, Id. *Serpentum*, Sil. *Rectus* jūdicii, Senec. *Rŭdis* litĕrārum, Cic. *Sătiātus* cædis, Ovid. Saucius fāmæ, Apul. *Scītus* vădōrum, Hor. *Segnis* occāsiōnum, Tac. *Sēri* stŭdiōrum, Hor. *Sōlers* ŏpĕrum, Sil. *Lўræ*, Hor. *Sŏlūtus*, ŏpĕrum, Id. *Sprēta* vĭgōris, Sil. *Stŭdiōsissĭmus* mei, Cic. *Summus* sĕvērĭtātis, Tac. *Sŭperstes* dignĭtātis, Cic. *Surdus* vērĭtātis, Col. *Tardus* fŭgæ, V. Flac. *Tĕnuis* ŏpum, Sil. *Truncus* pĕdum, Virg. *Văfer* jūris, Ovid. *Vălĭdus* ōrandi, Tac. *Vĭrium*, Id. *Vānus* vēri, Virg. *Vĕnĕrandus* sĕnectæ, Sil. *Vĕtus* regnandi, Tac. *Vĭgil* armenti, Sil. *Utĭlis* mĕdendi, Ovid.

XI. (74) Partitives, and words placed partitively, comparatives, superlatives, interrogatives, and some numerals, govern the genitive plural; as,

Alĭquis philosophōrum,	Some one of the philosophers.
Senior fratrum,	The elder of the brothers.
Doctissĭmus Romanōrum.	The most learned of the Romans.
Quis nostrum,	Which of us?
Una musārum,	One of the muses.
Octāvus sapientûm,	The eighth of the wise men.

(75) Adjectives are called *Partitives*, or are said to be placed *partitively*, when they signify a part of any number of persons or things, having after them in English, *of* or *among*; as, *alius*, *nullus*, *solus*, &c. *quis* and *qui*, with their compounds: also Comparatives, Superlatives, and some numerals; as, *unus*, *duo*, *tres*; *primus*, *secundus*, &c. To these add *multi*, *pauci*, *plerīque*, *medius*, *neuter*, *quotus*, *nounulla*.

* (76) If the substantive be a collective noun, the genitive singular is used; as, *totius Græciæ doctissimus*.

Obs. 1. (77) Partitives, &c. agree in gender with the substantives which they have after them in the genitive; but when there are two substantives of different genders, the partitive, &c. rather agrees with the former; as, *Indus flumĭnum maxĭmus*. Cic. Rarely with the latter; as, *Delphīnus animalium velocissĭmum*. Plin. The genitive here is governed by *ex numĕro*, or by the same substantive understood in the singular number; as, *Nulla sorōrum*, scil. *soror* or *ex numĕro sorōrum*.

Obs. 2. (78) Partitives, &c. are often otherwise construed with the prepositions *de*, *e*, *ex*, or *in*; as, *Unus de fratrĭbus*; or by the poets, with *ante* or *inter*; as, *Pulcherrĭmus ante omnes*, for *omnium*. Virg. *Primus inter omnes*. Id.

Obs. 3. (79) Partitives, &c. govern collective nouns in the genitive singular, and are of the same gender with the individuals of which the collective noun is composed; as, *Vir fortissĭmus nostræ civitātis*. Cic. *Maxĭmus stirpis*. Liv. *Ultĭmos orbis* Britannos. Horat. Od. i. 35, 29.

Obs. 4. (80) Comparatives are used when we speak of two; Superlatives when we speak of more than two; as, *Major fratrum*, The elder of the brothers, meaning *two*; *Maxĭmus fratrum*, the eldest of the brothers, meaning *more*

than two. In like manner, *uter, alter, neuter,* are applied with regard to two; *quis, unus, alius, nullus,* with regard to three or more; as, *Uter vestrum,* Whether or which of you *two; Quis vestrum,* Which of you *three;* but these are sometimes taken promiscuously, the one for the other.

* (81) [The Dative, when compared with the Accusative (which is the immediate object) may be defined to be THE CASE OF THE REMOTE OBJECT. It answers to the question to whom? or for whom or what? to what end? to whose advantage or disadvantage? The active Verb with the Accusative expresses the amount of the action done to the object, which object is put in the Dative. Thus in the expression, *narras fabulam* surdo, 'you are telling a story to a deaf person,' the two terms *narras fabulam* (the active Verb with the Accusative) are required to express the amount of what is done, *surdo,* 'to the deaf person.'

* (82) But the Dative according to our English idiom must frequently be translated by FROM or OF, instead of TO or FOR. Thus, *Brutus percussit pectus Cæsări,* 'Brutus struck the breast of Cæsar;' here the two terms *percussit pectus* are requisite to express the action done to the object, which object the Latins elegantly put in the Dative, *Cæsari,* 'to Cæsar,' instead of the Genitive to be governed by *pectus.* Thus in Livy, I. 1. line 2d, the reading should be *Æneæ Antenorique,* according to all the manuscripts: but in the school editions and even in Drackenborch the reading is *Æneâ Antenoreque,* probably, because the ablative could more easily be construed after *abstinuisse* by the common rule of Syntax, "A preposition in Composition," &c. It is here stated by Livy that the Greeks *abstinuisse omne jus belli* 'withheld every right of war.' To *whom* did the Greeks *do* this? to two persons, Æneas and Antenor. The English idiom indeed states the persons FROM *whom* every right of war *was* withheld, but the Latin idiom, with no less elegance, states the persons TO *whom* this act of withholding was *done.*]

2. *Adjectives governing the Dative.*

XII. (83) Adjectives signifying profit or disprofit, likeness or unlikeness, &c. govern the dative; as,

Utĭlis bello,	Profitable for war.
Perniciōsus reipublĭcæ,	Hurtful to the commonwealth.
Simĭlis patri,	Like to his father.

Or thus, *Any adjective may govern the dative in Latin, which has the signs TO or FOR after it in English.*

To this rule belong:

1. (84) Adjectives of profit or disprofit; as, *Benignus, bonus, commŏdus, faustus, felix, fructuōsus, prosper, salūber, utĭlis.—Calamitōsus, damnōsus, dirus, exitiōsus, funestus, incommŏdus, malus, noxius, perniciōsus pestĭfer.*

2. Of pleasure or pain; as, *Acceptus, dulcis, gratus, gratiōsus, jucundus, lætus, suavis.—Acerbus, amārus, insuāvis, injucundus, ingrātus, molestus, tristis.*

3. Of friendship or hatred; as, *Addictus, æquus, amicus, benevŏlus, blandus, carus, dedĭtus, fidus, fidēlis, lenis, mitis, propitius.—Adversus, æmŭlus, asper, crudēlis, contrarius, infensus, infestus, infīdus, immītis, inimīcus, inīquus, invīsus, invĭdus, irrātus, odiōsus, suspectus, trux.*

4. Of clearness or obscurity; as, *Apertus, certus, compertus, conspicuus, manifestus, notus, perspicuus.—Ambiguus, dubius, ignōtus, incertus, obscūrus.*

5. Of nearness; as, *Finitĭmus, proprior, proxĭmus, propinquus, socius, vicīnus.*

6. Of fitness or unfitness; as, *Aptus, appositus, accommodātus, habĭlis, idoneus, opportūnus.—Ineptus, inhabĭlis importūnus, inconveniens.*

7. Of ease or difficulty; as, *Facĭlis levis, obvius, pervius.—Diffĭcĭlis, arduus, gravis, laboriōsus, periculōsus, invius.* To these add such as signify propensity or readiness; as, *Pronus, proclīvis, propensus, promptus, parātus.*

8. Of equality, or inequality; as, *Æquālis, æquævus, par, compar, suppar.—Inequālis, impar, dispar, discors.* Also of likeness or unlikeness; as, *Simĭlis, æmŭlus, gemĭnus.—Dissimĭlis, absŏnus, aliēnus, diversus, discŏlor.*

9. Several adjectives compounded with CON; as, *Cognātus, concŏlor, concors, confīnis, congruus, consanguineus, consentaneus, consŏnus, conveniens, contiguus, continuus, contĭnens,* contiguous; as, *Mari aër contĭnens est.* Cic.

To these add many other adjectives of various significations; as, *obnoxius, subjectus, supplex, credŭlus, absurdus, decōrus, deformis, præsto,* indecl. at hand, *secundus,* &c.—particularly

* (85) Passive Participles, and Verbal Adjectives in Bilis govern the Dative; as,

Amandus or *amabĭlis omnĭbus,*	To be loved by all men.

So *Mors est terrĭbilis malis; Optabĭlis omnĭbus pax; Adhibenda est nobis diligentia.* Cic. *Semel omnĭbus calcanda est via lethi.* Hor. *Bella matrĭbus detestāta,* 'Wars hated by mothers.' Hor.

(86) Verbals in dus are often construed with the prep. *a;* as, *Deus est venerandus et colendus a nobis.* Cic. Perfect Participles are usually so; as, *Mors Crassi est a multis deflēta,* rather than *multis deflēta.* Cic. *A te invitātus, rogātus, prodĭtus,* &c. hardly ever *tibi.*

* (87) *Exŏsus Perōsus,* and *Pertæsus,* signifying actively, govern an Accusative; as,

Exosus Trojānos, Virg. *Lucem perōsi,* Virg. *Pertæsus ignaviam suam,* Sueton.

Obs. 1. (88) The dative is properly not governed by adjectives, nor by any other part of speech; but put after them, to express the object to which their signification refers.

The particle *to* in English is often to be supplied; as, *Simĭlis patri*, Like his father, *to* being understood.

Obs. 2. (89) Substantives have likewise sometimes a dative after them; as, *Ille est pater, dux,* or *filius mihi*, He is father, leader, *or* son to me; so, *Præsidium reis, decus amīcis,* &c. Hor. *Exitium pecŏri.* Virg. *Virtutĭbus hostis*, Cic. *Auctor tibi sum*, 'I advise thee.'

Obs. 3. (90) The following adjectives have sometimes the dative after them, and sometimes the genitive: *Affīnis, simĭlis, commūnis, par, proprius, finitĭmus, fidus, contermĭnus, superstes, conscius, æquālis, contrarius,* and *adversus;* as, *Simĭlis tibi*, or *tui; Superstes patri*, or *patris; Conscius facinŏri*, or *facinŏris*. *Conscius* and some others frequently govern both the genitive and dative; as, *Mens sibi conscia recti.* We say, *Simĭles, dissimĭles, pares, dispăres, æquāles, commūnes, inter se: Par* and *commūnis cum alĭquo. Civĭtas secum ipsa discors; discordes ad alia.* Liv.

Obs. 4. (91) Adjectives signifying usefulness, or fitness, and the contrary, have after them the dative or the accusative with a preposition; as,

Utĭlis, inutĭlis, aptus, ineptus, natus, commodus, vehemens, accommodātus, idoneus, habĭlis, inhabĭlis, opportūnus, conveniens, &c. *alĭcui rei*, or *ad alĭquid*. Many other adjectives governing the dative are likewise construed with prepositions; as, *attentus quæsĭtis*, Hor. *Attentus ad rem.* Ter.

Obs. 5. (92) Of adjectives which denote friendship or hatred, or any other affection of the mind towards any one. I. Some are usually construed with the dative only; as, *Affabĭlis, arrŏgans, asper, carus, diffĭcĭlis, fidēlis, invīsus, irātus, offensus, suspectus,* ALICUI. II. Some with the preposition IN and the accusative; as, *Acerbus, animātus, benefĭcus, gratiōsus, injuriōsus, liberālis, mendax, misericors, officiōsus, pius, impius, prolixus, sevērus, sordĭdus, torvus, vehĕmens,* IN ALIQUEM. III. Some either with the dative, or with the accus. and the preposition IN, ERGA, *or* ADVERSUS, going before; as, *Contŭmax, criminōsus, durus, exitiabĭlis, gravis, hospitālis, implacabĭlis,* (and perhaps also *inexorabĭlis* and *intolerabĭlis*) *inīquus, sævus,* ALICUI or IN ALIQUEM. *Benevŏlus, benignus, molestus,* ALICUI or ERGA ALIQUEM. *Mitis, comis;* IN or ERGA ALIQUEM and ALICUI. *Pervĭcax* ADVERSUS ALIQUEM. *Crudēlis*, IN ALIQUEM, seldom ALICUI. *Amīcus, æmŭlus, infensus, infestus,* ALICUI, *seldom* IN ALIQUEM. *Gratus* ALICUI, or IN, ERGA, ADVERSUS ALIQUEM. We say *aliēnus alĭcui* or *alicujus;* but oftener *ab alĭquo*, and sometimes *alĭquo* without the preposition.

(93) *AUDIENS* is construed with two datives; as, *Regi dicto audiens erat*, he was obedient to the king; not *regis; Dicto audiens fuit jussis magistratuum.* Nep. *Nobis dicto audientes sunt,* not *dictis.* Cic.

Obs. 6. (94) Adjectives signifying motion or tendency to a thing,

have usually after them the accusative with the preposition *ad* or *in*, seldom the dative; as,

Pronus, propensus, proclīvis, celer, tardus, piger, &c. ad iram, or *in iram*.

Obs. 7. (95) *Propior* and *proxĭmus*, in imitation of their primitive *prope*, often govern the accusative; as, *Proprior montem*, scil. *ad*. Sall. *Proxĭmus finem*. Liv.

Obs. 8. (96) *IDEM* sometimes has the dative, chiefly in the poets; as, *Invītum qui servat, idem facit occidenti*. Hor. *Jupĭter omnĭbus idem*. Virg. *Eădem illis censēmus*. Cic. But in prose we commonly find, *idem, qui, et, ac, atque*, and also *ut, cum*; as, *Peripatetĭci, quondam iidem erant qui Academĭci*. Cic. *Est anĭmus erga te, idem ac fuit*. Ter. *Diānam et Lunam eandem esse putant*. Cic. *Idem faciunt, ut*, &c. *In eōdem loco mecum*. Cic. But it would be improper to say of the same person or thing under different names, *idem cum*; as, *Luna eădem est cum Diāna*.

We likewise say, *alius ac, atque*, or *et*; and sometimes *simĭlis* and *par*.

3. *Adjectives governing the Ablative.*

XIII. (97) These adjectives, *dignus, indignus, contentus, prædĭtus, captus, and fretus;* also *natus, satus, ortus, edĭtus*, and the like, govern the ablative; as,

Dignus honōre,	Worthy of honour.	*Fretus virĭbus,*	Trusting to his strength.
Contentus parvo,	Content with little.		
Præditus virtūte,	Endued with virtue.	*Ortus regĭbus,*	Descended of kings.
Captus ocŭlis,	Blind.		

So *generātus, creātus, prognātus, oriundus, procreātus regĭbus.*

Obs. 1. (98) The ablative after these adjectives is governed by some preposition understood; as, *Contentus parvo*, scil. *cum; Fretus virĭbus*, scil. *in*, &c. Sometimes the preposition is expressed; as, *Ortus ex concubīna*. Sallust. *Edĭtus de nymphâ*. Ovid. and *extorris*.

* Obs. 2. (99) *Dignus, indignus, contentus*, and *extorris* have sometimes the Genitive after them; as, *carmĭna digna deæ*, Ovid. *Indignus avōrum*, Virg. *Augusti clavi contentus*, Paterc. *Extorris regni*, Stat.

* (100) *Macte*, the vocative of the adjective *mactus*, (that is, *magis auctus*, 'more increased,') and, by an Atticism, put for the nominative, also governs an Ablative. It was anciently used in the nominative: afterwards the vocative came into general use from its denoting a wish for a person's success, and having the force of a prayer that he might be encouraged to proceed in his virtuous course. Thus, *jubērem macte virtute esse*, Liv. 'I should wish thee success in thy valour.' It is also followed by a Genitive; as, *macte esto virtutis*, 'increase in merit,' 'go on and prosper.' When used in the plural it admits only the ablative; as, *Macti virtute milites Romani este*, Liv. It is also used without a case; as, *macte!* Cic. 'O excellent!'

4. *Adjectives governing the Genitive or Ablative.*

XIV. (101) Adjectives of plenty or want govern the genitive or ablative; as,

Plenus iræ or *irâ*, Full of anger, *Inops ratiōnis* or *ratiōne*, Void of reason.

So *Non inŏpes tempŏris, sed prodĭgi sumus.* Sen. *Lentŭlus non verbis inops.* Cic. *Dei plena sunt omnia.* Cic. *Maxĭma quæque domus servis est plena superbis.* Juv. *Res est solicĭti plena timōris amor.* Ovid. *Amor et melle et felle est fœcundissĭmus.* Plaut. *Fœcunda virōrum paupertas fugĭtur.* Lucan. *Omnium consiliōrum ejus partĭceps.* Curt. *Homo ratiōne partĭceps.* Cic. *Nihil insidiis vacuum.* Id. *Vacuas cædis habēte manus.* Ovid.

(102) Some of these adjectives are construed, 1. with the genitive only; as, *Benignus, exsors, impos, impŏtens, irrĭtus, liberālis, munifĭcus, prælargus.*

2. (103) With the ablative only; *Beātus, differtus, frugĭfer, mutĭlus, tentus, distentus, tumĭdus, turgĭdus.*

3. (104) With the genitive more frequently; *Compos, consors, egēnus, exhæres, expers, fertĭlis, indĭgus, parcus, pauper, prodĭgus, sterĭlis.*

4. (105) With the ablative more frequently; *Abundans, cassus, extorris, fœtus, frequens, gravis, gravĭdus, jejūnus, liber, locuples, nudus, oneratus, onustus, orbus, pollens, solūtus, truncus, viduus,* and *captus.*

5. (106) With both promiscuously; *Copiōsus, dives, fœcundus ferax, immūnis, inānis, inops, largus, modĭcus, immodĭcus, nimius, opulentus, plenus, potens, refertus, satur, vacuus, uber.*

6. (107) With a preposition; as, *Copiōsus, firmus, parātus, imparātus, inops, instructus, a re alĭquâ*; for *quod ad rem alĭquam attĭnet,* in or with respect to any thing. *Extorris ab solo patrio,* banished; *Orba ab optimatĭbus concio.* Liv. So *pauper, tenuis, fœcundus, modĭcus, parcus, in re alĭquâ. Immūnis, inānis, liber, nudus, solūtus, vacuus, a re alĭquâ. Potens ad rem,* and *in re.*

III. THE GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

§ 1. VERBS GOVERNING ONLY ONE CASE.

1. *Verbs which govern the Genitive.*

XV. (108) *Sum,* when it signifies possession, property, or duty, governs the genitive;* as,

---

* *Sum* never *signifies* possession, property, or duty. The rule would be much better thus,

[*Est* takes a Genitive after it when the Latin word signifying *Possession, Property, Duty, Custom,* or the like, is understood between them.]

Est regis punīre rebelles, 'It belongs to the king to punish rebels.' *Milĭtum est suo duci parēre*, 'It is the duty of soldiers to obey their general.'

* (109) To this rule may be referred the following and similar expressions. *Suadēre princĭpi quod oporteat, multi laboris* (*est*.) Tac. *Grates persolvĕre dignas, Non opis est nostræ*. Virg. *Est hoc Gallĭcæ consuetudĭnis*. Cæs. *Moris antiqui fuit*. Plin. *Est moris*, 'it is usual or customary.' Sometimes the preceding word is to be repeated; as, *hæc mulier est* (mulier) *egregiæ formæ*. Nep. *Hoc pecus est* (pecus) *Melibœi*. Virg. To the same rule may be referred a common elliptical form of writing, according to which the participle in *dus* with its substantive is subjoined to the verb *sum*; as, *Quæ res evertendæ reipublicæ solent esse*. Cic. *Regium imperium quod initio conservandæ libertatis*, et *augendæ reipublicæ fuerat*. Sall. Some supply the ellipsis by *instrumentum*, others by *causâ* or *ergo*, &c.

* (110) These neuter nominatives *Meum, Tuum, Suum, Nostrum, Vestrum, Humanum, Romanum*, &c. are excepted; as, *tuum est*, 'it is thy duty.' *Romanum est*, 'it is the part of a Roman.' *Humanum est errāre*.

Obs. 1. (111) These possessive pronouns are used in the neuter gender instead of their substantives, *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri*. Other possessives are also construed in this manner; as, *Est regium, est humānum*, the same with *est regis, est homĭnis*. *Et facĕre et pati fortia, Romānum est*. Liv. ii. 12.

Obs. 2. (112) Here some substantives must be understood; as, *officium, munus, res, negotium, opus*, &c. which are sometimes expressed; as, *Munus est princĭpum; Tuum est hoc munus*. Cic. *Neutĭquam officium libĕri esse homĭnis puto*. Ter. In some cases the preceding substantive may be repeated; as, *Hic liber est* (liber) *fratris*. In like manner, some substantive must be supplied in such expressions as these: *Ea sunt modo gloriōsa, neque patrandi belli*, scil. *causâ* or *facta*. Sall. *Nihil tam æquandæ libertātis est*, for *ad æquandam libertātem pertĭnet*. Liv.

Obs. 3. (113) We say, *Hoc est tuum munus*, or *tui munĕris*; So *mos est* or *fuit*, or *moris*, or *in more*. Cic.

XVI. (114) *Miserĕor, miseresco* and *satăgo* govern the genitive; as,

Miserēre civium tuōrum,	Pity your countrymen.
Satăgit rerum suārum,	He has his hands full at home, *or* has enough to do about his own affairs.

Obs. 1. (115) Several other verbs among the poets govern the genitive by a Greek construction, particularly such as signify some affection of the mind; as, *Ango, decipior, desipio, discrucior, excrucio, fallo* and *fallor, fastidio, invideo, lætor, miror, pendeo, studeo, vereor*; as, *Ne angas te anĭmi*, Plaut. *Labōrum decipĭtur*. Hor. *Discrucior anĭmi*. Ter. *Pendet mihi anĭmus, pendeo anĭmi* vel. *anĭmo*; but we always say, *Pendēmus anĭmis*, not *animōrum*, are in suspense. Cic. *Justitiæ prius mirer*. Virg. In like manner, *Abstineo, desĭno, desisto, quiesco, regno*: likewise, *adipiscor, condīco, credo, frustror, furo, laudo, libĕro, levo, partĭcipo, prohibeo*; as, *Abstinēto irārum; Desĭne querelārum; Regnāvit populōrum*. Hor. *Desistĕre pugnæ*. Virg. *Quarum rerum condixit*. Liv.

(116) But all these verbs are for the most part differently construed; thus, *Angor, desipio, discrucior, fallor, anĭmo. Hoc anĭmum meum excruciat. Fastidio, miror, vereor, alĭquem*, or *alĭquid. Lætor alĭquâ re.* Some of them are joined with the infinitive; or with *quòd, ut, ne,* and the subjunctive.

(117) In like manner we usually say, *Desĭno alĭquid*, and *ab alĭquo*, to give over; *Desisto incepto, de negotio, ab illâ mente; Quiesco a labōre; Regnāre in equitĭbus, oppĭdis*, sc. *in*. Cic. *Per urbes.* Virg. *Adipisci id; Frustrāri in re; Furĕre de alĭquo.* Cic.

Obs. 2. (118) The genitive after verbs, in the same manner as after adjectives, is governed by some substantive understood. This substantive is different according to the different meaning of the verbs; thus, *Misereor fratris*, scil. *causâ; Angor anĭmi*, scil. *dolōre* or *anxietāte.*

2. *Verbs governing the Dative.*

XVII. (119) Any verb may govern the dative in Latin, which has the signs TO or FOR after it in English;* as,

Finis vēnit imperio,	An end has come to the empire. Liv.
Anĭmus redit hostĭbus,	Courage returns to the enemy. Id.
Tibĭ seris, tibi metis,	You sow for yourself, you reap for yourself. Plaut.
Non omnibus dormio,	I do not sleep for all, that is, to please all.

So, *Non nobis solum nati sumus.* Cic. *Multa malè eveniunt bonis.* Id. *Sol lucet etiam scelerātis.* Sen. *Hæret latĕri lethālis arundo.* Virg.

But as the dative after verbs in Latin is not always rendered in English by *to* or *for;* nor are these particles always the sign of the dative in Latin, it will be necessary to be more particular.

1. (120) *Sum* and its compounds govern the dative (except *possum*); as,

Præfuit exercitui,	He commanded the army.
Adfuit precĭbus,	He was present at prayers.

* (121) EST taken for *Habeo*, 'to have,' requires the Dative of the *possessor* and a nominative of the thing *possessed;* as,

Est mihi liber,	A book is to me, *that is*, I have a book.
Sunt mihi libri,	Books are to me, *i. e.* I have books.
Dico libros esse mihi,	I say that I have books.

* This rule might be better expressed thus:

"The Dative follows many verbs in answer to the question, to or for whom, or what? whereunto? for whose enjoyment, advantage, injury? &c., to please whom? for whom? &c."

This is more frequently used than *habeo librum; habeo libros.* In like manner DEEST instead of *careo;* as, *Liber deest mihi,* I want a book; *Libri desunt mihi; Scio libros deesse mihi,* &c.

* (122) To this rule may be added *suppetit, suppeditat,* used in a neuter sense, and *foret,* and the verbs of a contrary signification, *deest, deforet,* and *defit,* used for *careo,* or *non habeo;* as, *Pauper enim non est cui rerum suppetit usus,* Hor. So, *Defuit ars vobis,* Ovid. *Lac mihi non defit,* Virg.

* (123) The dative is often understood; as, *Sit spes fallendi, miscebis sacra profanis,* Hor. that is, *sit spes* TIBI.

II. (124) Verbs compounded with SATIS, BENE, and MALE, govern the dative; as,

Satisfacio, satisdo, benefacio, benedīco, benevŏlo, malefacio, maledīco, tibi, &c.

III. (125) Many verbs compounded with these eleven prepositions, AD, ANTE, CON, IN, INTER, OB, POST, PRÆ, PRO, SUB, and SUPER, govern the dative; as,

1. *Accēdo, accresco, accumbo, acquiesco, adno, adnāto, adequĭto, adhæreo, adsto, adstipŭlor, advolvor, affulgeo, allābor, allabōro, annuo, appareo, applaudo, appropinquo, arrideo, aspīro, assentior, assideo, assisto, assuesco, assurgo.*

2. *Antecello, anteeo, antesto, anteverto.*

3. *Collūdo, concĭno, consŏno, convīvo.*

4. *Incumbo, indormio, indubĭto, inhio, ingemisco, inhæreo, insideo, insideor, insto insisto, insūdo, insulto, invigĭlo, illacrўmo, illūdo, immineo, immorior, immŏror impendeo.*

5. *Intervenio, intermĭco, intercēdo, intercĭdo, interjaceo.*

6. *Obrēpo, obluctor, obtrecto, obstrĕpo, obmurmŭro, occumbo, occurro, occurso, obsto, obsisto, obvenio.*

7. *Postfĕro, posthabeo, postpōno, postpŭto, postcrībo;* with an accusative.

8. *Præcēdo, præcurro, præeo, præsideo, præluceo, præniteo, præsto, prævaleo, præverto.*

9. *Propono, provideo, prospicio.*

10. *Succēdo, succumbo, sufficio, suffrāgor, subcresco, suboleo, subjacio, subrēpo.*

11. *Supervenio, supercurro, supersto.* But most verbs compounded with SUPER govern the accusative.

IV. (126) Verbs govern the dative, which signify,

1. To profit or hurt; as,

Proficio, prosum, placeo, commŏdo, prospicio, caveo, metuo, timeo, consŭlo, for *prospicio.* Likewise, *Noceo, officio, incommŏdo, displiceo, insidior.*

2. To favour or assist, and the contrary; as,

Faveo, gratŭlor, gratifĭcor, grator, ignosco, indulgeo, parco, adŭlor, plaudo, blandior, lenocĭnor, palpor, assentor, subparasītor. Likewise, *Auxilior, adminicŭ-*

lor, subveneo, succurro, patrocĭnor, medeor, medĭcor, opitŭlor. Likewise, *Derŏgo, detrăho, invideo, æmŭlor.*

3. To command and obey, to serve and resist; as,

Impĕro, præcipio, mando; modĕror, for *modum adhibeo.* Likewise, *Pareo, ausculto, obedio, obsĕquor, obtempĕro, morem gĕro, morigĕror, obsecundo.* Likewise, *Famŭlor, servio, inservio, ministro, ancillor.* Likewise, *Repugno, obsto, reluctor, renītor, resisto, refrāgor, adversor.*

4. To threaten and to be angry; as,

Minor, commĭnor, intĕrmĭnor, irascor, succenseo.

5. To trust; as, *Fido, confīdo, credo, diffīdo.*

To these add *Nubo, excello, hæreo, supplĭco, cedo, despēro, opĕror, præstōlor, prævarĭcor; recipio,* to promise; *renuncio; respondeo,* to answer or satisfy; *temdĕro, studeo; vaco,* to apply; *convicior.*

Exc. (127) *Jubeo, juvo, lædo,* and *offendo,* govern the accusative.

Obs. 1. (128) Verbs governing the dative only, are either neuter verbs, or of a neuter signification. Active verbs governing the dative have also an accusative expressed or understood.

Obs. 2. (129) Most verbs governing the dative only have been enumerated, because there are a great many verbs compounded with prepositions, which do not govern the dative, but are otherwise construed; and still more signifying advantage or disadvantage, &c. which govern the accusative; as, *Levo, erĭgo, alo, nutrio, amo, dilĭgo, vexo, crucio, aversor,* &c. *alĭquem,* not *alĭcui.*

* Obs. 3. (130) Very many verbs which govern the dative are variously construed, still preserving the same, or nearly the same significations; as,

Abdicāre: *abdicare* MAGISTRATUM, 'to abdicate the magistracy;' *abdicare se* CONSULATU, Liv. 'to depose one's self from the consulship.'

Acquiescĕre, REI, OF RE, or IN RE, 'to approve of any thing,' 'to be satisfied with any thing.'

Adsuescĕre, 'to be accustomed,' 'to accustom one's self to any thing;' ALICUI, Liv. 1. 19.—AD ALIQUID, Cæs.—*aliqua re,* Liv. 31, 35.

Adjacēre, 'to lie next to,' 'to adjoin.' *Tuscus ager,* ROMANO *adjacet,* Liv. 2. 49. *adjacet mare,* Nep. Timoth.

Adspirāre, 'to favour.' *Adspirat primo fortuna* LABORI, Virg. 2. 385. 'fortune favours the first exertion;' *ad eum,* Cels.

Adhærēre, 'to adhere to any thing;' *alicui,* or *alĭquem,* or *ad aliquem.*

Adflāre, 'to breathe upon;' *rei* or *rem.*

Adferre *vim alicui,* 'to do violence to any one.'

Adsideo, 'to sit by something,' with a Dative, Cic. Planc. 11. with an Accusative, Virg. Æn. 11. 304.

Advolāre, 'to fly up to,' *ei*, or *ad eum*.

Adscribĕre, 'to admit,' 'to enrol as a citizen;' *civitati*, or *in civitatem*, Cic. Arch. 4. or *in civitate*, Ibid.

Advolvi *genibus*, or *genua*, or *ad genua*, 'to fall at one's knees.'

Adversāri, 'To be against,' 'to oppose,' is always followed by a Dative. With an Accusative it occurs in Tacitus, but the best editors substitute *aversari* in all such instances.

Adspergĕre *alicui aliquid*, 'to sprinkle any thing on one.'

Adnāre *navĭbus*, or *naves*, or *ad naves*, 'to swim to the ships.'

Adulor, 'to flatter,' 'to caress.' *Adulāri plebi*, Liv. 3. 69.—*adulari omnes*, Cic. *adulari Neronem*, Tac. Ann.

Allatrāre *alicui*, or *aliquem*, 'to bark at any one.' The Accusative is more usual.

Antecedĕre, 'to excel;' *antecedĕre belluis*, Cic. Off. *antecedĕre eum*, Nep. Alc. 9.

Antecellĕre *alicui* or *aliquem*, 'to excel any one.'

Antepollĕre, 'to excel,' *alicui*, or *aliquem*.

Anteīre, 'to go before,' 'to excel.' *Virtus omnibus rebus anteit*. Plaut. *Anteīre cetĕros*, Cic.

Antestāre *or* antistāre, 'to stand before,' 'to be more eminent,' 'to excel,' *alicui* or *aliquem*.

Antevenīre, 'to come before;' *antevenīre exercitum*, Sall. 'to excel;' *omnĭbus* REBUS *antevenīre*, Plaut.

Antevertĕre, 'to come before;' *miror, ubi*, HUIC *anteverterim*, Terent. 'I wonder how I have come before him.' *Veneno* DAMNATIONEM *antevertit*, 'he anticipated his condemnation by poison.'

Apparēre *consuli*, 'to attend;' *ad solium Jovis*. *Res appāret mihi*.

Appropinquāre, *Brittaniæ*, or *portam*, or *ad portam*.

Circumfundi *alicui*, 'to be put around any thing;' *circumfusa* LATERI *meo turba*, 'the multitude which surrounded my side,' for *turba fusa circum latus meum*. So, *circumjecta multitudine homĭnum totis mœnĭbus*, 'when a multitude of men entirely surrounded the walls,' for *multitudine hominum jacta circum tota mœnia*.

Circumdāre *aliquid alicui rei*, 'to put one thing round another;' *circumdăre aliquid re*, 'to surround one thing with another.'

Congruĕre, 'to agree,' *alicui*, or *cum re aliqua*, or *inter se*.

Confidĕre *rei* or *re*, 'to trust to any thing,' 'to confide in.' Also with *de* when it means about; as, *de salute urbis confidĕre*, Cæs. 'to have confidence about the safety of the city.'

Curāre, 'to take care of,' 'to care for,' is commonly followed by an Accusative; as, *curo hanc* REM. Yet it is also joined to a Dative; as, *Quia tuo* CIBO *curas*, Plaut.

Deficĕre, 'to fail,' commonly with an Accusative; as, *tempus* TE *deficeret*, Cic. 'time would fail thee;' sometimes also the Dative; as, *tela* NOSTRIS *deficĕrent*, Cæs. B. G. 3. 5. 'our weapons failed us.'

Desperāre, 'to despair of any thing,' 'to have no more hope.' SIBI *desperans*, Cæs. 'despairing on his own account.' Also with an Accusative; as, *ut* HONO-

REM *desperasse videatur*, Cic. We find also, *desperare de aliqua re*, Cic. The reason why *despero* governs an Accusative, seems to be, that *Spero* also governs one.

Domināri, 'to rule over;' *cunctis oris*, Virg. *in Cætera animalia*, Ovid.

Excellĕre *aliis*, 'to excel others,' or *inter alios*, 'among others,' or *super alios*, 'beyond others.'

Fidĕre *alicui rei*, or *aliqua re*, or *in aliqua re*.

Habitāre *in loco*, 'to dwell in a place;' *locum*, 'to inhabit a place.'

Ignoscĕre *mihi*, or *culpæ meæ*, or *mihi culpam*, 'to pardon me,' or 'pardon my fault.'

Impendĕre *alicui* 'to hang over any one;' or *aliquem*, or *inaliquem*.

Impertīre, 'to impart any thing to any one;' *laudem alicui impertīri*. *Impertīre aliquem oscŭlo*.

Incessit *timor* EI or EUM, 'fear seizes him.'

Illudere, 'to make sport of.' *Illudĕre auctoritati*, Cic. *Illudĕre præcepta*, Ibid. *In nos illudĕre*, Terent.

Insilīre, 'to spring upon,' with a Dative, Ovid; an Accusative, Hor.; and also with *in* and an Accusative, Cæs.

Insultāre, 'to leap upon,' hence 'to insult;' *insultare solo*, Virg. 'to stamp on the ground.' *Insultare alĭquem*, Sall.

Incumbĕre, 'to fall upon;' *toro; gladium*, or *in gladium*.

Incidĕre, 'to engrave,' *rei*, or *in rem*, or *in re*.

Indulgēre *alicui*, or *id ei*.

Inhiāre, 'to gape after,' 'to desire much;' *inhiāre auro*. *Inhiāre bona ejus*.

Innīti *rei*, or *re*, or *in re*. *Innīti in aliquem*, 'to depend on any one.'

Latet *res mihi*, or *me*, 'the thing is unknown to me.'

Medēri *ei*. Medēri *cupiditātes*.

Medicāri, 'to heal,' used both with the Dative and Accusative; the same as *Medēri* above.

Moderāri, 'to moderate,' 'to govern,' 'to rule,' 'to regulate.' *Moderāri* FORTUNÆ *suæ*, Liv. *gaudium*, Tacit.

Nocēre, 'to hurt,' *ei*, rarely *eum*.

Nubĕre, literally, 'to veil' one's self, as the bride did at the marriage ceremony; hence 'to marry,' always applied to the woman. *Nubere* VIRO. *Nupta est cum illo*, seems properly to mean, 'she is with him as a married woman.'

Occumbĕre *morti* and *mortem*, 'to die.' We also find, Liv. 1. 7. *occumbĕre morte*, 'to sink in death,' where the Ablative is governed by some preposition understood.

Obrepĕre, 'to creep upon,' *ei* or *eum*; also *in animos*; *ad honores*.

Obtrepĕre *auribus*, or *aures*.

Obtrectāre *ei*, or *laudĭbus ejus*, 'to detract from him,' or 'his deserts.'

Obumbrāre, 'to overshadow,' with the Dative or Accusative.

Præcedĕre, 'to go before,' 'to precede;' *præcedĕre agmen*. 'To excel;' *ut vestræ fortunæ meis præcedunt*.

Præcurrĕre, 'to run before,' 'to excel,' with a Dative or Accusative.

Præstāre *alicui* or *aliquem,* 'to excel any one.'

Præstolāri, 'to wait for any one;' *alicui* or *aliquem.* It is also found with the Genitive, *cohortium,* Sisenn. ap. Non.

Pasisci, *alicui,* or *cum aliquo.* *Pasisci vitam ab eo,* Sall.

Procumbĕre, 'to fall upon,' *terræ; genibus ejus; ad genua.*

Temperāre, 'to moderate,' 'to tame;' also, 'to govern,' 'to guide;' *temperare linguæ,* Liv. 'to subdue his tongue.' So, *temperare lacrymis,* 'to moderate his grief:' also, *temperare* IRAS, Virg. 'to moderate anger.'

* Obs. 4. (131) Many verbs when followed by different cases are used with different significations; as,

Æmulāri *aliquem,* 'to imitate any one with emulation,' 'to rival.' *Studia* ALICUJUS *æmulari,* Liv. 1. 18. 'to be the scholar of any one.' But *æmulāri* ALICUI, 'to envy any one,' perhaps 'an envious rivalry,' better expresses the idea. In a word, with the Accusative it seems to be used in a *good* sense, with the Dative in a *bad* one.

Accedo *tibi,* 'I accede or assent to you;' but *hoc tibi accedit ad illud,* 'this comes to you in addition to that.' *Accedĕre* AD ALIQUEM, 'to approach to any one.'

Auscultāre *alicui,* 'to listen to any one;' also, 'to obey any one.' *Auscultare* ALIQUEM, 'to hear any one;' also, 'to obey.'

Cavēre *alicui,* 'to take care of any one's safety;' *Cavēre sibi* AB ALIQUO, 'to take care of one's self against any one.' *Cavēre* ALIQUEM, 'to beware of any one;' *Cavēre* ALIQUID, 'to guard against any thing.'

Consulĕre *tibi,* 'to take care for thee,' (not to give counsel;) *Consulĕre* ALIQUEM, 'to consult any one,' 'to take any one's advice.' *Consulĕre crudeliter,* IN ALIQUEM, 'to proceed cruelly against any one,' Liv. 3. 36. *Consulo* BONI, 'I am satisfied,' or 'pleased therewith.'

Cupio *tibi,* 'I am devoted to thee;' *Cupio* ALIQUID, 'I am desirous after something.'

Deficit *mihi* and *me,* 'it fails me;' *Deficere* AB ALIQUO, 'to revolt from any one;' *Deficĕre* AB AMICITIA, 'to fall off from;' also, *Deficĕre* AD ALIQUEM, Liv. 22. 61, 'to go over to any one;' also, *deficĕre* ALIQUEM, 'to desert any one.'

Dare ALICUI *literas,* 'to give a letter to any one,' that is, 'to carry to another;' *Dare* AD ALIQUEM *literas,* 'to write to any one.'

Facĕre *aliquid,* 'to do any thing;' *quid* HUIC HOMINI *facias?* Cic. 'what will you do with this man?'

Horreo *tibi,* 'I am frightened for thee,' on thy account; *Horreo* ALIQUID, 'I am frightened at any thing.'

Imponĕre *onus* ALICUI, 'to lay a burden on any one;' *Imponĕre* ALICUI, 'to impose upon any one,' 'to cheat.'

Incumbĕre *rei,* 'to lean upon any thing;' *ad aliquem,* 'to bend one's self down to any thing,' 'to exert great labour on any thing;' *Incumbĕre ad rempublicam,* 'to devote one's attention to the state.'

Interest *murus*, 'there is a wall between;' *hoc maxime interest inter*, &c. 'this is the chief difference between,' &c., also with the Dative in this sense. *Interest patris*, 'it is the concern of the father.' *Interesse rei*, 'to be present at a thing.'

Manet *tibi bellum*, 'war remains for thee;' that is, 'thou hast not yet peace,' Liv. 1. 53. *Manet me mors*, 'death awaits me.'

Merēre *sibi aliquid*, 'to merit,' or 'earn something for one's self;' *Merēre equo*, 'to serve on horseback;' *Merere* or *merēri de*, 'to deserve of another;' *bene* or *male*, 'well,' or 'ill.'

Metuo *tibi*, 'I fear for thee,' on thy account; *Metuo* TE, 'I fear thee.'

Peto *mihi*, 'I seek for myself;' *Peto aliquem*, 'I aim at somebody;' *Petere aliquem gladio*, 'to attack any one with a sword;' *Petere locum*, 'to seek a place,' 'to go to.'

Præstare *alicui* or *aliquem*, 'to excel;' *præstare aliquid*, 'to be answerable for something.' EMTORI *damnum præstari oportēre*, 'the loss must be made good to the buyer.' Also, *præstare alicui officia*, 'to render good offices to any one;' *Præstare se virum fortem*, 'to prove one's self a brave man.' *Præstat*, 'it is better.'

Prospicio *alicui*, 'to provide for any one;' *Prospicere aliquid*, 'to foresee any thing.'

Quærēre *sibi aliquid*, 'to seek something for himself;' *quærēre aliquid*, 'to inquire about any thing;' also, *de aliquo*. Sometimes, *quærere de aliquo homine*, or *de aliqua re*, means, 'to institute an inquiry by torture about any person' or 'thing.'

Recipio *tibi*, 'I give you certain assurance,' 'I pledge myself to you;' *recipio in montem*, 'I retire to the mountain.' *Recipio res amissas*, 'I recover my lost goods;' *recipĕre periculum in se*, 'to take the risk on himself.'

Renuntiāre *rei* 'to renounce any thing,' 'to resign,' 'to give up;' *renuntiāre vitiis*, 'to renounce one's faults;' *Renuntiāre aliquem consulem*, 'to proclaim any one as a consul.'

Respondēre *alicui*, 'to answer any one;' *rei*, 'to correspond to any thing;' *exitus non respondet spei*, 'the event does not correspond to expectation.'

Solvo *tibi pecuniam*, 'I pay money to thee;' *solvo te*, 'I free thee;' *solvere naves*, 'to set sail.'

Timeo *tibi*, 'I fear for you;' *te*, 'I fear thee.'

Vacāre, properly, 'to be at leisure;' also, 'to be without something;' *vacare* A RE, or RE, 'to be free from a thing.' But *vacare rei*, 'to turn one's whole attention to a thing,' 'to apply to a thing,' properly, 'to be *free from* all other affairs for that one;' *vacare literis*, 'to be devoted to letters.'

Valēre *rei*, 'to be serviceable.' This construction is rare; the more usual is with the ablative; *valēre eloquentia*, 'to be effective by eloquence,' 'to be strong in eloquence.' *Valēre a pecunia*, Plaut. 'to be well on the side of money,' is said jestingly.

*(132) To this rule are referred many verbs which, among the poets chiefly, are construed with a Dative, after the manner of the Greeks, but which in prose are commonly found with the

Ablative and a Preposition, according to Latin construction; as Verbs of—

1. CONTENDING; as, *contendo, certo, bello, luctor, pugno,* ALICUI for *cum aliquo. Solus tibi certet, Amyntas,* Virg. We also find *Contendere contra* or *adversus aliquem,* Cic. *Certare inter se,* Cic. *Pugnare contra* or *adversus,* Quinct. *inter se,* Curt. *in aliquem,* Liv.

2. DIFFERING; as, *distare, dissentīre, discrepare, dissidere, differre* REI ALICUI, for *a re aliqua.* We also find *distant, dissentiunt, discrepant, dissident, differunt, inter se. Distare metâ,* Ovid. *Dissentire, dissidere cum aliquo.*

3. COMING TOGETHER; as, *cœo, concurro, concumbo, misceo. Placidis coëant immitia,* Hor. *Concurrĕre hosti,* Ovid. *Concubuisse deæ,* Propert. *Mista Deo mulier,* Virg. instead of *cum placidis, cum hoste,* &c. We also find *Coire, concurrĕre, inter se,* Virg. and Liv. *Miscere vinum aquæ,* or *cum aquâ,* or *aquâ.*

4. KEEPING, or DRIVING AWAY; as, *Arcebis gravido pecori,* Virg. *Solstitium pecori defendite,* Virg. But these belong to verbs of taking away, which govern two cases, by Rule 25.

5. PASSIVE VERBS; as, *Non intelligor ulli,* Ovid. *for ab ullo. Neque cernitur ulli,* Virg.

Obs. 5. (133) Verbs signifying *Motion* or *Tendency* to a thing, are construed with the preposition *ad;* as,

Eo, vado, curro, propĕro, festīno, pergo, fugio, tendo, vergo, inclīno, &c. *ad locum, rem,* or *homĭnem.* Sometimes, however, in the poets, they are construed with the dative; as, *It clamor cœlo,* for *ad cœlum.* Virg.

* (134) The Datives *Mihi, Tibi, Sibi, Nobis, Vobis,* are very often added to verbs in a redundant manner, particularly in confidential speeches, letters, &c. This is the case in Greek, in English, and probably in all languages. E. g. *Fur* MIHI *es,* Plaut, 'to me, (that is, in my opinion) thou art a thief.' *An ille* MIHI *liber, cui mulier imperat,* 'is he *to me* a freeman,' that is, 'can I think him a freeman whom a woman commands.' These pronouns, though generally considered redundant, have usually a certain reference to the circumstances, or at least denote a participation in them by the person referred to in the Dative.

3. *Verbs governing the Accusative.*

XVIII. (135) A verb signifying actively governs the accusative; as,

Ama Deum, Love God *Reverēre parentes,* Reverence your parents.

* Obs. 1. (136) Neuter Verbs also govern the Accusative, when the noun after them has a signification similar to their own, or when the noun is of the same origin as the verb; as,

Vivĕre vitam, Ire iter, or *viam ; Pugnāre pugnam, Curĕre cursum ; Ludĕre ludum, Sequi sectam.* Yet generally an adjective, an adjective pronoun, or participle, is added to this substantive; as, *pugnare pugnam acerrĭmam.* So in English we say, 'he died the death of a hero;' 'I have fought the good fight;' 'Many live a happy life.' Many of these expressions are usual with the best writers; as, *Juravi verissimum jusjurandum.* 'I swore the truest oath.' Some suppose that these accusatives are governed by some preposition understood, but there is no evidence of this, and the expressions must be considered as belonging to the idioms of the language.

* (137) Sometimes a Preposition may be easily understood; as, *propter, per,* or *ad.* E. g. *Doleo casum tuum,* that is, *propter :* so, *horrēre aliquid,* sc. *propter* or *ob :* so also *ardēre aliquem,* 'to be inflamed with love for,' 'to love passionately,' is probably for *propter aliquem : Formosum pastor Corydon ardebat Alexin :* so, *desperire aliquam,* 'to love one desperately,' 'to die in love for one.'—*Stygias juravimus undas,* sc. *per Stygias,* Ovid. *Decurrĕre vitam,* sc. *per.* So, *pasci sylvas.* Virg. 'to be pastured through woods;' i. e. 'they feed on.' *Ire exsequias,* sc. *ad* 'to go to a funeral.'

* (138) But sometimes Prepositions cannot be readily understood. The simplest examples are those where *id, quid,* and similar pronouns are joined to a verb; as, *hoc dubito,* 'I doubt this,' for *de hac re.* Perhaps in such cases *ad,* 'as to,' is the most proper preposition to supply; for *quoad,* mentioned by some, is not a preposition. Virg. Georg. 3. 421. *sĭbila colla tumentem,* (for the ablative *sibilo collo.*) properly, 'as to its hissing neck,' *ad* or *quod attinet ad* understood. So *peccare aliquid,* Cic. Particularly to these cases belong those verbs which signify 'to taste of,' 'to smell of;' as, *redolere vinum,* 'to smell of wine.' *Nihil oleant,* Cic. 'they smell of nothing.' *Gorgonius olet hircum,* Hor. So, *olēre crocum,* Cic. To these seems to belong the formula *magnam partem,* 'a great part,' *maximam partem,* 'the greatest part;' as, *libros meos* MAGNAM PARTEM *amisi,* 'I have lost a great part of my books. After *Clamo, Crepo, Queror, Festino,* the Accusative is remarkable, since *aliquid clamare, &c.* seem to stand for *aliquid dicere clamando, &c.* Under this head we may place the singular expression, *Bacchanalia vivunt,* for *vivunt modo Bacchanalium,* or *vivendo Bacchanalia exprimunt.*

(139) Sometimes, instead of the accusative, neuter verbs have an ablative; as, *Ire itinĕre , dolēre dolōre, vicem ejus ; gaudēre gaudio ; mori* or *obīre morte ; vivĕre vitâ ; ardet virgĭne.* Horat. *Ludĕre aleam, or -â ; manāre, pluĕre, rorāre, stillāre, sudāre, alĭquid* or *alĭquo. Erubescĕre jura.* Virg. *origĭne.* Tacit. *equo vehi.* Curt.

Obs. 2. (140) Several verbs are used both in an active and neuter sense; as,

Abhorrēre faman, *to dread infamy.* Liv. a litĭbus: ab uxōre ducendâ. *to be averse from.* Id. a meis morĭbus abhorret, *is inconsistent with.* Cic.
Abolēre monumenta viri, *to abolish.* Virg. illis cladis Caudinæ nondum memoria abolevĕrat, *was not effaced from, they had not forgotten.* Liv.
Adolēre penātes, *to burn, to sacrifice to.* Virg. Ætas adolēvit; adolēvit ad ætātem. Plaut.
Declināre ictum, *to avoid ;* loco; agmen alĭquo, *to remove.*
Degenerāre anĭmos, *to weaken ;* patri, *to degenerate from ;* a virtūte majōrum.
Durāre adolescentes labōre, *to harden?* Res durat ad breve tempus, *endures ;* In ædĭbus durāre nequeo, *stay* or *remain.* Plaut.
Inclināre culpam in alĭquem. *to lay ;* Hos ut sequar, inclīnat anĭmus, *inclines ;* acies inclīnat, *or* inclinātur, *gives away.*
Laborāre arma, *to forge ;* morbo, a do-

lōre, e renĭbus, *to be ill;* de re alĭquâ, *to be concerned.*
Morāri iter, *to stop;* in urbe, *to stay;* Hoc nihil moror, *I do not mind.*
Properāre pecuniam hærēdi. *Hor.* in orbem; ad unam sedem. *Ov.*
Quadrāre acervum, *to square.* Hor. alĭquid ad normam; alĭcui, in aliquem, ad multa, *to fit.*
Suppeditāre copiam dicendi, *to furnish;* Sumptus illi, *or* illi sumptĭbus. *Ter.* suppedĭtat æratio, *is afforded;* Manubiæ in fundamenta vix suppeditârunt, *were sufficient.* Liv.

Obs. 3. (141) These accusatives, *hoc, id, quid, alĭquid, quicquid, nihil, idem, illud, tantum, quantum, multa, pauca,* &c. are often joined with neuter verbs, having the prepositions *circa* or *propter* understood; as, *Id lacrŭmat, Id succenset.* Ter. *Quid rides? quid clamas?* Terent.

Obs. 4. (142) The accusative is often understood; *Tum prora avertit,* sc. *se.* Virg. *Flumĭna præcipĭtant,* sc. *se.* Id. *Quòcumque intendĕrat,* sc. *se,* turned or directed himself. Sall. *Obiit,* sc. *mortem.* Ter. *Cum faciam vitŭlâ,* sc. *sacra.* Virg. Or its place supplied by an infinitive or part of a sentence; as, *Reddes dulce loqui, reddes ridēre decōrum;* for *dulcem sermōnem, decōrum risum.* Hor.

XIX. (143) *Recordor, memĭni, reminiscor,* and *obliviscor,* govern the accusative or genitive; as,

Recordor lectiōnis, or *lectiōnem,*	I remember the lesson.
Obliviscor injuriæ or *injuriam,*	I forget an injury.

Obs. 1. (144) These verbs are often construed with the infinitive or some part of a sentence; as, *Memĭni vidēre virgĭnem.* Ter. *Oblītus est, quid paulo ante posuisset.* Cic.

Obs. 2. (145) *Memĭni,* when it signifies to *make mention,* is joined with the genitive, or the ablative with the preposition *de;* as, *Memĭni alicujus,* or *de alĭquo.* So, *recordor,* when it signifies *to recollect;* as, *Velim scire ecquid, de te recordēre.* Cic.

* (146) The phrase *Venit mihi in mentem,* denoting remembrance, is variously construed; as, *Venit mihi in mentem hæc res, hujus rei, de hâc re. Mihi solet venire in mentem illius tempŏris.* Cic. *In mentem venit de speculo.*

4. *Verbs governing the Ablative.*

XX. (147) Verbs of plenty and scarceness for the most part govern the ablative; as,

Abundat divitiis,	He abounds in riches,
Caret omni culpâ,	He has no fault.

Verbs of plenty are *Abundo, affluo, exubĕro, redundo, floreo, suppedĭto, scateo,* &c.; of want, *Careo, egeo, indĭgeo, vaco, deficior, destituor,* &c.

* Obs. 1. (148) *Egeo* and *Indigeo* frequently govern the Genitive; as, *egeo consilii,* Cic. *eget æris,* 'he needs money.' *Non tam artis indigent, quam labōris,* Cic. *Careo* also is used with a Genitive; as, *carendum tui,* Terent. Also, *scateo* and *abundo;* as, *terra scatet ferarum,* Lucr. *Abundans* with a Genitive in

Virg. Ecl. 2. 20. We also find *careo, egeo, indigeo, scateo,* with pronouns of the neuter gender; as, *id, quod, &c. nec quidquam eges,* Plaut. So, ID *tuus scatet animus,* Plaut. for *ea re.*

Obs. 2. (149) The ablative after these verbs is governed by some preposition understood; and sometimes we find it expressed: as, *Vacat a culpâ,* He is free from fault. Liv.

XXI. (150) *Utor, abūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor,* govern the ablative; as,

Utĭtur fraude, He uses deceit. *Abutĭtur libris,* He abuses books.

* (151) To these add, *gaudeo, creor, nascor, fido, vivo, victito, consta; labōro,* 'to be ill;' *pascor, epulor, nitor, innitor, glorior, lætor, delector, dignor, exulto, sto, &c.*; as, *Gaudere bono,* Cic. *Fortes creantur fortibus,* Hor. *Fluminibus salices nascuntur,* Virg. *Fidere prudentiâ,* Cic. *Piscibus vivĕre existimantur,* Cæs. *Ficis victitamus,* Plaut. *Mente vix constat,* Cic. *Laborāre podăgra,* Mart. *Cæde pascitur.* Ovid. *Filio nitĭtur,* Cic. *Gloriari nominibus,* Cic. *Lætor tuâ dignitate,* Cic. *Delectāri re,* Cic. *Me dignor honore,* Virg. *Stare promissis,* Cic. 'to abide by one's promises.' Some, led away by our idiom, according to which we say, "To stand *to* an agreement," have supposed that it is the Dative which follows *Sto*: but this is not so, as might be shown by numerous examples.

Obs. 1. (152) *Potior* often governs the genitive; as, *Potīri urbis.* Sall. And we always say, *Potīri rerum,* to possess the chief command, never *rebus; imperio* being understood.

Obs. 2. (153) *Potior, fungor, vescor, epŭlor,* and *pascor,* sometimes have an accusative; as, *Potīri urbem.* Cic. *Officia fungi.* Ter. *Munĕra fungi.* Tac. *Pascuntur silvas.* Virg. And in ancient writers *utor, abūtor,* and *fruor;* as, *Uti consilium.* Plaut. *Opĕram abutĭtur.* Ter. *Depasco* and *depascor* always take an accusative; as, *Depascĭtur artus,* Virg.

§ 2. VERBS GOVERNING TWO CASES.

1. *Verbs governing two Datives.*

XXII. (154) *Sum* used instead of *affĕro* (*to bring*) governs two datives, the one of a person, and the other a thing;* as,

Est mihi voluptāti, It is, *or* brings, a pleasure to me.

---

* This rule would be better expressed thus:

The verb *Est,* when it may be construed 'to redound to,' 'to bring,' 'to be conducive,' 'to serve for,' governs two Datives, &c.

(155) **Two datives are also put after *habeo, do, verto, relinquo, venio, tribuo, fore, duco,* and some others; as,**

Ducĭtur honōri tibi, It is reckoned an honour to you. *Id vertĭtur mihi vitio,* I am blamed for that. So, *Misit mihi munĕri; Dedit mihi dono; Habet sibi laudi; Venīre, occurrĕre auxilio alĭcui.* Liv.

Obs. 1. (156) Instead of the dative we often use the nominative, or the accusative; as, *Est exitium pecŏri* for *exitio; Dare alĭquid alĭcui donum,* or *dono; Dare filiam ei nuptam,* or *nuptui.* When *dare* and other active verbs have two datives after them, they likewise govern an accusative either expressed or understood; as, *Dare crimĭni ei,* sc. *id.*

Obs. 2. (157) The dative of the person is often to be supplied; as, *Est exemplo, indicio, præsidio, usui,* &c. scil. *mihi, alĭcui, homĭnĭbus,* or some such word. So, *ponĕre, opponĕre pignŏri,* sc. *alĭcui,* to pledge. *Canĕre receptui,* sc. *suis milĭtĭbus,* to sound a retreat; *Habēre curæ quæstui, odio, voluptāti, religiōni, studio, ludibrio, despicatui,* &c. sc. *sibi.*

Obs. 3. (158) To this rule belong forms of naming; as, *Est mihi nomen Alexandro,* my name is Alexander; or with the nominative, *Est mihi nomen Alexander;* or more rarely with the genitive, *Est mihi nomen Alexandri.*

2. *Verbs governing the Accusative and the Genitive.*

XXIII. (159) Verbs of accusing, comdemning, acquitting, and admonishing, govern the accusative of a person with the genitive of a thing; as,

Arguit me furti,	He accuses me of theft.
Meipsum inertiæ condemno,	I condemn myself of laziness.
Illum homicidii absolvunt,	They acquit him of manslaughter.
Monet me officii,	He admonishes me of my duty.

Verbs of accusing are, *Accūso, ago, appello, arcesso, inquīro, capto, increpo, arguo, defĕro, insimŭlo, postŭlo, allĭgo, astringo, urgeo, incuso, interrogo, compello.* Of condemning, *damno, convinco, prehendo, judico, plector, condemno, infāmo, noto.* Of acquitting, *absolvo, solvo, libĕro, purgo.* Of admonishing, *moneo, admoneo, commonefacio.*

Obs. 1. (160) Verbs of accusing and admonishing, instead of the genitive, frequently have after them an ablative, with the preposition *de;* as, *Monēre alĭquem officii,* or *de officio; Accusāre alĭquem furti,* or *de furto. De vi condemnāti sunt.* Cic.

* (161) The crime or punishment is sometimes put in the Ablative without a preposition being expressed, after *absolvo, libero, damno, condemno,* &c.; as, *Consulem regni suspicione absolverunt,* Liv. *Damnabis tu votis,* Virg. *Crimen quo argui posset,* Nep. *Tenēri pœnā* Cic. We also find *Damnari voti,* which signifies, 'to have gained one's wish;' properly, 'to be condemned to the discharge of

the vow which he had made for the prosperous issue of his undertaking,' which is a sign that he had gained his wish. Such a person is said to be *reus voti*. Virg. Æn. 5. 237.

Obs. 2. (162) *Crimen* and *caput* are put either in the genitive or ablative; but in the ablative usually without a preposition; as, *Damnāre, postulāre, absolvĕre, eum crimĭnis*, or *capĭtis*; and *crimĭne*, or *capĭte*; also *Absolvo me peccāto*. Liv. And we always say, *Plectĕre, punīre alĭquem capĭte*, and not *capĭtis*, to punish one capitally, or with death.

Obs. 3. (163) Many verbs of accusing, &c. are not construed with the acc. of a person, and the gen. of a thing, but the contrary; thus we say, *Culpo, reprehendo, taxo, tradūco, vitupĕro, calumnior, crimĭnor, excūso, &c. avaritiam alicujus*, and not *alĭquem avaritiæ*. We sometimes also find *accūso, incūso*, &c. construed in this manner; as, *Accusāre inertiam adolescentium*, for *adolescentes inertiæ*. Cic. *Culpam arguo*. Liv. We say, *Agĕre cum alĭquo furti*, rather than *alĭquem*, to accuse one of theft. Cic.

Obs. 4. (164) Verbs of accusing and admonishing sometimes govern two accusatives, when joined with *hoc, illud, istud, id, unum, multa*, &c. as, *Moneo, accūso, te illud*. We seldom find, however, *Errōrem te moneo*, but *errōris* or *de errōre*; except in old writers, as Plautus.

XXIV. (165) Verbs of valuing, with the accusative, govern such genitives as these, *magni, parvi, nihĭli*; as,

Æstĭmo te magni, I value you much.

(166) Verbs of valuing are, *Æstĭmo, existĭmo, duco, facio, habeo, pendo, puto, taxo*. They govern several other genitives; as, *tanti, quanti, pluris, majōris, minōris, minĭmi, plurĭmi, maxĭmi, nauci, pili, assis, nihĭli, teruncii, hujus, flocci, pensi*.

Obs. 1. (167) *Æstĭmo* sometimes governs the ablative; as, *Æstĭmo te magno, permagno, parvo*, scil. *pretio*: and also *nihĭlo*. We likewise say, *Pro nihĭlo habeo, puto, duco*.

Obs. 2. (168) *Æqui and boni* are put in the genitive after *facio* and *consŭlo*; as, *Hoc consŭlo boni, æqui bonīque facio*, I take this in good part.

Obs. 3. (169) The genitive after all these verbs is governed by some substantive understood; as *Arguĕre alĭquem furti*, scil. *de crimĭne furti*: *Æstĭmo rem magni*, scil. *pretii*, or *pro re magni pretii*; *Consŭlo boni*, i. e. *statuo* or *censeo esse, factum*, or *munus boni viri*, or *anĭmi*; *Monēre alĭquem officii*, i. e. *officii, causâ*, or *de re* or *negotio officii*.

3. *Verbs governing the Accusative and the Dative.*

XXV. (170) Verbs of comparing, giving, declaring, and taking away, govern the accusative and dative; as,

Compăro Virgilium Homēro,	I compare Virgil to Homer.
Suum cuique tribuĭto,	Give every one his own.
Narras fabŭlam surdo,	You tell a story to a deaf man.
Eripuit me morti,	He rescued me from death.

(171) Or,—ANY ACTIVE VERB MAY GOVERN THE ACCUSATIVE AND THE DATIVE, (*when, together with the object of the action, we express the person or thing with relation to which it is exerted;*) as,

Legam lectiōnem tibi, I will read the lesson to you. *Emit librum mihi,* He bought a book for me. *Sic vos non vobis fertis arātra boves.* Virg. *Paupertas sæpe suadet mala hominĭbus,* advises men to do bad things. Plaut. *Imperāre pecuniam, frumentum, naves, arma aliquĭbus,* to order them to furnish. Cæs.

Obs. 1. (172) Verbs of comparing and taking away, together with some others, are often construed with a preposition; as, *Comparāre unam rem cum aliâ,* and *ad aliam,* or *comparāre res inter se: Eripuit me morti, morte, a* or *ex morte: Mittĕre epistŏlam alĭcui,* or *ad alĭquem: Intendĕre telum alĭcui,* or *in alĭquem: Incidĕre æri, in æs,* or *in ære;* and so in many others.

Obs. 2. (173) Several verbs governing the dative and accusative, are construed differently; as,

Circumdăre mœnia oppĭdo, or *oppĭdum, mœnĭbus,* to surround a city with walls.

Intercludĕre commeātum alĭcui, or *alĭquem commeātu,* to incercept one's provisions.

Donāre, prohibēre rem alĭcui, or *alĭquem re,* to give one a present, to hinder one from a thing.

Mactāre hostiam Deo, or *Deum hostiâ,* to sacrifice.

Impertīre salūtem alĭcui, or *alĭquem salūte,* to salute one.

Interdixit Galliam Romānis, or *Romānos Galliâ,* he debarred the Romans from Gaul.

Induĕre, exuĕre vestem sibi, or *se veste,* to put on, to put off one's clothes.

Levāre dolōrem alĭcui; dolōrem alicujus; alĭquem dolōre, to ease one's distress.

Mināri alĭquid alĭcui, or sometimes *alĭcui alĭquo,* Cic. to threaten one with any thing; *Cæsări gladio.* Sall.

Gratŭlor tibi hanc rem, hac re, in, pro, and *de hac re,* I congratulate you on this. *Mettus Tullo devictos hostes gratulātur.* Liv.

Restituĕre alĭcui sanitātem, or *alĭquem sanitāti,* to restore to health.

Aspergĕre labem alĭcui, or *alĭquem labe,* to put an affront on one; *aram sanguĭne. Litāre Deum sacris,* and *sacra Deo,* to sacrifice.

Excusāre se alĭcui, and *apud alĭquem, de re; valetudĭnem ei.*

Exprobrāre vitium ei, or *in eo,* to upbraid.

Occupāre pecuniam alĭcui, and *apud alĭquem,* i. e. *pecuniam fœnŏri locāre,* to place at interest. Cic.

Opponĕre se morti, and *ad mortem. Renunciāre id ei,* and *ad eum,* to tell.

Obs. 3. (174) Verbs signifying motion or tendency to a thing, instead of the dative, have an accusative after them, with the preposition *ad;* as,

Porto, fero, lego, -as, præcipĭto, tollo, traho, duco, verto, incĭto, suscĭto; also, *hortor*, and *invīto, voco, provŏco, anĭmo, stimŭlo, conformo, lacesso*; thus, *Ad laudem milĭtes hortātur; Ad prætōrem homĭnem traxit.* Cic. But after several of these verbs, we also find the dative; as, *Inferre Deos Latio*, for *in Latium.* Virg. *Invitāre alĭquem hospitio*, or *in hospitium.* Cic.

Obs. 4. (175) The accusative is sometimes understood; as, *Nubĕre alĭcui*, scil. *se; Cedĕre alĭcui*, scil. *locum; Detrahĕre alĭcui*, scil. *laudem; Ignoscĕre alĭcui*, scil. *culpam.* And in English the particle *to* is often omitted; as, *Dedit mihi librum*, He gave me a book, *for* to me.

4. *Verbs governing two Accusatives.*

XXVI. (176) Verbs of asking and teaching govern two accusatives, the one of a person and the other of a thing; as,

Poscĭmus te pacem,	We beg peace of thee.
Docuit me grammatĭcam,	He taught me grammar.

1. (177) Verbs of asking, which govern two accusatives, are *Rogo, oro, exōro, obsecro, precor, posco, reposco, flagĭto*, &c. Of teaching, *Doceo, edoceo, dedoceo, erudio.*

Obs. 1. (178) *Celo* likewise governs two accusatives; as, *Celāvit me hanc rem*, He concealed this matter from me; or otherwise, *celāvit hanc rem mihi*, or *celāvit me de hac re.*

Obs. 2. (179) Verbs of asking and teaching are often construed with a preposition; as, *Rogāre rem ab alĭquo: Docēre alĭquem de re*, to inform; but we do not say, *docēre alĭquem de grammatĭca*, but *grammatĭcam*, to teach. And we always say with a preposition, *Peto, exĭgo a* or *abs te; Percontor, scitor, sciscĭtor, ex* or *a te* or *te* without the preposition; *Interrŏgo, consulto te de re; Ut facias te obsecro; Exōrat pacem divûm*, for *divos.* Virg. *Instruo, instituo, formo, informo alĭquem artĭbus*, in the abl. without a prep. *Imbuo eum artĭbus, in* or *ab artĭbus.* Also, *instruo ad rem*, or *in re, ignorantiam alicujus. Erudīre alĭquem artes, de* or *in re, ad rem. Formāre ad studium, mentem, studiis, studia ejus.*

Obs. 3. (180) The accusative of the thing is not properly governed by the verb, but by *quod ad* or *secundem* understood.

5. *Verbs governing the Accusative and the Ablative.*

XXVII. (181) Verbs of loading, binding, clothing, depriving, and some others, govern the accusative and the ablative; as,

Onĕrat naves auro,	He loads the ships with gold.

(182) Verbs of loading are, *Onĕro, cumŭlo, premo, opprĭmo, obruo, repleo.* Of unloading, *levo, exonĕro*, &c. Of binding, *astringo, ligo, allĭgo, devincio, impedio,*

irretio, illaqueo, &c. Of loosing, *solvo, exsolvo, libĕro, laxo, expedio,* &c. Of depriving, *privo, nudo, orbo, spolio, fraudo, emungo.* Of clothing, *vestio, amicio, induo, cingo, tego, velo, corōno,* and *calceo.* Of unclothing, *exuo, discingo,* &c.

Obs. 1. (183) The preposition, by which the ablative is governed after these verbs, is sometimes expressed; as, *Solvĕre alĭquem ex catēnis.* Cic. Sometimes the ablative is to be supplied; as, *Complet naves,* sc. *viris,* mans the ship. Virg.

* Obs. 2. (184) *Impleo, compleo,* and *expleo,* sometimes take the genitive; as, *Adolescentem suæ temeritātis implet.* Liv. *Erroris illos et dementiæ complebo.* Plaut. *Animum explêsse juvabit ultricis flammæ.* Virg. And among the more ancient writers, also *saturo* and *obsaturo*; as, *Hæ res vitæ me saturant,* Plaut. *Istius obsaturabere,* Terent. Several vary their construction; as, *induit, exuit se vestibus,* or *vestes sibi.*

* (185) *Muto* governs the Accusative of the thing given in exchange, and the Ablative of that which is taken in exchange; as, *Muto librum pecuniâ.* Sometimes the preposition is expressed; as, *Mutare bellum pro pace,* Sall.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF PASSIVE VERBS.

XXVIII. (186) When a verb in the active voice governs two cases, in the passive it retains the latter case; as,

Accūsor furti,	I am accused of theft.
Virgilius comparātur Homēro,	Virgil is compared to Homer.
Doceor grammatĭcam,	I am taught grammar.
Navis onerātur auro,	The ship is loaded with gold.

So, *Scio homĭnes accusātum iri furti;—Eos ereptum iri morti, morte, a* or *ex morte;——puĕros doctum iri grammatĭcam;——rem celātum iri mihi,* or *me; me celātum iri de re,* &c.

Sometimes the active has three cases, and then the passive has the two last cases; as, *Habētur ludibrio iis.*

* (187) When a verb in the Active voice governs an accusative with any other case, it must be carefully observed that, whatever word is in the Accusative after the Active verb, that word, and no other, must be the Nominative to it in the Passive voice, and the other case remains unchanged. Thus, 'I give you a book,' *Librum tibi do;* passively, *Liber tibi datur.* 'He told me this,' *Hoc mihi dixit;* passively, 'I was told this,' *Hoc mihi dictum est.* 'I present you with a book,' *Dono tibi librum;* passively, *Liber tibi donatur.* This rule is simple, perspicuous, and founded on the best classical authorities—that, whatever is put in the Accusative case, after the Active verb, becomes the Nominative to it, in the Passive voice, while the other case is retained under the government of the verb, by this twenty-eighth rule. Thus, 'I persuade you of this,' *Persuadeo hoc tibi.* Here *the thing* is ex-

pressed in the Accusative, and the *person* in the Dative. The former therefore must be the Nominative to the verb in the Passive voice; as, *hoc tibi persuadetur*, 'you are persuaded of this,' literally, 'this is persuaded to you.'

* (188) But it does not follow that we cannot say, *Ego dicor*, *Ille dicitur*, or *Ille dictus est*. If the person be *He* TO *whom* any thing is said, it must always be expressed in the Dative case, as in the preceding examples. But if the person be *He* OF *whom* any thing is said, it may then be made nominative to the verb. Thus, 'He is said to be a wise man,' *Ille dicitur esse vir sapiens*. Here *Ille* is the subject spoken of, the person *of whom* the assertion is made, not the person *to whom* the thing is told. In like manner, 'I believe you,' *Credo tibi*, that is, 'I give credit to what you say,' in the passive voice, *tibi creditur*, not *tu crederis*. But the latter expression is correct if used to signify, not that credit is given to the words of the person, but that something is believed of him, as the subject of discourse; as, *Tu crederis esse vir bonus*, 'you are believed to be a good man.'

Obs. 1. (189) Passive verbs are commonly construed with the ablative and the preposition *a*; as,

Tu laudāris a me, which is equivalent to *Ego laudo te*. *Virtus diligĭtur a nobis*; *Nos diligĭmus virtūtem*. *Gaudeo meum factum probāri a te*, or *te probāre meum factum*: And so almost all active verbs. Neuter and deponent verbs also admit this preposition; as, *Mare a sole collūcet*. Cic. *Phalăris non a paucis interiit*. Id. So, *Cadĕre ab hoste*; *Cessāre a prœliis*; *Mori ab ense*; *Pati furāri alĭquid ab alĭquo*, &c. Also, *Venīre ab hostĭbus*, to be sold; *Vapulāre ab alĭquo*, *Exulāre ab urbe*. Thus likewise many active verbs; as, *Sumĕre, petĕre, tollĕre, pellĕre, expectāre, emĕre*, &c. *ab alĭquo*.

The prep. is sometimes understood after passive verbs; as, *Desĕror conjŭge*. Ovid. *Desertus suis* sc. *a*. Tacit. *Tabŭlâ distinguĭtur undâ qui navĭgat*. sc. *ab undâ*, is kept from the water by a plank. Juvenal.

The preposition PER is also used in the same sense with A; as, *Per me defensa est respublĭca*, or *a me*; *Per me restitūtus*; *Per me* or *a me factum est*. Cic. But PER commonly marks the instrument, and A the principal efficient cause; as, *Res agĭtur per creditōres, a rege*, sc. *a rege* vel *a legāto ejus*. Cic. Fam. i. 1.

Obs. 2. (190) Passive verbs sometimes govern the dative, especially among the poets; as,

Neque cernĭtur ulli, for *ab ullo*. Virg. *Vix audior ulli*. Ovid. *Scribēris Vario*, for *a Vario*. Hor. *Honesta bonis viris quæruntur*, for *a viris*. Cic. VIDEOR, to seem, always governs the dative; as, *Vidēris mihi*, You seem to me: but we commonly say, *Vidēris a me*, You are seen by me; although not always; as, *Nulla tuārum audīta mihi, neque visu sorōrum*, for *a me*. Virg.

Obs. 3. (191) *Induor, amicior, cingor, accingor*, also *exuor*, and *discingor*, are often construed with the accusative, particularly among the poets, though we do not find them governing two accusatives in the active voice; as *Induĭtur vestem*, or *veste*.

Obs. 4. (192) Neuter verbs are for the most part used impersonally in the passive voice; unless when they are joined with a noun of a similar signification to their own; as, *Pugna, pugnăta est.* Cic. *Bellum milităbĭtur.* Horat. Passive impersonal verbs are most commonly applied either to a multitude, or to an individual taken indefinitely; as, *Statur, fletur, currĭtur, vivĭtur, venītur,* &c. *a vobis, ab illis,* &c. We are standing, weeping, &c. *Bene potest vivi a me,* or *ab alĭquo:* I or any person may live well. *Provīsum est nobis optĭmè a Deo; Reclamātum est ab omnĭbus,* all cried out against it. Cic.

They also govern the same cases as when used personally; as, *Ut majorĭbus natu assurgātur, ut supplĭcum misereātur.* Cic. Except the accusative: for in these phrases, *Itur Athēnas, pugnātum est biduum, dormītur totam noctem,* the accusative is not governed by the verb, but by the prepositions *ad* and *per* understood. We find, however, *Tota mihi dormītur hyems; Noctes vigilantur amāræ; Oceănus raris ab orbe nostro navĭbus adĭtur.* Tacit.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF IMPERSONAL VERBS.

XXIX. (193) An Impersonal Verb governs the dative; as,

Expĕdit reipublĭcæ, It is profitable for the state.

Verbs which in the active voice govern only the dative, are used impersonally in the passive, and likewise govern the dative; as,

Favētur mihi, I am favoured, and not *Ego faveor.* So, *Nocētur mihi, imperātur mihi,* &c. We find, however, *Hæc ego procurāre impĕror, Ego cur invideor,* for *imperātur, invidētur mihi.* Hor.

Obs. 1. (194) These verbs, *Potest, cœpit, incĭpit, desĭnit, debet,* and *solet,* are used impersonally, when joined with impersonal verbs; as,

Non potest credi tibi, You cannot be believed; *Mihi non potest nocēri,* I cannot be hurt; *Negat jucundè posse vivi sine virtūte.* Cic. *Per virtūtem potest iri ad astra. Aliōrum laudi et gloriæ invidēri solet.* The praise and glory of others are accustomed to be envied. Id. *Neque a fortissĭmis infirmissĭmo genĕri resisti posse.* Sallust.

Obs. 2. (195) Various verbs are used both personally and impersonally; as, *Venit in mentem mihi hæc res,* or *de hac re,* or *hujus rei,* scil. *memoria;* This thing came into my mind. *Est curæ mihi hæc res,* or *de hac re. Doleo* or *dolet mihi, id factum esse.*

Obs. 3. (196) The neuter pronoun *it* is always joined with impersonal verbs in English; as, *It rains, it shines;* &c. And in the Latin an infinitive is commonly subjoined to impersonal verbs, or the subjunctive with *ut,* forming a part of a sentence which may be supposed to supply the place of a nominative; as, *Nobis non licet peccāre,* the same with *peccātum; Omnĭbus bonis expĕdit rempublĭcam esse salvam,* i. e. *Salus reipublĭcæ expĕdit omnĭbus bonis.* Cic. *Accĭdit, evĕnit, contĭgit, ut ibi essēmus.* These nominatives, *hoc, illud, id, idem, quod,* &c., are sometimes joined to impersonal verbs; as, *idem mihi licet.* Cic. *Eădem licent.* Catull.

Obs. 4. (197) The dative is often understood; as, *Faciat quod libet*, sc. *sibi*. Ter. *Stat casus renovāre omnes*, sc. *mihi*, I am resolved. Virg.

Exc. I. (198) ***REFERT*** and ***INTEREST*** govern the genitive; as,

Refert patris, It concerns my father. *Intĕrest omnium*, It is the interest of all.

¶ (199) But *mea*, *tua*, *sua*, *nostra*, *vestra*, are put in the accusative plural neuter; as,

Non mea refert, It does not concern me.

Obs. 1. Some think *mea*, *tua*, *sua*, &c. to be in the ablat. sing. fem. We say either *cujus intĕrest*, and *quorum intĕrest*; or *cuja intĕrest*, from *cujus*, *-a*, *-um*.

Obs. 2. (200) *Refert* and *intĕrest* are often joined with these nominatives, *Id*, *hoc*, *illud*, *quid*, *quod*, *nihil*, &c. also with common nouns; and with these genitives, *Tanti*, *quanti*, *magni*, *permagni*, *parvi*, *pluris*; as, *Hoc parvi refert*; *Illud mea magni intĕrest*. Cic. *Usque adeo magni refert studium*. Lucret. *Incessus in gravĭdā refert*. Plin.

(201) They are frequently construed with these adverbs, *Tantum*, *quantum*, *multum*, *plus*, *plurĭmum*, *infinītum*, *parum*, *maxĭmè*, *vehementer*, *minĭmè*, &c. as, *Faciam, quod maxĭmè reipublĭcæ interesse judicābo*. Cic.

(202) Sometimes instead of the genit. they take the accus. with the prep. *ad*; as, *Quid id ad me, aut ad meam rem refert. Persæ quid rerum gerant?* Of what importance is it? &c. Plaut. *Magni ad honōrem nostrum intĕrest*. Cic.; rarely the dative; as, *Dic quid refĕrat intra natūræ fines viventi*, &c. Hor. Sometimes they are placed absolutely; as, *Magnopĕre intĕrest opprĭmi Dolabellam*, it is of great importance. Cic. *Permultum intĕrest, qualis primus adĭtus sit*. Id. *Adeōne est fundāta levĭter fides, ut ubi sim, quam qui sim, magis refĕrat*. Liv. *Plurĭmum enim interĕrit, quibus artĭbus, aut quibus hunc tu morĭbus instituas*. Juv.

Obs. 3. (203) The genitive after *refert* and *intĕrest*, is governed by some substantive understood, with which the possessives *mea*, *tua*, *sua*, &c. likewise agree; as, *Intĕrest Cicerōnis*, i. e. *est inter negotia Cicerōnis*. *Refert patris*, i. e. *refert se hæc res ad negotia patris*. So, *intĕrest mea*, *est inter negotia mea*.

Exc. II. (204) These five, ***MISERET***, ***PŒNITET***, ***PUDET***, ***TÆDET***, and ***PIGET***, govern the accusative of a person with the genitive of a thing; as,

Misĕret me tui,	I pity you.	*Tædet me vitæ*,	I am weary of life.
Pœnĭtet me peccāti,	I repent of my sin.	*Pudet me culpæ*,	I am ashamed of my fault.

Obs. 1. (205) The genitive here is properly governed either by *negotium* understood, or by some other substantive of a signification similar to that of the verb with which it is joined; as, *Misĕret me tui*, that is, *negotium* or *miseratio tui misĕret me*.

Obs. 2. (206) An infinitive or some part of a sentence may supply the place of the genitive; as, *Pœnĭtet me peccâsse*, or *quod peccavĕrim*. The accusative is frequently understood; as, *Scelĕrum si bene pœnĭtet*, scil. *nos*. Horat.

Obs. 3. (207) *Misĕret, pœnĭtet*, &c. are sometimes used personally, especially when joined with these nominatives, *hoc, id, quod*, &c. as, *Ipse sui misĕret*. Lucr. *Nonne hæc te pudent*. Ter. *Nihil, quod pœnitēre possit, facias*, for *cujus te pœnitēre possit*. Cic.

We sometimes find *misĕret* joined with two accusatives; as, *Menedēmi vicem misĕret me*, scil. *secundum* or *quod ad*. Ter.

Obs. 4. (208) The preterites of *misĕret, pudet, tædet*, and *piget*, when used in the passive form, govern the same cases with the active; as, *miserĭtum est me tuarum fortunārum*. Ter. We likewise find, *miserescit* and *miserētur* used impersonally; as, *Miserescit me tui*. Ter. *Misereātur te fratrum; Neque me tui, neque tuōrum liberōrum miserēri potest*. Cic.

Exc. III. (209) ***DECET, DELECTAT, JUVAT***, and ***OPORTET***, govern the accusative of a person with the infinitive; as,

Delectat me studēre,	It delights me to study.
Non decet te rixāri,	It does not become you to scold.

Obs. 1. (210) These verbs are sometimes used personally; as, *parvum parva decent*. Hor. *Est alĭquid, quod non oporteat, etiamsi liceat*. Cic. *Hæc facta ab illo oportēbant*. Ter.

Obs. 2. (211) *Decet* is sometimes construed with the dative; as, *Ita nobis decet*. Ter.

Obs. 3. (212) *Oportet* is elegantly joined with the subjunctive mode, *ut* being understood; as,

Sibi quisque consŭlat oportet. Cic. Or with the perfect participle, *esse* or *fuisse* being understood; as, *Communicātum oportuit; mansum oportuit; Adolescenti morem gestum oportuit*, The young man should have been humoured. Ter.

Obs. 4. (213) *Fallit, fugit, prætĕrit, latet*, when used impersonally, also govern the accusative with the infinitive; as, *In lege nullâ esse ejusmŏdi caput, non te fallit; De Dionysio fugit me ad te antea scribĕre*. Cic.

Note. (214) *Attĭnet, pertĭnet*, and *spectat*, are construed with *ad; Ad rempublĭcam pertĭnet, me conservāri*. Cic. And so personally, *Ille ad me attĭnet*, belongs. Ter. *Res ad arma spectat*, looks, points. Cic.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF THE INFINITIVE.

XXX. (215) One verb governs another in the infinitive; as,

Cupio discĕre,	I desire to learn.

Obs. 1. (216) The infinitive is often governed by adjectives; as, *Horatius est dignus legi*. Quinctil. And it sometimes depends on a substantive; as, *Tempus equûm fumantia solvĕre colla*. Virg.

Obs. 2. (217) The word governing the infinitive is sometimes understood; as, *Mene incepto desistĕre victam*, scil. *decet*, or *par est*. Virg. *Vidēre est*, one may see. *Dicĕre non est*, scil. *copia*, or *facultas*. Horat. And sometimes the infinitive itself is to be supplied; as, *Socrătem fidĭbus docuit*, scil. *canĕre*. Cic. So, *Discĕre, scire, fidĭbus*.

Obs. 3. (218) The infinitive was not improperly called by the ancients, *Nomen verbi*, the name or noun of the verb; because it is both joined with an adjective like a substantive; as, *Velle suum cuique est*, Every one has a will of his own: and it likewise supplies the place of a noun, not only in the nominative, but also in all the oblique cases; as, 1. In the nominative, *Latrocinări, fraudāre, turpe est*. Cic. *Didicisse fidelĭter artes emollit mores*. Ovid. 2. In the genitive, *Perītus cantāre*, for *cantandi* or *cantûs*. Virg. 3. In the dative, *Parātus servīre*, for *servitŭti*. Sall. 4. In the accusative, *Da mihi fallĕre*, for *artem fallendi*. Horat. *Quod faciam supĕrest, præter amāre, nihil*. Ovid. 5. In the vocative, *O vivĕre nostrum, ut non sentientĭbus effluis!* for *vita nostra*. 6. In the ablative, *Dignus amāri*, for *amōre*, or *qui amētur*. Virg.

Obs. 4. (219) Instead of the infinitive a different construction is often used after verbs of *doubting, willing, ordering, fearing, hoping*; in short, after any verb which has a relation to futurity; as, *Dubĭtat ita facĕre*, or more frequently, *an, num*, or *utrum ita factūrus sit; Dubitāvit an facĕret necne; Non dubĭto quin fecĕrit*. *Vis me facĕre*, or *ut faciam*. *Metuit tangi*, or *ne tangātur*. *Spero te ventūrum esse*, or *fore ut venias*. *Nunquam putāvi fore ut ad te supplex venīrem*. Cic. *Existimābant futūrum fuisse ut oppĭdum amitterētur*. Cæs.

* (220) *Dubito* and *dubium est*, are sometimes followed by the Infinitive, but oftener by the Subjunctive, with *an, num, utrum*, and (if *non* goes before) *quin*; as, *non dubium est quin uxorem nolit filius*, Terent. It is to be observed that such phrases as *Dubito an, Haud scio an, Nescio an*, although from their very nature they imply some doubt, are, notwithstanding, generally used in a sense almost affirmative; as, *Dubito an hunc primum omnium ponam*, Nep. 'for aught I know he may be placed first,' or 'I am inclined to place him first.'

* (221) Verbs of fearing, such as, *timeo, metuo, vereor, paveo*, are used affirmatively with *ne*, but negatively with *ut*, or *ne non*; thus, *Timet ne deseras se*, Ter. 'she is afraid that you may forsake her.' *Paves ne ducas uxorem*, Ter. denotes, 'you are afraid to marry.' *Paves ut ducas*, Ter. 'you are afraid lest you should not marry her.'

Obs. 5. (222) *To*, which in English is the sign of the infinitive, in Latin may often be rendered otherwise than by the infinitive; as, I am sent to complain, *Mittor questum*, or *ut querar*, &c. Ready to hear, *Promptus ad audiendum*; Time to read, *Tempus legendi*; Fit to swim, *Aptus natando*; Easy to say, *Facĭle dictu*; I am to write, *Scriptūrus sum*; A house to let, *or more properly*, to be let, *Domus locanda*; He was left to guard the city, *Relictus est ut tueretur urbem*.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF PARTICIPLES, GERUNDS, AND SUPINES.

XXXI. (223) Participles, Gerunds, and Supines govern the case of their own verbs; as,

Amans virtūtem, Loving virtue. *Carens fraude*, Wanting guile.

Obs. 1. (224) Passive Participles often govern the dative, particularly when they are used as adjectives; as,

Suspectus mihi, Suspected by me; *Suspectiōres regĭbus.* Sall. *Invīsus mihi,* hated by me, or hateful to me; *In dies invisior.* Suet. *Occulta et marĭbus non invīsa solum, sed etiam inaudīta sacra,* unseen. Cic.

(225) *EXOSUS, PEROSUS,* and often also *PERTÆSUS,* govern the accusative; as, *Tædas exōsa jugāles.* Ovid. *Plebs consŭlum nomen haud secus quàm regum perōsa erat.* Liv. *Pertæsus ignaviam suam; semet ipse,* displeased with. Suet. *vitam,* weary of. Justin. *levitātis.* Cic.

(226) Verbals in BUNDUS govern the case of their own verbs; as, *Gratulabundus patriæ.* Just. *Vitabundus castra hostium.* Liv. So sometimes also nouns; as, *Justitia est obtemperatio scriptis legĭbus.* Cic. *Insidiæ consŭli.* Sall. *Domum reditiōnis spe sublātâ.* Cæs. *Spectatio ludos.* Plaut.

* Obs. 2. (227) *Do, reddo, volo, curo, facio, habeo, comperio,* with the Accusative of a perfect participle, are often used by way of circumlocution, instead of the verb of the participle; as, *Compertum habeo,* for *compĕri,* 'I have found;' *Effectum dabo,* for *efficiam.* *Me missum face,* Ter. for *mitte.* In certain instances there is an evident difference between the simple tense of the verb, and the periphrasis corresponding to the manner in which it is usually interpreted in English. Thus if we say, *Gladius quem abdiderat,* or *Gladius quem abditum habebat,* the translation of either is, 'The sword which she had concealed.' The latter is the phraseology of Livy, describing the suicide of Lucretia, and implies the actual possession of the dagger at the time; the former does not.

* (228) Sometimes the Gerund is used with *ad;* as, *Tradere ei gentes diripiendas,* or *ad diripiendum,* Cic. *Rogo, accipio, do aliquid utendum,* or *ad utendum; Misit mihi librum legendum,* or *ad legendum.*

Obs. 3. (229) These verbs, *curo, habeo, mando, loco, condūco, do, tribuo, mitto,* &c., are elegantly construed with the participle in *dus,* instead of the infinitive; as, *Funus faciendum curāvi,* for *fiĕri,* or *ut fiĕret; Columnas ædificandas locāvit.* Cic.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF GERUNDS.

XXXII. (230) Gerunds are construed like substantive nouns; as,

Studendum est mihi, I must study. *Scio studendum esse mihi,* I know that I must study.
Tempus studendi, Time of study.
Aptus studendo, Fit for studying.

But more particularly:

I. (231) The gerund in *DUM,* of the Nominative case, with the verb *est* governs the dative; as,

Legendum est mihi, **I must read.** ***Moriendum est omnĭbus,*** **All must die.**
So, *Scio legendum esse mihi; moriendum esse omnĭbus,* &c.

Obs. 1. (232) This gerund always imports obligation or necessity; and may be resolved into *oportet*, *necesse est*, or the like, and the infinitive or the subjunctive, with the conjunction *ut*; as, *Omnĭbus est moriendum*, or *Omnĭbus necesse est mori*, or *ut moriantur*; or *Necesse est ut omnes moriantur*. *Consulendum est tibi a me*, I must consult for your good; for *Oportet ut consŭlam tibi*. Cic.

Obs. 2. (233) The dative is often understood; as, *Orandum est, ut sit mens sana in corpŏre sano*, sc. *tibi*. Juv. *Hic vincendum, aut moriendum, milĭtes, est*, sc. *vobis*. Liv. *Deliberandum est diu, quod statuendum est semel*, sc. *tibi* or *alĭcui*. P. Syr.

II. (234) The gerund in *DI* is governed by substantives or adjectives; as,

Tempus legendi,	Time of reading.	*Cupĭdus discendi*,	Desirous of learning.

Obs. (235) This gerund is sometimes construed with the genitive plural; as, *Facultas agrōrum condonandi* for *agros*. Cic. *Copia spectandi comœdiārum*, for *comœdias*. Ter. But chiefly with pronouns; as, *In castra vĕnērunt sui purgandi causâ*. Cæs. *Vestri adhortandi causâ*. Liv. *Ejus videndi cupĭdus*, sc. *fœmĭnæ*. Ter. The gerund here is supposed to govern the genitive like a substantive noun.

III. (236) The gerund in *DO* of the Dative case is governed by adjectives signifying usefulness or fitness; as,

Charta utĭlis scribendo,	Paper useful for writing.

Obs. 1. (237) Sometimes the adjective is understood; as, *Non est solvendo*, scil. *par* or *habĭlis*, He is not able to pay. Cic.

Obs. 2. (238) This gerund is sometimes governed also by verbs; as, *Adesse scribendo*. Cic. *Aptat habendo ensem*, for wearing. Virg. *Is finis censendo factus est*. Liv.

IV. (239) The gerund in *DUM* of the Accusative case is governed by the prepositions *ad* or *inter*; as,

Promptus ad audiendum,	Ready to hear.
Attentus inter docendum,	Attentive in time of teaching.

Obs. (240) This gerund is also governed by some other prepositions; as *Ante domandum*. Virg. *Ob absolvendum*. Cic. *Circa movendum*. Quinctil. Or it depends on some verb going before, and then with the verb *esse* governs the dative case; as, *Scio moriendum esse omnĭbus*, I know that all must die. *Esse* is often understood.

V. (241) The gerund in *DO* of the Ablative case is governed by the prepositions *a*, *ab*, *de*, *e*, *ex*, or *in*; as,

Pœna a peccando absterret,	Punishment frightens from sinning.

(242) Or without a preposition, as the ablative of manner or cause; as,

Memoria excolendo augētur,	The memory is improved by exercising it.
Dēfessus sum ambulando,	I am wearied with walking.

Obs. (243) The gerund in its nature very much resembles the infinitive.—Hence the one is frequently put for the other; as, *Est tempus legendi*, or *legĕre:* only the gerund is never joined with an adjective, and is sometimes taken in a passive sense; as, *Cum Tisidium vocarētur ad imperandum*, i. e. *ut ipsi imperētur*, to receive orders. Sall. *Nunc ades ad imperandum, vel ad parendum potius; sic enim antīqui loquebantur.* Cic. i. e. *ut tibi imperētur.* *Urit videndo*, i. e. *dum vidētur.* Virg.

Gerunds turned into Participles in dus.

XXXVI.* (244) Gerunds governing the accusative are elegantly turned into participles in *dus*, which, like adjectives, agree with their substantives in gender, number and case; as,

By the Gerund.		By the Participle or Gerundive.
Petendum est mihi pacem,	or more frequently	*Pax est petenda mihi.*
Tempus petendi pacem,		*Tempus petendæ pacis.*
Ad petendum pacem,		*Ad petendam pacem.*
A petendo pacem,		*A petendâ pace.*

(245) Obs. 1. In changing gerunds into participles in *dus*, the participle and the substantive are always to be put in the same case in which the gerund was; as,

Genitive. *Inĭta sunt consilia urbis delendæ, civium trucidandōrum, nomĭnis Romāni extinguendi.* Cic.

Dat. *Perpetiendo labōri idoneus.* Colum. *Capessendæ reipublĭcæ habĭlis.* Tac. *Area firma templis ac portĭcĭbus sustinendis.* Liv. *Onĕri ferendo est*, sc. *aptus* or *habĭlis.* Ovid. *Natus miseriis ferendis.* Ter. *Litĕris dandis vigilāre.* Cic. *Locum oppĭdo condendo capĕre.* Liv.

Acc and Abl. *Ad defendendam Romam ab oppugnandâ Capuâ duces Romānos abstrahĕre.* Liv. *Oratiōnem Latīnam legendis nostris efficies pleniōrem.* Cic.

Obs. 2. (246) The gerunds of verbs, which do not govern the accusative, are never changed into the participle, except those of *medeor, utor, abūtor, fruor, fungor*, and *potior;* as, *Spes potiundi urbe*, or *potiundæ urbis;* but we always say, *Cupĭdus subveniendi tibi*, and never *tui.*

---

* The Gerunds in Dum, Di, and Do, constitute Rules XXXIII. XXXIV. and XXXV.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF SUPINES.

1. *The Supine in* um.

XXXVII. (247) The supine in *um* is put after a verb of motion; as,

Abiit deambulātum, He hath gone to walk.

So, *Ducĕre cohortes prædātum.* Liv. *Nunc venis irrīsum domĭnum? Quod in rem tuam optĭmum factu arbĭtror, te id admonĭtum venio.* Plaut.

Obs. 1. (248) The supine in *um* is elegantly joined with the verb *eo,* to express the signification of any verb more strongly; as, *It se perdĭtum,* the same with *id agit,* or *opĕram dat, ut se perdat,* He is bent on his own destruction. Ter. This supine with *iri,* taken impersonally, supplies the place of the infinitive passive; as, *An credēbas illum sine tuâ opĕrâ iri deductum domum?* Which may be thus resolved; *An credēbas iri* (a te *or* ab alĭquo) *deductum* (i. e, ad deducendum) *illam domum.* Ter. The supine here may be considered as a verbal substantive governing the accusative, like the gerund.

Obs. 2. (249) The supine in *um* is put after other verbs besides verbs of motion; as, *Dedit filiam nuptum; Cantatum provocēmus.* Ter. *Revocātus defensum patriam; Divīsit copias hiemātum.* Nep.

Obs. 3. (250) The meaning of this supine may be expressed by several other parts of the verb; as, *Venit orātum opem;* or, 1. *Venit opem orandi causâ,* or *opis orandæ.* 2. *Venit ad orandum opem.* or *ad orandam opem.* 3. *Venit opi orandæ.* 4. *Venit opem oratūrus.* 5. *Venit qui,* or *ut opem oret.* 6. *Venit opem orāre.* But the third and the last of these are seldom used.

2. *The Supine in* u.

XXXVIII. (251) The supine in *u* is put after adjectives implying *Ease, Difficulty, Propensity, Quality, Fitness, Form,* &c.

Facĭle dictu, Easy to tell, *or* to be told.

So, *Nihil dictu fœdum, visūque, hæc limĭna tangat, intra quæ puer est.* Juv. *Diffĭcĭlis res est inventu verus amĭcus; Fas* or *nefas est dictu; Opus est scitu.* Cic.

Obs. 1. (252) The supine in *u,* being used in a passive sense, hardly ever governs any case. It is sometimes, especially in old writers, put after verbs of motion; as, *Nunc obsonātu redeo,* from getting provisions. Plaut. *Primus cubĭtu surgat* (villĭcus,) from bed, *postrēmus cubĭtum eat.* Cato.

Obs. 2. (253) This supine may be rendered by the infinitive or gerund with the preposition *ad;* as, *Diffĭcĭle cognĭtu, cognosci,* or *ad cognoscendum; Res facĭlis ad credendum.* Cic.

* Obs. 3. (254) According to the opinion of many grammarians, the Supines are nothing else but verbal nouns of the Fourth declension, used only in the Ac-

cusative and Ablative cases, and are governed in these cases by prepositions understood, the Supine in UM by the preposition *ad* and the Supine in U by the preposition *in*. But this opinion will hardly bear examination; for why should the Supine in UM govern the case of its own verb unless it be really a part of it?

* (255) Although in the grammars and dictionaries the Supines of most verbs are given by analogy, yet they are seldom found in the classics: instead of them are used the Gerunds; Participles in *dus* and *rus*; and *ut*, with the Subjunctive mode.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF INDECLINABLE WORDS.

I. THE CONSTRUCTION OF ADVERBS.

XXXIX. (256.) Adverbs qualify verbs, participles, adjectives, and other adverbs; as,

Benè scribit,	He writes well.	*Fortĭter pugnans,*	Fighting bravely.
Servus egregiè fidēlis,	A slave remarkably faithful.	*Satis benè,*	Well enough.

Obs. 1. (257) Adverbs sometimes likewise qualify substantives; as,

Homērus planè orātor: plane noster, verè Metellus. Cic. So, *Hodie mane, cras mane, heri mane; hodie vespĕri,* &c. *tam mane, tam vespĕre.*

Obs. 2. (258) The adverb, for the most part in Latin, and always in English, is placed near to the word which it qualifies or affects.

Obs. 3. (259) Two negatives, both in Latin and English, are equivalent to an affirmative; as,

Nec non sensērunt, Nor did they not perceive, i. e. *et sensērunt,* and they did perceive; *Non potĕram non examinări metu.* Cic. So, *non sum nescius,* i. e. *scio.* Cic. Or. 1, 11. *haud nihil est,* i. e. *est alĭquid.* Ter. Eun. 4, 2, 13. *nonnulli,* i. e. *alĭqui; nonnunquam,* i. e. *aliquando; non nemo* i. e. *quidam; nemo non,* i. e. *quilĭbet,* &c. Examples, however, of the contrary of this occur in good authors, both Latin and English. Thus, in imitation of the Greeks, two negatives sometimes make a stronger negation: *Neque ego haud committam, ut, si quid peccātum siet,* (te) *fecisse dicas de meâ sententiâ,* I will not cause, that, &c. Plaut. Bacch. 4, 9, 114. *Jura, te non nocitūrum homĭni hâc de re nemĭni,* for *nulli homĭni.* Id. Mil. 5, 1, 18, *cf.* Epid. 4, 1, 6. & 5, 1, 57. *Nolle successum, non Patrĭbus, non consulĭbus,* They did not wish success either to the Patricians, or the Consuls. Liv. 2, 45. So, *nihil iste nec ausus, nec potuit.* Virg. Æ. 9, 428, *add.* Virg. E. 4, 53, & 5, 53. Ter. Eun. 5. 9, 47. Heaut. 1, 1, 11. *Nullius rei neque præs, neque manceps factus est.* Nep. 25, 6.

(260) But what chiefly deserves attention in Adverbs, is the degree of comparison and the mode with which they are joined. 1. *Apprĭmè, admŏdum, vehementer, maxĭmè, perquam, valdè, oppĭdò,* &c. and *per* in composition, are usually joined to the positive; as, *Utrĭque nostrûm gratum admŏdum fecĕris,* You will do what is very agreeable to both of us. Cic. *perquam puerīle,* very childish; *oppĭdò pauci,* very few; *perfacĭle est,* &c. In like manner, *Parum, multum, nimium, tantum, quantum, aliquantum;* as, *In rebus apertissĭmis, nimium longi sumus; pa-*

rum firmus, multum bonus. Cic. Adverbs in *um* are sometimes also joined to comparatives; as, *Forma viri aliquantùm amplior humanâ.* Liv.

(261) QUAM is joined to the positive or superlative in different senses; as, *Quàm difficile est!* How difficult it is! *Quàm crudēlis*, or *Ut crudēlis est!* How cruel he is! *Flens quàm familiarĭter*, very familiarly. Ter. So, *quàm sevērè*, very severely. Cic. *Quàm latè*, very widely. Cæs. *Tam multa quàm*, &c. as many things as, &c. *Quàm maxĭmas potest copias armat*, as great as possible. Sall. *Quàm maxĭmas gratias agit, quàm primum, quàm sæpissĭmè.* Cic. *Quàm quisque pessĭmè fecit, tam maxĭmè tutus est.* Sall.

(262) FACILE, for *haud dubie*, undoubtedly, clearly, is joined to superlatives or words of a similar meaning; as, *Facĭlè doctissĭmus, facĭlè princeps*, or *præcipuus*. LONGE, to comparatives or superlatives, rarely to the positive; as, *Longè eloquentissĭmus Plato.* Cic. *Pedĭbus longè melior Lycus.* Virg.

2. (263) CUM, when, is construed with the indicative or subjunctive, oftener with the latter; DUM, whilst, or how long, with the indicative; as, *Dum hæc aguntur; Ægrōto, dum anĭma est, spes esse dicĭtur.* Cic. *Donec eris felix, multos numerabis amīcos.* Ovid. DUM and DONEC, for *usquĕdum*, until, sometimes with the indicative, and sometimes with the subjunctive; as, *Opperior, dum ista cognosco.* Cic. *Haud desĭnam donec perfecĕro.* Ter. So QUOAD, for *quamdiu, quantum, quatĕnus*, as long, as much, as far as; thus, *Quoad Catilīna fuit in urbe; Quoad tibi æquum vidébĭtur; quoad possem* and *licēret; quoad progrĕdi potuĕrit amentia.* Cic. But QUOAD, until, oftener with the subjunctive; as, *Thessalonicæ esse statuĕram, quoad alĭquid ad me scribĕres.* Cic. but not always; *Non faciam finem rogandi, quoad nunciātum erit te fecisse.* Cic. The pronoun *ejus*, with *facĕre*, or *fieri*, is elegantly added to *quoad;* as, *quoad ejus facĕre potĕris; Quoad ejus fiĕri possit.* Cic. *Ejus* is thought to be here governed by *alĭquid*, or some such word understood. *Quoad corpus, quoad anĭmam*, for *secundùm*, or *quod attĭnet ad corpus* or *anĭmam*, as to the body or soul, is esteemed by the best grammarians not to be good Latin.

3. (264) POSTQUAM or POSTEAQUAM, after, is usually joined with the indic. ANTEQUAM, PRIUSQUAM, before: SIMUL, SIMULAC, SIMUL ATQUE, SIMUL UT, as soon as; UBI, when, sometimes with the indic. and sometimes with the subj.; as, *Antĕquam dico* or *dicam.* Cic. *Simulac persensit.* Virg. *Simul ut vidĕro Curiōnem.* Cic. *Hæc ubi dicta dedit.* Liv. *Ubi semel quis perjuravĕrit, ei credi postea non oportet.* Cic. So NÆ, truly, as, *Næ ego homo sum infēlix.* Ter. *Næ tu, si id fecisses, melius famæ consuluisses.* Cic. But NE, not, with the imperative, or more elegantly with the subjunctive; as, *Ne jura.* Plaut. *Ne post confĕras culpam in me.* Ter. *Ne tot annōrum felicitātem in unius horæ dedĕris discrĭmen.* Liv.

4. (265) QUASI, CEU TANQUAM, PERINDE, when they denote resemblance, are joined with the indicative; *Fuit olim, quasi ego sum, senex.* Plaut. *Adversi rupto ceu quondam turbĭne venti confligunt.* Virg. *Hæc omnia perinde sunt, ut aguntur.* But when used ironically, they have the subjunctive; as, *Quasi de verbo, non de re laborētur.* Cic.

5. (266) UTINAM, O SI, UT, for *utĭnam*, I wish, take the subjunctive; as, *Utinam ea res ei voluptāti sit.* Cic. *O mihi prætĕrĭtos refĕrat si Jupĭter annos.* Virg. *Ut illum dii deæque perdant.* Ter.

6. (267) UT, when, or after, takes the indicative; as, *Ut discessit, venit.* &c. ¶Also, for *quàm*, or *quomŏdo*, how! as, *Ut valet! Ut falsus anĭmi est! Ut sæpe summa ingenia in occulto latent!* Plaut. ¶Or when it simply denotes resemblance; as, *Ut tute es, ita omnes censes esse.* Plaut. ¶In this sense it sometimes has the subjunctive; as, *Ut sementem fecĕris, ita metes.* Cic.

7. (268) QUIN, for CUR NON. takes the indic. as, *Quin continētis vocem indĭcem stultitiæ vestræ?* Cic. ¶For IMO, nay, or but, the indic. or imperat. as, *Quin est parātum argentum; quin tu hoc audi.* Ter. ¶For UT NON, QUI, QUÆ, QUOD NON, or

QUO MINUS, the subjunctive; as, *Nulla tam facĭlis res, quin diffĭcĭlis fiet, quum invĭtus facias.* Ter. *Nemo est, quin mālit; Facĕre non possum, quin ad te mittam,* I cannot help sending; *Nihil abest, quin sim miserrĭmus.* Cic.

THE GOVERNMENT OF ADVERBS.

XL. (269) Some adverbs of time, place, and quantity, govern the genitive; as,

Pridiè ejus diēi,	The day before that day.
Ubīque gentium,	Every where.
Satis est verbōrum,	There is enough of words.

1. (270) Adverbs of time governing the genit. are, *Interea, postea, inde, tunc;* as, *Interea loci,* in the meantime; *postea loci,* afterwards; *inde loci,* then; *tunc tempŏris,* at that time. 2. Of place, *Ubi,* and *quo,* with their compounds, *ubīque, ubicunque, ubĭvis, ubiŭbi,* &c. Also, *Eo, huc, huccĭne, unde, usquam, nusquam, longe, ibĭdem;* as, *Ubi, quo, quovis,* &c. also *usquam, nusquam, unde terrārum,* or *gentium; longè gentium; ibĭdem loci, eò audaciæ, vecordiæ, miseriārum,* &c. to that pitch of boldness, madness, misery, &c. 3. Of quantity, *Abundè, affātim, largĭter, nimis, satis, parum, minĭmè;* as, *Abundè gloriæ, affātim divitiārum, largĭter auri, satis eloquentiæ, sapientiæ parum est illi* or *habet,* He has enough of glory, riches, &c. *Minĭmè gentium,* by no means.

* (271) Some add *Ergo* and *Instar;* but these are properly indeclinable nouns. *Ergo,* (the Greek Εργῳ) means 'an account of,' 'for the sake of,' and is similar to *gratiâ;* as, *ejus victoriæ ergo,* Nep. au account of that victory; *honoris ergo,* Cic. It may be considered in the ablative case by Rule 49. *Instar,* 'similitude,' 'likeness,' 'worth,' 'shape,' may be considered in the accusative, and governed by *ad* understood; as, *amo eum instar patris,* 'I love him like a father;' that is, *ad instar,* 'according to the likeness.' *Instar montis equum ædificant,* 'they make a horse as great as a mountain,' that is, *ad instar,* 'according to the size,' &c.

* (272) Many adverbs of place, as, *ubi, ubinam, ubivis, quo, quovis, aliquo, usquam, nusquam,* &c. are followed by the genitives Gentium, Terrarum, Loci, Locorum, which are not in general superfluous, but express an emphasis, as in English we say, 'where in the world is he?' for 'where is he?' &c., of which the former is more emphatical, and implies more astonishment; as, *ubi terrarum sumus,* 'where in the world are we?' *Nihil est virtute amabilius, quam qui adeptus fuerit,* ubicunque erit gentium, *a nobis diligeter,* Cic. Nat. Deor. 'Nothing is more lovely than virtue, and for him who practices it, *in whatever part of the world he may be,* do we feel the strongest affection.' *Quo amentiæ,* Liv. 'to what extent,' or 'degree of madness.'

Obs. 1. (273) These adverbs are thought to govern the genitive, because they imply in themselves the force of a substantive; as, *Potentiæ gloriæque abundè adeptus,* the same with *abundantiam gloriæ;* or *res, locus,* or *negotium,* and a preposition, may be understood; as, *Interea loci,* i. e. *inter ea negotia loci; Ubi terrārum,* for *in quo loco terrārum.*

Obs. 2. (274) We usually say, *pridiè, postridiè, ejus diēi,* seldom *diem;* but *pridiè, postridiè Kalendas, Nonas, Idus, ludus Apollināres, natālem ejus, absolutiōnem ejus,* &c., rarely *Kalendārum,* &c.

Obs. 3. (275) *En* and *ecce* are construed either with the nominative or accusative; as,

En hostis, or *hostem; Ecce misĕrum homĭnem.* Cic. Sometimes a dative is

added; as, *Ecce tibi Strato.* Ter. *Ecce duas* (scil. aras.) *tibi, Daphni.* Virg. *En tibi.* Liv. In like manner is construed *hem* put for *ecce;* as, *Hem tibi Davum,* Ter. But in all these examples some verb must be understood.

XLI. (276) Some derivative adverbs govern the case of their primitives; as,

Omnium optĭmè loquĭtur,	He speaks the best of all.
Convenienter natūræ,	Agreeably to nature.
Venit obviàm ei,	He came to meet him.
Proxĭmè castris, or *castra,*	Next the camp.

* (277) Thus also, by Rule XI. *Omnium optimè, Saepissimè omnium, diutissimè omnium,* although the superlative of the two last, whence the adverbs come, are not used. By Rule XII. *congruenter naturæ convenienterque vivĕre.* Cic. *Huic obviam civitas processerat.* Cic.

II. THE CONSTRUCTION OF PREPOSITIONS.

1. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ACCUSATIVE.

* XLII. (278) The Prepositions *ad, adversus, adversum, ante, apud, circa, circum, circiter, cis, citra, contra, erga, extra, infra, inter, intra, juxta, ob, penes, per, pone, post, præter, prope, propter, secundum, secus, supra, trans, ultra, usque, versus,* govern the Accusative.

2. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ABLATIVE.

* XLIII. (279) The prepositions *a, ab, abs, absque, clam, coram, cum, de, e, ex, palam, præ, pro, sine, tenus,* govern the Ablative.

(280) To prepositions governing the ablative is commonly added Procul: as,

Procul domo, far from home; but here *a* is understood, which is also often expressed; as, *Procul a patriâ,* Virg. *Procul ab ostentatiōne.* Quinct. *Culpa est procul a me.* Ter.

3. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ACC. AND ABL.

XLIV. (281) The prepositions *in, sub, super,* and *subter,* govern the accusative, when motion to a place is signified; but when motion or rest in a place is signified, *in* and *sub* govern the ablative, *super* and *subter* either the accusative or ablative.

IN, when it signifies *into,* governs the accusative; when it signifies *in* or *among,* it governs the ablative.

Obs. 1. (282) When prepositions do not govern a case, they are reckoned adverbs.

Such are *Ante, circa, clam, coram, contra, infra, intra, juxta, palam, pone, post, propter, secus, subter, super, supra, ultra*. But in most of these the case seems to be implied in the sense; as, *Longo post tempŏre venit*, sc. *post id tempus*. *Adversus, juxta, propter, secus, secundum*, and *clam*, are by some thought to be always adverbs, having a preposition understood when they govern a case. So other adverbs also are construed with the acc. or abl.; as, *Intus cellam*, for *intra*. Liv. *Intus templo divûm*, sc. *in*. Virg. *Simul his*, sc. *cum*. Hor.

Obs. 2. A and E are only put before consonants; AB and EX, usually before vowels, and sometimes also before consonants; as,

A patre, e regiōne; ab initio, ab rege; ex urbe, ex parte; abs before *q* and *t*; as, *abs te, abs quĭvis homĭne*. Ter. Some phrases are used only with *e*; as, *e longinquo, e regiōne, e vestigio, e re meâ est*, &c. Some only with *ex*; as, *Ex compacto, ex tempŏre, magnâ ex parte*, &c.

Obs. 3. (283) Prepositions are often understood; as, *Devenêre locos*, scil. *ad*; *It portis*, sc. *ex*. Virg. *Nunc id prodeo*, scil. *ob* or *propter*. Ter. *Maria aspĕra juro*, scil. *per*. Virg. *Ut se loco movēre non possent*, scil. *e* or *de*. Cæs. *Vina promens dolio*, scil. *ex*. Hor. *Quid illo facias? Quid me fiet*, sc. *de*. Ter. And so in English, *Show me the book; Get me some paper*, that is, *to me, for me*. We sometimes find the word to which the preposition refers, suppressed; as, *Circum Concordiæ*, sc. *ædem*. Sall. *Round St. Paul's*, namely, *church; Campum Stellātem divīsit extra sortem ad viginti millĭbus, civium*, i. e. *civium millĭbus ad viginti millia*. Suet. But this is most frequently the case after prepositions in composition; thus, *Emittĕre servum*, scil. *manu*. Plaut. *Evomĕre virus*, scil. *ore*. Cic. *Educĕre copias*, scil. *castris*. Cæs.

XLV. (284) A preposition in composition often governs the same case, as when it stands by itself; as,

Adeāmus scholam,	Let us go to the school.
Exeāmus scholâ,	Let us go out of the school.

Obs. 1. (285) The preposition with which the verb is compounded, is often repeated; as, *Adīre ad scholam; Exīre ex scholâ; Adgrĕdi alĭquid*, or *ad alĭquid; ingrĕdi oratiōnem*, or *in oratiōnem; inducĕre anĭmum*, and *in anĭmum; evadĕre undis* and *ex undis: decedĕre de suo jure, decedĕre viâ* or *de viâ; expellĕre, ejicĕre, extermināre, extrudĕre, exturbāre urbe*, and *ex urbe*. Some do not repeat the preposition; as, *Affāri, allŏqui, allatrāre alĭquem*, not *ad alĭquem*. So, *Alluĕre urbem; accolĕre flumen; circumvenīre alĭquem; præterīre injuriam; abdicāre se magistrātu*, (also, *abdicāre magistrātum*;) *transducĕre exercĭtum fluvium*, &c. Others are only construed with the preposition; as, *Accurrĕre ad alĭquem, adhortāri ad alĭquid, incidĕre in morbum, avocāre a studiis, avertĕre ab incepto*, &c.

Some admit other prepositions; as, *Abīre, demigrāre loco*; and *a, de, ex loco; abstrahĕre alĭquem, a, de*, or *e conspectu; Desistĕre sententiâ, a* or *de sententiâ; Excidĕre manĭbus, de* or *e manĭbus*, &c.

Obs. 2. (286) Some verbs compounded with *e* or *ex* govern either the ablative or accusative; as,

Egrĕdi urbe, or *urbem*, sc. *extra*; *egrĕdi extra vallum*. Nep. *Evadĕre insidiis* or *insidias*. *Patrios excedĕre muros*. Lucan. *Scelerātâ excedĕre terrâ*. Virg. *Elābi ex manĭbus*; *elābi pugnam aut vincŭla*. Tac.

Obs. 3. (287) This rule does not take place, unless when the preposition may be disjoined from the verb, and put before the noun by itself; as, *Allŏquor patrem*, or *loquor ad patrem*.

III. THE CONSTRUCTION OF INTERJECTIONS.

XLVI. (288) The interjections *O*, *heu*, and *proh*, are construed with the nominative, accusative, or vocative; as,

O vir bonus or *bone!* O good man! *Heu me misĕrum!* Ah wretched me!

So, *O vir fortis atque amīcus!* Ter. *Heu vanĭtas humāna!* Plin. *Heu miserande puer!* Virg. *O præclārum custōdem ovium* (ut aiunt) *lupum!* Cic.

XLVII. (289) *Hei* and *væ* govern the dative; as,

Hei mihi! Ah me. *Væ vobis!* Wo to you!

Obs. 1. (290) *Heus* and *ohe* are joined only with the vocative; as, *Heus Syre*. Ter. *Ohe libelle!* Martial. *Proh* or *pro*, *ah*, *vah*, *hem*, have generally either the accusative or vocative; as, *Proh homĭnum fidem!* Ter. *Proh Sancte Jupĭter!* Cic. *Hem astutias!* Ter.

Obs. 2. (291) Interjections cannot, properly, have either concord or government. They are only mere sounds excited by passion, and have no just connexion with any other part of a sentence. Whatever case, therefore, is joined with them, must depend on some other word understood, except the vocative, which is always placed absolutely; thus, *Heu me misĕrum!* stands for *Heu! quàm me misĕrum sentio!* *Hei mihi!* for *Hei! malum est mihi!* *Proh dolor!* for *Proh! quantus est dolor!* and so in other examples.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF CIRCUMSTANCES.

The circumstances, which in Latin are expressed in different cases, are, 1. The *Price of a thing*. 2. The *Cause*, *Manner* and *Instrument*. 3. *Place*. 4. *Measure* and *Distance*. 5. *Time*.

1. PRICE.

XLVIII. (292) The price of a thing is put in the ablative; as,

Emi librum duōbus assĭbus, I bought a book for two shillings.
Constĭtit talento, It cost a talent.

So, *Asse carum est*; *vile viginti minis*; *auro venāle*, &c. *Nocet empta dolōre voluptas*. Hor. *Spem pretio non emam*. Ter. *Plurĭmi auro veneunt honōres*. Ovid.

¶ (293) These genitives, ***tanti***, ***quanti***, ***pluris***, ***minōris***, are excepted; as,

Quanti constĭtit, How much cost it? *Asse et pluris*, a shilling and more.

Obs. 1. (294) When the substantive is added, they are put in the ablative; as, *parvo pretio*, *impenso pretio vendĕre*. Cic.

Obs. 2. (295) *Magno, permagno, parvo, paulŭlo, minĭmo, plurĭmo*, are often used without the substantive; as, *Permagno constĭtit*, scil. *pretio*. Cic. *Heu quanto regnis nox stetit una tuis?* Ovid. Fast. ii. 812. We also say, *Emi carè, cariùs, carissĭmè; bene, meliùs, optĭmè; malè, pejùs, viliùs, vilissĭmè; valdè, carè, æstĭmas: Emit domum prope dimidio cariùs, quàm æstimābat*. Cic.

Obs. 3. (296) The ablative of price is properly governed by the preposition *pro* understood, which is likewise sometimes expressed; as, *Dum pro argenteis decem aureus unus valēret*. Liv.

2. MANNER AND CAUSE.

XLIX. (297) The cause, manner, and instrument are put in the ablative; as,

Palleo metu,	I am pale for fear.
Fecit suo more,	He did it after his own way.
Scribo calămo,	I write with a pen.

So, *Ardet dolōre; pallescĕre culpâ; æstuāre dubitatiōne; gestīre voluptāte* or *secundis rebus: Confectus morbo; affectus beneficiis, gravissĭmo supplicio; insignis pietāte; deterior licentiâ: Pietāte filius, consiliis pater, amōre frater;* hence, *Rex Dei gratiâ: Parĭtur pax bello*. Nep. *Procedĕre lento gradu; Acceptus regio apparātu: Nullo sono convertĭtur annus*. Juv. *Jam veniet tacĭto curva senecta pede*. Ovid. *Percutĕre secūri, defendĕre saxis, configĕre sagittis, &c.*

Obs. 1. (298) The ablative is here governed by some preposition understood. Before the manner and cause, the preposition is sometimes expressed; as, *De more matrum locūta est*. Virg. *Magno cum metu; Hàc de causâ; Præ mærōre, formidĭne, &c.* But hardly ever before the instrument; as, *Vulnerāre alĭquem gladio*, not *cum gladio*; unless among the poets, who sometimes add *a* or *ab*; as, *Trajectus ab ense*. Ovid.

Obs. 2. (299) When any thing is said to be in company with another, it is called the ablative of CONCOMITANCY, and has the preposition *cum* usually added; as, *Obsēdit curiam cum gladiis: Ingressus est cum gladio*. Cic.

Obs. 3. (300) Under this rule are comprehended several other circumstances, as the matter of which any thing is made, and what is called by grammarians the ADJUNCT, that is, a noun in the ablative joined to a verb or adjective, to express the character or quality of the person or thing spoken of; as, *Capitolium saxo quadrāto constructum*. Liv. *Floruit acumĭnĕ ingenii*. Cic. *Pollet opĭbus, valet armis, viget memoriâ, famâ nobĭlis, &c. Æger pedĭbus*. When we express the matter of which any thing is made, the preposition is usually added; as, *Templum de marmŏre*, seldom *marmŏris; Pocŭlum ex auro factum*. Cic.

3. PLACE.

The circumstances of place may be reduced to four particulars.—1. The place *where*, or *in which*. 2. The place *whither*, or *to*

ɒhich. 4. The place *by*, or

ɪ; unless the noun be of the
and then it is expressed in

'ROM or BY a place in the

IERE.

: *where*, or in *which*,
town is put in the

:e lived at Rome.
[e died at London.

ɜ of the third declension or
:ive; as,

:e dwells at Carthage.
[e studied at Paris.

ɔ be done, not in the place it-
e always use the preposition
or near Troy.

t in the ablative, is here govern-
e in the genitive, we must sup-
ɪme of a town is joined with an
ɜnerally expressed: thus, we do
t either *Romæ in celebri urbe*,
be, or sometimes, *Romæ celebri*
ɪ *urbe Carthagĭne*, with the pre-
which is sometimes the termina-
by *ubi?* Thus, *At ego aio hoc*
71. *Fuĕre Sicyōni jamdiu Dio-*
ɪ celebrated at Sicyon. Id. Cist.
ɪidium. Liv. 5, 8. *Convento An-*
ɪr. Cic. Att. 16. 3. *Nulla Lace-*
nam eat mercēde conducta. Nep.
Claud. 34. Sometimes, though
ɔnd declension are found in the
ɪ. 18, 4. *Eădem die, quâ in Ita-*
læmŏne nunciāta est victoria. Id.

ɪITHER.

whither, or *to which*,
wn is put in the ac-

Venit Romam,	He came to Rome.
Profectus est Athēnas,	He went to Athens.

Obs. 1. (306) We find the dative also used among the poets, but more seldom; as, *Carthagĭni nuncios mittam.* Horat.

Obs. 2. (307) Names of towns are sometimes put in the accusative, after verbs of telling and giving, where motion to a place is implied; as, *Romam erat nunciātum,* The report was carried to Rome. Liv. *Hæc nunciant domum Albāni.* Id. *Messānam litĕras dedit.* Cic.

3. *The Place* WHENCE.

LII. (308) When the place *whence,* or *from which,* or the place *by* or *through which,* is spoken of, the name of a town is put in the ablative; as,

Discessit Corintho,	He departed from Corinth.
Laodicēā iter faciēbat,	He went through Laodicea.

When motion *by* or *through* a place is signified, the preposition *per* is commonly used; as, *Per Thebas iter fecit.* Nep.

Domus and *Rus.*

LIII. (309) *Domus* and *rus* are construed the same way as names of towns; as,

Manet domi,	He stays at home.
Domum revertĭtur,	He returns home.
Domo arcessītus sum,	I am called from home.
Vivit rure, or more frequently *ruri,*	He lives in the country.
Rediit rure,	He is returned from the country.
Abiit rus,	He is gone to the country.

Obs. 1. (310) *Humi, militiæ,* and *belli,* are likewise construed in the genitive, as names of towns; thus,

Domi et militiæ, or *belli,* At home and abroad. *Jacet humi,* He lies on the ground.

Obs. 2. (311) When *Domus* is joined with an adjective, we commonly use a preposition; as, *In domo paternâ,* not *domi paternæ:* So *Ad domum paternam: Ex domo paternâ.* Unless when it is joined with these possessives, *Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester, regius,* and *aliēnus;* as, *Domi meæ vixit.* Cic. Tusc. 5, 39, 4. *Apud eum sic fui, tanquam domi meæ.* Cic. Fam. 13, 69. *Nonne mavis sine pericŭlo domi tuæ esse, quàm cum pericŭlo aliēnæ* ib. 4, 7. *Me domo meâ expulistis, Cn. Pompeium domum suam compulistis.* Cis. Pis. 7. *Alius, alium domos suas invītant.* Sall. Jug. 66. *add.* Liv. 2, 7. *Aurum atque argentum, et alia, quæ prima ducuntur, domum regiam comportant.* Sall. Jug. 76.—*RUS* and *rure* in the singular, joined with an adj. are found without a preposition; as, *appropinquante vespĕre, equum conscendit, et rus urbānum contendit,* sc. *ad.* Justin. 31, 2; *quartumque apud lapĭdem suburbāno rure substitĕrat.* Tac. An. 15, 60.—but never *rura* in the plural; as, *ubi dilapsi domos, et in rura vestra erĭtis.* Liv. 39. 16.

Obs. 3. (312) When *domus* has another substantive in the genitive after it, the preposition is sometimes used, and sometimes not; as, *Deprehensus est domi, domo,* or *in domo Cæsăris.*

LIV. (313) To names of countries, provinces, and all other places, except towns, the preposition is commonly added; as,

When the question is made by,
Ubi? *Natus in Italiâ, in Latio, in urbe, &c.*
Quo? *Abiit in Italiam, in Latium, in* or *ad urbem, &c.*
Unde? *Rediit ex Italiâ, e Latio, ex urbe, &c.*
Qua? *Transit per Italiam, per Latium, per urbem, &c.*

Obs. 1. (314) A preposition is often added to names of towns; as, *In Româ*, for *Romæ; ad Romam, ex Româ*, &c.

(315) *Peto* always governs the accusative as an active verb, without a preposition; as, *Petīvit Egyptum*, He went to Egypt.

Obs. 2. (316) Names of countries, provinces, &c. are sometimes construed without the preposition, like names of towns; as, *Pompeius Cypri visus est.* Cæs. *Cretæ jussit considĕre Apollo.* Virg. *Non Lybiæ*, for *in Lybiâ, non antè Tyro*, for *Tyri.* Id. Æn. iv. 36. *Venit Sardiniam.* Cic. *Romæ, Numidiæque facinŏra ejus memŏrat*, for *et in Numidiâ.* Sall.

4. MEASURE AND DISTANCE.

LV. (317) Measure or distance is put in the accusative, and sometimes in the ablative; as,

Murus est decem pedes altus,	The wall is ten feet high.
Urbs distat triginta millia, or *triginta millĭbus passuum,*	The city is thirty miles distant.
Iter, or *itinĕre unius diēi,*	One day's journey.

Obs. 1. (318) The accusative or ablative of measure is put after adjectives and verbs of dimension; as, *Longus, latus, crassus, profundus*, and *altus: Patet, porrigĭtur, emĭnet*, &c. The names of measure are, *pes, cubĭtus, ulna, passus, digĭtus*, an inch; *palmus*, a span, an hand-breadth, &c. The accusative or ablative of distance is used only after verbs which express motion or distance; as, *Eo, curro, absum, disto*, &c. The accusative is governed by *ad* or *per* understood, and the ablative by *a* or *ab*.

Obs. 2. (319) When we express the measure of more things than one, we commonly use the distributive number; as, *Muri sunt denos pedes alti*, and sometimes *denûm pedum*, for *denōrum*, in the genitive, *ad mensūram* being understood. But the genitive is only used to express the measure of things in the plural number.

Obs. 3. (320) When we express the distance of a place where any thing is done, we commonly use the ablative; or the accusative with the preposition *ad*; as, *Sex millĭbus passuum ab urbe consēdit*, or *ad sex millia passuum.* Cæs. *Ad quintum milliarium*, or *milliāre, consēdit.* Cic. *Ad quintum lapĭdem.* Nep.

Obs. 4. (321) The excess or difference of measure and distance is put in the ablative; as,

Hoc lignum excēdit illud digĭto. Toto vertĭce supra est, Virg. *Britanniæ longitūdo ejus latitudĭnem ducentis quadraginta milliarĭbus supĕrat.*

5. TIME.

LVI. (322) Time *when* is put in the ablative; as,

Venit horâ tertiâ, He came at three o'clock.

¶ (323) Time *how long* is put in the accusative or ablative, but oftenor in the accusative; as,

Mansit paucos dies, He staid a few days.
Sex mensĭbus abfuit, He was away six months.

Obs. 1. (324) When we speak of any precise time, it is put in the ablative; but when continuance of time is expressed, it is put for the most part in the accusative.

Obs. 2. (325) All the circumstances of time are often expressed with a preposition; as, *In præsentiâ,* or *in præsenti,* scil. *tempŏre; in* or *ad præsens; Per decem annos; Surgunt de nocte; ad horam destinātam; Intra annum; Per idem tempus, ad Kalendas solutūrus ait.* Suet. The preposition *ad* or *circa* is sometimes suppressed, as in these expressions, *hoc, illud, id, isthuc, ætātis, tempŏris, horæ,* &c. for *hâc ætāte, hoc tempŏre,* &c. And *ante* or some other word; as, *Annos natus unum & viginti,* sc. *ante. Sicŭli quotannis tribūta confĕrunt,* sc. *tot annis, quot* or *quotquot sunt.* Cic. *Prope diem,* sc. *ad,* soon; *Oppĭdum paucis diebus, quibus eò ventum est, expugnātum,* sc. *post eos dies.* Cæs. *Ante diem tertium Kalendas Maias accēpi tuas litĕras,* for *die tertio ante.* Cic. *Qui dies futūrus esset in ante diem octāvum Kalendas Novembris.* Id. *Exante diem quintum Kal. Octob.* Liv. *Lacedæmonii septingentos jam annos amplius unis morĭbus et nunquam mutātis legĭbus vivunt,* sc. *quàm per.* Cic. We find *Primum stipendium meruit annōrum decem septemque,* sc. *Attĭcus;* for *septemdĕcim annos natus,* seventeen years old. Nep.

Obs. 3. (326) The adverb *ABHINC,* which is commonly used with respect to past time, is joined with the accusative or ablative without a preposition; as, *factum est abhinc biennio* or *biennium,* It was done two years ago. So likewise are *post* and *ante;* as, *Paucos post annos;* but here *ea* or *id* may be understood.

COMPOUND SENTENCES.

A compound sentence is that which has more than one nominative, or one finite verb.

A compound sentence is made up of two or more simple sentences or *phrases,* and is commonly called a *Period.*

The parts of which a compound sentence consists, are called *Members* or *Clauses.*

In every compound sentence there are either several subjects and one attribute, or several attributes and one subject, or both several subjects and severa

attributes; that is, there are either several nominatives applied to the same verb, or several verbs applied to the same nominative, or both.

Every verb marks a judgment, or attribute, and every attribute must have a subject. There must, therefore, be in every sentence or period, as many propositions as there are verbs of a finite mode.

Sentences are compounded by means of relatives and conjunctions; as,

Happy is the man who *loveth religion*, and *practiseth virtue.*

THE CONSTRUCTION OF RELATIVES.

LVII. (327) The relative *Qui, Quæ, Quod,* agrees with the antecedent in gender, number and person; and is construed through all the cases, as the antecedent would be in its place; as,

Singular.		*Plural.*
Vir qui,	The man who.	*Viri qui.*
Fœmĭna quæ,	The woman who.	*Fœmĭnæ quæ.*
Negotium quod,	The thing which.	*Negotia quæ.*
Ego qui scribo,	I who write.	*Nos qui scribĭmus.*
Tu qui scribis,	Thou who writest.	*Vos qui scribĭtis.*
Vir qui scribit,	The man who writes.	*Viri qui scribunt.*
Mulier quæ scribit,	The woman who writes.	*Mulĭeres quæ scribunt.*
Anĭmal quod currit,	The animal which runs.	*Animalia quæ currunt.*
Vir quem vidi,	The man whom I saw.	*Viri quos vidi.*
Mulier quam vidi,	The woman whom I saw.	*Mulĭeres quas vidi.*
Anĭmal quod vidi,	The animal which I saw.	*Animalia quæ vidi.*
Vir cui paret,	The man whom he obeys.	*Viri quibus paret.*
Vir cui est simĭlis,	The man to whom he is like.	*Viri quibus est simĭlis.*
Vir a quo,	The man by whom.	*Viri a quibus.*
Mulier ad quam,	The woman to whom.	*Mulĭeres ad quas.*
Vir cujus opus est,	The man whose work it is.	*Viri quorum opus est.*

Vir quem misereor,
cujus misereor, or *miseresco,* } The man whom I pity.
cujus me misĕret,
cujus or *cuja intĕrest, &c.* whose interest it is, &c.

(328) If no nominative come between the relative and the verb, the relative will be the nominative to the verb.

(329) But if a nominative come between the relative and the verb, the relative will be of that case, which the verb or noun following, or the preposition going before, usually govern.

Thus the construction of the relative requires an acquaintance with most of the foregoing rules of syntax, and may serve as an exercise on all of them.

Obs. 1. (330) The relative must always have an antecedent expressed or understood, and therefore may be considered as an adjective

placed between two cases of the same substantive, of which the one is always expressed, generally the former; as,

Vir qui (vir) *legit; vir quem* (virum) *amo:* Sometimes the latter; as, *Quam quisque nōrit artem, in hāc* (arte) *se exerceat.* Cic. *Eunūchum, quem dedisti nobis, quas turbas dedit.* Ter. sc. *Eunūchus.* Sometimes both cases are expressed; as, *Erant omnīno duo itinĕra, quibus itinerĭbus domo exīre possent.* Cæs. Sometimes, though more rarely, both cases are omitted; as, *Sunt, quos genus hoc minĭmè juvat,* for *sunt homĭnes, quos homĭnes,* &c. Hor.

Obs. 2. (331) When the relative is placed between two substantives of different genders, it may agree in gender with either of them, though most commonly with the former; as,

Vultus quem dixēre chaos. Ovid. *Est locus in carcĕre, quod Tulliānum appellātur.* Sall. *Anĭmal, quem vocămus homĭnem.* Cic. *Cogĭto id quod res est.* Ter. If a part of a sentence be the antecedent, the relative is always put in the neuter gender; as, *Pompeius se afflixit, quod mihi est summo dolōri,* scil. *Pompeium se affligĕre.* Cic. Sometimes the relative does not agree in gender with the antecedent, but with some synonymous word implied; as, *Scelus qui,* for *scelestus.* Ter. *Abundantia eărum rerum, quæ mortāles prima putant,* scil. *negotia.* Sall. *Vel virtus tua me vel vicinĭtas,* quod *ego in alĭquā parte amicitiæ puto, facit ut te meneam,* scil. *negotium.* Ter. *In omni Afrĭcā, qui agēbant;* for *in omnĭbus Afris.* Sallust. Jug. 89. *Non diffidentiā futūri, quæ imperavisset* for *quod.* Ib. 100.

Obs. 3. (332) When the relative comes after two words of different persons, it agrees with the first or second person rather than the third; as, *Ego sum vir, qui facio,* scarcely *facit.* In English it sometimes agrees with either; as, *I am the man, who make,* or *maketh.* But when once the person of the relative is fixed, it ought to be continued through the rest of the sentence; thus it is proper to say, "I am the man who takes care of your interest," but if I add, "at the expense of my own," it would be improper. It ought either to be, "his own," or "who take." In like manner, we may say, "I thank you who gave, who did love," &c. But it is improper to say, "I thank thee, who gave, who did love;" it should be "who gavest, who didst love." In no part of English syntax are inaccuracies committed more frequently than in this. Beginners are particularly apt to fall into them, in turning Latin into English. The reason of it seems to be our applying *thou* or *you, thy* or *your,* promiscuously, to express the second person singular, whereas the Latins almost always expressed it by *tu* and *tuus.*

Obs. 4. (333) The antecedent is often implied in a possessive adjective; as,

Omnes laudāre fortūnas meas, qui habērem gnatum tali ingenio prædĭtum. Ter. Sometimes the antecedent must be drawn from the sense of the foregoing words; as, *Carne pluit, quem imbrem aves rapuisse feruntur;* i. e. *pluit imbrem carne, quem imbrem,* &c. Liv. *Si tempus est ullum jure homĭnis necandi, quæ multa sunt;* scil. *tempŏra.* Cic.

Obs. 5. (334) The relative is sometimes entirely omitted; as, *Urbs antīqua fuit: Tyrii tenuēre colōni,* scil. *quam or eam.* Virg. Or, if once expressed, is afterwards omitted, so that it must be supplied in a different case; as, *Bocchus*

cum peditĭbus, quos filius ejus adduxĕrat, neque in priōre pugnâ adfuĕrant, Romānos invādunt: for *quique in priōre pugnâ non adfuĕrant.* Sall. In English the relative is often omitted, where in Latin it must be expressed; as, *The letter I wrote*, for *the letter which I wrote; The man I love*, to wit, *whom*. But this omission of the relative is generally improper, particularly in serious discourse.

Obs. 6. (335) The case of the relative sometimes seems to depend on that of the antecedent; as, *Cum alĭquid agas eōrum, quorum consuēsti*, for *quæ uconsuēsti agĕre*, or *quorum alĭquid agĕre consuēsti.* Cic. *Restitue in quem me accepisti locum*, for *in locum, in quo.* Ter. And. iv. 1. 58. But such examples rarely occur.

Obs. 7. (336) The adjective pronouns, *ille, ipse, iste, hic, is*, and *idem*, in their construction, resemble that of the relative *qui;* as, *Liber ejus*, His *or* her book; *Vita eōrum*, Their life, when applied to men; *Vita eārum*, Their life, when applied to women. By the improper use of these pronouns in English, the meaning of sentences is often rendered obscure.

Obs. 8. (337) The interrogative or indefinite adjectives, *qualis, quantus, quotus*, &c. are also sometimes construed like relatives; as, *Facies est, qualem decet esse sorōrum.* Ovid. But these have commonly other adjectives either expressed or understood, which answer to them; as, *Tanta est multitūdo, quantam urbs capĕre potest:* and are often applied to different substantives; as, *Quales sunt cives, talis est civĭtas.* Cic.

Obs. 9. (338) The relative *who* in English is applied only to persons, and *which* to things and irrational animals; but formerly *which* was likewise applied to persons; as, *Our father, which art in heaven;* and *whose*, the genitive of *who*, is also used sometimes, though perhaps improperly, for *of which*. *That* is used indifferently for persons and things. *What*, when not joined with a substantive, is only applied to things, and includes both the antecedent and the relative, being the same with *that which*, or *the thing which;* as, *That is what he wanted;* that is, *the thing which he wanted.*

Obs. 10. (339) The Latin relative often cannot be translated literally into English, on account of the different idioms of the two languages; as, *Quod cum ita esset*, When that was so; not, which when it was so, because then there would be two nominatives to the verb *was*, which is improper. Sometimes the accusative of the relative in Latin must be rendered by the nominative in English; as, *Quem dicunt me esse?* Who do they say that I am? *not* whom. *Quem dicunt adventāre*, Who do they say is coming?

Obs. 11. (340) As the relative is always connected with a different verb from the antecedent, it is usually construed with the subjunctive mode, unless when the meaning of the verb is expressed positively; as, *Audīre cupio, quæ legĕris*, I want to hear, what you have read; that is, what perhaps or probably you may have read; *Audīre cupio, quæ legisti*, I want to hear, what you (*actually or in fact*) have read.

(341) To the construction of the Relative may be subjoined that of the ANSWER TO A QUESTION.

The answer is commonly put in the same case with the question; as,

Quì vocāre? Geta, sc. *vocor. Quid quæris? Librum*, sc. *quæro. Quotâ horâ venisti? Sextâ.* Sometimes the construction is varied; as, *Cujus est liber? Meus*, not *mei*. *Quanti emptus est! Decem assĭbus. Damnatusne es furti? Imo alio crimĭne.* Often the answer is made by other parts of speech than nouns;

as, *Quid agĭtur? Statur*, sc. *a me, a nobis. Quis fecit? Nescio: Aiunt Petrum fecisse. Quomŏdo vales? Benè, malè. Scripsistine? Scripsi, ita, etiam, immo*, &c. *An vidisti? Non vidi, non, minĭme*, &c. *Chærea tuam vestem detraxit tibi? Factum. Et eâ est indūtus? Factum.* Ter. Most of the Rules of Syntax may thus be exemplified in the form of questions and answers.

* THE RELATIVE WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

To ascertain when the Relative pronoun should be joined to the Indicative and when to the Subjunctive mode, is one of the greatest difficulties which the Latin language presents to the student of the classics. The following Rules will be found, it is believed, to embrace every thing important upon the subject.

* Rule 1. (342) When the Relative clause expresses no sentiment of the writer's, but refers that sentiment, directly or indirectly, to the persons of whom he is speaking, the Relative must be joined with the Subjunctive mode. Thus: Quoniam gemini essent, nec ætatis verecundia discrimen facere posset, ut Dii *quorum* tutelæ ea loca *essent*, auguriis legerent, qui nomen novæ urbi daret, Liv. 1. 6. The relative clause expresses a sentiment of the founders of the city, and is much the same as if the historian had said, 'That the gods, under whose protection *they conceived*, those places were,' &c. The following passage will still further illustrate this distinction. "Thus born and thus elected king, he has favoured the meanest sort of mankind, whence he himself is sprung; and the burdens, which were formerly common, he has laid on the principal citizens." These, supposed to be the very words of Tarquin, addressed to the Senators, would be thus rendered, "*Ita natus, ita creatus rex, fautor infimi generis hominum, ex quo* ***EST*** *ipse, omnia onera, quæ communia quondam* ***FUERUNT***, *in primores civitātis inclinavit.*" But as the historian (Liv. 1. 47.) has not introduced Tarquin as addressing the senate in his own words, but has merely detailed the sentiments which he expressed, the passage reads thus,—the verbs being in the subjunctive mode—*Ita natum, ita creatum regem, fautorem infimi generis hominum, ex quo ipse* ***SIT***, *onera, quæ communia quondam* ***FUERINT***, *inclinasse in primores civitatis*, He said, "that being thus born," &c.

* Rule 2. (343) The Relative pronoun is joined to the Subjunctive mode, when the relative clause expresses *the reason*, or *cause* of the action, state, or event, and may generally be rendered in English by the preposition *In*, and the imperfect participle. Thus, 'Hannibal did wrong in wintering at Capua,' that is, 'because he wintered,' *Male fecit, Hannibal*, QUI *Capuæ* HIEMARIT. If we should say, *Male fecit, qui hiemavit*, we impute error to the person who wintered, but do not express the error as consisting in his wintering.

* Rule 3. (344) When the Relative pronoun follows an interrogative clause, in which the interrogative is equivalent to an affirmation or negation, the relative is joined with the Subjunctive mode. Thus, *Quis*

est enim, cui non perspicua sint illa? Cic. 'Who is there to whom these things are not clear? So also after a negation which expresses an affirmation; as, *nemo est, qui haud intelligat*, 'there is no man who does not understand.' But when a sentence implies a question put for information, the Relative takes the Indicative mode; as, *Quis est qui Æsculapium salutat*, Plaut. *Quis est qui salutet* would signify 'who is there that salutes,' implying 'nobody salutes.' Again, if we say, *Nemo est qui ita* EXISTIMAT, it strictly means, 'he who thinks so is nobody,' that is, 'a person of no consequence;' here *nemo est* is the predicate, and the relative clause, *qui ita existimat*, the subject. If we say, *nemo est qui ita existimet*, it means, 'there is no one who thinks so,' where *nemo* is the subject, and the other clause the predicate.

* Rule 4. (345) The Relative is joined to the Subjunctive mode, when, in order to impart greater emphasis, a periphrasis with the verb *Sum* is employed instead of simply the nominative with the principal verb. Thus, instead of saying, *Nonnulli dicunt*, we say, *Sunt qui dicant*, Cic. 'there are persons who say.' This phraseology is employed to excite the particular attention of the reader, as the word *there* is frequently employed in English. *Fuerint qui censerent*, 'there have been persons who thought.'

* Rule 5. (346) When *Is qui, Ille qui, Hic qui*, are used for 'such,' 'that,' or in other words, when *Qui* is used for *Ut ego, Ut tu, Ut ille*, it is joined with the Subjunctive mode. *Atque* ILLÆ *dissentiones erant hujus modi, Quirites*, QUÆ . . . PERTINERENT. Cic. 'The dissentions were such that,' or 'of that kind that,' &c.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF CONJUNCTIONS.

LVIII. (347) The conjunctions, *et, ac, atque, nec, neque, aut, vel*, and some others, couple similar cases and modes; as,

Honōra patrem et matrem,	Honour father and mother.
Nec legit nec scribit,	He neither reads nor writes.

Obs. 1. (348) To this rule belong particularly the copulative and disjunctive conjunctions; as likewise, *quàm, nisi, præterquam, an*; and also adverbs of likeness; as, *ceu, tanquam, quasi, ut*, &c. as,

Nullum prœmium a vobis postŭlo, præterquam hujus diēi memoriam. Cic. *Gloria virtūtem tanquam umbra sequĭtur*. Id.

Obs. 2. (349) These conjunctions properly connect the different members of a sentence together, and are hardly ever applied to single words, unless when some other word is understood. Hence, if the

construction of the sentence be varied, different cases and modes may be coupled together; as,

Intĕrest mea et reipublĭcæ; Constĭtit asse et pluris; Sive es Romæ, sive in Epīro; Decius cum se devovēret, et in mediam aciem ruēbat. Cic. *Vir magni ingenii summâque industriâ; Neque per vim, neque insidiis.* Sall. *Tecum habĭta,* et *nôris, quàm sit tibi curta supellex.* Pers.

Obs. 3. (350) When *et, aut, vel, sive,* or *nec,* are joined to different members of the same sentence, without connecting it particularly to any former sentence, the first *et* is rendered in English by *both* or *likewise; aut* or *vel,* by *either;* the first *sive,* by *whether;* and the first *nec,* by *neither;* as,

Et legit, et scribit; so, *tum legit, tum scribit;* or *cum legit, tum scribit,* He both reads and writes; *Sive legit, sive scribit,* Whether he reads or writes; *Jacĕre quà vera, quà falsa; Increpāre quà consŭles ipsos, quà exercĭtum,* To upbraid both the consuls and the army. Liv.

LIX. (351) Two or more substantives singular coupled by a conjunction, (as, *et, ac, atque,* &c.) have an adjective, verb, or relative plural; as,

Petrus et Joannes, qui sunt docti, Peter and John, who are learned.

Obs. 1. (352) If the substantives be of different persons, the verb plural must agree with the first person rather than the second, and with the second rather than the third; as, *Si tu et Tullia valētis, ego et Cicĕro valēmus,* If you and Tullia are well, I and Cicero are well. Cic. In English, the person speaking usually puts himself last; thus, *You and I read; Cicero and I are well;* but in Latin the person who speaks is generally put first; thus, *Ego et tu legĭmus.*

Obs. 2. (353) If the substantives are of different genders, the adjective or relative plural must agree with the masculine rather than the feminine or neuter; as, *Pater et mater, qui sunt mortui;* but this is only applicable to beings which may have life. The person is sometimes implied; as, *Athenārum et Cratippi, ad quos,* &c. *Propter summam doctōris auctoritātem et urbis, quorum alter,* &c. Cic. Where *Athenæ* and *urbs* are put for *the learned men* of Athens. So in substantives; as, *Ad Ptolemæum Cleopatramque reges legāti missi,* i. e. the king and queen. Liv.

Obs. 3. (354) If the substantives signify things without life, the adjective or relative plural must be put in the neuter gender; as, *Divitiæ, decus, gloria, in ocŭlis sita sunt.* Sall.

The same holds, if any of the substantives signify a thing without life; because when we apply a quality or join an adjective to several substantives of different genders, we must reduce the substantives to some certain class, under which they may all be comprehended, that is, to what is called their *Genus*. Now, the *Genus* or class, which comprehends under it both persons and things, is that of substantives or beings in general, which are neither masculine nor feminine. To express this, the Latin grammarians use the word *Negotia*.

Obs. 4. (355) The adjective or verb frequently agrees with the nearest substantive or nominative, and is understood to the rest; this is by the figure called *Zeugma*.

Et ego et Cicĕro meus flagitābit. Cic. *Sŏciis et rege recepto.* Virg. *Et ego in culpâ sum, et tu,* Both I am in the fault, and you; or, *Et ego et tu es in culpâ,* Both I and you are in the fault. *Nihil hic nisi carmĭna, desunt;* or *nihil hic deest nisi carmĭna. Omnia, quibus turbāri solĭta erat civĭtas, domi discordia, foris bellum exortum; Duo millia et quadringenti cæsi.* Liv. This construction is most usual when the different substantives resemble one another in sense; as, *Mens, ratio, et consilium, in senĭbus est,* Understanding, reason, and prudence, is in old men. *Quibus ipse meĭque ante Larem proprium vescor,* for *vescĭmur.* Horat.

Obs. 5. (356) The plural is sometimes used after the preposition *cum* put for *et;* as,

Remo cum fratre Quirīnus jura dabunt. Virg. The conjunction is frequently understood; as, *dum ætas, metus, magister prohibēbant.* Ter. *Frons, ocŭli, vultus sæpe mentiuntur.* Cic.

The different examples comprehended under this rule are commonly referred to the figure *Syllepsis.*

LX. (357) The conjunctions *ut, quo, licet, ne, utĭnam,* and *dummŏdo,* are for the most part joined to the subjunctive mode; as,

Lego ut discam,	I read that I may learn.
Utĭnam sapĕres,	I wish you were wise.

Obs. 1. (358) All interrogatives, when placed indefinitely, have after them the subjunctive mode.

Whether they be adjectives, as, *Quantus, qualis, quotus, quotŭplex, uter;* Pronouns, as, *quis & cujas;* Adverbs, as, *Ubi, quo, unde, qua, quorsum, quamdĭu, quamdŭdum, quamprĭdem, quoties, cur, quare, quamobrem, dum, utrum, quomŏdo, quì, ut, quàm, quantopĕre;* or Conjunctions, as, *ne, an, anne, annon:* Thus, *Quis est?* Who is it? *Nescio quis sit,* I do not know who it is. *An ventūrus est! Nescio, dubĭto, an ventūrus sit. Vides ut alta stet nive candĭdum Soracte?* Hor. But these words are sometimes joined with the indicative; as, *Scio quid ego.* Plaut. *Haud scio, an amat.* Ter. *Vide avaritia quid facit.* Id. *Vides quàm turpe est.* Cic.

¶ (359) In like manner the relative QUI in a continued discourse; as, *Nihil est quod Deus efficere non possit. Quis est, qui utilia fugiat?* Cic. Or when joined with QUIPPE or UTPOTE; *Neque Antonius procul abĕrat, utpŏte qui sequerĕtur,*

&c. Sall. But these are sometimes, although more rarely, joined with the indicative. So, *est qui, sunt qui, est quando* or *ubi, &c.* are joined with the indicative or subjunctive.

Note. *Haud scio an recte dixĕrim* is the same with *dico, affirmo.* Cic.

Obs. 2. (360) When any thing doubtful or contingent is signified, conjunctions and indefinites are usually construed with the subjunctive; but when a more absolute or determinate sense is expressed, with the indicative mode; as, *If he is to do it; Although he was rich,* &c.

Obs. 3. (361) ETSI, TAMETSI and TAMENETSI, QUANQUAM, in the beginning of a sentence, have the indicative; but elsewhere they also take the subjunctive; ETIAMSI and QUAMVIS commonly have the subjunctive, and UT, although, always has it; as, *Ut quæras, non reperies.* Cic. QUONIAM, QUANDO, QUANDOQUIDEM, are usually construed with the indicative: SI, SIN, NE, NISI, SIQUIDEM, QUOD, and QUIA, sometimes with the indicative, and sometimes with the subjunctive. Dum, for *dummŏdo,* provided, has always the subjunctive; as, *Odĕrint dum metuant.* Cic. And QUIPPE, for *nam,* always the indicative; as, *Quippe vetor fatis.*

Obs. 4. (362) Some conjunctions have their correspondent conjunctions belonging to them; so that, in the following member of the sentence, the latter answers to the former: thus, when *etsi, tametsi,* or *quamvis,* although, are used in the former member of a sentence, *tamen,* yet *or* nevertheless, generally answers to them in the latter. In like manner, *Tam,—quam; Adeo* or *ita,—ut:* In English, *As,—as,* or *so;* as, *Etsi sit liberālis tamen non est profūsus,* Although he be liberal, yet he is not profuse. So *priùs* or *antè,—quàm.* In some of these, however, we find the latter conjunction sometimes omitted, particularly in English.

Obs. 5. (363) The conjunction *ut* is elegantly omitted after these verbs, *Volo, nolo, malo, rogo, precor, censeo, suadeo, licet, oportet, necesse est,* and the like; and likewise after these imperatives, *Sine, fac,* or *facĭto;* as, *Ducas volo hodie uxōrem; Nolo mentiāre; Fac cogĭtes.* Ter. In like manner *ne* is commonly omitted after *cave;* as, *Cave facias.* Cic. *Post* is also sometimes understood; thus, *Die octāvo, quam creātus erat.* Liv. 4, 47, scil. *post.* And so in English, *See you do it; I beg you would come to me,* scil. *that.*

Obs. 6. (364) *Ut* and *quòd* are thus distinguished: *ut* denotes the final cause, and is commonly used with regard to something future; *quòd* marks the efficient or impulsive cause, and is generally used concerning the event or thing done; as, *Lego ut discam,* I read that I may learn; *Gaudeo quòd legi,* I am glad that *or* because I have read. *Ut* is likewise used after these intensive words, as they are called, *Adeo, ita, sic, tam, talis, tantus, tot, &c.*

Obs. 7. (365) After the verbs *timeo, vereor,* and the like, *ut* is taken in a negative sense for *ne non,* and *ne* in an affirmative sense; as,

Timeo ne faciat, I fear he will do it; *Timeo ut faciat,* I fear he will not do it. *Id paves ne ducas tu illam, tu autem ut ducas.* Ter. *Ut sis vitālis, metuo.* Hor.

Timeo ut frater vivat, will not live;—*ne frater moriātur*, will die. But in some few examples they seem to have a contrary meaning.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF COMPARATIVES.

LXI. (366) The comparative degree governs the ablative, (when *Quam* is omitted); as,

Dulcior melle, sweeter *than* honey. *Præstantior auro*, better *than* gold.

Obs. 1. (367) The positive with the adverb *magis*, likewise governs the ablative; as, *Magis dilecta luce.* Virg.

The ablative is here governed by the preposition *præ* understood, which is sometimes expressed; as, *Fortior præ cætĕris.* We find the comparative also construed with other prepositions; as, *immanior ante omnes.* Virg.

Obs. 2. (368) The comparative degree may likewise be construed with the conjunction *quàm*, and then, instead of the ablative, the noun is to be put in whatever case the sense requires; as,

Dulcior quàm mel, scil. *est.* *Amo te magis quàm illum*, I love you more than him, that is, *quàm amo illum*, than I love him. *Amo te magis quàm ille*, I love you more than he, i. e. *quàm ille amat*, than he loves. *Plus datur a me quàm illo*, sc. *ab.*

Obs. 3. (369) The conjunction *quàm* is often elegantly suppressed after *amplius* and *plus;* as,

Vulnerantur amplius sexcenti, scil. *quàm*. Cæs. *Plus quingentos colăphos infrĕgit mihi*, He has laid on me more than five hundred blows. Ter. *Castra ab urbe haud plus quinque millia passuum locant*, sc. *quàm*. Liv.

(370) *Quàm* is sometimes elegantly placed between two comparatives; as,

Triumphus clarior quàm gratior. Liv. Or the prep. *pro* is added; as, *Prælium atrocius, quàm pro numĕro pugnantium edĭtur*. Liv.

(371) The comparative is sometimes joined with these ablatives, *opiniōne*, *spe*, *æquo*, *justo*, *dicto;* as,

Credibĭli opiniōne major. Cic. *Credibĭli fortior*. Ovid. Fast. iii. 618. *Gravius æquo*. Sall. *Dicto citius*. Virg. *Majōra credibĭli tulĭmus*. Liv. They are often understood; as, *Liberius vivèbat*, sc. *justo*, too freely. Nepos. 2, 1.

(372) *Nihil* is sometimes elegantly used for *nemo* or *nulli;* as,

Nihil vidi quidquam lætius, for *nemĭnem*. Ter. *Crasso nihil perfectius*. Cic. *Asperius nihil est humĭli, cum surgit in altum*. So, *quid nobis laboriosius*, for *quis*, &c. Cic. We say, *inferior patre nullâ re*, or *quàm pater*. The comparative is sometimes repeated, or joined with an adverb; as, *Magis magisque, plus plusque, minus minusque, carior cariorque; Quotidie plus, indies magis, semper candidior candidiorque*, &c.

Obs. 4. (373) The relation of equality or sameness is likewise expressed by conjunctions; as, *Est tam doctus quâm ego*, He is as learned as I. *Anĭmus erga te idem est ac fuit.* *Ac* and *atque* are sometimes, though more rarely, used after comparatives; as, *Nihil est magis verum atque hoc.* Ter.

Obs. 5. (374) The excess or defect of measure is put in the ablative after comparatives; and the sign in English is *by*, expressed or understood; (*or more shortly*, the difference of measure is put in the ablative;) as,

Est decem digĭtis altior quàm frater, He is ten inches taller than his brother, *or* by ten inches. *Altĕro tanto major est fratre*, i. e. *duplo major*, He is as big again as his brother, or twice as big. *Sesquipĕde minor*, a foot and a half less; *Altĕro tanto, aut sesquimājor*, as big again, or a half bigger. Cic. *Ter tanto pejor est; Bis tanto amīci sunt inter se, quàm priùs.* Plaut. *Quinquies tanto amplius, quàm quantum licĭtum sit, civitatĭbus imperāvit*, five times more. Cic. To this may be added many other ablatives, which are joined with the comparative, to increase its force; as. *Tanto, quanto, quo, eo, hoc, multo, paulo, nimio*, &c. thus, *Quo plus habent, eo plus cupiunt*, The more they have, the more they desire. *Quanto melior, tanto felicior*, The better, the happier. *Quoque minor spes est, hoc magis ille cupit.* Ovid. Fast. ii. 766. We frequently find *multo, tanto, quanto*, also joined with superlatives; *Multo pulcherrĭmam eam haberēmus.* Sall. *Multoque id maxĭmum fuit.* Liv.

THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

LXII. (375) A Substantive and a Participle are put in the Ablative, when their case depends on no other word; as,

Sole oriente, fugiunt tenebræ,	The sun rising, *or* while the sun riseth, darkness flies away.
Opĕre peracto, ludēmus,	Our work being finished, *or* when our work is finished, we will play.

So, *Dominante libidĭne, temperantiæ nullus est locus; Nihil amicitiâ præstabilius est, exceptâ virtūte; Oppressâ libertāte patriæ, nihil est quod sperēmus amplius; Nobilium vitâ victūque mutāto, mores mutāri civitātum puto.* Cic. *Parumper silentium et quies fuit, nec Etruscis, nisi cogerentur, pugnam initūris, et dictatōre arcem Romānam respectante, ac ab augurĭbus, simul aves ritè admisissent, ex composĭto tollerētur signum.* Liv. *Bellĭce, deposĭtis clypeo paulisper et hastâ, Mars ades.* Ovid, Fast. iii. 1.

Obs. 1. (376) This ablative is called *Absolute*, because it does not depend upon any other word in the sentence.

For if the substantive with which the participle is joined, be either the nominative to some following verb, or be governed by any word going before, then this rule does not take place; the ablative absolute is never used, unless when different persons or things are spoken of; as, *Milĭtes, hostĭbus victis, rediērunt.* The soldiers, having conquered the enemy, returned. *Hostĭbus victis*, may be rendered in English several different ways, according to the meaning of the sen-

tence with which it is joined; thus, 1. *The enemy conquered*, or *being conquered*. 2. *When* or *after the enemy is* or *was conquered*. 3. *By conquering the enemy*. 4. *Upon the defeat of the enemy, &c.*

* (377) Though an independent substantive, joined to a participle, be generally put in the ablative in Latin, it is sometimes with peculiar elegance and precision, put under the government of the verb in the succeeding clause. Thus, 'Having taken Regulus prisoner they send him to Carthage.' *Regulum captum Carthaginem miserunt.* Here *Regulum* is governed by *miserunt*. There are not wanting examples, however, to justify another phraseology, namely, *Regulo capto, eum Carthaginem miserunt.* But the latter form of expression is much less precise, for it does not so clearly signify, that the person taken was the person sent; as the pronoun *eum* might refer to some other person.

Obs. 2. (378) The perfect participles of deponent verbs are not used in the ablative absolute; as, *Cicĕro locūtus hæc consēdit*, never, *his locūtis*. The participles of common verbs may either agree in case with the substantive before them, like the participles of deponent verbs, or may be put in the ablative absolute, like the participles of passive verbs; as, *Romāni adepti libertātem floruērunt*; or *Romāni, libertāte adeptâ, floruērunt.* But as the participles of common verbs are seldom taken in a passive sense, we therefore rarely find them used in the ablative absolute.

Obs. 3. (379) The participle *existente* or *existentĭbus* is frequently understood; as, *Cæsăre duce*, scil. *existente*. *His consulĭbus*, scil. *existentĭbus*. *Invītâ Minervâ*, sc. *existente*, against the grain; *Crassâ Minervâ*, without learning. Hor. *Magistrâ ac duce natūrâ; vivis fratrĭbŭs; te hortatōre; Cæsăre impulsōre*, &c. Sometimes the substantive must be supplied; as, *Nondum comperto, quam regiōnem hostes petīssent*, i. e. *cum nondum compertum esset.* Liv. *Tum demum palam facto*, sc. *negotio*. Id. *Excepto quòd non simul esses, cætĕra lætus.* Hor. *Parto quod avēbas.* Id. In such examples *negotio* must be understood, or the rest of the sentence considered as the substantive, which perhaps is more proper. Thus we find a verb supply the place of a substantive; as, *Vale dicto*, having said farewell. Ovid.

Obs. 4. (380) We sometimes find a substantive plural joined with a participle singular; as, *Nobis presente*. Plaut. *Absente nobis.* Ter. We also find the ablative absolute, when it refers to the same person with the nominative to the verb; as, *me duce, ad hunc voti finem, me milĭte, veni.* Ovid. Amor. ii. 12. 12. *Lætos fecit se consŭle fastos.* Lucan. v. 384. *Popŭlo spectante fiĕri credam, quicquid me conscio faciam.* Senec. de Vit. Beat. c. 20. But examples of this construction rarely occur.

Obs. 5. (381) The ablative called *absolute* is governed by some preposition understood; as, *a, ab, cum, sub*, or *in*. We find the preposition sometimes expressed; as, *Cum diis juvantĭbus.* Liv. The nominative likewise seems sometimes to be used absolutely; as, *Perniciōsâ libidĭne paulisper usus, infirmĭtas natūræ accusātur.* Sall. Jug. 1.

Obs. 6. (382) The ablative absolute may be rendered several different ways; thus, *Superbo regnante*, is the same with *cum*, *dum*, or *quando Superbus regnābat*. *Opĕre peracto*, is the same with *Post opus peractum*, or *Cum opus est peractum*. The present participle, when used in the ablative absolute, commonly ends in *e*.

Obs. 7. (383) When a substantive is joined with a participle, in English, independent of the rest of the sentence, it is expressed in the nominative; as, *Illo descendente*, He descending. But this manner of speech is seldom used except in poetry.

II. FIGURES OF SYNTAX.

A figure is a manner of speaking different from the ordinary and plain way, used for the sake of beauty or force.

The Figures of Syntax may be reduced to four kinds, *Ellipsis*, *Pleonasm*, *Enallage*, and *Hyperbaton*.

1. ELLIPSIS.

*(384) ELLIPSIS is the omission of some word or words necessary to complete the regular Syntax. When the word to be supplied is not to be found in any part of the sentence, the Ellipsis is termed *strict.* It affects all the parts of speech; thus,

*(385) 1. The Noun; as, *Aiunt*, supply *homines*. 2. The Adjective; as, *Non est oneri ferendo*, supply *aptus*. 3. The Pronoun; as, *Studendum est*, supply *mihi*. 4. The Verb; as, *Quid multa*, supply *dicam*. 5. The Participle; as, *Saturno rege*, supply *ente* or *existente*. 6. The Adverb; as, *Vulnerantur amplius sexcenti*, Cæs. supply *quàm*. 7. The Interjection; as, *Me miserum*, supply *O* or *heu*. 8. The Conjunction; as will be seen under *Asyndeton*.

*(386) The Ellipsis is termed *lax* or *loose* when the word omitted may be supplied from some part of the sentence; as, *Virtus* (cogebat) *et honestas*, (cogebat) *et pudor cum consulibus esse cogebat*. Cic. Under *strict* Ellipsis are contained the figures, *Apposition*, *Synecdoche* and *Asyndeton*. Under *loose* Ellipsis, the figures *Zeugma*, *Syllipsis* and *Prolipsis*.

*(387) APPOSITION is, when, in putting two substantives together in the same case, *existens*, or the obsolete *ens*, or some other part of the verb *Sum* with a relative, is understood: as, *Urbs Roma*, i. e. *urbs existens* or *ens*, or *quæ est Roma*.

*(388) SYNECDOCHE is, when, instead of an Ablative of the part, or of the adjunct, an Accusative is used, the Greek *κατα*, *secundum*, or *quod attinet ad*, being understood: as, *Expleri* (quod attinet ad, or secundum) *mentem nequit*. Virg.

* (389) Asyndeton is the omission of a conjunction: as, *Abiit, excessit, evasit, erūpit*, Cic. scil. *et*.

* (390) Zeugma is, when an Adjective or Verb referring to different substantives, is expressed to the last only, with which it agrees, being understood to the rest: as, *Et genus, et virtus, nisi cum re, vilior algâ est.* Hor.

* (391) Syllepsis is, when the adjective or verb, joined to different substantives, agrees with the more worthy. In *gender* the Masculine is the more worthy: as, *Ut templi tetigêre gradus, procumbit uterque pronus, humi*, Ovid. i. e. *Deucalion et Pyrrha.* In *person* the First is the more worthy: as, *Sustulimus manus et ego et Balbus*, Cic.

*(392) Prolepsis is, when the parts, differing in number or in person from the whole, are placed after it, the verb or the adjective not being *repeated;* as, *Boni quoniam convenimus ambo, tu calamos inflare leves, ego dicere versus*, Virg. i. e. *tu convenisti bonus calamos inflare, ego conveni*, &c.

2. PLEONASM.

* (393) Pleonasm adds unnecessary words; as, *Video oculis*, 'I see with my eyes;' *Sic ore locuta est*, Virg. 'Thus she spoke with her mouth.' Under Pleonasm are comprehended, *Parelcon, Polysyndeton, Hendiadys*, and *Periphrasis.*

* (394) Parelcon is the addition of an unnecessary syllable or particle, to Pronouns, Verbs, and Adverbs, chiefly, perhaps, for the sake of emphasis: as, *egomet, agedum, fortassean.*

* (395) Polysyndeton, is a redundancy of conjunctions: as, *Unâ, Eurusque Notusque ruunt, creberque procellis*, Virg.

* (396) Hendiadys expresses one thing as if it were two: as, *Pateris libamus et auro*, Virg. for *aureis pateris.*

* (397) Periphrasis is, when several words are used to express one thing: as, *Urbs Trojæ*, for *Troja. Teneri fœtus ovium*, for *agni.*

* (398) *Quod si* often occurs at the beginning of a period for *Si.* In such cases, however, *quod* seems to refer to what precedes, to confirm the connexion and to promote perspicuity: it cannot, therefore be strictly redundant. It is an accusative with *propter* or *ad* or *quod attinet ad* understood, and may often be translated 'thence,' 'because.'

3. ENALLAGE.

* (399) Enallage, in a general sense, is the change of words, or of their accidents, one for another. There are various kinds of it:

viz. *Antimeria*, *Enallage* strictly so called, *Heterosis*, and *Antiptosis*. To *Enallage* may likewise be referred *Synĕsis*, *Anacoluthon*. *Hellenismus*, and *Archaismus*.

* (400) ANTIMERIA puts one part of speech for another: as, the noun for the pronoun; *Si quid in Flacco viri est*, Hor. for *in me*, as Horace is speaking of himself.

* (401) ENALLAGE, strictly so named, is when one word is substituted for another, the part of speech not being changed; as Noun for Noun, Verb for Verb, &c.: thus, the Noun substantive for the Noun adjective; *Exercitus victor*, for *victoriosus*.

* (402) HETEROSIS uses one Accident, especially of a noun, pronoun, or verb, for another: as, *nos*, *nobis*, *noster*, for *ego*, *mihi*, *meus*.

* (403) ANTIPTOSIS uses one case for another: as the Nominative for the Accusative: *Uxor invicti Jovis esse nescis*, Hor. for *te esse uxōrem*.

* (404) SYNESIS is when the construction refers to the sense, rather than to the precise nature of a word: as, *Clamor populi, mirantium quid rei est*, Liv. for *mirantis*.

* (405) ANACOLUTHON is when the Consequents do not agree with the Antecedents: as, *Nan nos omnes . . . . . lucro est*, Ter. in which the author began as if he intended to say *lucro habemus*, and ended as if he had said *nobis omnibus*. As the sentence is, there is no verb to which *nos omnes* is a nominative.

* (406) HELLENISMUS, or GRÆCISMUS, is in imitation of Greek construction; thus, *abstine irārum*. Hor. for *ab irâ*.

* (407) ARCHAISM is when an obsolete construction is used. Many examples of this figure will be found in the first book of Livy: e. g. the formulas of the heralds in declaring war.

4. HYPERBATON.

(408) HYPERBATON is the transgression of that order or arrangement of words, which is commonly used in any language. It is chiefly to be met with among the poets. The various sorts into which it is divided, are *Anastrŏphe*, *Hystĕron protĕron*, *Hypallăge*, *Synchĕsis*, *Tmesis*, and *Parenthĕsis*.

1. (409) ANASTROPHE is an inversion of words, or the placing of that word last which should be first; as, *Italiam contra; His accensa super; Spemque metumque inter dubii;* for *contra Italiam*, *super his*, *inter spem*, &c. Virg. *Terram sol facit are*, for *are-facit*. Lucret.

2. (410) Hysteron proteron is the placing in the former part of the sentence that which, according to the sense, should be in the latter; as, *Valet atque vivit*, for *vivit atque valet.* Ter.

3. (411) Hypallage is an exchanging of cases; as, *Dare classĭbus austros*, for *dare classes austris.* Virg.

4. (412) Synchesis is a confused and intricate arrangement of words; as, *Saxa vocant Ităli mediis quæ in fluctĭbus aras;* for *Quæ saxa in mediis fluctĭbus Ităli vocant aras.* Virg. This occurs particularly in violent passion; as, *Per tibi ego hunc juro fortem castumque cruōrem.* Ovid. Fast. ii. 841.

5. (413) Tmesis is the division of a compound word, and the interposing of other words betwixt its parts; as, *Septem subjecta triōni gens*, for *Septentriōni.* Virg. *Quæ meo cunque anĭmo libĭtum est facĕre*, for *quæcunque.* Ter.

6. (414) Parenthesis is the inserting of a member into the body of a sentence, which is neither necessary to the sense, nor at all affects the construction; as, *Tityre, dum redeo,* (brevis est via,) *pasce capellas.* Virg.

III. (415) ANALYSIS AND TRANSLATION.

The difficulty of translating either from English into Latin, or from Latin into English, arises in a great measure from the different arrangement of words, which takes place in the two languages.

In Latin the various terminations of nouns, and the inflection of adjectives and verbs, point out the relation of one word to another, in whatever order they are placed. But in English the agreement and government of words can only be determined from the particular part of the sentence in which they stand. Thus in Latin, we can either say, *Alexander vicit Darium*, or *Darīum vicit Alexander*, or *Alexander Darīum vicit*, or *Darīum Alexander vicit;* and in each instance the sense is equally obvious: but in English we can only say, *Alexander conquered Darius.* This variety of arrangement in Latin gives it a great advantage over the English, not only in point of energy and vivacity of expression, but also in point of harmony. We sometimes, indeed, for the sake of variety and force, imitate in English the inversion of words which takes place in Latin; as, *Him the Eternal hurl'd.* Milton. *Whom ye ignorantly worship, him declare I unto you.* But this is chiefly to be used in poetry.

With regard to the proper order of words to be observed in translating from English into Latin, the only certain rule which can be given is to *imitate the* Classics.

The order of words in sentences is said to be either *simple* or *artificial;* or, as it is otherwise expressed, either *natural* or *oratorial.*

The *Simple* or *Natural* order is, when the words of a sentence are placed one after another, according to the natural order of Syntax.

Artificial or *Oratorial* order is, when words are so arranged, as to render them most striking or most agreeable to the ear.

All Latin writers use an arrangement of words, which appears to us more or less artificial, because different from our own, although to them it was as natural as ours is to us. In order, therefore, to render any Latin author into English, we must first reduce the words in Latin to the order of English, which is called the *Analўsis*, or *Resolution* of sentences. It is only practice that can teach one to do this with readiness. However, to a beginner, the observation of the following rule may be of advantage.

Take *first* the words which serve to introduce the sentence, or show its dependence on what went before; *next* the nominative, together with the words which it agrees with or governs; *then*, the verb and adverbs joined with it; and *lastly*, the cases which the verb governs, together with the circumstances subjoined, to the end of the sentence; supplying through the whole the words which are understood.

If the sentence is compound, it must be resolved into the several sentences of which it is made up; as,

Vale igĭtur, mi Cicĕro, tibique persuāde esse te quidem mihi carissĭmum; sed multo fore cariōrem, si talĭbus monumentis præceptisque lætabĕre. Cic. Off. lib. 3. fin.

Farewell then, my Cicero, and assure yourself that you are indeed very dear to me; but shall be much dearer, if you shall take delight in such writings and instructions.

This compound sentence may be resolved into these five simple sentences; 1. *Igĭtur, mi,* (fili) *Cicĕro,* (tu) *vale:* 2. *et* (tu) *persuāde tibi* (ipse) *te esse quidem* (filium) *carissĭmum mihi:* 3. *sed* (tu persuāde tibi ipsi te) *fore* (filium) *cariōrem* (mihi in) *multo* (negotio): 4. *si* (tu) *lætabĕre talĭbus monumentis:* 5. *et* (si tu lætabĕre talĭbus) *præceptis.*

1. Fare (*you*) well then my (*son*) Cicero: 2. and assure (*you*) yourself that you are indeed (*a son*) very dear to me: 3. but (*assure you yourself that you*) shall be (*a son*) much dearer (*to me*): 4. if you shall take delight in such writings: 5. and (*if you shall take delight in such*) instructions.

It may not be improper here to exemplify *Analogical Analysis*, as it is called, or the analysis of words, from the foregoing sentence, *Vale igĭtur*, &c. thus,

Vale, scil. *tu;* Fare (*thou*) well: second person singular of the imperative mode, active voice, from the neuter verb, *valeo, valēre, valui, valĭtūrus,* to be in health, of the second conjugation, not used in the passive. *Vale* agrees in the second person singular with the nominative *tu*, by the third rule of syntax.

Igĭtur, then, therefore; a conjunction, importing some inference drawn from what went before.

Mi, voc. sing. masc. of the adjective pronoun, *meus, -a, -um,* my; derived from the substantive pronoun *Ego*, agreeing with *Cicĕro,* by Rule 2. *Cicĕro,* voc. sing. from the nominative *Cicĕro, -ōnis,* a proper noun of the third declension.

Et, and; a copulative conjunction, which connects the verb *persuāde* with the verb *vale*, by Rule 59. We turn *que* into *et*, because *que* never stands by itself.

Persuāde, scil. *tu*, persuade thou; second person singular of the imperative active, from the verb *persua-deo, -dēre, -si, -sum*, to persuade; compounded of the preposition *per*, and *suadeo, -si, -sus*, to advise; used impersonally in the passive; thus, *Persuadēter mihi*, I am persuaded; seldom or never *Ego persuadeor*. We say, however, in the third person, *Hoc persuadētur mihi*, I am persuaded of this.

Tibi, dat. sing. of the personal pronoun *tu*, thou; governed by *persuāde*, according to Rule 17. *Te*, accusative sing. of *tu*, put before *esse*, according to Rule 4.

Esse, present of infinitive, from the substantive verb *sum, esse, fui*, to be.

Quidem, indeed; an adverb, joined with *carissĭmum* or *esse*.

Carissĭmum, accusative sing. masc. from *carrissĭmus, -a, -um*, very dear, dearest, superlative degree of the adjective *carus, -a, -um*, dear: Comparative degree, *carior, carius*, dearer, more dear; agreeing with *te* or *filium* understood, by Rule 2. and put in the accusative by Rule 5.

Mihi, to me; dat. sing. of the substantive pronoun *Ego*, I; governed by *carissĭmum*, by Rule 12.

Sed, but; an adversative conjunction, joining *esse* and *fore*.

Fore, the same with *esse futūrum*, to be, *or* to be about to be, infinitive of the defective verb *fŏrem, -res, -ret*, &c governed in the same manner with the foregoing *esse*, thus, *te fore*, Rule 4. or thus, *esse sed fore*. See Rule 59.

Multo, scil. *negotio*, ablat. sing. neut. of the adjective *multus, -a, -um*, much, put in the ablative, according to Observation 5. Rule 61. But *multo* here may be taken adverbially in the same manner with *much* in English.

Cariōrem, accus. sing. masc. from *carior, -us*, the comparative of *carus*, as before: agreeing with *te* or *filium* understood. Rule 2. or Rule 5.

Si, if; a conditional conjunction, joined either with the indicative mode, or with the subjunctive, according to the sense, but oftener with the latter. See Rule 60. Obs. 2.

Lætabĕre, thou shalt rejoice; second person singular of the future of the indicacative, from the deponent verb *lætor, lætātus, lætāri*, to rejoice. Future, *læt-ābor, -ābĕris* or *ābĕre, -ābitur*, &c.

Talĭbus, ablat. plur. neut. of the adjective *talis, tale*, such; agreeing with *monumentis*, the ablat. plur. of the substantive noun *monumentum, -ti*, neut. a monument or writing; of the second declension; derived from *moneo, -ēre, -ui, -ĭtum*, to admonish; here put in the ablative according to Rule 49. *Et*, a copulative conjunction, as before.

Præceptis, a substantive noun in the ablative plural, from the nominative *præceptum, -ti*, neut. a precept, an instruction; derived from *præcipio, -cipĕre, -cēpi, -ceptum*, to instruct, to order, compounded of the preposition *præ*, before, and the verb *capio, capĕre, cēpi, captum*, to take. The *ă* of the simple is changed into *i* short; thus, *præcipio, præcĭpis*, &c.

The learner may in like manner be taught to analyze the words in English, and, in doing so, to mark the different idioms of the two languages.

To this may be subjoined a *Praxis*, or Exercise on all the different parts of grammar, particularly with regard to the inflection of nouns and verbs in the form of questions, such as these, of Cicero? *Cicerōnis* With Cicero? *Cicerōne*. A dear son? *Carus filius*. Of a dear son? *Cari filii*. O my dear son? *Mi* or *meus care fili*. Of dearer sons? *Cariōrum filiōrum*, &c.

Of thee? *or* of you? *Tui*. With thee *or* you? *Te*. Of you? *Vestrûm* or *vestri*. With you? *Vobis*.

They shall persuade? *Persuadēbunt.* I can persuade? *Persuadeam*, or much more frequently *possum persuadēre*. They are persuaded? *Persuadētur* or *persuāsum est illis*; according to the time expressed. He is to persuade? *Est persuasūrus.* He will be persuaded? *Persuadēbĭtur*, or *persuāsum erit illi.* He cannot be persuaded? *Non potest persuadēri illi.* I know that he cannot be persuaded? *Scio non posse persuadēri illi.* That he will be persuaded. *Ei persuāsum iri.*

When a learner first begins to translate from the Latin, he should keep as strictly to the literal meaning of the words as the different idioms of the two languages will permit. But after he has made farther progress, something more will be requisite. He should then be accustomed, as much as possible, to transfuse the beauties of an author from the one language into the other. For this purpose it will be necessary that he be acquainted, not only with the idioms of the two languages, but also with the different kinds of style adapted to different sorts of composition, and to different subjects; together with the various turns of thought and expression which writers employ, or what are called the figures of words and of thought; or the *Figures of Rhetoric.*

IV. (416) DIFFERENT KINDS OF STYLE.

The kinds of Style (*genĕra dicendi*) are commonly reckoned three; the low, (*humĭle*, *submissum*, *tenue*;) the middle, (*medium*, *temperātum*, *ornātum*, *florĭdum*;) and the sublime, (*sublĭme*, *grande*.)

But besides these, there are various other characters of style; as, the *diffuse* and *concise*; the *feeble* and *nervous*; the *simple* and *affected*, &c.

There are different kinds of style adapted to different subjects, and to different kinds of composition; the style of the Pulpit, of the Bar, and of Popular Assemblies; the style of History, and of its various branches, Annals, Memoirs or Commentaries, and Lives; the style of Philosophy, of Dialogue or Colloquial discourse, of Epistles, and Romance, &c.

There is also a style peculiar to certain writers, called their *Manner*; as the *style* of Cicero, of Livy, of Sallust, &c.

But what deserves particular attention is, the difference between the style of poetry and of prose. As the poets in a manner paint what they describe, they employ various epithets, repetitions, and turns of expression, which are not admitted in prose.

The first virtue of style (*virtus oratiōnis*) is perspicuity; or that it be easily understood. This requires, in the choice of the words, 1. *Purity*, in opposition to barbarous, obsolete, or new-coined words, and to errors in Syntax: 2. *Propriety*, or the selection of the best expressions, in opposition to vulgarisms or low expressions: 3. *Precision*, in opposition to superfluity of words, or a *loose style*.

The things chiefly to be attended to in the structure of a sentence, or in the disposition of its parts, are, 1. *Clearness*, in opposition to *ambiguity* and *obscurity:* 2. *Unity* and *Strength*, in opposition to an *unconnected, intricate* and *feeble* sentence: 3. *Harmony*, or a musical arrangement, in opposition to *harshness* of sound.

The most common defects of style (*vitia oratiōnis*) are distinguished by various names:

1. (417) A BARBARISM is the using of a foreign or strange word: as, *croftus*, for *agellus; rigorōsus*, for *rigĭdus* or *sevērus; alterāre*, for *mutāre*, &c. Or, a transgression of the rules of Orthography, Etymology, or Prosody; as, *charus*, for *carus; stavi*, for *steti; tibĭcen*, for *tibīcen.*

2. (418) A SOLECISM is a transgression of the rules of Syntax; as, *Dicit libros lectos iri*, for *lectum iri: We was walking*, for *we were.* A barbarism may consist in one word, but a solecism requires several words.

3. (419) An IDIŎTISM is the using of a manner of expression peculiar to one language in another; as an *Anglicism* in Latin, thus, I am to write, *Ego sum scribĕre*, for *ego sum scriptūrus;* It is I, *Est ego* for *Ego sum:* Or a *Latinism* in English, thus, *Est sapientior me*, He is wiser than me, for *than I; Quem dicunt me esse?* Whom do they say that I am? for *who*, &c.

4. (420) TAUTOLOGY is a useless repetition of the same words, or of the same sense in different words.

5. (421) BOMBAST is the using of high sounding words without meaning, or upon a trifling occasion.

6. (422) AMPHIBOLŎGY is when, by the ambiguity of the construction, the meaning may be taken in two different senses: as in the answer of the oracle to Pyrrhus, *Aio te, Æacĭde, Romānos vincĕre posse.* But the English is not so liable to this as the Latin.

V. FIGURES OF RHETORIC.

Certain modes of speech are termed *Figurative*, because they convey our meaning under a borrowed form, or in a particular dress.

Figures (*figūræ* or *schemăta*) are of two kinds: figures of words (*figūræ verbōrum*,) and figures of thought (*figūræ sententiārum.*) The former are properly called *Tropes;* and if the word be changed, the figure is lost.

1. TROPES, OR FIGURES OF WORDS.

(423) A *Trope* (*conversio*) is an elegant *turning* of a word from its proper signification.

Tropes take their rise partly from the barrenness of language, but more from the influence of the imagination and passions. They are founded on the relation which one object bears to another, chiefly that of resemblance or similitude.

The principal tropes are the *Metăphor*, *Metonўmy*, *Synecdŏche*, and *Irŏny*.

1. (424) METAPHOR (*translatio*) is when a word is transferred from that to which it properly belongs, to express something to which it is only applied from similitude or resemblance; as, a ***hard*** heart: a ***soft*** temper: he ***bridles*** his anger: a ***joyful*** crop: ***ridet*** ager, the field ***smiles***, &c. A metaphor is nothing else but a short comparison.

We likewise call that a metaphor, when we substitute one object in the place of another on account of the close resemblance between them; as when, instead of *youth*, we say, *the morning* or *spring-time of life;* or when, in speaking of a family connected with a common parent, we use the expressions which properly belong to a tree, whose trunk and branches are connected with a common root. When this allusion is carried on through several sentences, or through a whole discourse, and the principal subject kept out of view, so that it can only be discovered by its resemblance to the subject described, it is called an ALLEGORY. An example of this we have in Horace, book I. ode 14. where the republic is described under the allusion of a ship.

An ALLEGORY is only a continued metaphor. This figure is much the same with the *Parable*, which so often occurs in the sacred scriptures; and with the *Fable*, such as those of Æsop. The *Ænigma* or *Riddle* is also considered as a species of the Allegory; as likewise are many *Proverbs* (*Proverbia* or *Adagia*;) thus, *In sylvam ligna ferre.* Horat.

Metaphors are improper when they are taken from low objects; when they are forced or far fetched; when they are mixed or too far pursued; and when they have not a natural and sensible resemblance; or are not adapted to the subject of discourse, or to the kind of composition, whether poetry or prose.

When a word is very much turned from its proper signification, the figure is called *Catachrēsis* (*abusio*;) as, *a* leaf *of paper, of gold, &c.; the empire* flourished; *parricīda*, for any murderer. Vir *gregis ipse caper.* Virg. *Altum* ædifĭcant *caput.* Juv. *Hunc vobis deridendum* propīno, for *trado.* Ter. *Eurus per Sicŭlas* equitāvit *undas.* Hor.

When a word is taken in two senses in the same phrase, the one proper and the other metaphorical, it is said to be done by *Syllepsis*, (*comprehensio*;) as, *Galatēa thymo mihi* dulcior *Hyblæ.* Virg. *Ego Sardōis videar tibi* amarior *herbis.* Id.

2. (425) METONYMY (*mutatio nomĭnis*) is the putting off one name for another. In which sense it includes all other tropes: but it is commonly restricted to the following particulars:—

1. When the cause is put for the effect: or the author for his works: as ***Boum labōres***, for *corn;* ***Mars***, for *war;* ***Ceres***, for *grain* or *bread;* ***Bacchus***, for *wine.* Virg. ***Cicero***, ***Virgil*** and ***Horace***, for their *works.*

2. When the effect is put for the cause: as, ***Pallĭda mors***, *pale* death, because it makes pale: *atra cura*, &c.

3. The container for what is contained, and sometimes the con-

trary: as, *Hausit patĕram*, for *vinum.* Virg. *He loves his bottle*, for *his drink.*

4. The sign for the thing signified: as, The *crown*, for *royal authority; palma* or *laurus*, for *victory; Cedant arma togæ*, that is, as Cicero himself explains it, *bellum concēdat paci.*

5. An abstract for the concrete: as, *Scelus*, for *scelestus.* Ter. *Audacia*, for *audax.* Cic. *Vires*, for *strong men.* Hor.

6. The parts of the body for certain passions or sentiments, which were supposed to reside in them: thus, *cor*, for *wisdom* or *address;* as, *habet cor; vir cordātus*, a man of sense. Plaut. But with us the *heart* is put for courage or affection, and the *head* for wisdom: thus, *a stout heart, a warm heart.*

When we put what follows to express what goes before, or the contrary, this form of expression is called *Metalepsis, (transmutatio;)* thus, *desiderāri*, to be desired or regretted, for *to be dead, lost*, or *absent:* So, *Fuĭmus Troes & ingens gloria Dardaniæ*, i. e. are no more. Virg. Æn. ii. 325.

3. (426) Synecdoche *(comprehensio* or *conceptio)* is a trope by which a word is made to signify more or less than in its proper sense: as,

1. When a *genus* is put for a *species*, or a whole for a part, and the contrary: thus, *Mortāles*, for *homĭnes; summa arbor*, for *summa pars arbŏris; tectum*, the roof, for the whole house. Virg.

2. When a singular is put for a plural, and the contrary: thus, *Hostis, miles, pedes, eques*, for *hostes*, &c.

3. When the materials are put for the things made of them: as, *Æs* or *argentum*, for money; *æra*, for vases of brass, trumpets, arms, &c.; *ferrum*, for a sword.

When a common name is put for a proper name, or the contrary, the figure is called *Antonomasia (pronominatio;)* as the *Philosopher*, for *Aristotle;* the *Orator*, for *Demosthenes* or *Cicero;* the *Poet*, for *Homer* or *Virgil;* the *Wise man*, for *Solomon.*

An *Antonomasia* is often made by a *Periphrăsis;* as, *Pelŏpis parens*, for *Tantălus; Anўti reus*, for *Socrătes; Trojāni belli scriptor*, for *Homĕrus; Chirōnis alumnus*, for *Achilles; Potor Rhodăni*, for *Gallus.* Hor. sometimes with the noun added; as, *Fatălis et incestus judex, famōsus hospes*, for *Paris.* Hor.

4. (427) Irony is when one means the contrary of what is said: as, when we say of a bad poet, *He is a Virgil;* or of a profligate person, *Tertius e cœlo cecĭdit Cato.*

When any thing is said by way of bitter raillery, or in an insulting manner, it is called a SARCASM; as, *Satia te sanguĭne, Cyre.* Justin. Hesperiam *metīre jacens.* Virg.

When an affirmation is expressed in a negative form, it is called LITOTES: as, *He is no fool*, for *he is a man of sense; Non humĭlis mulier*, for *nobĭlis* or *superba.*

When a word has a meaning contrary to its original sense, this contrariety is called ANTIPHRASIS: as, *auri* sacra *fames*, for *execrabĭlis.* Virg. *Pontus* Euxīni *falso nomĭne dictus*, i. e. *hospitālis.* Ovid.

When any thing sad or offensive is expressed in more gentle terms, the figure is called EUPHEMISMUS; as, *Vitâ functus*, for *mortuus; conclamāre suos*, to give up for lost. Liv. *Valeant*, for *abeant; mactāre* or *ferīre*, for *occidĕre;* Fecērunt id *servi Milōnis, quod suos quisque servos in tali re facĕre voluisset*, i. e. *Clodium interfecērunt.* Cic. This figure is often the same with the *Periphrăsis.*

The PERIPHRASIS, or *Circumlocution*, is when several words are employed to express what might be expressed in fewer. This is done either from necessity, as in translating from one language into another: or to explain what is obscure, as in definitions: or for the sake of ornament, particularly in poetry, as in the descriptions of evening and morning, &c.

When, after explaining an obscure word or sentence by a periphrasis, one enlarges on the thought of the author, the figure is called a *Paraphrase.*

When a word imitates the sound of the thing signified, this imitation is called *Onomatopœïa*, (*nomĭnis fictio;*) as, the *whistling* of winds, *purling* of streams, *buzz* and *hum* of insects, *hiss* of serpents, &c. But this figure is not properly a trope.

It is sometimes difficult to ascertain to which of the above mentioned tropes certain expressions ought to be referred. But in such cases minute exactness is needless. It is sufficient to know, in general, that the expression is figurative.

There are a great many tropes peculiar to every language, which cannot be literally expressed in any other. These, therefore, if possible, must be rendered by other figurative expressions equivalent: and if this cannot be done, their meaning should be conveyed in simple language; thus, *Interiōre notâ Falerni*, with a glass of *old Falernian wine: Ad umbilīcum ducĕre*, to bring to a conclusion. Horat. These, and other such figurative expressions, cannot be properly explained without understanding the particular customs to which they refer.

2. (428) REPETITION OF WORDS.

Various repetitions of words are employed for the sake of elegance or force, and are therefore also called *Figures of words.* Rhetoricians have distinguished them by different names, according to the part of the sentence in which they take place.

When the same word is repeated in the beginning of any member of a sentence, it is called ANAPHORA; as, *Nihilne te nocturnum præsidium palatii, nihil urbis vigiliæ,* &c. Cic. *Te dulcis conjux, te solo in littŏre secum, Te veniente die, te decendente canēbat.* Virg.

When the repetition is made in the end of the member, it is called EPISTROPHE, or *Conversio;* as, *Pœnos Popŭlus Romānus justitiâ vicit, armis vicit, liberalitāte vicit.* Cic. Sometimes both the former occur in the same sentence, and then it is called SYMPLOCE, or *Complexio;* as, *Quis legem tulit? Rullus. Quis,* &c. *Rullus.* Cic.

When the same word is repeated in the beginning of the first clause of a sentence, and in the end of the latter, it is called EPANALEPSIS; as, *Vidĭmus victoriam tuam prœliōrum exĭtu terminātum; gladium vagīnâ vacuum in urbe non vidĭmus.* Cic. pro Marcello.

The reverse of the former is called ANADIPLOSIS, or *Reduplicatio;* as, *Hic tamen vivit: vivit! imo in senātum venit.* Cic.

When that which is placed first in the foregoing member, is repeated last in the following, and the contrary, it is called EPANODOS, or *Regressio;* as, *Crudēlis tu quoque mater; Crudēlis mater magis an puer imprŏbus ille? Imprŏbus ille puer, crudēlis tu quoque mater.* Virg.

The passionate repetition of the same word in any part of a sentence is called EPIZEUXIS; as, *Excitāte, excitāte eum ab infĕris.* Cic. *Fuit, fuit ista virtus,* &c. Id. *Me, me, adsum qui feci, in me convertĭte ferrum.* Virg. *Bella, horrĭda bella.* Id. *Ibĭmus, ibĭmus.* Hor.

When we proceed from one thing to another, so as to connect by the same word the subsequent part of a sentence with the preceding, it is called CLIMAX, or *Gradatio;* as, *Africāno virtūtem industria, virtus gloriam, gloria æmŭlos comparāvit.* Cic.

When the same word is repeated in various cases, moods, genders, numbers, &c. it is called POLYPTOTON; as, *Pleni sunt omnes libri, plenæ sapientûm voces, plena exemplōrum vetustas.* Cic. *Littŏra littorĭbus contraria, fluctĭbus undas imprĕcor, arma armis.* Virg.

To this is usually referred what is called SYNONYMIA, or the using of words of the same import, to expres a thing more strongly; as, *Non feram, non patiar, non sinam.* Cic. *Promitto, recipio, spondeo.* Id. And also EXPOSITIO, which repeats the same thought in different lights.

When a word is repeated the same in sound, but not in sense, it is called ANTANACLASIS; as, *Amāri jucundum est, si curētur ne quid insit amāri.* Cic. But this is reckoned a defect in style, rather than a beauty. Nearly allied to this figure is the PARONOMASIA, or *Agnominatio,* when the words only resemble one another in sound; as, *Civem bonārum artium, bonārum partium; Consul pravo anĭmo* and *parvo: de oratōre arātor factus.* Cic. *Amantes sunt amentes.* Ter. This is also called a PUN.

When two or more words are joined in any part of a sentence in the same cases or tenses, it is called HOMOIOPTOTON, i. e. *simĭlĭter cadens,* as, *Pollet aucto-*

ritāte, circumfluit opĭbus, abundat amīcis. Cic. If the words have only a similar termination, it is called HOMOIOTELEUTON, i. e. *simĭlĭter desĭnens;* as, *Non ejusdem est facĕre fortĭter,* and *vivĕre turpĭter.* Cic.

3. (429) FIGURES OF THOUGHT.

It is not easy to reduce figures of thought to distinct classes, because the same figure is employed for several different purposes.—The principal are the *Hyperbŏle, Prosopopœïa, Apostrŏphe, Simĭle, Antithĕsis,* &c.

1. HYPERBŎLE is the magnifying of a thing above the truth; as, when Virgil, speaking of *Polyphēmus,* says, *Ipse arduus, altaque pulsat sidĕra.* So, *Contracta pisces æquŏra sentiunt.* Hor. When an object is diminished below the truth, it is called *Tapeinōsis.* The use of extravagant Hyperboles forms what is called *Bombast.*

2. PROSOPOPŒIA, or *Personification,* is a figure by which we ascribe life, sentiments, or actions, to inanimate beings, or to abstract qualities; as, *Quæ (patria) tecum. Catilīna, sic agit,* &c. Cic. *Virtus sumit aut ponit secūres.* Hor. *Arbŏre nunc aquas culpante.* Id.

3. APOSTRŎPHE, or *Address,* is when the speaker breaks off from the series of his discourse, and addresses himself to some person present or absent, living or dead, or to inanimate nature, as if endowed with sense and reason. This figure is nearly allied to the former, and therefore often joined with it: as, *Trojăque nunc* stares, *Priamīque arx alta manēres.* Virg.

4. SIMILE, or *Comparison,* is a figure by which one thing is illustrated or heightened by comparing it to another: as, *Alexander was as bold as a lion.*

5. ANTITHESIS, or *Opposition,* is a figure by which things contrary or different are contrasted, to make them appear in the most striking light; as, *Hannibal was cunning, but Fabius was cautious. Cæsar beneficiis ac munificentiâ magnus habebātur, integritāte vitæ Cato,* &c. Sall. Cat. 54.

6. INTERROGATION, (Græc. *Erotēsis,*) is a figure whereby we do not simply ask a question, but express some strong feeling or affection of the mind in that form: as, *Quousque tandem,* &c. Cic. *Credĭtis avectos hostes?* Virg. *Heu! quæ me æquŏra possunt accipĕre.* Id. Sometimes an answer is returned, in which case it is called *Subjectio;* as, *Quid ergo? audacissĭmus ego ex omnĭbus? minĭme.* Cic. Nearly allied to this is *Expostulation,* when a person pleads with offenders to return to their duty.

7. EXCLAMATION (*Ecphonēsis*) is a sudden expression of some passion or emotion; as, *O nomen dulce libertātis,* &c. Cic. *O tempŏra, O mores!* Id. *O patria! O Divûm domus Ilium!* &c. Virg.

8. **Description**, or *Imagery*, (*Hypotypōsis*) is the painting of any thing in a lively manner, as if done before our eyes. Hence it is also called *Vision*; as, *Videor mihi hanc urbem vidēre*, &c. Cic. in Cat. iv. 6. *Vidēre magnos jam videor duces, Non indecōro pulvĕre sordĭdos*. Hor. Here a change of tense is often used, as the present for the past, and conjunctions omitted, &c. Virg. xi. 637, &c.

9. **Emphasis** is a particular stress of voice laid on some word in a sentence; as, Hannĭbal *peto pacem*. Liv. *Proh! Jupĭter ibit* HIC! i. e. Æneas. Virg.

10. **Epanorthōsis**, or *Correction*, is the recalling or correcting by the speaker of what he last said; as, *Filium habui, ah! quid dixi habēre me? imò habui*. Ter.

11. **Paralepsis**, or *Omission*, is the pretending to omit, or pass by, what one at the same time declares.

12. **Aparithmesis**, or *Enumeration*, is the branching out into several parts of what might be expressed in fewer words.

13. **Synathroismus**, or *Coacervatio*, is the crowding of many particulars together; as,

> —— ————————*Faces in castra tulissem,*
> *Implêssemque foros flammis, natumque, patremque*
> *Cum genere extinxêm, memet super ipsa dedissem.* Virg.

14. *Incrementum*, or **Climax** in sense, is the rising of one member above another to the highest; as, *Facĭnus est vincīre civem Romānum, scelus verberāre, parricidium necāre*. Cic.

When all the circumstances of an object or action are artfully exaggerated, it is called **Auxesis**, or *Amplification*. But this is properly not one figure, but the skilful employment of several, chiefly of the Simile and the Climax.

15. **Transition** (*Metabăsis*) is an abrupt introduction of a speech; or the passing of a writer suddenly from one subject to another; as, Hor. Od. ii. 13. 13. In strong passion, *a change of person* is sometimes used; as, Virg. Æn. iv. 365, &c. xi. 406, &c.

16. **Suspensio**, or *Sustentatio*, is the keeping of the mind of the hearer long in suspense; to which the Latin inversion of words is often made subservient.

17. **Concessio** is the yielding of one thing to obtain another; as, *Sit fur, sit sacrilĕgus*, &c. *at est bonus imperātor*. Cic. in Verrem, v. 1.

Prolepsis, *Prevention* or *Anticipation*, is the starting and answering of an objection.

Anacoinōsis, or *Communication*, is when the speaker deliberates with the judges of hearers; which is also called *Diaporēsis* or *Addubitatio.*

Licentia, or the pretending to assume more *freedom* than is proper, is used for the sake of admonishing, rebuking, and also flattering; as, *Vide quam non reformīdem*, &c. Cic. pro Ligario.

Aposiopesis, or *Concealment*, leaves the sense incomplete; as, *Quos ego —— sed præstat motos componĕre fluctus.* Virg.

18. Sententia (*Gnome*) a sentiment, is a general maxim concerning life or manners, which is expressed in various forms; as, *Otium sine litĕris mors est.* Seneca. *Adeò in tenĕris assuescĕre multum est.* Virg. *Probĭtas laudātur et alget; Misĕra est magni custodia censûs; Nobilĭtas sola est atque unĭca virtus.* Juv.

As most of these figures are used by orators, and some of them only in certain parts of their speeches, it will be proper for the learner to know the parts into which a regular, formal oration is commonly divided. These are, 1. The *Introduction*, the *Exordium*, or *Proœmium*, to gain the good will and attention of the hearers: 2. The *Narration* or *Explication:* 3. The argumentative part, which includes *Confirmation* or proof, and *Confutation*, or refuting the objections and arguments of an adversary. The sources from which arguments are drawn are called *Loci*, 'topics;' and are either intrinsic or extrinsic; common or peculiar. 4. The *Peroration, Epilogue*, or *Conclusion*.

PROSODY.

1. Prosody is that part of grammar which teaches the proper *accent* and *quantity* of syllables, the right *pronunciation* of words, and the structure of verses.

2. *Accent* is a peculiar stress of the voice on some syllable in a word, to distinguish it from the others.

3. The *quantity* of a syllable is the space of time used in pronouncing it.

4. Syllables, with respect to their *quantity*, are either *long*, *short*, or *common*.

5. A *long* syllable in pronouncing requires double the time of a *short* one; as, *tēndĕrĕ.*

6. A syllable that is sometimes long, and sometimes short, is *common;* as the second syllable in *volucris.*

7. A vowel is said to be long or short by nature, which is always so by custom, or by the use of the poets.

8. In polysyllables, or long words, the last syllable except one is called the *Penultima*, or, by contraction, the *Penult;* and the last syllable except two, the *Antepenultima*, or *Antepenult.*

9. When the quantity of a syllable is not fixed by some particular rule, it is said to be long or short by *authority;* that is, according to the usage of the poets. Thus *le* in *lĕgo* is said to be short by authority, because it is always made short by the Latin poets.

In most Latin words of one or two syllables, according to our manner of pronouncing, we can hardly distinguish by the ear a long syllable from a short. Thus *le* in *lĕgo* and *lēgi* seem to be sounded equally long; but when we pronouce them in composition the difference is obvious; thus, *perlĕgo, perlēgi ; relĕgo, -ĕre ; relēgo, -āre, &c.*

RULES FOR THE QUANTITY.

The rules of quantity are either *General* or *Special.* The former apply to all syllables, the latter only to some certain syllables.

GENERAL RULES.

I. (10) A vowel before another vowel is short; as, *Mĕus*, *alĭus*: so *nĭhil*; *h* in verse being considered only as a breathing. In like manner in English, *crĕate*, *bĕhave*.

Exc. 1. (11) *I* is long in *fīo*, *fīēbam*, &c. unless when followed by *e* and *r*; as, *fĭĕri*, *fĭĕrem*; thus,

Omnia jam fīent, fĭĕri quæ posse negābam. *Ovid.*

Exc. 2. (12) *E*, having an *i* before and after it, in the fifth declension, is long: as, *speciēi*. So is the first syllable in *āer*, *dīus*, *ēheu*, and the penultima in *aulāi*, *terrāi*, &c. in *Pompēi*, *Cāi*, and such like words; but we sometimes find *Pompei* in two syllables. Hor. Od. ii. 7. 5.

Exc. 3. (13) The first syllable in *ohe* and *Diāna* is common; so likewise is the penult of genitives in *ius*; as, *illius*, *unius*, *ullius*, *nullius*, &c. to be read long in prose. *Alīus*, in the genit. is always long, as being contracted for *aliius*; *alterĭus*, short.

(14) In Greek words, when a vowel comes before another, no certain rule concerning its quantity can be given.

Sometimes it is short; as, Danăe, Idĕa, Sophĭa, Symphonĭa, Simŏis, Hўădes, Phăon, Deucalĭon, Pygmalĭon, Thebăis, &c.

Often it is long; as, Lycāon, Machāon, Didymāon; Amphīon, Arīon, Ixīon, Pandīon; Nāis, Lāis, Achāïa; Brisēis, Cadmēis; Latōus *and* Latōis, Myrtōus, Nerēïus, Priamēïus; Achelōïus, Minōïus; Archelāus, Menelāus, Amphiarāus; Ænēas, Penēus, Epēus, Acrisionēus, Adamantēus, Phœbēus, Gigantēus; Darīus, Basilīus, Eugenīus, Bacchīus; Cassiopēa, Cæsarēa, Chæronēa, Cytherēa, Galatēa, Laodicēa, Medēa, Panthēa, Penelopēa; Clīo, Enȳo, Elegīa, Iphigenīa, Alexandrīa, Thalīa, Antiochīa, idolatrīa, litanīa, politīa, &c. Lāertes, Dēïphŏbus, Dēïănīra, Trōes, herōes, &c.

Sometimes it is common; as, Chorea, platea, Malea, Nereïdes, canopeum, Orion, Geryon, Eos, eöus, &c. So in Foreign words, Michael, Israel, Raphael, Abraham, &c.

(15) The accusative of nouns in *eus* is usually short; as, *Orphĕa*, *Salmonĕa*, *Capharĕa*, &c. but sometimes long; as, *Idomenēa*, *Ilionēa*. Virg. Instead of *Elegĭa*, *Cytherēa*, we find *Elegēïa*, *Cythĕrēïa*. Ovid. But the quantity of Greek words cannot properly be understood without the knowledge of Greek.

In English, a vowel before another is also sometimes lengthened; as, *science*, *idēā*.

*II. (16) A vowel before two consonants, or before the double consonants *j*, *x*, *z*, is long (*by* position, *as it is called*;) as, *ārma*, *fāllo*, *āxis*, *gāza*, *mājor*; the compounds of *jugum* excepted; as, *bĭjŭgus*, *quadrĭjŭgus*, &c.

---

* In reality, in such cases *j* is a vowel, and with the preceding vowel constitutes a diphthong, as, *māiorĭbus*. In the same manner arises the quantity of such words as *ējus*, *pējus*, which, according to Priscian, the ancients write *ēius*, *pēius*.

When the foregoing word ends in a short vowel, and the following begins with two consonants or a double one, that vowel is sometimes lengthened by position; as,

Ferte citi flammas, date telā, scandĭte muros. Virg.

* (17) A vowel naturally short, when followed by SC, SP, SQ, ST, (with or without the addition of a third consonant, as SCRIPTA,) may either remain short, or be made long at the poet's option.

¶ (18) A vowel before a mute and a liquid is common; as the middle syllable in *volucris*, *tenebræ;* thus,

Et primò simĭlis volŭcri, mox vera volūcris. *Ovid.*
Nox tenĕbras profert, Phœbus fugat inde tenēbras. *Id.*

But in prose these words are pronounced short. So *peragro, pharetra, podagra, chiragra, celebris, latebræ, &c.*

To make this rule hold, three things are requisite. 1. The vowel must be naturally short; 2. the mute must go before the liquid; and, 3. be in the same syllable with it. Thus *a* in *patris* is made common in verse, because *a* in *pater* is naturally short, or always so by custom: but *a* in *matris*, *acris*, is always long, because long by nature or *custom* in *mater* and *acer*. In like manner the penult in *salūbris, ambulăcrum*, is always long; because they are derived from *salus, salūtis*, and *ambulātum*. So *a* in *arte, abluo, &c.* is long by position, because the mute and the liquid are in different syllables.

L and *r* only are considered as liquids in Latin words; *m* and *n* do not take place except in Greek words.

III. (19) A contracted syllable is long; as,
Nil, for *nihil; mī*, for *mihi; cōgo*, for *coăgo; alīus*, for *aliius; tibīcen*, for *tibiicen; īt*, for *iit; sōdes*, for *si audes; nōlo*, for *non volo; bīgæ*, for *bijŭgæ; scilīcet*, for *scire licet*, &c.

IV. (20) A diphthong is always long; as,
Aurum, Cæsar, Eubœa, &c. Only *præ* in composition before a vowel is commonly short; as, *præire, præustus; thus,*

Nec totâ tamen ille prior præeunte carinâ. *Virg. Æ.* 5, 186.
Stipitĭbus duris agĭtur sudibusque præustis. *Ib.* 7, 524.

But it is sometimes lengthened; as,

———cùm vacuus domĭno præīret Arīon. *Theb.* 6, 519.

* (21) A Diphthong is once short in a line of Virgil, out of composition: thus, *Insulæ* Ionio in magno, quas dira Celæno. This seems to be in imitation of Greek Hexameter.

SPECIAL RULES.

I. FIRST AND MIDDLE SYLLABLES.

Preterites and Supines of two Syllables.

V. (22) Preterites of two syllables lengthen the former syllable; as, *Vēni, vīdi, vīci.*

Except *bĭbi*, *scĭdi* from *scindo*, *fĭdi* from *findo*, *tŭli*, *dĕdi*, and *stĕti*, which are shortened.

VI. (23) Supines of two syllables lengthen the former syllable; as, *Vīsum*, *cāsum*, *mōtum*.

Except *sătum*, from *sĕro*; *cĭtum*, from *cieo*; *lĭtum*, from *lino*; *sĭtum*, from *sino*; *stătum*, from *sisto*; *ĭtum*, from *eo*; *dătum*, from *do*; *rŭtum*, from the compounds of *ruo*; *quĭtum*, from *queo*; *rătus*, from *reor*.

Preterites which double the first Syllable.

VII. (24) Preterites which double the first syllable, have both the first syllables short; as,

Cĕcĭdi, *tĕtĭgi*, *pĕpŭli*, *pĕpĕri*, *dĭdĭci*, *tŭtŭdi*; except *cĕcīdi*, from *cædo*; *pĕpēdi*, from *pēdo*: and when two consonants intervene; as, *fĕfelli*, *tĕtendi*, *pĕpendi*, *mŏmordi*, &c.

Other verbs of two syllables in the preterite and supine retain the quantity of the present; except *pŏsui*, *pŏsĭtum*, from *pōno*; *pŏtui*, from *possum*; *sŏlūtum* and *vŏlūtum*, from *solvo* and *volvo*.

INCREASE OF NOUNS.

(25) A noun is said to increase, when it has more syllables in any of the oblique cases than in the nominative; as, *rex*, *rēgis*; *sermo*, *sermōnis*; *interpres*, *interprĕtis*. Here *re*, *mo*, *pre*, is each called the *increase* or *crement*, and so through all the other cases. The last syllable is never esteemed a *crement*.

Some nouns have a double increase, that is, increase by more syllables than one; as, *iter*, *itinĕris*; *anceps*, *ancĭpĭtis*.

A noun in the plural is said to increase, when in any case it has more syllables than the genitive singular; as, *gener*, *genĕri*; *genĕrōrum*; *regĭbus*, *sermonĭbus*, &c.

Except nouns of the *first*, *fourth*, and *fifth* declensions, which do not increase in the singular number, unless when one vowel comes before another; as, *fructus*, *fructŭi*; *res*, *rĕi*; and falls under Rule I. These nouns are considered as increasing in the plural, and come under Rule IX.

(26) Nouns of the second declension which increase, shorten the crement; as, *tener*, *tenĕri*; *vir*, *vĭri*; *duumvir*, *-vĭri*; *satur*, *satŭri*; except *Iber*, a Spaniard, *Ibēri*; and its compound *Celtibēri*.

CREMENTS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

VIII. (27) Nouns of the third declension which increase, make *a* and *o* long; *e*, *i*, and *u* short: as,

Pietātis, honōris; muliĕris, lapĭdis, murmŭris.

The chief exceptions from this rule are marked under the formation of the genitive of the third declension. But here perhaps it may be proper to be more particular.

A.

(28) Nouns in A shorten *ătis*, in the genitive; as, *dogma, -ătis; poëma, -ătis.*

O.

(29) O shortens *ĭnis*, but lengthens *ēnis* and *ōnis*; as, *Cardo, -ĭnis; Virgo, ĭnis; Anio, -ēnis; Cicero, -ōnis.*

(30) Gentile or patrial nouns vary their quantity. Most of them shorten the genitive; as, *Macĕdo, -ŏnis; Saxo, -ŏnis.* So, *Lingŏnes, Senŏnes, Teutŏnes,* or *-ŏni, Vangĭŏnes, Vascŏnes.* Some are long; as, *Suessiōnes, Vettōnes. Brittones* is common; it is shortened by Juvenal, 15, 124, and lengthened by Martial, 11, 21, 9.

I. C. D. L.

(31) I shortens *itis*; as, *Hydromĕli, -ĭtis. Ec* lengthens *ecis*; as, *Halec, -ēcis.*

(32) Nouns in D shorten the crement; as, *David, -ĭdis; Bogud, -ŭdis.* Ecclesiastical poets often lengthen *Davidis.*

(33) Masculines in AL shorten *alis*; as, *Sal, sălis; Hannĭbal, -ălis; Hasdrŭbal, -ălis;* but neuters lengthen it; as, *anĭmal, -ālis.*

(34) *Sōlis* from *sol* is long; also Hebrew words in *el*; as, *Michael, -ēlis.* Other nouns in L shorten the crement; as, *Vigil, -ĭlis; consul, -ŭlis.*

N.

(35) Nouns in ON vary the crement. Some lengthen it; as, *Helĭcon, -ōnis; Chiron, -ōnis.* Some shorten it; as, *Memnon, -ŏnis; Actæon, -ŏnis.*

(36) EN shortens *inis*; as, *flumen, -ĭnis; tibĭcen, -ĭnis.* Other nouns in N lengthen the penult. AN *ānis*; as, *Titan, -ānis:* EN *ēnis*; as, *Siren, -ēnis:* IN *īnis*; as, *Delphin, -īnis:* YN *ȳnis*; as, *Phorcyn, -ȳnis.*

R.

1. (37) Neuters in AR lengthen *aris*; as, *calcar, -āris.* Except the following; *bacchar, -ăris; jubar, -ăris; hepar, -ătis; nectar, -ăris:* Also the adjective *par păris,* and its compounds, *impar, -ăris, dispar, -ăris,* &c.

2. (38) The following nouns in R lengthen the genitive; *Nar, Nāris,* the name of a river; *fur, fūris; ver, vēris:* Also *Recimer, -ēris; Byzer, -ēris,* proper names; and *Ser, Sēris; Iber, -ēris,* names of people *or* states.

3. (39) Greek nouns in TER lengthen *teris*; as, *crater, -ēris; character, -ēris.* Except *æther, -ĕris.*

4. (40) OR lengthens *oris*; as, *amor, -ōris.* Except neuter nouns; as, *marmor, -ŏris; æquor, -ŏris:* Greek nouns in *tor*; as, *Hector, -ŏris; Actor, -ŏris; rhetor, -ŏris.* Also, *arbor, -ŏris,* and *memor, -ŏris.*

5. (41) Other nouns in R shorten the genitive; AR *ăris,* masc.; as, *Cæsar, -ăris; Hamilcar, -ăris; lar, lăris.* ER *ĕris* of any gender; as, *aër, aĕris; mulier, -ĕris; cadāver, -ĕris, iter,* anciently *itĭner, itinĕris; verbĕris,* from the obsolete *verber.* UR *ŭris*; as, *vultur, -ŭris; murmur, -ŭris.* YR *ȳris*; as, *Martyr, -ȳris.*

AS.

1. (42) Nouns in AS, which have *atis*, lengthen the crement; as, *pietas, -ātis; Mæcēnas, -ātis.* Except *anas, -ătis.*

2. (43) Other nouns in AS shorten the crement: as Greek nouns having the genitive in *ădis*, *ătis*, and *ănis*: thus *Pallas*, *-ădis*: *artocreas*, *-ătis*: *Melas*, *-ănis*, the name of a river. So *vas*, *vădis*: *mas*, *măris*. But *vas*, *vāsis* is long.

ES.

(44) ES shortens the crement; as, *miles*, *-ĭtis*; *Ceres*, *-ĕris*; *pes*, *pĕdis*.

(45) Except *locuples*, *-ētis*; *quies*, *-ētis*; *mansues*, *-ētis*; *hæres*, *-ēdis*; *merces*, *-ēdis*: also Greek nouns; as, *lebes*, *-ētis*; *Thales*, *-ētis*.

IS.

(46) Nouns in IS shorten the crement; as, *lapis*, *-ĭdis*; *sanguis*, *-ĭnis*; *Phyllis*, *-ĭdis*; *cinis*, *cinĕris*.

(47) Except *Glis*, *glīris*; and Latin nouns which have *ītis*; as, *lis*, *lītis*; *dis*, *dītis*; *Quiris*, *-ītis*; *Samnis*, *-ītis*. But *Charis*, a Greek noun, has *Charĭtis*.

(48) The following also lengthen the crement; *Crenis*, *-īdis*, *Psophis*, *-īdis*, *Nesis*, *-īdis*, proper names. And Greek nouns in *is*, which have also *in*; as, *Salamis* or *-in*, *Salamīnis*.

OS.

(49) Nouns in OS lengthen the crements; as, *nepos*, *-ōtis*; *flos*, *flōris*. Except *Bos*, *bŏvis*; *compos*, *-ŏtis*; and *impos*, *-ŏtis*.

US.

(50) US shortens the crement; as, *tempus*, *-ŏris*; *vellus*, *-ĕris*; *tripus*, *-ŏdis*.

(51) Except nouns which have *ūdis*, *ūris*, and *ūtis*; as, *incus*, *-ūdis*; *jus*, *jūris*; *salus*, *-ūtis*. But *Ligus* has *Ligŭris*; the obsolete *pecus*, *pecŭdis*; and *intercus*, *-ŭtis*.

(51) The neuter of the comparative has *ōris*; as, *melius*, *-ōris*.

YS.

(52) YS shortens *ўdis* or *ўdos*; as, *chlamys*, *-ўdis* or *ўdos*; and lengthens *ȳnis*; as, *Trachys*, *-ȳnis*.

BS. PS. MS.

(53) Nouns in S, with a consonant going before, shorten the penult of the genitive; as, *calebs*, *-ĭbis*; *inops*, *-ŏpis*; *hiems*, *hiĕmis* *auceps*, *aucŭpis*; *Dolops*, *-ŏpis*; also *anceps*, *ancĭpĭtis*; *biceps*, *bicĭpĭtis*, and similar compounds of *caput*.

Except *Cyclops*, *-ōpis*; *seps*, *sēpis*; *gryps*, *grȳphis*; *Cercops*, *-ōpis*; *plebs*, *plēbis*; *hydrops*, *-ōpis*.

T.

(54) T shortens the crement; as, *caput*, *-ĭtis*: so, *sinciput*, *-ĭtis*.

X.

1. (55) Nouns in X, which have the genitive in *gis*, shorten the crement; as, *conjux*, *-ŭgis*; *remex*, *-ĭgis*; *Allobrox*, *-ŏgis*; *Phryx*, *Phrўgis*. But *lex*, *lēgis*, and *rex*, *rēgis*, are long; and likewise *frūgis*.

2. (56) EX shortens *icis*; *vertex*, *-ĭcis*: Except *vibex* or *vibix*, *-īcis*.

3. (57) Other nouns in X lengthen the crement; as, *pax*, *pācis*; *radix*, *-īcis*; *vox*, *vōcis*; *lux*, *lūcis*; *Pollux*, *-ūcis*, &c.

(58) Except *făcis*, *nĕcis*, *vĭcis*, *prĕcis*, *calĭcis*, *cilĭcis*, *pĭcis*, *fornĭcis*, *nĭvis*, *Cappadŏcis*, *dŭcis*, *nŭcis*, *crŭcis*, *trŭcis*, *onўchis*, *Erўcis*, *mastyx*, *-ўchis*, the resin of the *lentiscus*, or mastich tree; and many others, the quantity of which can only be ascertained by authority.

4. (59) Some nouns vary the crement; as, *Syphax, -ăcis*, or *-ācis; Sandyx, ĭcis*, or *-īcis; Bebryx, -ўcis*, or *-ȳcis*.

Increase of the Plural Number.

IX. (60) Nouns of the plural number which increase, make *A*, *E*, and *O*, long; but shorten *I* and *U*; as,

musārum, rērum, dominōrum; rēgĭbus, portŭbus; except *bōbus* or *būbus*, contracted for *bŏvĭbus*.

INCRÈASE OF VERBS.

A verb is said to increase, when any part has more syllables than the second person singular of the present of the indicative active; as, *amas, amāmus*, where the second syllable *ma* is the *increase* or *crement:* for the last syllable is never called by that name.

A verb often increases by several syllables; as, *amas, amābāmĭni;* in which case it is said to have a *first, second*, or *third increase.*

X. (61) In the increase of verbs, *a, e*, and *o*, are long; *i* and *u* short; as,

Amāre, docēre, amātōte; legĭmus, sŭmus, volŭmus.

EXCEPTIONS.

* (62) *Do* and its compounds of the first conjugation have *a* short in their first increment; as, *dămus, dăbunt*, but not in the second, as, *dăbāmus*, where the second *a* is long.

* (63) *Bĕris* and *bĕre* are every where short; as, *amabĕris;* excepting where the *b* belongs to the termination of the present; *scribēris* and *scribēre*, of the future passive being long by the first rule.

* (64) *E* before *ram, rim, ro*, and the persons formed from them, is short. By Systole the poets sometimes shorten *e* before *runt.*

* (65) These have ɪ long: *sīmus, velīmus, nolīmus*, with the other persons coming from them and their compounds.

* (66) *I* before *vi* in preterites is always long; as, *petīvi.*

(67) The first or middle syllables of words which do not come under any of the foregoing rules, are said to be long or short by *authority;* and their quantity can only be discovered from the usage of the poets, which is the most certain of all rules.

Remarks on the Quantity of the Penult and Antepenult of Words.

1. (68) Patronymics in *IDES* or *ADES* usually shorten the penult; as, *Priamĭdes, Atlantiădes*, &c. Unless they come from nouns in *eus:* as, *Pelīdes, Tydīdes*, &c.

2. (69) Patronymics, and similar words, in *AIS, EIS, ITIS, OIS, OTIS, INE*, and *ONE* commonly lengthen the penult; as, *Achāis, Ptolemāis, Chrys-*

Æneïs, Memphītis, Latōis, Icariōtis, Nerīne, Acrisiōne. Except *Thebăis*, and *Phocăis:* and *Nereïs*, which is common.

3. (70) Adjectives in *ACUS, ICUS, IDUS*, and *IMUS*, for the most part shorten the penult; as, *Ægyptiăcus, academĭcus, lepĭdus, legitĭmus:* also, superlatives; as, *fortissĭmus*, &c. Except *merācus, opācus, amīcus, aprīcus, pudīcus, mendīcus, antīcus, postīcus, fīdus, infīdus*, (but *perfĭdus*, of *per* and *fĭdes*, is short,) *bīmus, quadrīmus, patrīmus, matrīmus, opīmus:* and two superlatives, *īmus, prīmus.*

4. (71) Adjectives in *ALIS, ANUS, ARUS, IVUS, ORUS, OSUS*, lengthen the penult; as, *dotālis, urbānus, avārus, æstīvus, decōrus, arenōsus.* Except *barbărus, opipărus*, and *ovipărus.*

5. (72) Verbal adjectives in *ILIS* shorten the penult; as, *agĭlis, facĭlis*, &c. But derivatives from nouns usually lengthen it; as, *anīlis, civīlis, herīlis*, &c. To these add, *exīlis, subtīlis;* and names of months, *Aprīlis, Quinctīlis, Sextīlis:* Except *humĭlis, parĭlis;* and also *simĭlis.* But all adjectives in *atilis* are short; as, *versātĭlis, volatĭlis, umbratĭlis, plicatĭlis, fluviatĭlis, saxatĭlis*, &c.

6. (73) Adjectives in *INUS*, derived from inanimate things, as plants, stones, &c., also from adverbs of time, commonly shorten the penult; as, *amaracĭnus, crocĭnus, cedrĭnus, fagĭnus, oleagĭnus; adamantĭnus, crystallĭnus, crastĭnus, pristĭnus, perendĭnus, carĭnus, annotĭnus*, &c.

(74) Other adjectives in *INUS* are long; as, *agnīnus, canīnus, leporīnus, bīnus, trīnus, quīnus, austrīnus, clandestīnus, Latīnus, marīnus, supīnus, vespertīnus*, &c.

7. (75) Diminutives in *OLUS, OLA, OLUM;* and *ULUS, ULA, ULUM*, always shorten the penult; as, *urceŏlus, filiŏla, muscŏlum; lectŭlus, ratiuncŭla, corcŭlum*, &c.

* (76) Latin denominatives in *aceus, aneus, arius, alicus, orius;* also verbals in *abĭlis* and words in *atilis* lengthen the Antepenult; as, *testāceus, amābalis, pluviātilis.*

* (77) Adjectives in *icius*, derived from nouns, shorten the *i* of the antepenult; as, *gentilĭcius;* except *novīcius.* But those which come from supines or participles, lengthen the *i.*

8. (78) Adverbs in *TIM* lengthen the penult; as, *oppidātim, virītim, tribūtim.* Except *affătim, perpĕtim*, and *stătim.*

9. (79) Desideratives in *URIO* shorten the antepenultima, which in the second and third person is the penult; as, *esŭrio, esŭris, esŭrit.* But other verbs in *urio* lengthen that syllable; as, *ligūrio, ligūris; scatūrio, scatūris*, &c.

* (80) Frequentative Verbs, formed from the supine of the first conjugation, by changing *ātu* into *ĭto*, have the *i* short.

PENULT OF PROPER NAMES.

(81) *The following proper names lengthen the penult:* Abdēra, Abȳdus, Adōnis, Æsōpus, Ætōlus, Ahāla, Alarīcus, Alcīdes, Amyclæ, Andronīcus, Anūbis, Archimēdes, Ariarāthes, Ariobarzānes, Aristīdes, Aristobūlus, Aristogīton, Arpīnum, Artabānus; Brachmānes, Busīris, Buthrōtus; Cethēgus, Chalcēdon, Cleobūlus, Cyrēne, Cythēra, Curētes; Darīci, Demonīcus, Diomēdes, Diōres, Dioscūri; Ebūdes, Eriphȳle, Eubūlus, Euclīdes, Euphrātes, Eumēdes, Eurīpus, Euxīnus; Gargānus, Gætūlus, Granīcus; Heliogabālus, Henrīcus, Heraclīdes, Heraclītus, Hippōnax, Hispānus; Irēne; Lacȳdas, Latōna, Leucāta, Lugdūnum, Lycōras; Mandāne, Mausōlus, Maximīnus, Meleāger, Messāla, Messāna, Milētus; Nasīca, Nicānor, Nicētas; Pachȳnus, Pandōra, Pelōris & -us, Pharsālus, Phœnīce, Polītes, Polyclētus, Polynīces, Priāpus; Sardanapālus, Sarpēdon, Serāpis, Sinōpe, Stratonice, Suffētes; Tigrānes, Thessalonīca; Verōna, Verونīca.

(82.) *The following are short:* Amăthus, Amphipŏlis, Anabăsis, Anticўra, Antigŏnus & -ne, Antilŏchus, Antiŏchus, Antiŏpa, Antĭpas, Antĭpăter, Antiphănes, Antiphătes, Antiphĭla, Antĭphon, Anўtus, Apŭlus, Areopăgus, Arimĭnum, Armĕnus, Athĕsis, Attălus, Attĭca; Bitŭrix, Bructĕri; Calăber, Callicrătes, Callistrătus, Candăce, Cantăber, Carneădes, Cherĭlus, Chrysostŏmus, Cleombrŏtus, Cleomĕnes, Corўcos, Constantinopŏlis, Cratĕrus, Cratўlus, Cremĕra, Crustumĕri, Cybĕle, Cyclădes, Cyzĭcus; Dalmătæ, Damŏcles, Dardănus, Dejŏces, Dejotărus, Democrĭtus, Demĭpho, Didўmus, Diogĕnes, Drepănum, Dumnŏrix; Empedŏcles, Ephĕsus, Evĕrgĕtes, Eumĕnes, Eurymĕdon, Euripўlus; Fucĭnus; Geryŏnes, Gyărus; Hecўra, Heliopŏlis, Hermiŏne, Herodŏtus, Hesiŏdus, Hesiŏne, Hippocrătes, Hippotămos, Hypăta Hypănis; Icărus, Icĕtas, Illўris, Iphĭtus, Ismărus, Ithăca; Laodĭce, Laomĕdon, Lampsăcus, Lamўrus, Lapĭthæ, Lucretĭlis, Libănus, Lipăre *or* -a, Lysimăchus, Longimănus; Marăthon, Mænălus, Marmarĭca, Massagĕtæ, Matrŏna, Megăra, Melĭtus & -ta, Metropŏlis, Mutĭna, Mycŏnus; Neŏcles, Nerĭtos, Norĭcum; Omphăle; Patăra, Pegăsus, Pharnăces, Pisistrătus, Polydămus, Polyxĕna, Porsĕna *or* Porsenna, Praxitĕles, Puteŏli, Pylădes, Pythagŏras; Sarmătæ, Sarsĭna, Semĕle, Semirămis, Sequăni & -a, Sisўphus, Sicŏris, Socrătes, Sodŏma, Sotădes, Spartăcus, Sporădes, Strongўle, Stymphălus, Sybăris; Taygĕtus, Telegŏnus, Telemăchus, Tenĕdos, Tarrăco, Theophănes, Theophĭlus, Tomўris; Urbĭcus; Venĕti, Vologĕsus, Volŭsus; Xenocrătes; Zoĭlus, Zopўrus.

(83) The penult of several words is doubtful; thus, *Batăvi.* Lucan. *Batāvi.* Juv. and Mart. *Fortuĭtus.* Hor. *Fortuītas.* Martial. Some make *fortuitus* of three syllables, but it may be shortened like *gratuĭtus.* Stat. *Patrimus, matrimus, præstolor, &c.* are by some lengthened, and by some shortened; but for their quantity there is no certain authority.

II. FINAL SYLLABLES.

A.

XI. (84) *A* in the end of a word declined by cases is short; as, *Musă, templă, Tydeă, lampădă.*

Exc. (85) The ablative of the first declension is long; as, *Musâ Æneâ:* and the vocative of Greek nouns in *as;* as, *O Ænēā, O Pallā.*

(86) *A* in the end of a word not declined by cases is long; as, *Amā, frustrā, prӕtereā, ergā, intrā.*

Exc. (87) *Ită, quiă, ejă, posteă, pută,* (adv.) are short; and sometimes, though more rarely, the prepositions *contră, ultră,* and the compounds of *ginta;* as, *trigintă,* &c. *Contra* and *ultra,* when adverbs, are always long.

E.

XII. (88) *E* in the end of a word is short; as,

Natĕ, sedīlĕ, ipsĕ, currĕ, possĕ, nempĕ, antĕ.

Exc. 1. (89) Monosyllables are long; as, *mē, tē, sē;* except these enclitic conjunctions, *quĕ, vĕ, nĕ;* and these syllabical adjections, *ptĕ, cĕ, tĕ;* as, *suaptĕ, hujuscĕ, tutĕ;* but these may be comprehended under the general rule, as they never stand by themselves.

Exc. 2. (90) Nouns of the first and fifth declensions are long; as, *Calliŏpē, Anchīsē, fidē.* So *rē* and *diē*, with their compounds, *quarē, hodiē, pridiē, postridiē, quotidiē:* Also Greek nouns which want the singular, *Cetē, melē, Tempē;* and the second person singular of the imperative of the second conjugation; as, *Docē, manē;* but *cave, vale*, and *vide*, are sometimes short.

Exc. 3. (91) Adverbs derived from adjectives of the first and second declension are long; as, *placĭdē, pulchrē, valdē*, contracted for *valĭdē:* To these add *fermē, ferē*, and *ohē;* also all adverbs of the superlative degree; as, *doctissĭmē, fortissĭmē:* But *benĕ* and *malĕ, infernĕ, supernĕ*, are short. Also the adverbs *herĕ*, and *Herculĕ.*

I.

XIII. (92) *I* final is long; as, *Domĭnī, patrī, docērī.*

Exc. 1. (93) Greek vocatives are short; as, *Alexĭ, Amaryllĭ.*

Exc. 2. (94) The dative of Greek nouns of the third declension, which increase, is common; as, *Pallădi, Minoĭdi*: short.

(95) *Mihi, tibi, sibi*, are also common: So likewise are *ibi, nisi, ubi, quasi;* and *cui*, when a dissyllable, which is seldom the case. *Sicŭtĭ, sicŭbĭ*, and *necŭbĭ*, are always short.

* (96) Datives and Ablatives plural of Greek nouns in *si* are short; as, *heroasĭ, Troasĭ.*

O.

XIV. (97) *O* final is common; as, *Virgo, amo, quando.*

Exc. 1. (98) Monosyllables in *O* are long; as, *ō, dō, stō, prō.* The dative and ablative singular of the second declensions are long; as, *librō, domĭnō:* Also Greek nouns, as *Didō, Sapphō*, and *Athō* the genitive of *Athos;* and adverbs derived from nouns; as, *certō, falsō, paulō.* To these add *quō, eō*, and their compounds, *quōvis, quōcunque, adeō, ideō;* likewise *illō, idcircō, citrō, retrō, ultrō.*

Exc. 2. (99) The following words are short: *Egŏ, sciŏ, putŏ, cedŏ*, a defective verb, *homŏ, citŏ, illĭco, immŏ, duŏ, ambŏ, modŏ*, with its compounds, *quomŏdŏ, dummŏdŏ, postmŏdŏ:* but some of these are also found long.

Exc. 3. (100) The gerund in DO in Virgil is long; in other poets it is short. *Ergô*, on account of, is long; *ergo*, therefore, is doubtful.

U and *Y.*

XV. (101) *U* final is long; *Y* final is short; as, *Vultū; Molȳ.*

B, D, L, M, R, T.

XVI. (102) *B, D, L, R*, and *T*, in the end of a word, are short; as, *ăb, apŭd, semĕl, precŏr, capŭt.*

(103) The following words are long; *sāl*, *sōl*, *nīl*, *pār* and its compounds, *impār*, *dispār*, &c.; *fār*, *lār*, *Nār*, *cur*, *fur*; also nouns in *er* which have *ēris* in the genitive; as, *Cratēr*, *vēr*, *Ibēr*; likewise *aēr*, *æthēr*; to which add Hebrew names: as, *Jōb*, *Daniēl*; but *David*, *Bogud*, &c. are common.

(104) *M* final anciently made the foregoing vowel short; as, *Milĭtŭm octo*. Ennius. But, by later poets, *m* in the end of a word is always cut off when the next word begins with a vowel; thus, *milit' octo*; except in compound words; as, *circŭmăgo*, *circŭmeo*.

C, N.

XVII. (105) *C* and *N*, in the end of a word, are long: as, *ăc*, *sīc*, *illūc*; *splēn*, *ēn*, *nōn*, &c.

So Greek nouns in *n*; as, *Titān*, *Sirēn*, *Salămīn*; *Æneān*, *Anchīsēn*, *Circēn*; *Lacedæmōn*, &c.

(106) The following words are short: *nĕc* and *donĕc*; *Forsĭtăn*, *ĭn*, *forsăn*, *tamĕn*, *ăn*, *vidĕn*; likewise nouns in *en* which have *ĭnis* in the genitive: as, *carmĕn*, *crimĕn*; also the nom. and accus. sing. of Greek nouns in *on*, when written with a small *o* (ο μικρον,) as, *Iliŏn*, *Pylŏn*, *Erotiŏn*; and the accusative, if the termination of the nominative be short: as, *Maïăn*, *Æginăn*, *Orpheŏn*, *Alexĭn*, *Ibĭn*, *chelỹn*; so the dative plural in *sin*; as, *Arcăsĭn*, *Troăsĭn*.

(107) The pronoun *hic* and the verb *fac* are common.

AS, ES, OS.

XVIII. (108) *AS*, *ES*, and *OS*, in the end of a word, are long: as, *Mās*, *quiēs*, *bonōs*.

(109) The following words are short: *anăs*, *ĕs*, from *sum*, and *penĕs*; *ŏs*, having *ossis* in the genitive, *compŏs*, and *impŏs*; also a great many Greek nouns of all these three terminations: as, *Arcăs* and *Arcădăs*, *herŏăs*, *Phrygĕs*, *Arcădŏs*, *Tenĕdŏs*, *Mēlŏs*, &c. and Latin nouns in *es*, having the penult of the genitive increasing short: as, *Alĕs*, *hebĕs*, *obsĕs*. But *Cerēs*, *pariēs*, *ariēs*, *abiēs*, and *pēs* with its compounds, are long.

IS, US, YS.

XIX. (110) *IS*, *US*, and *YS*, in the end of a word, are short: as, *Turrĭs*, *legĭs*, *legĭmŭs*, *annŭs*, *Capỹs*.

Exc. 1. (111) Plural cases in *is* and *us* are long; as, *Pennīs*, *librīs*, *nobīs*, *omnîs*, for *omnes*, *fructûs*, *manûs*; also the genitive singular of the fourth declension; as, *portûs*. But *bus* in the dat. and abl. plur. is short: as, *floribŭs*, *fructibŭs*, *rebŭs*.

Exc. 2. (112) Nouns in *is* are long, which have the genitive in

itis, *inis*, or *entis;* as, *līs*, *Samnīs*, *Salămīs*, *Simŏīs:* To these add the adverbs *gratis* and *foris;* the noun *glīs*, and *vīs*, whether it be a noun or a verb; also *is* in the second person singular, when the plural has *itis;* as, *audis*, *abis*, *possis*. *Ris* in the future of the subjunctive is lengthened by Ovid, Fast. 1, 17, but it is always shortened by Horace, Od. 4, 7, 20. Sat. 1, 4, 41. 2, 3, 220. 2, 6, 39. Art. 47.

Exc. 3. (113) Monosyllables in *us* are long: as, *grūs*, *sūs:* also nouns which in the genitive have *ūris*, *ūdis*, *utis*, *untis*, or *ōdis:* as, *tellūs*, *incūs*, *virtūs*, *Amăthūs*, *tripūs*. To these add the genitive of Greek nouns of the third declension ending in *o;* as, *Cliûs*, *Sapphûs*, *Mantûs;* also nouns which have *u* in the vocative: as, *Panthūs:*—so *Iēsūs*.

Exc. 4. (114) *Tethys* is sometimes long, and nouns in *ys*, which have likewise *yn* in the nominative: as, *Phorcȳs* or *Phorcȳn*, and *Trachȳs* or *Trachȳn*.

¶ (115) The last syllable of every verse is common;

Or, as some think, necessarily long, on account of the pause or suspension of the voice, which usually follows it in pronunciation.

THE QUANTITY OF DERIVATIVE AND COMPOUND WORDS.

I. DERIVATIVES.

XX. (116) Derivatives follow the quantity of their primitives; as,

Amīcus,	*from*	ămo.	Decŏro,	*from*	decus, -ŏris.
Auctiōnor,		auctio, -ōnis.	Exŭlo,		exul, -ŭlis.
Auctōro,		auctor, -ōris.	Păvĭdus,		păveo.
Audītor,		audītum.	Quirīto,		Quiris, -ītis.
Auspĭcor,		auspex, -ĭcis.	Radīcĭtus,		radix, -īcis.
Caupōnor,		caupo, -ōnis.	Sospĭto,		sospes, -ĭtis.
Compĕtītor,		compĕtītum.	Nātūra,		nātus.
Cornīcor,		cornix, -īcis.	Māternus,		māter.
Custōdio,		custos, -ōdis.	Lĕgēbam, &c.		lĕgo.
Decōrus,		decor, -ōris.	Lēgĕram, &c.		lēgi.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. *Long from short.*

Dēni,	*from*	dĕcem.	Suspīcio,	*from*	suspĭcor.	Mōbĭlis, *from*	mŏveo.
Fōmes,		fŏveo.	Sēdes,		sĕdeo.	Hūmor,	hŭmus.
Hūmānus,		hŏmo.	Sēcius,		sĕcus.	Jūmentum,	jŭvo.
Regŭla,		rĕgo.	Pēnūria,		pĕnus.	Vōx, vōcis,	vŏco, &c.

2. *Short from long.*

Arēna *and* ărista, *from*	āreo.	Lŭcerna	*from*	lūceo.
Nŏta *and* nŏto,	nōtus.	Dux, ŭcis,		dūco.
Vădum,	vādo.	Stăbĭlis,		stābam.
Fĭdes,	fīdo.	Dĭtio,		dis, dītis.
Sŏpor,	sōpio.	Quăsillus,		quālus, &c.

II. COMPOUNDS.

XXI. (117) Compounds follow the quantity of the simple words which compose them; as,

Dēdūco, of *dē* and *dūco*. So *prŏfĕro, antĕfĕro, consōlor, dēnŏto, dēpecūlor, deprāvo, despēro, despūmo, desquāmo, ēnōdo, ērŭdio, exsūdo, exăro, expăveo, incēro, inhŭmo, investīgo, prægrăvo, prænŏto, rĕgĕlo, appăro, appāreo, concăvus, prægravis, dēsōlo, suffōco* and *suffŏco*; *diffĭdit* from *diffindo*, and *diffīdit* from *diffido*; *indĭco, -āre*, and *indīco, -ĕre*; *permănet* from *permăneo*, and *permānet* from *permāno*; *effŏdit* in the present, and *effōdit* in the perfect; so, *exĕdit* and *exēdit*; *devĕnit* and *devēnit*; *devĕnĭmus* and *devēnĭmus*; *reperĭmus* and *reperīmus*; *effŭgit* and *effūgit*, &c.

(118) The change of a vowel or diphthong in the compound does not alter the quantity; as,

Incĭdo from *in* and *cădo*; *incīdo* from *in* and *cædo*; *suffōco* from *sub* and *faux, faucis*. Unless the letter following make it fall under some general rule; as, *ădmitto, percĕllo, dĕoscŭlor, prŏhibeo*.

Exc. (119.) *Agnĭtum, cognĭtum, dējĕro, pējĕro, innŭba, pronŭba, maledĭcus, veridĭcus, nihĭlum, semisŏpītus*; from *nōtus, jūro, nūbo, dīco, hīlum*, and *sōpio*; *ambītus*, a participle from *ambio*, is long; but the substantives *ambĭtus* and *ambĭtio* are short. *Connubium* has the second syllable common.

* (120) Prepositions have generally the same quantity in composition as out of it: thus *āmitto* and *dēduco* have the first syllable long because *a* and *de* are long. *Aboleo* and *pĕrimo* have the first short, because *ab* and *per* are short.

Obs. 1. (121) The preposition ***PRO*** in Greek words, for *ante*, before, is short; as,

Prŏphēta, prŏlŏgus: PRO in Latin words is long; as, *prōdo, prōmitto, &c.* but it is short in the following words: *prŏfundus, prŏfugio, prŏfŭgus, prŏnĕpos, prŏneptis, prŏfestus, prŏfāri, prŏfiteor, prŏfānus, prŏfecto, prŏcella, prŏtervus*, and *prŏpāgo*, a lineage; *pro* in *prōpāgo*, a vine-stock, *or* shoot, is long. *Pro* in the following words is doubtful; *propāgo*, to propagate; *propīno, profundo, propello, propulso, procūro*, and *Proserpĭna*.

Obs. 2. (122) The inseparable prepositions *SE* and *DI* are long; as,

Sēpăro, dīvello; except *dĭrĭmo, dĭsertus*. *Re* is short; as, *rĕmitto, rĕfĕro*; except in the impersonal verb *rēfert*, compounded of *res* and *fero*.

Obs. 3. (123) *I* and *O*, in the end of the former compounding word, are usually shortened; as,

Caprĭcornus, omnĭpŏtens, agrĭcŏla, signĭfĭco, bĭformis, alĭger, Trĭvia, Tubĭcen, vatĭcĭnor, archĭtectus, bimĕter, trimĕter, &c. duŏdĕcim, hŏdie, sacrŏsanctus, Arctŏphy̆lax, Argŏnauta, bibliŏthēca, philŏsŏphus, &c. But from each of these there are many exceptions. Thus *i* is long when it is varied by cases; as, *quīdam, quīvis, tantīdem, eīdem, &c.* And when the compounding words may be taken separately; as, *ludīmagister, lucrīfacio, sīquis, &c.*—or when a contraction is made by *Crasis* or *Syncŏpe*; as, *trigæ*, for *trijŭgæ*; *īlĭcet*, for *īre licet, &c.*—So in the compounds of *dies*, as, *bīduum, trīduum, merīdies, prīdie, postrīdie*; but the second syllable is sometimes shortened in *quotidie* and *quotidiānus*. *Idem* in the masc. is long, (in the neuter short;) also *ubīque, ibīdem*. But in *ubivis* and *ubicunque*, the *i* is doubtful.

(124) *O* is lengthened in the compounds of *intro*, *retro*, *contro*, and *quando*; as,

Intrōdūco, intrōmitto, retrōcēdo, retrōgrădus, contrōversus, contrōversia, quandōque; but *quandŏquĭdem* has the second syllable short. *O* is also long in *aliōquin, cæterōquin, utrōbique*: So likewise in Greek words, written with a large *o*, or *ω μεγα*; as, *geōmetra, Mīnōtaurus, lagōpus.*

Obs. 4. (125) *A* in the former compounding part of a word is long; as, *quāre, quāpropter, quācunque*; So, *trādo, trādūco, trāno*, for *transno*, &c. *Eădem* is short, except in the abl. sing. *eādem.*

(126) E is short; as, *nĕfas, nĕfastus, nĕfandus, nĕfarius, nĕque, nĕqueo; trĕdĕcim, trĕcenti, ĕquĭdem, sĕlibra, valĕdīco, madĕfacio, tepĕfacio, patĕfacio*, &c. *hujuscĕmŏdi, ejuscĕmŏdi*—Except *sēdĕcim, sēmodius, nēquis, nēquam, nēquitia, nēquando, nēmo, crēdo, mēmet, mēcum, tēcum, sēcum; venēfĭcus, vidēlĭcet.*

(127) U also is short; as, *dŭcenti, dŭpondium; quadrŭpes, centŭplum, Trojŭgĕna, cornŭpĕta*; but *jūdĭco* is long. Y likewise in Greek words is short; as, *Polўdōrus, Polўdămas, Polўphēmus, Dorўphŏrus.*

VERSE.

(128) A Verse is a certain number of long and short syllables disposed according to rule.

It is so called, because when the number of syllables requisite is completed, we always *turn* back to the beginning of a new line.

The parts into which we divide a verse, to see if it have its just number of syllables, are called *Feet.*

A verse is divided into different feet, both to ascertain its measure or number of syllables, and to regulate its pronunciation.

FEET.

Poetic feet are either of two, three, or four syllables. When a single syllable is taken by itself, it is called a *Cæsūra*, which is commonly a long syllable.

1. *Feet of two Syllables.*

Spondēus, consists of two	long; as, *ōmnēs*,
Pyrrhichius,	two short; as, *dĕŭs.*
Iambus,	a short and a long; as, *ămāns.*
Trochæus or *Chorēus*,	a long and a short; as, *sērvŭs.*

2. *Feet of three Syllables.*

Dactўlus,	a long and two short; as, *scrībĕrĕ.*
Anapæstus,	two short and a long; as, *pĭĕtās.*
Amphimăcer,	a long, a short, and a long; as, *chārĭtās.*
Tribrăchys,	three short; as, *dŏmĭnŭs.*

The following are not so much used:

Molossus,	*dēlēctānt.*
Amphibrăchys,	*hŏnōrĕ.*
Bacchīus,	*dŏlōrēs.*
Antibacchīus,	*pēlūntŭr.*

3. *Feet of four Syllables.*

Proceleusmatĭcus,	*hŏmĭnĭbŭs.*
Dispondēus,	*ōrātōrēs.*
Dijambus,	*ămœnĭtās.*
Choriambus,	*pōntĭfĭcēs.*
Dichorēus,	*Cāntĭlēnă.*
Antispastus,	*Ălēxāndĕr.*
Ionĭcus minor,	*prŏpĕrābānt.*
Ionĭcus major,	*cālcārĭbŭs.*
Pæon primus,	*tēmpŏrĭbŭs.*
Pæon secundus,	*pŏtēntĭă.*
Pæon tertius,	*ănĭmātŭs.*
Pæon quartus,	*cĕlĕrĭtās.*
Epitrĭtus primus,	*vŏlūptātēs.*
Epitrĭtus secundus,	*pœnĭtēntēs.*
Epitrĭtus tertius,	*dīscōrdĭās.*
Epitrĭtus quartus,	*fōrtūnātŭs.*

SCANNING.

(129) The measuring of verse, or the resolving of it into the several feet of which it is composed, is called *Scanning*.

When a verse has just the number of feet requisite, it is called *Versus Acatalectus* or *Acatalectĭcus*, an Acatalectic verse: if a syllable be wanting, it is called *Catalectĭcus:* if there be a syllable too much, *Hypercatalectĭcus*, or *Hypermĕter*.

The ascertaining whether the verse be complete, defective, or redundant, is called *Depositio* or *Clausŭla*.

DIFFERENT KINDS OF VERSE.

No. 1. HEXAMETER.

(130) The Hexamĕter or heroic verse consists of six feet. Of these the fifth is a dactyle, and the sixth a spondee; all the rest may be either dactyles or spondees: as,

1	2	3	4	5	6	
— ◡ ◡	— ◡ ◡	— ◡ ◡	— ◡ ◡	— ◡ ◡	— —	
— —	— —	— —	— —			
Lūdĕrĕ	quæ vēl-	lēm călă-	mō pēr-	mīsĭt ă-	grēstī.	*Virg.*
Infān-	dūm Re-	gīnă jŭ-	bēs rĕnŏ-	vārĕ dŏ-	lōrēm.	*Id.*

A regular Hexameter line cannot have more than seventeen syllables, or fewer than thirteen.

(131) Sometimes a spondee is found in the fifth place, whence the verse is called *Spondāic;* as,

Cāră Dĕ- | ūm sŏbŏ- | lēs mā- | gnūm Jŏvĭs | īncrē- | mēntūm. *Virg.*

This verse is used when any thing grave, slow, large, sad, or the like, is expressed. It commonly has a dactyle in the fourth place, and a word of four syllables in the end.

(132) Sometimes there remains a superfluous syllable at the end. But this syllable must either terminate in a vowel, or in the consonant *m*, with a vowel before

it; so as to be joined with the following verse, which in the present case must always begin with a vowel; as,

> Omnĭă | Mērcŭrĭ- | ŏ sĭmĭ- | lĭs vō- | cēmquĕ cŏ- | lōrēmque.
> Et flavos crines——

Those Hexameter verses sound best, which have dactyles and spondees alternately: as,

> Ludere, quæ vellem, calamo permisit agresti. *Virg.*
> Pinguis et ingratæ premeretur caseus urbi. *Id.*

Or which have more dactyles than spondees: as,

> Tityre, tu patulæ recubans sub tegmine fagi. *Virg.*

It is esteemed a great beauty in a hexameter verse, when, by the use of dactyles and spondees, the sound is adapted to the sense: as,

> Quadrupedante putrem sonitu quatit ungula campum. *Virg.*
> Illi inter sese magnâ vi brachia tollunt. *Id.*
> Monstrum horrendum, informe, ingens, cui lumen ademptum. *Id.*
> Accipiunt inimicum, imbrem, rimisque fatiscunt. *Id.*

But what deserves particular attention, in scanning hexameter verse, is the CÆSURA.

(133) *Cæsūra* is when, after a foot is completed, there remains a syllable at the end of a word to begin a new foot; as,

> At rē-gīnă gră-vī jăm-dudum, &c.

The *cæsura* is variously named, according to the different parts of the hexameter verse in which it is found. When it comes after the first foot, or falls on the third half-foot, it is called by a Greek name, *Triemimĕris*. when on the fifth half-foot, or the syllable after the second foot, it is called *Penthemimĕris:* when it happens on the first syllable of the fourth foot, or the seventh half-foot, it is called *Hephthemimĕris:* and when on the ninth half-foot, or the first syllable of the fifth foot, it is called *Enneëmimĕris.*

All these different species of the *cæsūra* sometimes occur in the same verse: as,

> Illĕ lă-tūs nĭvĕ-ūm mōl-lī fūl-tūs hÿă-cīnthō. *Virg.*

But the most common and beautiful *cæsūra* is the penthĕmim; on which some lay a particular accent or stress of the voice, in reading a hexameter verse thus composed: whence they call it the *cæsural pause:* as,

> Tityre, dum rede-O, brevis est via, pasce capellas. *Virg.*

When the *cæsūra* falls on a syllable naturally short, it renders it long: as, the last syllable of *fultus* in the foregoing example.

The chief melody of a hexameter verse in a great measure depends on the proper disposition of the *cæsūra.* Without this, a line consist-

ing of the number of feet requisite will be little else than mere prose: as,

Rōmæ mœnĭă tĕrrŭĭt īmpĭgĕr, Hānnĭbăl ārmīs. *Ennius.*

The ancient Romans, in pronouncing verse, paid a particular attention to its melody. They observed not only the quantity and accent of the several syllables, but also the different stops and pauses which the particular turn of the verse required. In modern times we do not fully perceive the melody of Latin verse, because we have now lost the just pronunciation of that language, the people of every country pronouncing it in a manner similar to their own. In reading Latin verse, therefore, we are directed by the same rules which take place with respect to English verse, as has been before observed.

The tone of the voice ought to be chiefly regulated by the sense. All the words should be pronounced fully; and the cadence of the verse ought only to be observed, so far as it corresponds with the natural expression of the words. At the end of each line there should be no fall of the voice, unless the sense requires it; but a small pause, half of that which we usually make at a comma.

No. 2. PENTAMETER.

(134) The Pentamĕter verse consists of five feet. Of these the two first are either dactyles or spondees: the third, always a spondee: and the fourth and fifth, an anapæstus: as,

1	2	3	4	5
— ⏑ ⏑	— ⏑ ⏑	— —	⏑ ⏑ —	⏑ ⏑ —
— —	— —			

Nātū- | ræ sĕquĭ- | tūr sē- | mĭnă quīs- | quĕ sŭæ. *Propert.*
Cārmĭnĭ- | būs vī- | vēs tēm- | pŭs ĭn ōm- | nĕ mĕīs. *Ovid.*

But this verse is more properly divided into two hemisticks or halves: the former of which consists of two feet, either dactyles or spondees, and a cæsūra: the latter, always of two dactyles and another cæsūra: thus,

Nātū- | ræ sĕquĭ- | tūr | sēmĭnă | quīsquĕ sŭ- | æ.
Cārmĭnĭ- | būs vī- | vēs | tēmpŭs ĭn | ōmnĕ mĕ- | īs.

The Pentameter usually ends with a dissyllable, but sometimes also with a polysyllable.

No. 3. TETRAMETER A POSTERIORE.

* (135) The *Tetrameter a Posteriōre* consists of the last four feet of an Hexameter: as,

Cērtŭs ĕ- | nīm prō- | mīsĭt A- | pōllō. *Hor.*

No. 4. TRIMETER CATALECTIC.

* (136) The *Trimeter Catalectic* consists of two dactyles and a semi-foot or *catalectic* syllable: as,

Arbŏrĭ- | būsquĕ cŏ- | mæ. *Hor.*

No. 5. DACTYLIC DIMETER OR ADONIC.

* (137) The Adonic verse consists of two feet, the first a dactyle, the other a spondee: as,

Vīsěrě | mōntēs. *Hor.*

The *Adonic* is usually joined to the *Sapphic* or *Trochaic Pentameter* [No. 11.] In odes, one Adonic is annexed to three Sapphics to form the stanza.

IAMBIC.

No. 6. IAMBIC TRIMETER.

Iambic verses take their name from the Iambus, which, in pure Iambics, was the only foot admitted. They are divided into two kinds. The one consists of *four* feet, and is called by a Greek name *Dimeter* (a word meaning 'two measures;') the other consists of *six* feet, and is called *Trimeter* ('six measures.') The reason of these names is, that among the Greeks two feet were considered only as one measure in Iambic verse; whereas the Latins measured it by single feet, and therefore called the Dimeter *quaternarius*, and the Trimeter, *senarius*.

*(138) The *Trimeter Iambic* consists of three measures, or six feet, properly all Iambic; the *cæsura* commonly falling on the fifth semi-foot: as,

Phăsē- | lŭs īl- | lĕ quēm | vĭdē- | tĭs hōs- | pĭtēs. *Catullus.*

But the pure Iambic was rarely used, and the Spondee was allowed to take the place of the Iambus in the first, third and fifth stations, for the purpose of giving to the verse a greater degree of weight and dignity. A further liberty was taken in the first, third and fifth places, that of dividing one long syllable into two short ones. The scale of the mixed *Trimeter Iambic* is as follows:—

1	2	3	4	5	6
⏑ —	⏑ —	⏑ —	⏑ —	⏑ —	⏑—
⏑⏑⏑	⏑⏑⏑	⏑⏑⏑	⏑⏑⏑	⏑⏑⏑	
— —		— —		— —	
⏑⏑—		⏑⏑—		⏑⏑—	
—⏑⏑		—⏑⏑		—⏑⏑	
⏑⏑⏑⏑					

No. 7. IAMBIC TRIMETER CATALECTIC.

* (139) The *Catalectic Trimeter* is the common Trimeter [No. 6] wanting the final syllable; that is, it consists of five feet, properly all Iambi, followed by a Catalectic syllable; as,

Vŏcā- | tŭs āt- | quĕ nōn | vŏ cā- | tŭs aū- | dĭt. *Hor.*

Like the common Trimeter it admits a Spondee in the first and third places, but not in the fifth, which would render the verse too heavy and prosaic.

No. 8. IAMBIC DIMETER.

* (140) The Dimeter Iambic consists of two measures, or four feet, properly all Iambi; as,

Pĕrūn- | xĭt hōc | ĭā- | sŏnem. *Hor.*

But it admits the same variations in the odd feet as the Trimeter.

No. 9. IAMBIC DIMETER HYPERMETER.

* (141) The *Dimeter Hypermeter*, called also *Archilochian*, is the Iambic Dimeter [No. 8] with an additional syllable at the end; as,

Rĕdē- | gĭt ād | vērōs | tĭmō- | rēs. *Hor.*

Horace makes frequent use of this metre in conjunction with the Alcaic [No. 19] having *always* the third foot a spondee.

No. 10. IAMBIC DIMETER ACEPHALUS.

* (142) The *Acephalous Dimeter* is the Dimeter Iambic [No. 9] wanting the first syllable; as,

Nōn | ĕbūr | nĕque āu- | rĕum. *Hor.*

No. 11. SAPPHIC.

* (143) The Sapphic verse (so called from the poetess Sappho, who invented it) consists of five feet, namely a Trochee, a Spondee, a Dactyle and two more Trochees; as,

Dēflū- | īt sāx- | īs ăgĭ- | tātŭs | hūmŏr. *Hor.*

Of three such verses with the addition of one Adonic [No. 5] Sappho composed her stanza, in which practice she was followed by Catullus, Horace and others.

CHORIAMBIC.

No. 12. CHORIAMBIC PENTAMETER.

* (144) The Choriambic Pentameter consists of a Spondee, three Choriambi, and an Iambus; as,

Tū nē | quāesīĕrīs | scīrĕ nĕfās | quēm mĭhĭ quēm | tĭbĭ. *Hor.*

No. 13. CHORIAMBIC TETRAMETER.

* (145) This species of verse consists of three Choriambi, and a Bacchius (i. e. an Iambus and a long syllable); as,

Jānĕ pătĕr, | Jānĕ tŭēns, | dīvĕ bĭcēps | bĭfōrmis. *Sep. Ser.*

Horace made an alteration, but certainly not an improvement, in this form of verse, by substituting a Spondee, instead of the Iambus in the first measure; as,

Tē dĕ-ōs ō- | rō, Sȳbărīn | cūr prŏpĕrēs | ămāndō,

which must be considered as a *lame* Choriambic Tetrameter.

No. 14. ASCLEPIADIC TETRAMETER.

* (146) The *Asclepiadic Tetrameter* (so called from the poet Asclepiades) consists of a Spondee, two Choriambi, and an Iambus; as,

Mæcē- | nās ătăvīs | ēdĭtĕ rē- | gĭbus. *Hor.*

As the *cæsura* takes place at the end of the first Choriambus, this metre may be scanned as a Dactylic Pentameter, wanting the last syllable; thus,

Māe cē- | nās ătă- | vīs | ēdĭtĕ | rēgĭbŭs.

No. 15. CHORIAMBIC TRIMETER, OR GLYCONIC.

* (147) The Glyconic verse (so called from the poet *Glyco*) consists of a Spondee, a Choriambus, and an Iambus; as,

Sīc tē | dīvă pŏtēns | Cȳprī. *Hor.*

* (148) The first foot was sometimes an Iambus or a Trochee. Horace, however, who was very fond of the Glyconic, and has often employed it, invariably adheres to the Spondee, except in one solitary instance; viz.

Ignĭs | Iliacas | domos. *Od.* 1, 13, 36.

* (149) This species of verse, when it has a Spondee in the first place, might be scanned as a *Dactylic Trimeter ;* thus,

Mīlēs | tē dŭcĕ | gēssĕrĭt. *Hor.*
Grātō | Pȳrrhă sŭb | āntrō. *Hor.*

No. 16. CHORIAMBIC TRIMETER CATALECTIC OR PHERECRATIC.

* (150) The Pherecratic verse (so called from the poet Pherecrates,) is the Glyconic [No. 15] deprived of its final syllable. It consists of a Spondee, a Choriambus, and a Catalectic syllable; as,

Grātō | Pȳrrhă sŭb ān- | trō. *Hor.*

Or it might be divided into a Spondee, a Dactyle and Spondee. See [*149]

No. 17. CHORIAMBIC DIMETER.

* (151) The Choriambic Dimeter consists of a Choriambus and a Bacchius; as,

Lȳdĭă dīc | pĕr ōmnēs. *Hor.*

IONIC.

Ionic verses are of two kinds, the *Ionicus Major*, and the *Ionicus Minor*, so denominated from the feet of which they are respectively composed.

No. 18. IONIC A MINORE.

* (152) The *Ionic a Minore* is entirely composed of that foot or measure called the Ionic *a minore*, which consists of two short [a Pyrrhic] and two long [a Spondee,] as, *Dŏcŭīssēnt.* It is not confined to any particular number of feet or measures, but may be extended to any length, provided only that, with due attention to Synapheia [163] the final syllable of the Spondee in each measure, be either naturally long, or made long by the concourse of consonants, and that each sentence or period terminate with a complete measure, having the Spondee for its close. Horace's Ode 12, Book 3, may be divided into lines of four Ionics each; as,

Mĭsĕrārum ēst | nĕque ămōrī | dărĕ lūdūm, | nĕquĕ dūlcī.

No. 19. GREATER ALCAIC.

* (153) The *Greater Alcaic* consists of an Iambic measure (that is, two feet properly both Iambi) and a long Catalectic syllable, followed by a Choriambus and an Iambus; as,

Vĭdēs | ŭt āl- | tā | stēt nĭvĕ cān- | dĭdūm. *Hor.*

But the first foot of the Iambic portion is, of course, alterable to a Spondee.

* (154) The Alcaic is sometimes scanned so as to make two Dactyles of the latter *colon*; thus,

Vĭdēs | ŭt āl- | tā | stēt nĭvĕ | cāndĭdŭm.

No. 20. DACTYLICO-TROCHAIC HEPTAMETER OR ARCHILOCHIAN.

* (155) The *Archilochian Heptameter* consists of two members; the first contains four feet from the beginning of the Hexameter—the fourth being always a Dactyle—the latter portion consists of three Trochees; thus,

Sōlvĭtŭr | ācrĭs hĭ- | ēms grā- | tā vĭcĕ | vērĭs | et Fă. | vōnî. *Hor.*

No. 21. DACTYLICO-TROCHAIC TETRAMETER, OR LESSER ALCAIC.

* (156) The *Lesser Alcaic* consists of two Dactyles followed by two Trochees; as,

Lēvĭă | pērsŏnŭ- | ērĕ | sāxă. *Hor.*

FIGURES IN SCANNING.

The several changes made upon words, to adapt them to the verse, are called *Figures in Scanning*. The chief of these are the *Synalœpha*, *Ecthlipsis*, *Synærĕsis*, *Diærĕsis*, *Systŏle*, and *Diastŏle*.

1. (157) SYNALŒPHA is the cutting off of a vowel or diphthong, when the next word begins with a vowel; as,

> Conticuere omnes, intentique ora tenebant. *Virg.*

to be scanned thus,

> Cŏntĭcŭ- | ēr' ōm- | nēs īn- | tēntī- | qu' ōră tĕ- | nēbānt.

The *Synalœpha* is sometimes neglected: and seldom takes place in the interjections, *ô*, *heu*, *ah*, *proh*, *væ*, *vah*, *hei;* as,

> O pater, ô hominum, Divûmque æterna potestas. *Virg.*

Long vowels and diphthongs, when not cut off, are sometimes shortened; as,

> Insulæ Ionio in magno, quas dira Celæno. *Virg.*
> Credimus? an, qui amant, ipsi sibi somnia fingunt. *Id.*
> Victor apud rapidum Simoënta sub Ilio alto. *Id.*
> Ter sunt conati imponere Pelio Ossam. *Id.*
> Glauco et Panopeæ, et Inoo Melicertæ. *Id.*

2. (158) ECTHLIPSIS is the cutting off of *m*, with the vowel before it, in the end of a word, because the following word begins with a vowel; as,

> O curos hominum! O quantum est in rebus inane! *Pers.*

thus,

> O cū- | rās hŏmĭ- | n', ō quān- | t' ēst īn | rēbŭs ĭn- | ānē.

Sometimes the Synalœpha and Ecthlipsis are found at the end of the verse; as,

> Sternitur infelix alieno vulnere, cœlumque
> Adspicit, et dulces moriens reminiscitur Argos. *Virg.*
> Jamque iter emensi, turres ac tecta Latinorum
> Ardua cernebant juvenes, murosque subibant. *Id.*

These verses are called *Hypermetri*, because a syllable remains to be carried to the beginning of the next line; thus, *qu' Adspĭcit: r' Ardua.*

3. (159) SYNÆRESIS is the contraction of two syllables into one, which is likewise called *Crasis;* as, *Phæthon* for *Phaëthon.* So *eĭ* in *Thesei*, *Orphei*, *deinde*, *Pompei:* *uĭ* in *huic*, *cui:* *oĭ* in *proinde:* *ëâ* in *aureâ:* thus,

> Notus amor Phædræ, nota est injuria Thesei. *Ovid.*
> Proinde tona eloquio, solitum tibi— *Virg.*
> Filius huic contrà, torquet qui sidera mundi. *Id.*
> Aureâ percussum virgâ, versumque venenis. *Id.*

So in *antĕhac*, *eadem*, *alvearia*, *deest*, *deĕrit*, *vehĕmens*, *anteit*, *eōdem*, *alveo*, *graveolentis*, *omnia*, *semianĭmis*, *semihŏmo*, *fluviŏrum*, *totius*, *promontorium*, &c. as,

Unâ eâdemque viâ sanguis animusque sequuntur. *Virg.*
Seu lento fuerint alvearia vimine texta. *Id*
Vilis amicorum est annona, bonis ubi quid deest. *Hor.*
Divitis uber agri, Trojæque opulentia deerit. *Virg.*
Vehemens et liquidus puroque simillimus amni. *Hor.*
Te semper anteit dira necessitas. *Alcaic. Hor. Od.* 1, 35, 17.
Uno eodemque igni, sic nostro Daphnis amore. *Virg.*
Cum refluit campis, et jam se condidit alveo. *Virg.*
Inde ubi venêre ad fauces graveolentis Averni. *Id.*
Bis patriæ cecidêre manus: quin protinus omnia. *Id.*
Cædit semianimis Rutulorum calcibus arva. *Id.*
Semihominis Caci facies quam dira tenebat. *Id.*
Fluviorum rex Eridanus, camposque per omnes. *Id.*
Magnanimosque duces totiusque ex ordine gentis. *Id.*
Inde legit Capreas, promontoriumque Minervæ. *Ovid.*

To this figure may be referred the changing of *i* and *u* into *j* and *v*, or pronouncing them in the same syllable with the following vowel; as, in *genva*, *tenvis*, *arjĕtat*, *tenvia*, *abjĕte*, *pitvīta*, *parjetĭbus*, *Nasidjēnus;* for *genua*, *tenuis*, &c. as,

Propterea quia corpus aquæ naturaque tenvis. *Lucr.*
Genva labant, gelido concrevit frigore sanguis. *Virg.*
Arjetat in portas et duros objice postes. *Id.*
Velleraque ut foliis depectant tenvia Seres. *Id.*
Ædificant, sectâque intexunt abjete costas. *Id.*
Præcipuè sanus, nisi cum pitvita molesta est. *Hor.*
Parjetibusque premunt arctis, et quatuor addunt. *Virg.*
Ut Nasidjeni juvit te cœna beati? *Hor.*

4. (160) Diæresis divides one syllable into two; as, *aulaï*, for *aulæ: Troïæ*, for *Trojæ: Persëus*, for *Perseus: milüus*, for *milvus: solüit*, for *solvit: volüit*, for *volvit: aqüæ*, *süetus*, *süasit*, *Süevos*, *relangüit*, *reliqüas*, for *aquæ*, *suetus*, &c.; as,

Aulaï in medio libabant pocula Bacchi. *Virg.*
Stamina non ulli dissolüenda Deo. *Pentam Tibullus.*
Debuerant fusos evolüisse suos. *Id. Ovid.*
Quæ calidum faciunt aqüæ tactum atque vaporem. *Lucr.*
Cum mihi non tantum furesque feræque süetæ. *Hor.*
Atque alios alii inrident, Veneremque süadent. *Lucr.*
Fundat ab extremo flavos Aquilone Süevos. *Lucan.*
Imposito fratri moribunda relangüit ore. *Ovid.*
Reliqüas tamen esse vias in mente patenteis. *Lucr.*

5. (161) Systole makes a long syllable short; as, the penult in *tulĕrunt;* thus,

Matri longa decem tulĕrunt fastidia menses. *Virg. E.* 4. 61.

6. (162) **Diastole** makes a short syllable long; as, the last syllable of *amor* in the following verse:

> Considant, si tantus amŏr, et mœnia condant. *Virg. Æ.* 11, 323.

To the above may be added the following, which, though chiefly used by the poets, often occur in prose; and are called

FIGURES OF DICTION.

* (163) **Synapheia** is the connexion or linking of verses together, so as to make them run on in continuation, as if the matter were not divided into separate verses. This figure obtains chiefly in the *Ionic, a minore* measure.

1. (164) *Prosthēsis** prefixes a letter or syllable; as, *gnavus* for *navus.* In Latin there are but few examples of this, but in Greek they abound; as, ἐειπε for ειπε, ὀρωρα for ωρα.

2. (165) *Epenthēsis*† inserts something in the middle; as, *rettŭlit* for *retŭlit*, μαχεσσαμενος for μαχεσαμενος.

3. (166) *Paragōge*‡ adds to the end; as, *dicier* for *dici*, τουτονι for τουτον.

4. (167) *Aphærēsis*§ takes away from the beginning; as, *conia* for *ciconia.* Of this, also, examples are rare in Latin, but frequent in Greek; as, ν for εφν. Il. 1. 219.

5. (168) *Syncŏpe*‖ takes out something from the middle; as, *peccâsse* for *peccavisse*, εβαν for εβησαν.

6. (169) *Apocŏpe*¶ takes from the end; as, *pecūlî* for *peculii*, δω for δωμα. Il. 1. 426.

7. (170) *Metathēsis*** transposes letters; as, *pistris* for *pristis*, εδρακον for εδαρκον, 2. *a. of* δερκω.

8. (171) *Antithēsis*†† changes one letter for another; as, *faciundum* for *faciendum*, *olli* for *illi*, ξυν for συν.

---

* Προσθεσις, *adjectio* ; προστιθημι, *addo*, to prefix.

† Ἐπενθεσις, *insertio* ; επεντιθημι, *insĕro in medium*, to insert.

‡ Παραγωγη, *productio* ; παραγω, *prodūco*, to lengthen out.

§ Ἀφαιρεσις, *ablatio* ; αφαιρεω, *aufĕro*, to take away.

‖ Συγκοπη, from συγκοπτω, *concīdo*, to cut off.

¶ Αποκοπη, *amputatio* ; αποκοπτω, *ampŭto*, to cut off.

** Μεταθεσις, *transpositio* ; the change of places.

†† From αντι, *instead of*, and τιθημι, to place.

DIFFERENT KINDS OF POEMS.

Any work composed in verse is called a *Poem* (*Poēma* or *Carmen*.)

Poems are called by various names, from their subject, their form, the manner of treating the subject, and their style.

1. (172) A poem on the celebration of a marriage is called an EPITHALAMIUM; on a mournful subject, an ELEGY or LAMENTATION; in praise of the Supreme Being, a HYMN; in praise of any person or thing, a PANEGYRIC or ENCOMIUM; on the vices of any one, a SATIRE or INVECTIVE; a poem to be inscribed on a tomb, an EPITAPH, &c.

2. (173) A short poem, adapted to the lyre or harp, is called an ODE, whence such compositions are called *Lyric poems;* a poem in the form of a letter is called an EPISTLE; a short, witty poem, playing on the fancies or conceits which arise from any subject, is called an EPIGRAM; as those of Catullus and Martial. A sharp, unexpected, lively turn of wit, in the end of an epigram, is called its *Point.* A poem expressing the moral of any device or picture, is called an EMBLEM. A poem containing an obscure question to be explained, is called an ÆNIGMA or RIDDLE.

When a character is described so that the first letters of each verse, and some times the middle and final letters, express the name of the person or thing described, it is called an ACROSTIC; as the following on our Saviour:

I *nter cuncta micans* I *gniti sidera cœl* I,
E *xpellit tenebras* E *toto Phœbus ut orb* E;
S *ic cæcas removet JESVS caliginis umbra* S,
V *ivificansque simul* V *ero præcordia mot* V,
S *olem justitiæ* S *ese probat esse beati* S.

3. (174) From the manner of treating a subject, a poem is either *Exegetic, Dramatic*, or *Mixt.*

The *Exegetic*, where the poet always speaks of himself, is of three kinds, Historical, Didactic, or Instructive, (as the Satire or Epistle,) and Descriptive.

(175) Of the *Dramatic*, the chief kinds are COMEDY, representing the actions of ordinary life, generally with a happy issue; and TRAGEDY, representing the actions and distresses of illustrious personages, commonly with an unhappy issue; to which may be added *Pastoral Poems*, or BUCOLICS, representing the actions and conversations of shepherds; as most of the Eclogues of Virgil.

The *Mixt* kind is where the poet sometimes speaks in his own person, and sometimes makes other characters to speak. Of this kind is chiefly the EPIC or HEROIC poem, which treats of some one great transaction of some great, illustrious person, with its various circumstances; as the wrath of Achilles in the *Iliad* of Homer; the settlement of Æneas in Italy in the *Æneid* of Virgil; the fall of man in the *Paradise Lost* of Milton, &c.

4. The style of poetry, as of prose, is of three kinds, the simple, ornate, and sublime.

COMBINATION OF VERSES IN POEMS.

(176) In long poems there is commonly but one kind of verse used. Thus Virgil, Lucretius, Horace in his Satires and Epistles,

Ovid in his Metamorphōses, Lucan, Silius Italĭcus, Valerius Flaccus, Juvenal, &c. always use the Hexamĕter verse: Plautus, Terence, and other writers of Comedy, generally use the Iambic, and sometimes the Trochaic. It is chiefly in shorter poems, particularly those which are called Lyric poems, as the Odes of Horace and the Psalms of Buchanan, that various kinds of verse are combined.

(177) A poem, which has only one kind of verse, is called by a Greek name, MONOCŌLON sc. *poēma* or *carmen;* or MONOCŌLOS, sc. *ode;* that which has two kinds, DICŌLON; and that which has three kinds of verse, TRICŌLON.

(178) If the same sort of verse return after the second line, it is called DICŌLON DISTRŎPHON;* as when a single Pentamĕter is alternately placed after an HEXAMETER; which is named *Elegīac verse*, (carmen Elegiăcum,) because it was first applied to mournful subjects; thus,

Flebilis indignos, Elegēia, solve capillos;
  Ah! nimis ex vero, nunc tibi nomen erit. *Ovid.*

This kind of verse is used by Ovid in all his other works except the Metamorphoses; and also for the most part by Tibullus, Propertius, &c.

(179) When a poem consists of two kinds of verse, and after three lines returns to the first, it is called DICOLON TRISTRŎPHON; when after four lines, DICŌLON TETRASTRŎPHON; as,

Auream quisquis mediocritatem
Diligit, tutus caret obsoleti
Sordibus tecti; caret invidendâ
    Sobrius aulâ. *Horat.*

(180) When a poem consists of three kinds of verse, and after three lines always returns to the first, it is called TRICŌLON TRISTRŎPHON; but if it returns after four lines, it is called TRICŌLON TETRASTRŎPHON; as, when after two greater dactylic Alcaic verses are subjoined an Archilochian iambic and a lesser dactylic Alcaic, which is named *Carmen Horatiănum*, or Horatian verse, because it is frequently used by Horace; thus,

Virtus recludens immeritis mori
Cœlum, negatâ tentat iter viâ;
  Cœtusque vulgares, et udam
    Spernit humum fugiente pennâ.

---

* A *Strophe* or *Stanza* includes as many lines as are necessary to show all the different kinds of measure in an ode. It is called *Strophe*, which in Greek literally means *a turning*, because at the end of it, you turn back to the same kind of verse with which you began.

THE VARIOUS COMBINATIONS OF THE DIFFERENT METRES USED BY HORACE.

The different species of metre used by Horace, in his Lyric compositions, are *twenty;* and the various forms in which he has employed these metres, either separate or in conjunction, are *nineteen.*

A TRICOLON TETRASTROPHON.

I. (181) Two greater Alcaics, [No. 19,] one Archilochian Iambic Dimeter Hypermeter, [No. 9,] and one Lesser Alcaic, [No. 21,] as,

O mātrĕ pūlchrā fīlĭă pūlchrĭŏr,
Quēm crīmĭnōsīs cūmquĕ vŏlēs mŏdum
Pōnēs ĭāmbīs, sīvĕ flāmmâ,
Sīvĕ mărī lĭbĕt ădrĭānō. Lib. 1. 16.

This appears to be his favourite form, as we find it in *thirty-seven* of his odes. Thence it is often called the *Horatian Stanza.*

A DICOLON TETRASTROPHON.

II. (182) The combination next in favour with Horace, was the following—three Sapphics, [No. 11] and one Adonic, [No. 5,] in which form he composed *twenty-six* odes: e. g.

Jām sătĭs tērrĭs nĭvĭs ātquĕ dīræ
Grandĭnĭs mīsĭt pătĕr, ĕt, rŭbēnte
Dēxtĕrā săcrās jăcŭlātŭs ărces,
Tērrŭĭt ūrbem. Lib. 1. 2.

A DICOLON DISTROPHON.

III. (183) One Glyconic, [No. 15,] and one Asclepiadic, [No. 14,] which combination occurs in *twelve* odes: thus,

Sīc tē Dīvă pŏtēns Cўpri,
Sīc frātrēs Hĕlĕnāe, lūcĭdă sīdĕra. Lib. 1. 3.

A DICOLON DISTROPHON.

IV. (184) One Iambic Trimeter, [No. 6,] and one Iambic Dimeter, [No. 8,] in which form we see *ten* of his Epodes.

Ībīs Lĭbūrnīs īntĕr āltă nāvĭum,
ămīcĕ prōpūgnăcŭla. Epod. 2.

A DICOLON TETRASTROPHON.

V. (185) Three Asclepiadics, [No. 14,] and one Glyconic, [No. 15,] in *nine* odes: e. g.

Scrībĕrĭs Vărĭō fŏrtĭs, ĕt hŏstĭum
Vīctŏr, Moeŏnĭī cărmĭnĭs ălĭti
Quăm rĕm cūmquĕ fĕrōx nāvĭbŭs aŭt ĕquis
Mīlĕs, tē dūcĕ, gĕssĕrit. Lib. 1. 6.

A TRICOLON TETRASTROPHON.

VI. (186) Two Asclepiadics, [No. 14,] one Pherecratic, [No. 16,] and one Glyconic, [No. 15,] *seven* odes.

Dīānăm, tĕnĕrāe dīcĭtĕ, vīrgĭnes:
Intōnsūm, pŭĕrī, dīcĭtĕ Cȳnthĭum,
Lātōnāmquĕ sŭprēmo
Dīlēctăm pĕnĭtŭs Jŏvi. Lib. 1. 21.

A CARMEN MONOCOLON.

VII. (187) The Asclepiadic, [No. 14,] *three* odes: thus,

Māecēnās ătăvīs ēdĭtĕ rēgĭbus. Lib. 1. 1.

A DICOLON DISTROPHON.

VIII. (188) One Dactylic Hexameter, [No. 1,] and one Dactylic Tetrameter *a posteriore*, [No. 3,] *three* odes: thus,

Laūdābūnt ălĭī clārăm Rhŏdŏn, aūt Mĭtȳlēnem,
Aūt Ephĕsūm, bĭmărīsvĕ Cŏrīnthi. Lib. 1. 7.

A MONOCOLON.

IX. (189) The Choriambic Pentameter, [No. 12,] used alone in *three* odes: thus,

Tū nĕ quāesĭĕrĭs, scīrĕ nĕfās, quēm mĭhĭ quēm tĭbi. Lib. 1. 11.

A DICOLON DISTROPHON.

X. (190) One Hexameter, [No. 1,] and one Iambic Dimeter, [No. 8,] *two* odes: as,

Nōx ĕrăt, ĕt cāelō fūlgēbāt lūnă sĕrēno
Intēr mĭnōră sīdĕra. Epod. 15.

A MONOCOLON.

XI. (191) The Iambic Trimeter, [No. 6,] unmixed with any other species of verse, *two* epodes: thus,

Quĭd ōbsĕrātīs aūrĭbūs fūndīs prĕces? Epod. 18.

A DICOLON DISTROPHON.

XII. (192) One Choriambic Dimeter, [No. 17,] and one Choriambic Tetrameter, [No. 13,] *one* ode:

Lȳdĭă, dīc, pĕr ōmnes
Tē Dĕ ŏs ōrō, Sȳbărīn cūr prŏpĕrēs ămāndo. Lib. 1. 8.

A DICOLON DISTROPHON.

XIII. (193) One Hexameter, [No. 1,] and one Iambic Trimeter, [No. 6,] *one* epode.

Altĕră jām tĕrĭtūr bēllīs cīvīlĭbŭs ætas
Sŭis ĕt īpsă Rōmă vīrĭbŭs rŭit. Epod. 16.

A DICOLON DISTROPHON.

XIV. (194) One Hexameter, [No. 1,] and one Dactylic Trimeter, Catalectic, [No. 4,] *one* ode.

Dīffŭgērĕ nĭvēs : rĕdĕūnt jām grāmĭnă cāmpis,
Arbŏrĭbŭsquĕ cŏmæ. Lib. 4. 7.

A TRICOLON TRISTROPHON.

XV. (195) One Hexameter, [No. 1,] one Iambic Dimeter, [No. 8,] and one Dactylic Trimeter Catalectic, [No. 4,] *one* epode.

Hōrrĭdă tēmpēstās cœlūm cōntraxĭt, ĕt īmbres
Nĭvēs quĕ dĕdūcūnt Jŏvem :
Nūnc mărĕ, nūnc sĭlŭæ. Epod. 13.

A TRICOLON TRISTROPHON.

XVI. (196) One Iambic Trimeter [No. 6,] one Dactylic Trimeter Catalectic [No. 4,] and one Iambic Dimeter [No. 8,] only *once* used.

Pēttī nĭhīl mē, sīcŭt āntĕā, jŭvat
Scrībĕrĕ vērsĭcŭlos,
Amōrĕ pērcŭlsūm grăvi. Epod. 11.

A DICOLON DISTROPHON.

XVII. (197) One Archilochian Heptameter [No. 20,] and one Iambic Trimeter Catalectic [No. 7,) a single example.

Sōlvĭtŭr ăcrĭs hĭēms grātā vĭcē vērĭs, ĕt Făvōni,
Trăhūntquĕ sīccās māchĭnāe cărīnas. Lib. 1. 4.

A DICOLON DISTROPHON.

XVIII. (198) One Iambic Dimeter Acephalus [No. 10,] and one Iambic Trimeter Catalectic [No. 7,] *one* ode.

Nōn ĕbūr, nĕque aūrĕum
Mĕā rĕnīdĕt īn dŏmō lăcūnar. Lib. 2. 18.

A MONOCOLON.

XIX. (199) The Ionic *a minore* [No. 18,] in *one* instance only.

Mĭsĕrārum ēst nĕque ămōrī dărĕ lūdūm, nĕquĕ dūlcī. Lib. 3. 12.

INDEX TO THE ODES OF HORACE,

EXHIBITING THE FIRST WORDS OF EACH, WITH REFERENCES TO THE PRECEDING NUMBERS, ACCORDING TO WHICH THEY ARE SCANNED.

APPENDIX.

Of Punctuation; Capitals; Abbreviations; Division of the Roman Months; Tables of Roman Coins, Weights, and Measures.

The different divisions of discourse are marked by certain characters called *Points.*

The points employed for this purpose are the *Comma,* (,) *Semicolon,* (;) *Colon,* (:) *Period,* Punctum, or full stop, (.)

Their names are taken from the different parts of the sentence which they are employed to distinguish.

The *Period* is a whole sentence complete by itself. The *Colon,* or member, is a chief constructive part, or greater division of a sentence. The *Semicolon,* or half member, is a less constructive part, of subdivision, of a sentence or member. The *Comma,* or segment, is the least constructive part of a sentence, in this way of considering it; for the next subdivision of a sentence would be the resolution of it into *Phrases* and *words.*

To these points may be added the *Semiperiod,* or less point, followed by a small letter. But this is of much the same use with the Colon, and occurs only in Latin books.

A simple sentence admits only of a full point at the end; because its general meaning cannot be distinguished into parts. It is only in compound sentences that all the different points are to be found.

Points likewise express the different pauses which should be observed in a just pronunciation of discourse. The precise duration of each pause, or note, cannot be defined. It varies according to the different subjects of discourse, and the different turns of human passion and thought. The period requires a pause in duration double of the colon; the colon double of the semicolon; and the semicolon double of the comma.

There are other points, which, together with a certain pause, also denote a different modulation of the voice in correspondence with the sense. These are the *Interrogation* point (?), the *Exclamation* or *Admiration* point (!), and the *Parenthesis* (). The first two generally mark an elevation of the voice, and a pause equal to that of a simicolon, a colon, or a period, as the sense requires. The *Parenthesis* usually requires a moderate depression of the voice, with a pause somewhat greater than a comma. But these rules are liable to many exceptions. The modulation of the voice in reading, and the various pauses, must always be regulated by the sense.

Besides the points, there are several other *marks* made use of in books, to denote references and different distinctions, or to point out something remarkable or defective, &c. These are the *Apostrŏphe* ('); *Asterisk* (*); *Hyphen* (-); *Obelisk* (†); *Double Obelisk* (‡); *Parallel Lines* (‖); *Paragraph* (¶); *Section* (§); *Quotation* (" "); *Crotchets* [ ]; *Brace* ({); *Ellipsis* (... or —); *Caret* (‸); which last is only used in writing.

References are often marked by letters and figures.

Capitals, or large letters, are used at the beginning of sentences, of verses, and of proper names. Some use them at the beginning of every substantive noun. Adjectives, verbs, and other parts of speech, unless they be emphatical, commonly begin with a small letter.

Capitals, with a point after them, are often put for whole words; thus, A. marks *Aulus*, C. *Caius*, D. *Decius*, or *Decĭmus*, L. *Lucius*, M. *Marcus*, P. *Publius*, Q. *Quintus*, or *Quinctius*, T. *Titus*. So F. stands for *Filius*, and N. for *Nepos; as* M. F. *Marci Filius*, M. N. *Marci Nepos*. In like manner P. C. marks *Patres Conscripti;* S. C. *Senātus Consultum ;* P. R. *Popŭlus Romānus ;* S. P. Q. R. *Senātus, Populusque Romānus ;* U. C. *Urbs Condĭta ;* S. P. D. *Salūtem plurĭmam dicit ;* D. D. D. *Dat, dicat, dedĭcat;* D. D. C. Q. *Dat, dicat, consecratque ;* H. S. written corruptly for L. L. S. *Sestertius*, equal in value to two pounds of brass and a half; the two pounds being marked by L. L. *Libra, Libra*, and the half by S. *Semis*. So in modern books A. D. marks *Anno Domĭni*, A. M. *Artium Magister*, Master of Arts; M. D. *Medicīnæ Doctor,** LL. D. *Legum Doctor ;* N. B. *Nota Benè, &c.*

Sometimes a small letter or two is added to the capital; as, Etc. *Et cætĕra*; Ap. *Appius ;* Cn. *Cneius ;* Op. *Opĭter ;* Sp. *Spurius ;* Ti. *Tiberius ;* Sex. *Sextus ;* Cos. *Consul ;* Coss. *Consŭles ;* Imp. *Imperātor ;* Impp. *Imperatōres.*

In like manner, in English, Esq. *Esquire ;* Dr. *Debtor* or *Doctor ;* Acct. *Account ;* MS. *Manuscript ;* MSS. *Manuscripts ;* Do. *Ditto ;* Rt. Hon. *Right Honourable, &c.*

Small letters are likewise often put as abbreviations of a word ; as, i. e. *id est;* h. e. *hoc est*, that is ; e. g. *exempli gratiâ*, for example ; v. g. *verbi gratiâ.*

Division of the Roman Months.

The Romans divided their months into three parts, by †*Kalends, Nones*, and *Ides*. The first day of every month was called the *Kalends :* the fifth day was called the *Nones :* and the thirteenth day was called the *Ides :* except in the months of March, May, July, and October, in which the nones fell upon the seventh day, and the ides on the fifteenth.

In reckoning the days of their months, they counted backwards. Thus, the first day of January was marked *Kalendis Januariis* or *Januarii*, or, by contraction, *Kal. Jan.* The last day of December, *Pridie Kalendas Januarias*, or *Januarii*, scil. *ante*. The day before that, or the 30th day of December, *Tertio Kal. Jan.* scil. *die ante :* or *Ante diem tertium Kal. Jan.* The twenty-ninth day of December, *Quarto Kal. Jan.* And so on, till they came back to the thirteenth day of December, or to the ides, which were marked *Idĭbus Dĕcembrĭbus*, or *Decembris :* the day before the ides, *Pridie Idus Dec.* scil. *ante :* the day before that, *Tertio Id. Dec.* and so back to the nones, or the fifth day of the

---

* Two capitals in this way denote the plural number ; as, L. D. *Legis Doctor :* LL. D. *Legum Doctor.*

† *Kalends*, or *Calends*, is derived from *Calo, -āre*, to call. In the Infancy of Rome, a priest summoned the people together in the Capitol, on the first day of the month, or of the new moon, and called over the days that intervened between that and the *Nones*. In later times the *Fasti*, or Calendar, used to be put up in public places.

The Nones [*Nonæ*] are so called, because they are *nine* days from the Ides. Ides, [*Idus*] from the obsolete verb *Iduare*, to divide, because they divide the month nearly equally.

month, which was marked *Nonis Decembrĭbus*, or *Decembris:* the day before the nones, *Pridie Non. Dec.* &c. and thus through all the months of the year.

> JUNIUS, APRILIS, SEPTEMque, NOVEMque tricenos;
> Unum plus reliqui; FEBRUUS tenet octo viginti;
> At si bissextus fuerit, superadditur unus.
> Tu primam mensis lucem dic esse kalendas.
> Sex MAIUS, nonas OCTOBER, JULIUS, et MARS,
> Quatuor at reliqui; dabit idus quilibet octo.
> Omnes post idus luces dic esse kalendas,
> Nomen sortiri debent a mense sequenti.

Thus, the 14th day of *April, June, September,* and *November*, was marked XVIII. Kal. of the following month; the 15th, XVII. Kal. &c. The 14th day of *January, August,* and *December*, XIX. Kal. &c. So the 16th day of *March, May, July*, and *October*, was marked XVII. Kal. &c. And the 14th day of February, XVI. Kal. Martii or Martias. The names of all the months are used as Substantives or Adjectives, except *Aprīlis,* which is used only as a Substantive.

In *Leap year,* that is, when February has twenty-nine days, which happens every fourth year, both the 24th and the 25th days of that month were marked, *Sexto Kalendas Martii*, or *Martias:* and hence this year is called *Bissextĭlis.*

TABLE.

	MAR. MAI. JUL. OCT.	JAN. AUG. DEC.	APR. JUN. SEP. NOV.	FEBRUARIUS.
1	Kalendæ.	Kalendæ.	Kalendæ.	Kalendæ.
2	6° Nonas.	4° Nonas.	4° Nonas.	4° Nonas.
3	5 Nonas.	3 Nonas.	3 Nonas.	3 Nonas.
4	4 Nonas.	Pridie Nonas.	Pridie Nonas.	Pridie Nonas.
5	3 Nonas.	Nonæ.	Nonæ.	Nonæ.
6	Pridie Nonas.	8° Idus.	8° Idus.	8° Idus.
7	Nonæ.	7 Idus.	7 Idus.	7 Idus.
8	8° Idus.	6 Idus.	6 Idus.	6 Idus.
9	7 Idus.	5 Idus.	5 Idus.	5 Idus.
10	6 Idus.	4 Idus.	4 Idus.	4 Idus.
11	5 Idus.	3 Idus.	3 Idus.	3 Idus.
12	4 Idus.	Pridie Idus.	Pridie Idus.	Pridie Idus.
13	3 Idus.	Idus.	Idus.	Idus.
14	Pridie Idus.	19° Kalendas.	18° Kalendas.	16° Kalendas.
15	Idus.	18 Kal.	17 Kal.	15 Kal.
16	17° Kalendas.	17 Kal.	16 Kal.	14 Kal.
17	16 Kal.	16 Kal.	15 Kal.	13 Kal.
18	15 Kal.	15 Kal.	14 Kal.	12 Kal.
19	14 Kal.	14 Kal.	13 Kal.	11 Kal.
20	13 Kal.	13 Kal.	12 Kal.	10 Kal.
21	12 Kal.	12 Kal.	11 Kal.	9 Kal.
22	11 Kal.	11 Kal.	10 Kal.	8 Kal.
23	10 Kal.	10 Kal.	9 Kal.	7 Kal.
24	9 Kal.	9 Kal.	8 Kal.	6 Kal.
25	8 Kal.	8 Kal.	7 Kal.	5 Kal.
26	7 Kal.	7 Kal.	6 Kal.	4 Kal.
27	6 Kal.	6 Kal.	5 Kal.	3 Kal.
28	5 Kal.	5 Kal.	4 Kal.	Pridie Kalendas.
29	4 Kal.	4 Kal.	3 Kal.	
30	3 Kal.	3 Kal.	Pridie Kalendas.	
31	Pridie Kalendas.	Pridie Kalendas.		

The Romans, counting *in* the day on which they dated, called the *second* day before the Kalends, Nones or Ides, *tertio*, and so on. And, as the Kalends are not the last day of the current month, but the first day of the month following; we must take this additional day into consideration in accommodating our calendar to their dates; according to the following method:

Rule. Add *one* to the number of the Nones and Ides, and *two* to the number of days in the month for the Kalends; then subtract the number of the day; e. g. to find the Roman date of the 21st July; to 31, add 2=33; from this take 21, the day of the month, and the remainder, 12, is the Roman date, 12mo. Kal. Aug.

ROMAN COINS REDUCED TO FEDERAL MONEY.

BRASS.

		$	cts.	
*$1\frac{1}{3}$	A Quadrans,† or teruncius, is equal to	0	00,35	of a cent.
$1\frac{1}{2}$	A Triens - - - -		,47	"
2	A Semissis, or semi-æs - -		,71	"
	An As, or æs - - - -		1,43	"

SILVER.

2	A Teruncius is equal to - -	,35	of a cent.
2	A Sembella - - - - -	,71	"
$2\frac{1}{2}$	A Libella - - - - -	1,43	"
2	A Sestertius, or Nummus, marked L. L. S. or IIS, commonly written HS. -	3,57	"
2	A Quinarius, or Victoriātus, marked V.	7,17	"
	A Denarius, marked X. - -	14,35	"

GOLD.

An Aureus, or aureus nummus - - $3 58,79 of a cent.
The gold is reckoned at £4 sterling, ($17 $77\frac{7}{9}$) and the silver at 5 shillings, $1 $11\frac{1}{9}$) an ounce.

---

* These numbers show how many of each denomination it takes to make one of the next following, nearly.

† *Quadrans* signifies a *quarter* of the as; *triens*, a *third*: *teruncius*, *three unciæ* of brass, (12 of which made an as,) or a silver coin of that value; *libella*, a diminutive of *libra*, being equivalent to the as, which originally weighed a *pound*: *sembella semi-libella*: *sestertius*, *semis tertius*, or *three* asses *less a half* (after the Greek idiom ημισυ τριτον, for δυο ημισυ;) *quinarius*, *five* asses, called also *victoriātus*, from the image of *Victory*, its usual device; *denarius*, *ten* asses.

GREEK COINS MENTIONED BY ROMAN AUTHORS.

6	An Obŏlus is equal to - - -	2,39	of a cent.
4	A Drachma - - - - -	14,35	"
25	A Tetradrachma or -um - - -	57,40	"
	according to Livy,	43,05	"
60	A Mina - - - - $14	35,18	"
	A Talentum - - $861	$11\frac{1}{5}$	"

The Romans usually computed sums of money by *sestertii*, or *sestertia.* *Sestertium* is the name of a sum, not of a coin. When a numeral adjective is joined with *sestertii*, it means just so many sesterces; thus, *decem sestertii* = ten sesterces: but when it is joined with *sestertia*, it means so many thousand *sestertii;* thus, *decem sestertia* = 10,000 sesterces.

If a numeral adjective of another case is joined with the genitive plural, it denotes so many thousand; as, *decem sestertiûm*, 10,000 sestertii. If a numeral adverb is joined, it denotes so many hundred thousand; as, *decies sestertiûm*, ten hundred thousand sestertii. If the numeral adverb stands by itself, the signification is the same.

ROMAN LONG MEASURES REDUCED TO ENGLISH.

		Eng. Paces.	Ft.	In.	Dec.
4	1 Hordei granum, or barley corn, is equal to	0	0	0	,$181\frac{5}{16}$
$1\frac{1}{3}$	1 Digĭtus transversus, or finger's breadth	0	0	0	,$725\frac{1}{4}$
3	1 Uncia, thumb's breadth, or inch -	0	0	0	,967
4	1 Palmus minor, or hand's breadth -	0	0	2	,901
$1\frac{1}{4}$	1 Pes, or foot - - -	0	0	11	,604
$1\frac{1}{5}$	1 Palmĭpes, a foot and hand's breath	0	1	2	,505
$1\frac{2}{3}$	1 Cubĭtus - - - -	0	1	5	,406
2	1 Gradus - - - -	0	2	5	,010
125	1 Passus, or pace - - -	0	4	10	,020
8	1 Stadium, or furlong - -	120	4	4	,5
	1 Milliāre, mille passus or passuum	967	0	0	,0

ANCIENT ROMAN LAND MEASURE.

100	Square Roman feet equal - -	1 Scrupŭlum of land.
4	Scrupŭla - - - - - - -	1 Sextŭlus.
$1\frac{1}{5}$	Sextŭlus - - - - - - -	1 Actus.
6	Sextŭli, or 5 Actus - - -	1 Uncia of land.
6	Unciæ - - - - - - - -	1 Square Actus.
2	Square Actus - - - - - -	1 Jugĕrum.
3	Jugĕra - - - - - - -	1 Heredium.
100	Heredia - - - - - -	1 Centuria.

ROMAN MEASURES OF CAPACITY FOR LIQUIDS, REDUCED TO ENGLISH WINE MEASURE.

		Gal.	Pts.	Sol. In.	Dec.
4	1 Ligŭla is equal to - -	0	$\frac{1}{48}$	0	,117$\frac{5}{12}$
1½	1 Cyăthus - - -	0	$\frac{1}{12}$	0	,469$\frac{2}{3}$
2	1 Acetabŭlum - - -	0	$\frac{1}{8}$	0	,704$\frac{1}{2}$
2	1 Quartarius - - -	0	$\frac{1}{4}$	1	,409
2	1 Hemĭna - - -	0	$\frac{1}{2}$	2	,818
6	1 Sextarius - - -	0	1	5	,636
4	1 Congius - - - -	0	7	4	,942
2	1 Urna - - - -	3	4$\frac{1}{2}$	5	,33
20	1 Amphŏra - - -	7	1	10	,66
	1 Culeus - - - -	143	3	11	,095

The *quadrantal* is the same with the *amphŏra; congiarius, dolium,* and *cadus* mean no certain measure, but a *cask* or *keg.*

The Romans divided the *sextarius,* as well as the *libra,* into twelve equal parts, called *cyăthi;* and therefore they called their *calĭces* either *sextantes, quadrantes,* or *trientes;* according to the number of *cyăthi* they contained.

The *cyăthus* corresponded, in use and size, nearly to our wine glass.

ROMAN DRY MEASURE REDUCED TO ENGLISH CORN MEASURE.

		Pk.	Gal.	Pt.	Sol. In.	Dec.
4	1 Ligŭla is equal to - -	0	0	0$\frac{1}{48}$	0	,01
1½	1 Cyăthus - - -	0	0	0$\frac{1}{12}$	0	,04
4	1 Acetabŭlum - - -	0	0	0$\frac{1}{8}$	0	,06
2	1 Hemĭna - - -	0	0	0$\frac{1}{2}$	0	,24
8	1 Sextarius - - -	0	0	1	0	,48
2	1 Semi-modius - - -	0	1	0	3	,84
	1 Modius - - -	1	0	0	7	,68

GRECIAN AND ROMAN WEIGHTS REDUCED TO ENGLISH TROY WEIGHT.

		lb.	oz.	dwts.	grs.
4	1 Lens is equal to - -	0	0	0	0$\frac{85}{112}$
3	1 Silĭqua - - -	0	0	0	3$\frac{1}{28}$
2	1 Obŏlus - - -	0	0	0	9$\frac{3}{28}$
3	1 Scriptŭlum - -	0	0	0	18$\frac{3}{14}$
1⅓	1 Drachma - - -	0	0	2	6$\frac{9}{14}$
1½	1 Sextŭla - - -	0	0	3	0$\frac{6}{7}$

		lb.	oz.	dwts.	grs.
$1\frac{1}{3}$	1 Sicilicus or -um - -	0	0	4	$13\frac{2}{7}$
3	1 Duella - - -	0	0	6	$1\frac{5}{7}$
12	1 Uncia - - -	0	0	18	$5\frac{1}{7}$
	1 Libra - - -	0	10	18	$13\frac{5}{7}$

ADDITIONAL REMARKS ON ROMAN MONEY.

In the preceding tables of money the authority of Dr. Adam, as given in his "Roman Antiquities," has been followed. And perhaps no one could in general be followed with more safety. But on some few points he differs from writers of great respectability. Forcellinus and Eckhel agree in resolving HS, not into LLS, but into IIS; that is, *two* asses and a half; giving the letters or lines II their usual numerical power. This solution seems much more satisfactory than the former, and is supported by strong probabilities. We find, for example, on ancient coins, HVIR, for Duumvir; and an X, standing for *ten*, has sometimes a mark drawn across it thus, $\frac{\text{V}}{\Lambda}$ as it is frequently found on the denarius, where it evidently stands for *ten* asses.

The following account of the Roman mode of reckoning by sesterces is taken from a treatise on the subject by Mr. Raper, in the Philosophical Transactions, vol. LXI.

"The Romans reckoned by *Asses* before they coined silver, after which they kept their accounts in Sesterces. The word *Sestertius* is an adjective, and signifies two and a half of any substantive to which it refers. In money matters its substantive is either *As*, or *pondus*: and *Sestertius As* is two *Asses* and a half; *Sestertium pondus*, two *pondĕra* and a half [of silver,] or 250 *Denarii*.

"When the *Denarius* passed for ten *Asses*, the Sesterce of 2½ *Asses* was a quarter of it; and the Romans continued to keep their accounts in these Sesterces long after the *Denarius* passed for sixteen *Asses*: till, growing rich, they found it more convenient to reckon by quarters of the *Denarius*, which they called *Nummi*, and used the words *Nummus* and *Sestertius*, indifferently, as synonymous terms, and sometimes both together, as, *Sestertius nummus*: in which case, the word *Sestertius*, having lost its original signification, was used as a substantive; for *Sestertius nummus* was not two *Nummi* and a half, but a single *Nummus* of four *Asses*.

"They called any sum under 2000 Sesterces so many *Sestertii*, in the masculine gender; 2000 Sesterces they called *duo* or *bina Sestertia*, in the neuter; so many quarters making 500 *Denarii*, which was twice the *Sestertium*: and they said *dena vicēna, &c. Sestertia*, till the sum amounted to a thousand *Sestertia*, which was a million of Sesterces. But, to avoid ambiguity, they did not use the neuter *Sestertium* in the singular number, when the whole sum amounted to no more than 1000 Sesterces, or one *Sestertium*.

"They called a million of Sesterces *Decies nummûm*, or *Decies Sestertiûm*, for *Decies centēna millia nummōrum*, or *Sestertiōrum* (in the masculine gender,) omitting *centēna millia*, for the sake of brevity; they likewise called the same sum *Decies Sestertium* (in the neuter gender,) for *Decies centies Sestertium*, omitting *Centies* for the reason above mentioned; or simply *Decies*, omitting *centēna millia Sestertiûm*, or *centies Sestertium*: and with the numeral adverbs *Decies, Vicies, Centies, Millies*, and the like, either *centēna millia*, or *centies*, was always understood."

The learned, while they agree as to the substance of the foregoing rules, and arrive at the same results in applying them to sums of money mentioned in the classics, yet differ widely with respect to the grammatical construction of the word *sestertius*. Forcellinus* contends, that *sestertium* is always the contracted genitive plural of the masculine *sestertius*: that the use of *sestertia* in the neuter, is confined to the poets, who form the word by a metaplasm, for the sake of the metre; and that, where it is found in printed editions of prose writers, it has been arbitrarily substituted for the sign HS in the original manuscript, which sign stands in every such instance for *sestertiûm*, the genitive plural of *sestertius*.

Eckhel† considers the numeral adverbs *decies*, &c. as taking the nature of neuter substantives, as in the expressions *hoc decies, decies plenum*, &c. which occur in ancient authors; and since *sestertius* is in its nature an adjective (e. g. *sestertius pes, sestertius nummus*,) he regards *decies sestertium, decies plenum*, &c. as phrases of similar construction. Hence we find the adjective *sestertius* varied through almost all the cases, as in the following examples: *Decem arbuscŭlārum umbram tricies sestertii summā compenses*. Val. Max. *Bis et vicies millies sestertium donationĭbus Nero effudĕrat*. Tac. *Sexagies sestertio margarītam mercātus es*. Sueton.

* Totius Latinitatis Lexicon.
† Doctrina Numorum Veterum, vol. v. p. 25.

THE END.